Copyright © 2017 Brent Evan Parker

All rights reserved. The Southern Baptist Theological Seminary has permission to reproduce and disseminate this document in any form by any means for purposes chosen by the Seminary, including, without limitation, preservation or instruction.
THE ISRAEL-CHRIST-CHURCH TYPOLOGICAL PATTERN:
A THEOLOGICAL CRITIQUE OF COVENANT
AND DISPENSATIONAL THEOLOGIES

A Dissertation
Presented to
the Faculty of
The Southern Baptist Theological Seminary

In Partial Fulfillment
of the Requirements for the Degree
Doctor of Philosophy

by
Brent Evan Parker
May 2017
THE ISRAEL-CHRIST-CHURCH TYPOLOGICAL PATTERN:
A THEOLOGICAL CRITIQUE OF COVENANT
AND DISPENSATIONAL THEOLOGIES

Brent Evan Parker

Read and Approved by:

__________________________________________
Stephen J. Wellum (Chair)

__________________________________________
Thomas R. Schreiner

__________________________________________
Gregg R. Allison

Date ______________________________
To Kandace,

my loving and supportive wife,

you are God’s precious gift to me (Prov 18:22),

and a constant reminder of God’s love and grace
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREFACE</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Importance of Typology in the Covenant-Dispensational Debate</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methodology</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview and Structure of the Presentation</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. THE CHALLENGES OF TYPOLOGY</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typology and Allegory: Is There a Distinction?</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hallmarks and Characteristics of Typology</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nature of Typological Fulfillment</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying Types: The Textual Warrant for Typology</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. THE HERMENEUTICS OF COVENANT THEOLOGY</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covenant of Works</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covenant of Grace</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel and the Church in Covenant Theology</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covenant Theology and Typology</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. THE HERMENEUTICS OF DISPENSATIONALISM</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Essential Tenets of Dispensationalism</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern Forms or Expressions of Dispensationalism</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispensational Understandings of the Covenants</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nature of Typology in Dispensational Theology</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. THE ISRAEL-CHRIST-CHURCH RELATIONSHIP</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Terminology of “True Israel” and the Identity of Israel</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ as the True Israel: Israel in Typological Perspective</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concluding Theological Synthesis</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. THE ISRAEL-CHURCH RELATIONSHIP VIA CHRIST: IMPLICATIONS FOR ECCLESIOLOGICAL FORMULATION</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ’s Union with His People: Individual and Corporate</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Church as the Renewed Israel: The Israel-Church Relationship in Typological Perspective</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Challenging Texts for the Israel-Christ-Church Typological Framework: Overcoming Potential Defeaters</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. CONCLUSION: PROGRESSIVE COVENANTALISM AS THE SOLUTION TO THE ECCLESIOLOGICAL DIVIDE</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIBLIOGRAPHY</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABD</td>
<td><em>The Anchor Bible Dictionary</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANE</td>
<td>Ancient Near East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATR</td>
<td><em>Anglican Theological Review</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUSS</td>
<td><em>Andrews University Seminary Studies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBR</td>
<td><em>Bulletin for Biblical Research</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BECNT</td>
<td>Baker Exegetical Commentary on the New Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BibSac</td>
<td><em>Bibliotheca Sacra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR</td>
<td><em>Biblical Research</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTB</td>
<td><em>Biblical Theology Bulletin</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTNT</td>
<td>Biblical Theology of the New Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNW</td>
<td>Beihefte zur Zeitschrift für die neutestamentliche Wissenschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBQ</td>
<td><em>Catholic Biblical Quarterly</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJ</td>
<td><em>Concordia Journal</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CQR</td>
<td><em>Church Quarterly Review</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTJ</td>
<td><em>Calvin Theological Journal</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTQ</td>
<td><em>Concordia Theological Quarterly</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTR</td>
<td><em>Criswell Theological Review</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBSJ</td>
<td>Detroit Baptist Seminary Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTIB</td>
<td><em>Dictionary for Theological Interpretation of the Bible</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAJT</td>
<td><em>East Asia Journal of Theology</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EJ</td>
<td>Evangelical Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EJT</td>
<td>European Journal of Theology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EmJ</td>
<td>Emmaus Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERT</td>
<td>Evangelical Review of Theology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESV</td>
<td>English Standard Version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EvQ</td>
<td>Evangelical Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTJ</td>
<td>Grace Theological Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBT</td>
<td>Horizons in Biblical Theology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICC</td>
<td>International Critical Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IJST</td>
<td>International Journal of Systematic Theology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBE</td>
<td>The International Standard Bible Encyclopedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAOS</td>
<td>Journal of the American Oriental Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBL</td>
<td>Journal of Biblical Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JEPTA</td>
<td>Journal of the European Pentecostal Theological Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JETS</td>
<td>Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMT</td>
<td>Journal of Ministry and Theology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSNT</td>
<td>Journal for the Study of the New Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSNTSup</td>
<td>Journal for the Study of the New Testament Supplement Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSOT</td>
<td>Journal for the Study of the Old Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSOTSUP</td>
<td>Journal for the Study of the Old Testament Supplement Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSJSUP</td>
<td>Journal for the Study of Judaism Supplement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTI</td>
<td>Journal of Theological Interpretation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTS</td>
<td>Journal of Theological Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHB/OTS</td>
<td>The Library of Hebrew Bible/Old Testament Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNTS</td>
<td>Library of New Testament Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>Septuagint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TrinJ</td>
<td>Trinity Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSF Bulletin</td>
<td>Theological Students Fellowship Bulletin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TynBul</td>
<td>Tyndale Bulletin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VT</td>
<td>Vestus Testamentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>Word Biblical Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WTJ</td>
<td>Westminster Theological Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WUNT</td>
<td>Wissenschaftliche Untersuchungen zum Neuen Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZECNT</td>
<td>Zondervan Exegetical Commentary on the New Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZNW</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für die neutestamentliche Wissenschaft und die Kunde der älteren Kirche</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ecclesiastes 12:12 states, “Of making many books there is no end, and much study is a weariness of the flesh.” These words accurately reflect the laborious nature of studying and writing a dissertation. At the same time, there are many joys in contemplating God’s Word and thinking through the contours of God’s plan for his covenant people. Thankfully, this effort was not a completely solitary one as many others have offered their support and encouragement.

First, I have much appreciation and gratitude for my committee—Professors Steve Wellum, Tom Schreiner, and Gregg Allison. Professor Allison’s seminar on ecclesiology helped me think more deeply on the nature and doctrine of the church. Thanks are also to be extended to Professor Schreiner, who has influenced me significantly through his books and courses, and as my pastor at Clifton Baptist Church. Special thanks and gratitude are extended to Professor Wellum. His course on issues in biblical and systematic theology in 2007 spurred my aspirations to write on systems of theology. More than anyone else, Wellum’s approach to hermeneutics, theological method, and the doing of biblical and systematic theology has cultivated and shaped my understandings of these areas, leaving an indelible imprint on me. His friendship over the years, even through difficult times, has also been a source of great comfort. I am so grateful for these professors and the other members of the Southern Seminary faculty.

I would also like to acknowledge friends who have supported me and who have been helpful conversation partners along the way. John Meade provided much friendship to me during his time as a Ph.D. student as we dialogued about a host of theological and interpretative issues over the years. In recent years my conversations with Richard Lucas have been incredibly valuable given his keen interest and knowledge of
theological systems. My former roommate, Brian Bunnell, has also been a good friend and has provided excellent insights into dispensationalism. Matt Claridge’s feedback on my dissertation was extremely helpful as have been our conversations on typology over the years. Lastly, during ETS conferences and through email, Professor Ardel Caneday has been a theological mentor for me, helping me grasp hermeneutical issues. He has had a hand particularly in developing my understanding of typology and allegory. Many other colleagues in the Ph.D. program have also offered challenging and thoughtful feedback.

Third, I am extremely grateful for my family. My parents, Bob and LaDeane, have been supportive of me through the coursework of the Master of Divinity and have continued to offer their prayers and encouragement in completing this lengthy Doctor of Philosophy program. My loving and devoted wife, Kandace, has served me countless ways, patiently enduring my work on this dissertation even as I made little advance on it during a three and a half year stint as a full-time thermal engineer. She has sacrificed for me and cared for me in innumerable ways during these years while simultaneously managing and nurturing our two young boys, Evan and baby Will. I am blessed to have such a faithful and supportive wife.

Most of all, thanks and praise go to my great God and Savior, Jesus Christ. He is truly the obedient Son, the one who has fulfilled the Old Testament hopes and promises, and the one who has ratified the glorious new covenant of which I am member through the blood of his cross. My prayer is that this dissertation brings glory and honor to the Son and that it will edify the church in viewing Jesus as the focal point for understanding the relationship between the old covenant and new covenant people of God. Soli Deo Gloria.

Brent E. Parker

Louisville, Kentucky

May 2017
CHAPTER 1
INTRODUCTION

Since the rise of the modern evangelical movement in the twentieth century, two overarching biblical-theological systems of theology—covenant theology and dispensationalism—have primarily characterized the evangelical landscape and scholarship. Covenant theology, with its long historical pedigree in the Reformed tradition and rooted in the Reformation, stresses God’s covenantal dealings through the progressive unfolding of the Bible. With all the diverse themes of Scripture united under the structure or framework of covenant, covenant theology is known as a theological system of continuity in relating the Old Testament to the New, especially in conceiving of the church—“the new Israel”—as essentially the fulfillment of OT Israel.1 The principal rival of covenant theology, dispensationalism, has become especially popular in the United States during the last century given its emphasis on prophecy, the rapture, and end times.2 The dispensational tradition seeks to put the whole Bible together without the emphasis on a covenantal structure per se but by identifying God’s dealings and arrangement with human beings along the stages or dispensations throughout history.

---


2Popular books, though by no means accepted by many dispensationalists, include the works of Hal Lindsey, such as The Late Great Plant Earth (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1970), and the Tim LaHaye and Jerry B. Jenkins’s Left Behind series.
Dispensationalism as a system features more *discontinuity* given the belief that God’s arrangements and relationships with man have differed from the past, present, and future resulting in an important distinction between Israel and the church as OT promises and prophecies to national and ethnic Israel still await fulfillment.³ While representatives of each system have been able to work together in terms of ministry and both views share an understanding of the gospel, these two systems are nevertheless opposed on important matters such as hermeneutics, ecclesiology—especially the relationship between Israel and the church—and arguably the most identifiable area, eschatology with all the debates surrounding the rapture and the meaning of the millennium. The essential differences may be reduced to how covenantalists and dispensationalists carry out the task of biblical theology in understanding the biblical covenants and in terms of how they relate the various stages of development or covenantal shifts that takes place across the storyline of Scripture.⁴ More specifically and bound up with the doing of biblical theology is the subject of typology. It is the nature and identification of key typological patterns between the OT and NT that proves to be of consequential import to the covenantal-dispensational divide explored in this study.

**The Importance of Typology in the Covenant-Dispensational Debate**

Several years have passed since Edward Glenny offered his helpful, informative summary and survey of typology within evangelicalism. His survey reveals that the understanding of the nature and function of typology between covenant theology

---


⁴For the critical importance of how the covenants are interpreted and related to each other in systems of theology, see Peter J. Gentry and Stephen J. Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant: A Biblical-Theological Understanding of the Covenants* (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2012).
and the variety of dispensational theologies represents a key hermeneutical area separating the two systems.\(^5\) John Feinberg, a dispensationalist, agrees as he has aptly stated that the fundamental and interrelated issues tied to the ongoing debate between covenantalists and dispensationalists on the topic of hermeneutics stem from “the relation of the progress of revelation to the priority of one Testament over the other, the understanding and implications of the NT use of the OT, and the understanding and implications of typology.”\(^6\) In the same vein, Reformed theologian Mark Karlberg surmises the importance of typology in the debate: “Resolution of lingering differences of interpretation among evangelicals depends, to a large extent, on a proper assessment of the nature and function of OT typology.”\(^7\) Baptist theologian David Dockery also believes that a “balanced and sane approach to typological exegesis can bring together those in the dispensational and covenant communities.”\(^8\)

---


\(^7\) Mark W. Karlberg, “Legitimate Discontinuities between the Testaments,” *JETS* 28 (1985): 19. See also the attention typology receives in Mark W. Karlberg, “Israel and the Eschaton,” *WTJ* 52 (1990): 117-30. Vern S. Poythress, *Understanding Dispensationalists*, 2nd ed. (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1994), 117, also finds that further “reflection on problems with typology may therefore help to bring us together.” He devotes a brief chapter to the subject of typology which seeks to dialogue and challenge dispensationalists at crucial points. See also Darrell L. Bock, “Summary Essay,” in *Three Views on the Millennium and Beyond*, ed. Darrell L. Bock (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1999), 290-97, for a discussion on the relationship of the OT and NT, typology, and the role of Israel in the millennial debate which is a subset of the question of continuity and discontinuity. More generally, D. A. Carson has suggested that one of the crucial solutions to the debate within evangelicalism over authorial intent and a text having a fuller meaning would be common agreement on the nature of typology. D. A. Carson, “Two Turning Points in the Contemporary Hermeneutical Debate” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the National Evangelical Theological Society, Lisle, IL, November 17-19, 1994).

Unfortunately, major hurdles need to be overcome. One significant difference on the subject of typology, as pointed out by Glenny, is to what degree the NT antitypes fulfill or annul the original OT types, especially in regard to the Israel-church relationship.\(^9\) In other words, even if Israel is a type, does it follow that its role as a national and ethnic entity is eclipsed by the church in the new covenant era, or can the Israel typology be understood in a manner such that certain OT promises to Israel still remain as the pattern of realization pertains to only aspects of Israel? Glenny also raises the critical question that will receive much attention in the chapters ahead: “What part does Christ have in the correspondence between Israel and the Church? Or—to try to word this question more clearly—how does the Church’s ‘in Christ’ relationship help explain the application to the Church of OT promises for Israel?”\(^10\)

Furthermore, the dispute and fundamental differences regarding typology are not likely to abate, for on a broader scale, one’s understanding of typology is tied to how one apprehends the unity of the canon, the unfolding of redemptive history (progressive revelation), the promise-fulfillment pattern, the study of the NT use of the OT, and cannot be disconnected from more basic issues such as one’s view of the inspiration of Scripture, biblical history, and the sovereignty and providence of God.\(^11\)

---


\(^10\)Glenny, “Typology,” 638.

importance of typology for interpreting the Bible then, it is not surprising that the nature and defining characteristics of typology (e.g., the prospective quality or divine prefiguration aspect of typology), as well as the methodology for identifying types (e.g., are the only typological relationships those identified and designated as such by the NT authors?), continue to attract much attention from evangelical and non-evangelical scholars alike. Even defining typology is a challenge as Douglas Moo finds that “typology is much easier to talk about than to describe” and a unified understanding of typology is elusive since no one definition of typology is acceptable to all. Despite these difficulties, investigating the impact of typology for systems of continuity and discontinuity is a worthwhile endeavor if there will be continued reform in how evangelicals do biblical theology and understand the Israel-church relationship.

A scholarly consensus on the defining characteristics of typology has not been reached; however, most evangelicals would agree that typology (1) involves the study of real and organic historical and theological correspondences of types—identifiable as OT persons, events, or institutions; (2) possesses a divinely intended quality with prophetic or


Generally there are two broad approaches to typology: the more traditional evangelical view and the post-critical neo-typology view. For a discussion of the two approaches, see chap. 2 and note Richard M. Davidson, Typology in Scripture: A Study of Hermeneutical ΤΥΠΟΣ Structures, Andrews University Seminary Doctoral Dissertation Series, vol. 2 (Berrien Springs, MI: Andrews University, 1981), 46-75. Benjamin J. Ribbens, “Typology of Types: Typology in Dialogue,” JTJ 5 (2011): 84-85, describes these two approaches as “prefiguration typology” and “correspondence typology” and describes how they are responses to modern historical criticism.

Douglas Moo, “Paul’s Universalizing Hermeneutic,” SBJT 11 (2007): 81; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 4; Walter C. Kaiser, Jr., The Uses of the Old Testament in the New (Chicago: Moody, 1985), 231, writes, “There is nothing approaching a consensus within the believing or scholarly communities either on the definition or the ways typology is to be used for biblical studies.” The difficulties have been present for a long time as Gundry, summarizing the studies of typology in the 1960s, finds that “the question of the validity and use of typology is one of the central issues being discussed today in the field of methodology of Biblical interpretation, but so far there seems to be little agreement as to validity, terminology, rules, and method” and there is “disagreement as to what a proper definition of typology and the typological task should be.” Gundry, “Typology as a Means of Interpretation,” 233.
prospective import (OT types and typological patterns point forward to later persons and events) that are progressively unpacked across successive epochs of biblical revelation culminating in NT counterparts (generally denoted as antitypes and routinely identified with Jesus Christ or the salvation or new covenant realities he secures); and (3) exhibits a significant resemblance, as well as an escalation (an a fortiori quality) or qualitative progression, that is detected between the type and antitype. Even with these general characteristics in place, covenant theologians and dispensationalists of various stripes understand and use typology differently, especially at the crucial and central points of their respective systems and in conjunction with how they understand the relation between Israel and the church. Moreover, not only is typology employed and understood differently by dispensational and covenant theologians, but critical OT institutions and themes tied to the biblical covenants are not identified or recognized as typological when they should be, or if certain OT-NT typological relationships are identified they are not properly formulated theologically.

Delineating the typological patterns through the OT and NT is important. Unpacking the typological role of Israel is vital for ecclesiology. Covenant theology does recognize Israel as type, but the relationship between Israel and the church is made too fast or held too tightly given the overarching covenant of grace framework without doing justice to the newness of the new covenant and the discontinuity that results from the coming of the new and true Israel—Jesus Christ. The church, contend advocates of paedobaptist covenant theology, consists of a “mixed” community of believers and unbelievers just like Israel of old. On the other hand, dispensationalists do not recognize Israel as a type of Jesus Christ, or the typological relationship is reduced to an analogy or illustration. For progressive dispensationalists, application or initial-fulfillment drawn between Israel and the church does not lead to reforming the strong separation between

Israel and the church in their theological system. For dispensationalists, the OT promises and prophecies to Israel are not completely annulled or fulfilled by such typological patterns. However, this position also does not seem to do due diligence to how the Scripture presents Jesus as the antitypical fulfillment of the nation of Israel. Further, dispensationalism does not adequately address the entailment of Christ as antitypical Israel: the church is the eschatological people of God, the renewed or restored Israel as a consequence of her faith union with Christ, the true Israel.

Appropriating the typological connections rightly and viewing Israel and the church through the prism or focal point of Jesus Christ has significant bearing on the central ecclesiological features of both theological systems.\(^\text{15}\) The Israel-Christ typological relationship is not unrelated to how the Abrahamic covenant is understood. Both covenant theology and dispensationalism fail to understand the typological aspects within the Abrahamic covenant. Covenant theologians reduce the national and typological elements rooted in the Abrahamic covenant to merely spiritual aspects. The strong continuity between Israel and the church in covenant theology means that the covenant sign of circumcision and the seed promise are not formulated rightly because the discontinuity of these features tied to the Israel-Christ-church framework is missed or is subsumed under a more governing, direct Israel-church framework. Hence the genealogical principle remains unchanged across the canon as NT baptism directly replaces OT circumcision. Similarly, dispensationalists do not view the land promised to Abraham as typological, or any typological significance is minor as this “unconditional”

\(^\text{15}\)These assertions regarding the nature and use of typology in both dispensational and covenant theology are discussed in Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 81-126, 653-716. In regard to the Israel-church relationship, Russell D. Moore, “From the House of Jacob to Iowa Caucuses: The Future of Israel in Contemporary Evangelical Political Ethics,” *SBJT* 11 (2007): 17, observes that “both covenant theology and dispensationalism . . . often discuss Israel and the church without taking into account the Christocentric nature of biblical eschatology. . . . The church is not Israel, at least not in a direct, unmediated sense. The remnant of Israel—a biological descendant of Abraham, a circumcised Jewish firstborn son who is approved of by God for his obedience to the covenant – receives all of the promises due to him.” See also Russell D. Moore, *The Kingdom of Christ: The New Evangelical Perspective* (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2004), 116-20, 146-50.
promise must have actual or literal fulfillment to the nation of Israel either just before or during the millennial reign of Christ. The promise of land goes straight across the canon then, unchanged and directed to national, ethnic Israel alone with no alteration or transformation on the basis of Christ’s first coming and fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant.

Therefore, the focus of this dissertation is to provide a study of the Israel-Christ-church relationship and demonstrate that this necessary framework, linking Israel to Christ foremost and drawing theological conclusions for the Israel-church relationship in light of the church’s union with Jesus the true Israel, is missing at the central areas of covenant theology and dispensationalism. Furthermore, a study of the Israel-Christ-church relationship cannot proceed without presenting a proper understanding of the nature of typology, especially the aspect of fulfillment and escalation or heightening embedded within typological patterns. The type-antitype relationship always has a notable resemblance, but the heightening aspect or eschatological nature of the antitype means that there will also be a significant difference corresponding to the greater NT realities ushered in with the coming and work of Christ such that the antitype is the goal, fulfillment, or reality that the OT type anticipated.16 Moreover, there is an added factor of how typological relationships are closely linked to the unfolding of the biblical covenants and are channeled through Jesus Christ who brings all that the covenants pointed to and promised, thus the OT types and patterns reach their eschatological fulfillment. The role of Israel as a type, then, must be carefully delineated in connection to Jesus Christ and the new covenant realities that he has inaugurated in the church. Rightly identifying and understanding these typological patterns brings about modifications that result in a shift to a new system, a tertium quid, the true interface between all forms of dispensationalism and covenant theology, a system called progressive covenantalism.17

16The element of eschatological fulfillment in typological patterns is treated in chap. 2.

17The terminology of progressive covenantalism has been employed before, see Dan Lioy,
Thesis

Given the above discussion, this dissertation argues that OT Israel is a typological pattern in terms of the nature of typology as described by Richard Davidson and others, and that national Israel’s antitypical fulfillment in Christ and the church necessarily entails that the essential ecclesiological tenets of covenant and dispensational theology on the Israel-church relationship are incorrect. With Israel as a type of Christ and derivatively of the church, the escalation and heightening characteristics intrinsic to typological patterns means that instead of interpreting the church-Israel relationship in strict continuity, as in the church replacing or having the same essential nature of OT Israel, the new humanity in Christ—the church—has a qualitative difference in possessing better spiritual realities as a regenerate community. On the other hand, instead of overly emphasizing the discontinuity of Israel and the church, as in keeping them too separated such that OT promises not mentioned in the NT must still await fulfillment for a national, ethnic Israel, the characteristics of the Israel-Christ typology reveal that the mediatorial and national role of OT Israel has reached its terminus and fulfillment in

“Progressive Covenantalism as an Integrating Motif of Scripture,” Con spectus 1 (2006): 81-107. More refinement and clarity is needed in Lioy’s proposal for it seems to aim for a synthesis of sorts between covenantalism and dispensationalism as he affirms a covenant of works and a covenant of grace (84-89), but maintains that God’s promises for Israel (including the land) are still operative (100, cf. 94). The understanding of progressive covenantalism used throughout this study follows that of Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant; and Stephen J. Wellum and Brent E. Parker, eds., Progressive Covenantalism: Charting a Course between Dispensational and Covenant Theologies (Nashville: B & H, 2016). The term “progressive” highlights how God’s revelation progressively unfolds across the OT and NT while the term “covenantalism” underscores that the structure of God’s plan—the storyline of Scripture—is revealed along the unfolding of the biblical covenants. The creation, Noahic, Abrahamic, Mosaic, and Davidic covenants all culminate and are fulfilled in Jesus Christ, the mediator and inaugurator of the new covenant. See also Chad O. Brand and Tom Pratt, Jr., “The Progressive Covenantal View,” in Perspectives on Israel and the Church: 4 Views, ed. Chad O. Brand (Nashville: B & H, 2015), 231-80. Brand and Pratt develop their form of progressive covenantalism independently from Gentry and Wellum, leaning especially on George Eldon Ladd, but in the end is very similar even if the stress on the covenants is not as prominent as in Kingdom through Covenant. Progressive covenantalism is loosely related to “New Covenant Theology” (NCT). Some of the works that use the NCT label should not be endorsed; however, the following are helpful treatments: Tom Wells and Fred G. Zaspel, New Covenant Theology (Frederick, MD: New Covenant Media, 2002); John G. Reisinger, Abraham’s Four Seeds (Frederick, MD: New Covenant Media, 1998); A. Blake White, The Newness of the New Covenant (Frederick, MD: New Covenant Media, 2007); A. Blake White, What Is New Covenant Theology? An Introduction (Frederick, MD: New Covenant Media, 2012). Note also Thomas R. Schreiner, New Testament Theology: Magnifying God in Christ (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008) and Jason C. Meyer, The End of the Law: Mosaic Covenant in Pauline Theology, NACSBT (Nashville: B & H, 2009).
Jesus Christ, and derivatively to the church as the “renewed/new Israel.” The main thrust of the argument is that the relationship of Israel and the church must be understood in direct orientation to the person and work of Christ. Jesus Christ is the antitype of Israel, and while Israel and the church are the one people of God and linked together typologically and analogically, the church-Israel relationship must always be triangulated through God’s Son. All the promises to Israel are fulfilled in Christ and he is the one who ushers in a new and better covenant that establishes a Spirit-filled and faithful international community—the church. The entailments of this relationship result in understanding the typological components of the Abrahamic covenant in coordination with Jesus Christ: the promise of the seed anticipates a regenerate covenant people where only those in faith union with Christ are to be baptized; the promise of the land anticipates a new heavens and earth that will be enjoyed by both Jewish and Gentile believers in Christ, for he is the true seed, the heir and recipient of all the Abrahamic promises. In pursuing the topic, the hope is to have a more biblically faithful ecclesiology that is informed and cultivated from Christology by carefully tracing the typological links in the doing of biblical theology.

Given that covenant and dispensational theology represent whole biblical-theological approaches, not everything pertaining to each respective system can be addressed. Outside the scope of the present work are the important questions and discussions associated with eschatology, such as the rapture and millennial debates. These vital areas distinguish dispensational and covenant theologies, but such questions will not be in the purview of this study. Furthermore, both systems, especially covenant theology, have a long history of development and modification. While references are made to some of the key historical figures who advanced a form of either covenant or dispensational theology in the past, more modern forms of each system receive the primary focus.

Methodology

What does it mean to be biblical? How does one move from the text and development of themes and motifs at different stages in the canon and properly formulate
a theological conclusion? Theological prolegomena is receiving significant attention in recent scholarship. Moreover, the relationship of biblical theology to systematic theology and how the disciplines relate has also received substantial discussion. Not least involved in these debates is how these disciplines are to be defined. Elaboration upon these issues is beyond what can be suitably addressed here. The definition of a


whole-Bible biblical theology, according to Geerhardus Vos, “rightly defined, is nothing else than the exhibition of the organic progress of supernatural revelation in its historic continuity and multiformity.”20 Brian Rosner’s definition is more specific as he finds that biblical theology “proceeds with historical and literary sensitivity and seeks to analyse and synthesize the Bible’s teaching about God and his relations to the world on its own terms, maintaining sight of the Bible’s overarching narrative and Christocentric focus.”21

Since Scripture is the progressive revelation of God, biblical theology seeks to examine how the individual parts fit within the whole and how the inner-textual development occurs between earlier and later portions of Scripture.22 Furthermore, biblical theology is not an end in itself, but is a bridge discipline, sensitive to the movement and development along redemptive history and mapping the diversity within the unity of Scripture which is the necessary and first component of doing systematic theology. John Murray rightly states,

Systematic theology will fail of its task to the extent to which it discards its rootage in biblical theology as properly conceived and developed. It might seem that an undue limitation is placed upon systematic theology by requiring that the exegesis with which it is so intimately concerned should be regulated by the principle of

---

20Geerhardus Vos, “The Idea of Biblical Theology as a Science and a Theological Discipline,” in Redemptive History and Biblical Interpretation: The Shorter Writings of Geerhardus Vos, ed. Richard B. Gaffin, Jr. (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1980), 15, emphasis original. For other helpful definitions, see Charles H. H. Scobie, The Ways of Our God: An Approach to Biblical Theology (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2003), 47. Schreiner, New Testament Theology, 883, also helpfully finds that “biblical theology recognizes the stages of growth and development in God’s revelation and unfolds God’s revelation genetically.” Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 34, conclude that biblical theology “as a hermeneutical discipline attempts to exegete texts in their own context and then, in light of the entire Canon, to examine the unfolding nature of God’s plan and carefully think through the relationship between before and after in the plan which culminates in Christ.” It is also important to note “that the distinctive contribution which biblical theology makes (and the key point of its value for systematic theology) is precisely this, that in its engagement with the text as a whole, its concern is to allow the text’s own categories, concerns and emphases to speak.” Trevor Hart, “Systematic—In What Sense?” in Out of Egypt: Biblical Theology and Biblical Interpretation, vol. 5 of Scripture and Hermeneutics Series, ed. Craig Bartholomew et al. (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2004), 345.


biblical theology. . . . The fact is that only when systematic theology is rooted in biblical theology does it exemplify its true function and achieve its purpose.23

In order for the discipline of systematic theology or dogmatics to inform what the whole Bible says about a given topic and arrive to correct theological constructions, rigorous exegesis and understanding the Bible’s unfolding plan are necessary.24

The second component of systematic theology is to articulate a constructive worldview or metanarrative that thinks God’s thoughts after him, seeking to answer what the whole Bible teaches regarding a given topic. In going about this process, the discipline of systematic theology does not treat the Bible as a loose collection of disembodied abstract propositions. Rather, as the synthetic and culminating discipline, systematic theology depends on exegesis, pays close attention to the structure and not merely the content of the storyline of Scripture, rests on Scripture as the norming norm, and incorporates insights from the church’s reflections and studies during the last two millennia.25

Therefore, John Frame’s definition of systematic theology is fitting: systematic theology is “the application of God’s Word by persons to all areas of life.”26


26John M. Frame, The Doctrine of the Knowledge of God (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1987), 76. Carson’s definition is also helpful: “By systematic theology, I refer to the branch of theology that seeks to elaborate the whole and the parts of Scripture, demonstrating their logical (rather than their merely historical) connections and taking full cognizance of the history of doctrine and the contemporary intellectual climate and categories and queries while finding its sole ultimate authority in the Scriptures themselves, rightly interpreted.” Carson, Collected Writings, 118. K. J. Vanhoozer, “Systematic Theology,” in New Dictionary of Theology: Historic and Systematic, 2nd ed., ed. Martin Davie et al. (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2016), 885, offers this definition: “Systematic theology is faith seeking understanding—of God, the world and ourselves—through an ordered presentation of the doctrines implicit in the biblical testimony to the history of creation and redemption.” Lints, The Fabric of Theology, 316, also finds that the “theological task has a twofold responsibility: exposition and application. The task of exposition begins with the recognition that we have to express the theological vision of the biblical witness in a language that is intelligible to the modern mind.”
Having briefly described the nature of the disciplines of biblical and systematic theology, the hermeneutical methodology may now be addressed. Since God’s plan comes as a progressive revelation, the plotline of Scripture with its eschatological nature and Christological focus must be accounted for. This requires that readers interpret Scripture within the Bible’s own “intrasystematic” categories—i.e., on its own terms and self-presentation. \(^\text{27}\) In other words, given the nature of the unfolding of revelation as presented in Scripture, biblical texts are to be interpreted within their textual, epochal, and canonical horizons. \(^\text{28}\) The textual horizon seeks to carefully apply the tools of exegesis in the immediate context of a text. The epochal and canonical horizons are needed to understand how the text fits within the broader context of the Bible. The epochal horizon specifically aids the reader in situating a text within the various stages of progressive revelation. \(^\text{29}\) Each stage or epoch of the unfolding plan of God must be

\(^\text{27}\)See Horton, *Covenant and Eschatology*, 1-19, 147-276. Horton presents a theological method within the framework of redemptive-history, “the organic unfolding of the divine plan in its execution through word (announcement), act (accomplishment), and word (interpretation),” and one in which the lens is eschatological since this is “the form and shape in which redemptive revelation comes.” Ibid., 5.


\(^\text{29}\)Not all agree on what the stages or epochs of redemptive history are to include. Most generally on a macro-level scale, many evangelical scholars would agree with G. K. Beale, *A New Testament Biblical Theology: The Unfolding of the Old Testament in the New* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2011), 5, who portrays the storyline “about God’s purposes in creation, fall, redemption, and consummation,” even as he concentrates on creation and new creation themes. This four-fold scheme is also recently defended by David H. Wenkel, “The Most Simple and Comprehensive Script for the Theo-Drama of Scripture: Three Acts or Four Acts?” *SBET* 30 (2012): 78-90. However, zooming in on the storyline of Scripture is where massive differences appear. Roy E. Ciampa, “The History of Redemption,” in *Central Themes in Biblical Theology: Mapping Unity in Diversity*, ed. Scott J. Hafemann and Paul R. House (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2007), 254-308, presents a biblical-theological structure whereby the biblical narrative consists of a national Covenant-Sin-Exile-Restoration (CSER) embedded within a global CSER with the former as the key to the resolution of the global structure. N. T. Wright, *New Testament and the People of God*, vol. 1 of *Christian Origins and the Question of God* (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1992), 139-43, posits that the drama of Scripture is disclosed in five acts: (1) creation, (2) sin, (3) Israel, (4) Christ, and (5) church. Craig G. Bartholomew and Michael W. Goheen, *The Drama of Scripture: Finding Our Place in the Biblical Story* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2004), build on Wright by adding a sixth act all structured around the central motif of kingdom: (1) creation, (2) fall, (3) redemption initiated (Israel), (4) redemption accomplished, (5) the mission of the church, (6) redemption completed. Others see more stages to frame the storyline of Scripture. Goldsworthy, *Christ-Centered Biblical Theology*, 25, defends the Robinson-Hebert threefold
understood on its own terms as well as in relationship to the other stages and epochs that precede or succeed it. The interpretative task, moreover, is to evaluate how a given text fits within the canon as a whole in light of all of God’s special revelation, and this constitutes the canonical horizon. Finally, the horizons are important for correcting presuppositions and modifying theology. Theologians and biblical interpreters must be careful not to overlay an extratextual grid upon Scripture because doing so will not result in the right interpretation. Such an external or foreign framework, indicative of an unbiblical worldview, misses the Bible on its own terms, categories, structures, and in turn leads to faulty exegetical conclusions and theological formulations.

structure of creation and especially Abraham to Solomon, the eschatology of the writing prophets, and the fulfillment of all things in Christ. However, Goldsworthy seems to identify several stages: creation to the fall, the flood, Abraham, Moses and the exodus, David, Solomon in conjunction with Jerusalem/Zion and the temple along with wisdom, exile and return, and then the coming of Christ and the new creation. Goldsworthy, *Christ-Centered Biblical Theology*, 114-67. Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, offer another proposal in asserting that the epochal structure of the Bible occurs along the covenants. Therefore, the covenant at creation, the Noahic, Abrahamic, Mosaic or covenant with Israel, and Davidic covenants, along with Jesus’ ushering in of the new covenant, form the framework or backbone of the entire metanarrative of Scripture. Similarly, Scott J. Hafemann, “The Covenant Relationship,” in *Central Themes in Biblical Theology*, 23, writes, “The concept of the covenant relationship provides the structure that serves to integrate the interrelated themes developed throughout the history of redemption delineated in the Scriptures.” On the plot-line of the Bible, see D. A. Carson, *The Gagging of God: Christianity Confronts Pluralism* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1996), 193-278.

30This raises the important point of reading Scripture as a progressive revelation and paying close attention to the historical unfolding and the *before* and *after* sequences in Scripture. See D. A. Carson, “Theological Interpretation of Scripture: Yes, But . . . .,” in *Theological Commentary: Evangelical Perspectives*, ed. R. Michael Allen (London: T & T Clark, 2011), 191-92; Carson, “Systematic Theology and Biblical Theology,” 98; cf. Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 99-100. Lints, *Fabric of Theology*, 305, helpfully highlights the progressive links in the epochal horizon: “Theological construction must begin to wrestle with the fact that this progressive fulfillment lies at the heart of a theological framework. The meaning of past epochs is invested into later epochs in the Scriptures, and the meaning of those epochs is in turn invested into future epochs. This might be referred to as the ‘epochal reach’ of typology.”

31The terms and concepts of “intratextual” and “extratextual” are derived from Stephen J. Wellum, “Postconservatism, Biblical Authority, and Recent Proposals for Re-Doing Evangelical Theology: A Critical Analysis,” in *Reclaiming the Center*, ed. Millard J. Erickson, Paul Kjoss Helseth, and Justin Taylor (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2004), 184-85. Note also Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 33, 89n16. An intratextual approach is to read the Scripture according to its own categories, structures, literary forms, and self-description in order to direct and inform our theology. An extratextual reading is to read the Scripture with an ideological or philosophical grid and therefore foist an alien framework upon the Bible. This form of intratextuality is contrasted from the postliberal intratextuality where there is meaning, but no truth. See Vanhoozer, *The Drama of Doctrine*, 171-73. For the spectrum of intratextual and extratextual theological views, see David F. Ford, “Introduction to Modern Christian
The study of the Israel-Christ-church relationship built off a careful focus on typological patterns will proceed via the theological task described. The Israel-Christ typological relationship is to be traced along the three horizons. Careful consideration is required to recognize the typological indicators in the textual horizon, for as Davidson writes,

Some indication of the existence and predictive quality of the various OT types should occur already in the OT before their NT antitypical fulfillment—otherwise there would be no predictive element. Thus some inherent textual indicators identifying the OT types should be apparent already in the OT.32

Furthermore, many typological patterns enjoy further development along redemptive historical epochs until reaching their antitypical fulfillment in the NT, which draws upon the consideration of the canonical horizon. Once the typological aspects of the nation of Israel in relation to Christ are discerned, the theological task is to seek an ecclesiological formulation that does justice to the Israel-Christ-church relationship as a whole. My contention throughout is that this relationship has not been rightly worked out in paedobaptist covenant theology or in dispensational theology.

Overview and Structure of the Presentation

Seeking to challenge well affirmed systems of theology, such as covenant and dispensational theology, is no small task. Exposing the weaknesses of each system with regard to key ecclesiological areas grounded in typological relations is the centerpiece, but to do so, much groundwork needs to be laid.

Chapter 2 evaluates the nature of typology and provides a proposal for theologically characterizing biblical typology. Can a distinction be discerned between

---

allegory and typology? Do typological relationships always entail fulfillment? How does typology help to address issues of continuity and discontinuity between the Old and New Testaments? The chapter also explores how types are identified as such and what constitutes as the criteria or textual warrant in determining a type.

In relating typology to systems of theology, the hermeneutical underpinnings of covenant theology and dispensational theology are presented in the next two chapters. Chapter 3 interacts and synthesizes the main features of paedobaptist covenant theology. While recognizing that different streams of covenant theology exist (e.g., the Federal Vision or theonomy), the focus does not address these forms or the historical development of covenant theology. Instead, the main hermeneutical aspects of covenant theology representative of the whole are presented, followed by how covenant theologians put together the Israel-church relationship in terms of typology. Furthermore, how covenantalists differentiate and identify certain features of the Abrahamic covenant as typological—the land is considered typological while other facets involving the genealogical principle and circumcision are not—is briefly brought into focus.

Chapter 4 follows the same pattern as chapter 3, but with emphasis on dispensationalism. There are varieties within dispensationalism, but space permits interaction with only the more revised and progressive forms of dispensationalism. The chapter surveys, just as in the previous chapter, how the Israel-church relationship is understood along with how typology functions within these systems of dispensationalism. Last, the typological aspects of the Abrahamic covenant that dispensationalists acknowledge is overviewed.

Chapter 5 serves as the cornerstone of the dissertation. In this chapter I seek to make a convincing case that before relating OT Israel to the church theologically, theologians need to wrestle first with the relationship between Israel and Christ. The exegetical and biblical-theological portions of this chapter seek to show that Israel as a nation served as a type of Jesus Christ. Israel’s identity, role, and institutions find their
fulfillment in Jesus. With the nature of typology always entailing fulfillment, the Israel-
Christ typological connection means that Israel’s national and mediatorial role has come
to an end with the coming of Jesus and therefore results in significant implications for all
forms of dispensationalism. On the other hand, recognizing that Jesus is the “true Israel”
does not necessarily mean that the church is of the same nature as OT Israel. The aspect
of heightening or escalation intrinsic to typology means that the new covenant community,
those in faith union with Christ, the new humanity, is not of the same nature as OT Israel
because of the work of Christ and thus there are critical ramifications for covenant
theology.

Chapter 6 seeks to take the exegetical and biblical-theological conclusions
from the previous chapter and move to theological formulation for ecclesiology. First, the
church’s relationship to Christ is explored by focusing on the characteristics of union
with Christ. Next, the church as the antitype of OT Israel is examined. There are certain
continuities and discontinuities between Israel and the church drawn from the nature of
the Israel-Christ typological relationship, but neither covenant theology nor dispensational
theology grasps all of these features rightly. In contrast to dispensationalism, the church,
only through Christ, is the antitypical fulfillment of Israel—the ecclesiological fulfillment
flows out of the Christological fulfillment. The NT does not project a future restoration of
national Israel and thus OT Israel is a typological pattern not unlike other commonly
recognized OT types. Furthermore, in exploring the Israel-church typology, the escalation
from Israel through Christ to the church is coordinate with how individual union with
Christ is aligned with corporate union with Christ. The church is not like Israel of old in
being a mixed community as posited in covenant theology, but is the new man, new
temple, and Spirit-filled covenant community with all of its members marked by faith.
Finally, challenging texts to the thesis of this study are evaluated.

Chapter 7 offers a summary of the study and briefly posits that the theological
conclusions should move theologians to a via media of these two prominent biblio-
theological systems. The system buttressed in this study, the true interface between covenant theology and dispensationalism, is known as *progressive covenantalism.*
CHAPTER 2
THE CHALLENGES OF TYPOLOGY

In the introductory chapter, the importance of typology was presented in relation to whole systems of theology along with some of the significant hermeneutical challenges associated with identifying and understanding typological patterns. As Oswald Allis observed over a half century ago, the study of typology is “very difficult; and it easy to make mistakes, even serious mistakes, in dealing with it.”\(^1\) Despite the challenges, the exploration of the nature of typology is unavoidable, not only because the many typological connections between the Old and New Testaments demand interpretation, but typology is one of the primary ways of understanding how the NT relates to the OT and why Jesus Christ truly is the focal point of all biblical revelation (Luke 24:27, 44; John 5:39). In fact, Leonhard Goppelt’s study of typology led him to conclude that typology “is the central and distinctive NT way of understanding Scripture . . . [and] it is the decisive interpretation of Jesus, the Gospel, and the Church. . . . According to its NT core . . . typology is theologically constitutive for an understanding of the Gospel.”\(^2\) To


adjudicate properly covenant and dispensational theology, the typological role of Israel in
relation to Christ and the church must be evaluated and going about this task requires a
sound theology of typology given the importance of typological patterns to the
relationship of the OT to the NT.

In the following sections, the task is to thoroughly define and develop the
substance of biblical typology. Before doing so, however, more recent discussions of
figural reading—combining typology and allegory together—need to be addressed. If
typology is shackled to a looser association of verbal analogies or allegorical
interpretation and thereby not identified through grammatical-historical-canonical
exegesis in conjunction to the sensus literalis, then seeking to correct whole systems of
theology by zeroing in on typological structures will be of little value or superfluous.
This study of typology proceeds in four steps. First, the contrast and distinction between
typology and allegory is examined. Next, the nature of typology is then explored,
specifically with respect to the Christ-centered focus of types, prophetic aspects of
typology, and escalation or heightening intrinsic to the type-antitype correspondence.
Third, the question of fulfillment in typological patterns is raised. Pinpointing the exact
timing of typological fulfillment is difficult given how inaugurated eschatology3—the
he declares, “The whole New Testament is essentially characterized by the typological and eschatological
application of the Old Testament.” Others are not so convinced of the prominence of typology. See
Henning Graf Reventlow, Problems of Biblical Theology in the Twentieth Century, trans. John Bowden
(Philadelphia: Fortress, 1986), 20, as he describes typology as a rather rare way that the OT is used in the
NT; and A. T. Hanson, Jesus Christ in the Old Testament (London: SPCK, 1965), 172, 177. Some are
critical of the approach, see James D. Smart, The Interpretation of Scripture (Philadelphia: Westminster,
1961), 129, cf. 96-99, who stresses the promise-fulfillment pattern in Scripture but rebuffs the term
typology, positing that there is “no basis in the New Testament for validating either a typological or
allegorical form of exegesis.” As is demonstrated in this chap., missing the prominence of typology for the
intrinsic connection of the testaments is nonsensical.

3Inaugurated eschatology is the NT’s portrayal of how the kingdom of God has broken into
this present evil age because of Christ’s coming and atoning work such that disciples of Christ live between
the times, currently enjoying blessings and spiritual benefits of the age to come “now” even as the full
manifestation of the kingdom and God’s redemptive work are “not yet,” awaiting the return of Christ. See
George Eldon Ladd, The Gospel of the Kingdom: Scriptural Studies in the Kingdom of God (Grand Rapids:
Eerdmans, 1959); George Eldon Ladd, The Presence of the Future: The Eschatology of Biblical Realism,
rev. ed. (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1974); Christopher W. Morgan and Robert A. Peterson, eds., The
“already/not yet” realities in the new covenant era of the church—permeate the NT. Some typological patterns are completely annulled on the basis of Christ’s coming while other typological relationships are transformed through Jesus’ first coming but also possess actualization in the church age and await completion and culmination in the eschaton. The type-antitype relationship is not always a one-to-one correspondence in terms of the timing of fulfillment; the text must dictate the nature of the fulfillment in Christ and to what degree that extends into the new covenant age and the new heavens and new earth. Fourth and last, elucidating how types and typological patterns are identified, especially along the covenants, and a brief foray into the topic of sensus plenior draws this theological proposal of the nature of typology to a close.

Typology and Allegory: Is There a Distinction?

The Case for Figural Reading:
Blurring the Distinction

Any study of typology in recent days must also account for allegory and elucidate if any distinction should be maintained between the two. A current scholarly movement known as the Theological Interpretation of Scripture (TIS) classifies typology and allegory under the general heading of figural reading. For most advocates of TIS, 4

4Theological Interpretation of Scripture defies definition since it is not a monolithic movement; nevertheless, the movement generally is a negative response to modern critical and ideological approaches to biblical interpretation and instead seeks, in light of post-Enlightenment developments, to read and interpret the Bible with multiple lenses, which generally involves taking account of traditional pre-critical interpretations, especially patristic interpretations, reading within the Rule of Faith (early church creeds) and within one’s ecclesial location (reading in the community), engaging the entire narrative of Scripture (canonical approach), and emphasizing the role of the reader including the need for the formation and virtue of the reader. For introductory work on TIS, see Daniel J. Treier, Introducing Theological Interpretation of Scripture (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008); Daniel J. Treier, “What Is Theological Interpretation? An Ecclesiological Reduction,” IJST 12 (2010): 144-61; Kevin J. Vanhoozer, “Introduction: What Is the Theological Interpretation of the Bible?” in DTIB, ed. Kevin J. Vanhoozer (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2005), 19-23; Kevin J. Vanhoozer, “Exegesis I Know, and Theology I Know, but Who are You?” Acts 19 and the Theological Interpretation of Scripture,” in Theological Theology: Essays in Honour of
the distinction between typology and allegory is a modern convention and is not
detectable in the writings of the early church fathers. O’Keefe and Reno explain, “Allegory
and typology are part of the same family of reading strategies, often referred to by the
fathers as ‘spiritual,’ that seek to interpret the scriptures in terms of the divine economy.”


5O’Keefe and Reno, Sanctified Vision, 90; cf. Christopher R. Seitz, Figured Out: Typology and Providence in Christian Scripture (Louisville: Westminster John Knox, 2001), 8-9; and Christopher R. Seitz, “History, Figural History, and Providence,” in Go Figure! Figuration in Biblical Interpretation, ed. Stanley D. Walters (Eugene, OR: Pickwick, 2008), 1-6. For an overview of “figural reading” see Treier, Theological Interpretation of Scripture, 46-51; Treier, “Typology,” in DTIB, 824-26. The discussion of “figural reading” is complicated and confusing because scholars do not use the term consistently. According to John David Dawson, Christian Figural Reading and the Fashioning of Identity (Berkeley: University of California, 2002), 15, “Auerbach and Frei present their formulations of allegorical reading in direct opposition to their presentation of Christian figural reading. Both argue that figural reading preserves and extends the literal meaning of the text. . . . “Figurative interpretation is based on a conception of language as a series of tropes in which nonliteral meanings replace literal meanings; in contrast, figural reading generates a figurativeness that is not nonliteral.” Note also Dawson’s discussion, ibid., 84-97 and 143-49. See further, Hans W. Frei, The Eclipse of Biblical Narrative: A Study in Eighteenth and Nineteenth Century Hermeneutics (New Haven, CT: Yale University, 1974), 7, 28-30; Erich Auerbach, “Figura,” in Scenes from the Drama of European Literature, ed. Wlad Godzich and Jochen Schulte-Sasse, trans. Ralph Manheim (Minneapolis: University of Minnesota, 1984), 50-55. For other scholars, the typological and allegorical interpretation or “figural reading” would be classified as nonliteral exegesis, see Peter W. Martens, “Revisiting the Allegory/Typology Distinction: The Case of Origen,” Journal of Early Christian Studies 16 (2008): 296-310. For yet another scholar of the TIS persuasion, “figural reading” has to do with making analogous, atemporal connections between various realities. Jonathan T. Pennington, Reading the Gospels Wisely: A Narrative and Theological Introduction (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2012), 115. On the other hand, for Kevin J. Vanhoozer, “figural reading” is synonymous with typology and definitely incorporates history and how one understands how the parts fit within the whole canon: typology or figural reading “is the mainspring of theo-dramatic unity, the principle that accounts for the continuity in God’s words and acts, the connecting link between the history of Israel and the history of the church, the glue that unifies the Old and New Testaments.” Kevin J. Vanhoozer, The Drama of Doctrine: A Canonical-Linguistic Approach to Christian Theology (Louisville: Westminster John
In addition, fueled by recent patristic research, most notably by Frances Young, the once common hermeneutical distinctive between the Antiochene and Alexandrian schools in the fourth century—the latter school thought to exemplify allegorical interpretation and the former as champions of typology and the historical context of interpretation—has been demonstrated to be anachronistic and reductionistic.6 Young argues,

In practice drawing a line between typology and allegory in early Christian literature is impossible, not just in Origen’s work, where prophetic and symbolic types are fully integrated into his unitive understanding of what the Bible is about, but also, for example, in the tradition of Paschal Homilies beginning with the *Peri Pascha* of Melito.7

---


Her study of early patristic writings concludes,

[The] differing results [between Alexandrian and Antiochene treatment of the biblical texts] were not the outcome of literal reading opposed to spiritual sense, for both knew, unlike modernists but perhaps not postmodernists, that the wording of the Bible carried deeper meanings and that the immediate sense or reference pointed beyond itself.8

The real difference in their methodology had more to do with the rhetorical and philosophical schools from which they preferred with the Alexandrians exhibiting “symbolic” *mimēsis* and the Antiochenes viewing the biblical text more along the lines of “ikonic” *mimēsis*.9 Young writes,

---


9Young, “Alexandrian and Antiochene Exegesis,” 344; Young, *Biblical Exegesis*, 210-12. It is important to note that *ikonic mimēsis* still includes forms of allegorical interpretation, the Antiochenes rejected only the type of allegory that “destroyed the textual coherence,” according to Young, *Biblical Exegesis*, 176.
The modern affirmation of typology as distinct from allegory, an affirmation which requires the historical reality of an event as a foreshadowing of another event, its “antitype,” is born of modern historical consciousness, and has no basis in the patristic material.10

Therefore, with a renewed emphasis on patristic exegesis and with studies showing that the early church fathers applied allegorical and typological interpretative techniques in figural readings without ever distinguishing them, TIS advocates urge that modern exegetes should follow suit.11 For example, Benjamin Ribbens, depending on Young, argues that the modern understanding of typology should be replaced with the broader definition of ikonic mimesis, having three subcategories of Christological, tropological, and homological typological patterns.12 This broader understanding can then be correlated or equated with figural reading. Thus, Daniel J. Treier explains, with “the label ‘figural reading,’ perhaps we can make space for some of the ambiguity over typology while nevertheless suggesting that certain forms of allegorizing are inappropriate.”13

10Young, Biblical Exegesis, 152-53.

11For example, Mark Gignilliat, “Paul, Allegory, and the Plain Sense of Scripture: Galatians 4:21-31,” JTI 2 (2008): 135-46, follows Louth and Young, arguing that typology “is a form of allegorical reading or a subset of allegorical reading and is still a useful term but is not to be opposed to allegory. Typology is allegorical or figural reading.” Ibid., 140, emphasis original.

12Benjamin J. Ribbens, “Typology of Types: Typology in Dialogue,” JTI 5 (2011): 81-95. Ribbens writes, “If ikonic mimēsis, consequently, forms the boundaries of typology, then symbolic mimēsis is not typology, because it derives correspondence entirely from outside the text – interpreting a word or phrase as a symbol of something outside of the narrative.” Ibid., 88. For Ribbens, ikonic mimēsis includes a diverse group of types: Christological types—certain OT persons, actions, or institutions that prefigure Christ and his redemptive work; Tropological types—certain figures and actions are examples exemplifying moral or immoral activity; and Homological types—a catch all subcategory of persons or events that correspond to similar persons and events, thus fitting a general pattern. Also appealing to ikonic and symbolic mimēsis in the discussion of typology is Daniel J. Treier, “The Superiority of Pre-Critical Exegesis? Sic et Non,” TrinJ 24 (2003): 95-97. Gignilliat seems to go in this direction as well since he finds that “Paul’s figural reading of the Sarah/Hagar story is not like a certain type of Alexandrian exegesis that tears apart the narrative coherence of the text. Rather, Paul respects the textual coherence of the story, or the way the words go, while recognizing that is has the potential within the divine economy to function figurally as an eschatological indicator of God’s future action in Christ.” Gignilliat, “Paul, Allegory, and the Plain Sense,” 141.

Beside the resurgence of patristic studies and the question of the allegorical and typological distinction in early Christian interpreters, a second reason is offered for why modern interpreters should be more receptive to figural reading that includes certain forms of allegorical interpretation. The claim is that allegorical interpretation or figural reading is present within Scripture itself. Robert Louis Wilken avers that three Pauline texts (Eph 5:28-32 with the citation of Gen 2:24; 1 Cor 10:1-11; and Gal 4:21-31) provide a biblical foundation for the practice of allegory, i.e. that for Christians the Old Testament is to be read on more than one level. . . . It was St. Paul who taught the earliest Christian to use allegory. By giving us “some examples of interpretation,” writes Origen, Paul showed us how to use allegory so that we “might note similar things in other passages.”

Galatians 4:21-31 is the most frequently cited text supporting allegorical interpretations since it is the one passage in the Bible where the word *allegory* (ἁλληγοροῦμενα) appears as Paul links Sarah and Hagar to two covenants. Another passage that is purported to contain an allegorical interpretation is 1 Corinthians 9:9-10. Wilken writes, “Used in the Scriptures as an interpretative device to discern a meaning

---


15 Barr, *Old and New*, 109, states that in this passage where a legal text is invoked regarding the muzzling of the ox, “the literal and original sense is explicitly repudiated by the apostle.” Olsen, “Allegory, Typology, and Symbol, Part II,” 360-64, also views allegory present in 1 Cor 9 and Gal 4. With reference to Gal 4:24, Richard Hays argues that the distinction between allegory and typology is not one that Paul himself recognizes. Richard B. Hays, *Echoes of Scripture in the Letters of Paul* (New Haven, CT: Yale University, 1989), 116. He still maintains a distinction: “Typology is a particular species of the genus *allegorical interpretation*, a species distinguished by its propensity for representing the latent sense of a text as temporally posterior to its manifest sense. In typology, the allegorical sense latent in the text’s figures is discovered not by a reading that ascends from the material to the spiritual but by a reading that grasps the preliminary in relation to the ultimate.” Hays, *Echoes of Scripture*, 215n87, emphasis original. The discussion of Philo’s allegorical method and its influence on the epistle of Hebrews is considerable. More recently, Stefan Nordgaard Svendsen, *Allegory Transformed: The Appropriation of Philonic Hermeneutics in the Letter to the Hebrews*, WUNT 2/269 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2009), 56-57, not only acknowledges the scholarly debate regarding the dichotomy of allegory and typology in ancient writings, but actually recommends that the term “typology” be dispensed with altogether. In this case, allegory is cast so broadly that typology is swallowed up and completely lost.
that is not plainly given by the text,” allegory pertains to the “Christological” dimension of the OT, also called the spiritual sense, and is important for the life of the church, for “context needs to be understood to embrace the Church, its liturgy, its way of life, its practices and institutions, its ideas and beliefs.” Accordingly, the spiritual sense, which comprises of allegorical interpretations, would appear to possess scriptural warrant then since even the apostle Paul invoked OT texts in a manner that extended beyond the plain, literal meaning, resituating texts to meet his paraenetical or polemical purposes. Wilkin clarifies, “St. Paul gives an allegorical interpretation of passages from the Old Testament whose meaning is not on the face of it allegorical.”

Reaffirming the Allegory/Typology Distinction

The TIS movement has helpfully emphasized that exegesis is always spiritual

---

16Wilken, “In Defense of Allegory,” 199, 201, 209. For an appeal to the spiritual sense that builds off the literal sense but still incorporates allegorical interpretation, see R. R. Reno, “From Letter to Spirit,” JIST 13 (2011): 463-74. Note also Glenn W. Olsen, “The Spiritual Sense(s) Today,” in The Bible and the University, vol. 8 of Scripture and Hermeneutics Series, ed. David Lyle Jeffrey and C. Stephen Evans (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2007), 116-35. The quadriga, the four-fold mode of reading the Bible—historical or literal, allegorical, anagogical, and tropological—is receiving revived interest and acceptance as multiple scriptural readings or senses are viewed as valid. For examples, confer Richard N. Soulen, Sacred Scripture: A Short History of Interpretation (Louisville: Westminster John Knox, 2009), 97-112; Kevin Storer, “Theological Interpretation and the Spiritual Sense of Scripture: Henri de Lubac’s Retrieval of a Christological Hermeneutic of Presence,” JTI 7 (2013): 79-96; and Leithart, Deep Exegesis, 207. De Lubac is particularly recognized for drawing attention to the medieval quadriga and postulating a sacramental hermeneutic which did have a historical foundation, but he was convinced that spiritual or allegorical interpretation preserved the historicity of biblical accounts. For a helpful discussion of the hermeneutic of de Lubac and Jean Daniéloù, see chap. 5, “A Wheel within a Wheel: Spiritual Interpretation in de Lubac and Daniéloù,” in Hans Boersma, Nouvelle Théologie and Sacramental Ontology: A Return to Mystery (Oxford: Oxford University, 2009), 149-90. For an evangelical reception of the spiritual sense conjoined to the theme of wisdom, see Treier, “Pursuing Wisdom,” 17-26.

17Wilken, “In Defense of Allegory,” 202. For yet another rationale for the acceptance of allegorical interpretation, see Paul K. Jewett, “Concerning the Allegorical Interpretation of Scripture,” WTJ 17 (1954): 1-20. Jewett, “Concerning the Allegorical Interpretation of Scripture,” 7, thinks that the difference between typology and allegory comes down to semantics, for interpreting “the acts and institutions of the history of Israel as types of spiritual truths under the gospel dispensation is a form of allegorizing.” In the end, for Jewett, the broader principle of avoiding arbitrary and fanciful interpretations that go beyond the strict grammatical exegesis rests on having a genuine organic relationship or analogy between the original text and that in terms of which one is interpreting it. Jewett, “Concerning the Allegorical Interpretation,” 13, 18.
and theological in contrast to the rationalistic, historical-critical procedures that have
dominated the academy the past two centuries.\textsuperscript{18} Drawing more attention to pre-critical
interpreters and seeking to address the gap between biblical studies and theology are also
efforts to be lauded, but the TIS stress on “figural reading” and diminishing the
distinction between typology and allegory, even if such interpretative approaches were
blurry in the first few centuries of the church, is problematic and leads to confusion.\textsuperscript{19}
Many salient points may be offered for rejecting the notion of “figural reading” and the
merging of typology with allegorical reading.

\textbf{First, allegory and typology are distinct literary features.} Before addressing
the hermeneutical and interpretative issues associated with allegorizing or allegorical
interpretation and typological interpretation, of critical importance is observing that the
literary characteristics of allegory and typology differ in the Bible. Just as there are many
figures of speech and nonliteral language—metaphors, hyperboles, sarcasm, synecdoche,
and metonymy—so there are also parables, symbols, analogies, prophecies, allegories,
and typologies in Scripture as well.\textsuperscript{20} Allegory and typology are distinguishable literary

\textsuperscript{18}Treier, “Pursuing Wisdom,” 24; Treier, \textit{Theological Interpretation of Scripture}, 14.

\textsuperscript{19}It would go too far afield to address the positives but also the pitfalls of the TIS movement.
For helpful surveys and critiques, see D. A. Carson, “Theological Interpretation of Scripture: Yes, But . . . ,”
187-207; Stanley E. Porter, “What Is Theological Interpretation of Scripture, and Is It Hermeneutically
Robust Enough for the Task to Which It Has Been Appointed?” in \textit{Horizons in Hermeneutics: A Festschrift in
Honor of Anthony C. Thiselton}, ed. Stanley E. Porter and Matthew R. Malcom (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans,
2013), 234-67; Gregg R. Allison, “Theological Interpretation of Scripture: An Introduction and Preliminary
Reflections on the Theological Interpretation of Scripture,” \textit{BBR} 20 (2010): 311-30; John C. Poirer,
Questions about Interpreting the Bible} (Grand Rapids: Kregel, 2010), 313-19.

\textsuperscript{20}The list provided is by no means exhaustive. The subject of literary forms and features is
common fare in standard hermeneutics textbooks, see Dan McCartney and Charles Clayton, \textit{Let the Reader
Köstenberger and Patterson, \textit{Invitation to Biblical Interpretation}, 663-82; Grant R. Osborne, \textit{The
Hermeneutical Spiral: A Comprehensive Introduction to Biblical Interpretation}, rev. ed. (Downers Grove,
IL: InterVarsity, 2006), 121-30; Kaiser and Silva, \textit{Introduction to Biblical Hermeneutics}, 139-64; Louis
entities. Observed by many scholars, including TIS advocates, an allegory is “to mean something other than what one says.” Allegory as a literary form is an extended metaphor or a trope that functions to illustrate and tell a story or convey a truth by personifying abstract concepts. More generally, according to Thiselton, allegory “is grounded in a linguistic system of signs or semiotic codes and presupposes resonances or parallels between ideas or semiotic meanings.” The most common example cited of a


23 Anthony C. Thiselton, The First Epistle to the Corinthians: A Commentary on the Greek Text, NIGTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2000), 730, emphasis original. Similarly, Moo, “The Problem of Sensus Plenior,” 181. Goppelt, Typos, 13, describes an allegory as “a narrative that was composed originally for the single purpose of presenting certain higher truths that are found in the literal sense, or when facts are reported for that same reason.” Northrop Frye, The Great Code: The Bible and Literature (New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1982), 85, asserts, “Typology is not allegory: allegory is normally a story-myth that finds its ‘true’ meaning in a conceptual or argumentative translation, and both testaments of the Bible, however oblique their approach to history, deal with real people and real events.” Note also Frye, The Great Code, 10. Stephen Fowl, “Who Can Read Abraham’s Story? Allegory and Interpretative Power in Galatians,” JSNT 55 (1994): 77-95, advances a looser notion of allegory that is unlike the common view of allegory, which typically treats words, phrases, or stories as ciphers for something else. Instead he follows John David Dawson in finding that “while allegory may rely on metaphor, etymology or personification in order to generate its counterconventional account, such substitutions are not in themselves an allegory (or allegorical interpretation) until they are extended into the narrative account.” Fowl, “Who Can Read Abraham’s Story?,” 80. With such a broadened view, Fowl and Dawson wrongly understand typology as a species of allegory.
literary composition representing an allegory is John Bunyan’s *The Pilgrim Progress*. However, allegory is also present in the Bible. Instructive examples in both the OT and NT are Ezekiel 17:1-10, Ecclesiastes 12:3-7, Psalm 80:8-15, John 10:1-16, Ephesians 6:1-11, and arguably Matthew 22:1-14. In each of these biblical passages the literary features consist of extended metaphors or figures that represent or symbolize certain truths or concepts. An allegory, to summarize, describes a larger narrative episode that has features laden with symbolic function.

On the other hand, typology in Scripture is a special and unique phenomenon of divine, redemptive-historical discourse manifesting in two distinct but related forms based on the directional orientation of the typological patterns. The first and most commonly recognized form of typology, known as “horizontal typology,” signifies where God has providentially intended certain OT persons, events, institutions, and actions to correspond to, foreshadow, and prefigure escalated and intensified NT realities in and through the person of Jesus Christ. This form receives the primary focus in this study.

---


26Many different definitions of biblical typology are offered and many do not agree as will be discussed when the characteristics of typology are described later in this chapter. Richard Davidson defines typology, based from his semasiological analysis of τύπος and six passages where τύπος is hermeneutically significant in terms of the NT author’s interpretation of the OT (Rom 5:14; 1 Cor 10:6, 11; 1 Pet 3:21; Heb 8:5; and Heb 9:24), “as the study of certain OT salvation historical realities (persons, events, or institutions), which God has specifically designed to correspond to, and be prospective/predictive prefigurations of, their ineluctable (devoir-être) and absolutely escalated eschatological fulfillment aspects (Christological/ ecclesiological/apocalyptic) in NT salvation history.” Richard M. Davidson, *Typology in Scripture: A Study of Hermeneutical ΤΥΠΟΣ Structures*, Andrews University Seminary Doctoral Dissertation Series, vol. 2 (Berrien Springs, MI: Andrews University, 1981), 405-6; cf. Richard Davidson, “The Nature [and Identity] of Biblical Typology—Crucial Issues” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the Midwest Evangelical Theological Society, St. Paul, MN, March 14, 2003), 39. Graham A. Cole, *He Who Gives Life: The Doctrine of the Holy Spirit* (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2007), 289, defines typology this way: “The idea that persons (e.g., Moses), events (e.g., the exodus), and institutions (e.g., the temple) can—in the plan of God—prefigure a later stage in that plan and provide the conceptuality necessary for understanding the divine intent (e.g.,
given how common these typological patterns appear in Scripture. The second and more rare form of typology, called “vertical typology,” is directionally oriented to the correspondences between the heavenly and earthly realms (e.g., the heavenly and earthly tabernacle, the priesthood; see Exod 25:40; Acts 7:44; Heb 8:5, 9:22-25). Charles Fritsch notes that horizontal typology “is deeply rooted in redemptive history which finds its goal and meaning in Christ; [vertical typology is rooted] in the view that God’s redemptive purpose is realized on earth through material and temporal forms which are copies of heavenly patterns.”

Vertical typology also involves historical realities and God’s providential design as correspondences between heavenly and earthly orders involve intensification and escalation from “copy and shadow” (Heb 8:5) to the “true” (Heb 9:24). The heavenly prototype or archetype (Urbild) has its “antitype” in the earthly, the coming of Christ to be the new Moses, to effect the new exodus, and to be the new temple.” Similarly, for Goppelt, the concept of typology has many components: “Only historical facts—persons, actions, events, and institutions—are material for typological interpretation; words and narratives can be utilized only insofar as they deal with such matters. These things are to be interpreted typologically only if they are considered to be divinely ordained representations or types of future realities that be even greater and more complete. If the antitype does not represent a heightening of the type, if it is merely a repetition of the type, then it can be called typology only in certain instances and in a limited way.”

Goppelt, Typos, 17-18. Walther Eichrodt, “Is Typological Exegesis an Appropriate Method?,” trans. James Luther Mays, in Essays on Old Testament Hermeneutics, ed. Claus Westermann (Richmond, VA: John Knox, 1963), 225, defines typology as “persons, institutions, and events of the Old Testament which are regarded as divinely established models or prerrepresentations of corresponding realities in the New Testament salvation history.” Milton S. Terry, Biblical Hermeneutics: A Treatise on the Interpretation of the Old and New Testaments, rev. ed. (New York: The Methodist Book Concern, 1911), 246, over a hundred years ago stated, “In the technical and theological sense a type is a figure or adumbration of that which is to come. It is a person, institution, office, action, or event, by means of which some truth of the Gospel was divinely foreshadowed under the Old Testament dispensations. Whatever was thus prefigured is called the antitype.”

27Charles T. Fritsch, “To ‘Antitypon,” in Studia Biblica et Semitica (Wageningen, The Netherlands: H Veenman, 1966), 106. Richard Ounsworth, Joshua Typology in the New Testament, WUNT 2/328 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2012), 37-38, helpfully comments, “What makes the vertical typology in Hebrews 9 distinctive is that (a) it is directed to an eschatological purpose and (b) that it combines the vertical aspect with a two-fold horizontal one embracing both time and space, Heilsgeschichte and Heilsgeographie, as it were” (emphasis original).

OT copy and shadow, which in turn serves as the OT type or mold (*Vorbild*) for its antitypical fulfillment in the NT (*Nachbild*). In this way, vertical typology intersects with horizontal typology.

Unlike allegory, which features an episode having many elements of metaphor and imagery to convey a truth or idea, typological patterns in Scripture are more discrete as real phenomena—persons and events—correspond and anticipate future fulfillment in similar, yet different persons and events—primarily Jesus Christ and the redemption he accomplishes. OT types have their own independent meaning and justification that is a significant departure from most forms of allegory where the thing signified is bound up with the imagery. Moreover, there is a principle of analogy in typology just as there is in allegory, but not of surface imagery, which is wrapped in metaphor and encoded to resonate or parallel some other idea or concept. In addition, typology, unlike compositional allegory, has development and takes shape as later biblical authors build upon earlier written texts with the typological connections progressing along the stages of redemptive history. The typological patterns, then, are primarily discerned or detected through the progress of revelation (epochal and canonical horizons, though not excluding the textual horizon). Typology, then, is grounded textually. Typology actually shows


29Unless otherwise noted, my terminology follows that of Davidson, *Typology in Scripture*, 420, who clarifies, “Since in Hebrews the functional movement (from OT reality to NT fulfillment) is the same as in other hermeneutical τύπος passages—even though the referents of τύπος and ἀντίτυπος are reversed—it seems proper for the sake of convenience and consistency to employ the term ‘type’ in its most common hermeneutical usage to refer to the OT prefiguration (whether person, event, or institution) and ‘antitype’ to denote the NT fulfillment.”

more affinity with prophecy than it does with allegory. In fact, many scholars classify typology as a form of indirect prophecy. Beale, to cite just one example, observes how typology “indicates fulfillment of the indirect prophetic adumbrations of events, people and institutions from the Old Testament in Christ who now is the final, climatic expression of all God ideally intended through these things in the Old Testament.”

Intertextuality is inner-biblical or intrabiblical exegesis. For intertextuality as understood by postmodern literary critics, see Vanhoozer, Is There a Meaning?, 121, 125-26, 132-35.


34
These characteristics of allegory and typology clearly differ and such observations should not be obliterated by confusingly lumping allegory and typology into a general category of figural.

The nature and characteristics of typology outlined are further elucidated next, but it is important at this juncture to address the relationship of typology to the τύπος word-group in Scripture. Frances Young does find the term “typology” to have value; however, much of her research of the early church shows how typology and allegory shade into each other in an almost indistinguishable way:

The word “typology” is a modern coinage. Nevertheless, it is a useful term, and may be employed as a heuristic tool for discerning and describing an interpretative device whereby texts (usually narrative but . . . not exclusively so) are shaped or read, consciously or unconsciously, so that they are invested with meaning by correspondence with other texts of a “mimetic” or representational kind. Typology, then, is not an exegetical method, but a hermeneutical key, and, taking our cue from places where the word “type” is explicitly used, we may be able justifiably to identify other examples of the procedure where the terminology is not explicit.32

In his recent study, Richard Ounsworth notes Young’s research on Antiochene and Alexandrian exegetical schools and cites her quote above. In response, he follows,

The strategy suggested by Young, allowing a definition to emerge from the New Testament’s use of the τύπος word-group which has given its name to “typology,”

32Young, Biblical Exegesis, 193. Near verbatim remarks may be found in Young, “Typology,” 35. For the term “typology” as a modern word, A. C. Charity, Events and their Afterlife: The Dialectics of Christian Typology in the Bible and Dante (Cambridge: Cambridge University, 1966), 171n2, cites J. Gerhard (1582-1637) as one of the first theologians to distinguish allegory from typology. Later in the nineteenth century “comes the first word ‘typologia’ (Latin, c. 1840), ‘typology’ (English, 1844).” For a translation of J. Gerhard’s distinction between typology and allegory, see Goppelt, Typos, 7. Interestingly enough, while TIS advocates appeal to Young in advocating figural reading, she still values a notion of typology, which she links to ikonic mimesis, and as such a distinction from allegory is maintained, for what she calls “ikonic exegesis requires a mirroring of the supposed deeper meaning in the text taken as a coherent whole, whereas allegory involves using words as symbols or tokens, arbitrarily referring to other realities by application of a code, and so destroying the narrative, or surface, coherence of the text.” Young, Biblical Exegesis, 162. Martens, “Revisiting the Allegory/Typology Distinction,” 291-92, summarizes Young: “Allegorists interpret violently because of their myopic fascination with individual words that are allowed to serve only as tokens and that are made to refer arbitrarily to other, unrelated realities. Young’s distinction between typology and allegory brings with it something new to Origenian scholarship . . . the claim that texts alone and not events are being interpreted, and her emphasis upon whether the coherence of a passage was discerned or dismantled by the reader.”
so that we can be confident that it is a definition that would have been recognizable
to the first addressees of NT texts, even if in fact it was not offered.33

From this point, Ounsworth canvasses the uses of τύπος within the NT as many others,
particularly Davidson and Goppelt, have in more or less detail.34 From these lexical
studies, τύπος is acknowledged to denote an image, model, pattern, example, form, and
imprint, but more broadly, “τύπος is understood to signify either the molding pattern
(Vorbild) or the resulting pattern of another mold (Nachbild),” or in some instances both
simultaneously.35

Conducting a focused study on the τύπος word group is an important
consideration, after all, as highlighted, allegory (ἀλληγορέω) says one thing and means
another. Having a terminological control is important and Davidson has convincingly
demonstrated the essential characteristics of typology from his study of key passages (Rom
5:14; 1 Cor 10:6, 11; 1 Pet 3:21; Heb 8:5; and Heb 9:24). However, this is because τύπος
in these contexts overlaps with what is commonly associated with typology. Young,
Ounsworth, and Davidson run into trouble because they are attempting, in the words of
H. Wayne Johnson,

to answer hermeneutical questions about the nature of typology based on the
lexicography of one word. This is asking too much for a number of reasons. First, it
is questionable whether or not there is ‘one basic meaning’ for τύπος. The word is
used to denote a mark (John 20:25), an idol or image (Acts 7:43), a pattern or model
(Acts 7:44), an example (Phil 3:17 etc.) or type (Rom 5:14, clearly not an example).

33Ounsworth, Joshua Typology, 33; cf. 4. It should be noted that one of the significant problems
of Ounsworth’s work is his audience-centered hermeneutic. The true referent of a term can be found only
by attending to what the author meant and not speculating about what the original audience understood.

34Ibid., 34-40, 51; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 115-90; Goppelt, “τύπος,” in TDNT,
8:246-59; Fritsch, “Biblical Typology, ” 87-91; David L. Baker, “Typology and the Christian Use of the Old
Typology,” in Essays on Typology, Studies in Biblical Theology 22 (Naperville, IL: Alec R. Allenson,
Brumm, American Thought, 20-22; E. Earle Ellis, Paul’s Use of the Old Testament (Grand Rapids:
Eerdmans, 1957), 126.

35H. Wayne Johnson, “The Pauline Typology of Abraham in Galatians 3” (Ph.D. diss.,
Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 128-32; Ounsworth, Joshua Typology, 34-35.
The diversity of English words used to render τύπος is not evidence of sloppiness in translation but an appreciation of the range of its meaning in various contexts. Simply put, τύπος is not a technical term for ‘type.’ Neither is it a sine qua non for typology. Consequently, any attempt to establish the biblical definition of typology based purely on semasiological or lexical analysis is filled with problems.

In other words, as Johnson has helpfully articulated, typology has less to do with the lexicography of a Greek term and should be understood as a hermeneutical term or category that describes a unique feature that is the property of certain persons, events, and institutions that are recorded in Scripture. A proper understanding of typology in Scripture should examine critical passages where τύπος is employed to correspond to OT persons, events, and institutions (precisely the six passages where Davidson has already provided an excellent exegetical analysis), but there is a host of other passages that should be considered as well (e.g., Matt 2:15, 4:1-11, 12:39-42; John 6:32, 12:37-43, 15:1; 1 Cor 5:7b, 15:21-22, 45-49; Col 2:16-17; Heb 3-4, 7, 10; 1 Pet 2:4-10).

---

36Johnson, “The Pauline Typology,” 23, 25. Johnson rightly observes that τύπος is used in a variety of passages that have absolutely nothing to do with typology (Acts 20:25; Rom 6:17; Phil 3:17; 1 Thess 1:7; 2 Thess 3:9; 1 Tim 4:12). The range of τύπος is also nicely organized in BDAG, s.v. “τύπος.”

37Johnson, “The Pauline Typology,” 25. Johnson, points out, “Even if there were ‘one basic meaning’ for τύπος, it would be unclear what relationship that meaning would have to a biblical definition of ‘typology.’” Vern Poythress has warned that ‘no term in the Bible is equal to a technical term of systematic theology.’” Johnson cites Vern Poythress, Symphonic Theology: The Validity of Multiple Perspectives in Theology (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1987), 74-79. Also bearing on this issue of etymology of terms is James Barr, The Semantics of Biblical Language (London: SCM, 1961). Rightly, C. A. Evans and Lidija Novakovic, “Typology,” in Dictionary of Jesus and the Gospels, 2nd ed., ed. Joel B. Green, Jeannine K. Brown, and Nicholas Perrin (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2013), 986, assert that the use of typology “is not limited to the presence of the term typos and its cognates. As a hermeneutical category, typology establishes a parallel or correspondence between a person, event or institution in the OT (the type), and another person, event or institution in the NT (the antitype), regardless of whether an author uses the typos terminology or provides an explicit link between the type and its antitype.”

38The list is by no means exhaustive. Hoskins, That Scripture Might Be Fulfilled, 27-30, points out other NT Greek terms related to typology, such as σκια (e.g., Col 2:17; shadow), παραβολή (e.g., Heb 9:9; symbol, figure), and ἁληθινός (e.g., John 6:32; true). Other scholars also mention ὑπόδειγμα (e.g., Heb 8:5; 8:5; illustration, pattern, copy). Other terms associated with typology in the book of Hebrews are provided by Jeffrey R. Sharp, “Typology and the Message of Hebrews,” EAJT 4 (1986): 97. For a list of Hebrew terms and phrases in the OT, see Michael Fishbane, Biblical Interpretation in Ancient Israel (New York: Oxford University Press, 1985), 352-53. He also notes that “there are many other cases of inner-biblical typology which are not signalled by technical terms at all. To recognize the typologies at hand, the latter-day investigator must be alert to lexical co-ordinates that appear to correlate apparently disparate texts. . . . Sometimes, moreover, motifs are juxtaposed, sometimes pericopae, and sometimes recurrent scenarios.” Fishbane, Biblical Interpretation, 353.
Therefore, the rendering of typology as a technical term is to describe a unique literary phenomenon of Scripture that is divergent from allegory because it accounts for the organic relationships between persons, events, institutions, and actions that occur at different stages in Scripture. Types possess a divine design in that they prefigure corresponding intensified realities (antitypes) in the new age inaugurated by Jesus Christ. Although different, both allegory and typology are revelatory in nature, divinely authorized, and they are embedded in Scripture by the biblical authors rather than created by the literary genius of later writers of Scripture or subsequent interpreters.39

Second, complications arise with the notion of “figural reading,” “allegorical interpretation” or “typological interpretation.” As argued, allegory and typology are distinct literary entities that a reader should recognize in Scripture and hence there is reason for rejecting figural reading or any other attempt to merge typology with allegory. Another rationale for avoiding the confusion, however, is that the move from identifying and recognizing the allegories or typologies already intended as such in Scripture to the position of crafting figural, allegorical, or typological interpretations, much as Christian interpreters have freely fashioned in the past, results in unwarranted and arbitrary readings. Allegories and typologies are in Scripture, but, as Hans LaRondelle succinctly observes,

It is a different story if an interpreter would allegorize a plainly historical narrative in the Bible. Such allegorizing transforms the narrative into a springboard for teaching an idea which is different from that intended by the Bible writer. Whenever an allegorical interpretation arbitrarily converts a historical narrative into teaching a spiritual or theological truth, such a speculative allegorizing is negatively called an “allegorism.” It imposes a meaning on the Bible text that is not really there. It is added to the text by the interpreter only for the purpose of edification and finding spiritual truths and deep meanings.40

39I owe this insight to Ardel B. Caneday through personal correspondence.

40LaRondelle, The Israel of God, 27, emphasis original. For a helpful discussion of the difference between typology and other forms of first-century interpretative approaches such as allegorization, pesher, and midrash, see C. A. Evans, “Typology,” in Dictionary of Jesus and the Gospels,
An allegorical interpretation requires an extra-textual grid or key, which is used to warrant an explanation. With such an approach, a deeper spiritual or mystical sense or foreign aspect is introduced into the meaning of the text. Vanhoozer writes, “Allegorizing becomes problematic . . . insofar as it resembles a general hermeneutical strategy by which later readers find new meanings in texts unrelated to the human


41D. A. Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment: Toward a More Comprehensive Paradigm of Paul’s Understanding of the Old and the New,” in The Paradoxes of Paul, vol. 2 of Justification and Variegated Nomism, ed. D. A. Carson, Peter T. O’Brien, and Mark A. Seifrid (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2004), 404; Carson, “Theological Interpretation of Scripture,” 199; John W. Drane, “Typology,” EvQ 50 (1978): 206; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 102; Vanhoozer, Is There a Meaning?, 119, states, “In locating meaning in an intelligible conceptual realm, allegorical interpretation gives stability to the ‘spiritual sense’: ‘This (word) means that (concept).’ Allegorical interpretation sees the meaning of a text as constituted outside the text in another framework: the conceptual.” Daniel Boyarin, “Origen as Theorist of Allegory: Alexandrian Contexts,” in The Cambridge Companion to Allegory, 45, observes that for the allegorist, “The role of the interpreter . . . is to perceive and then describe this clear and determinate message, to somehow divine the invisible ‘magic language’ that underlies or lies behind the visible language and then to translate it in the form of allegorical commentary. The allegorist reaches this level of interpretation through a process of contemplation.” Anne Davis, “Allegorically Speaking in Galatians 4:21-5:1,” BBR 14 (2004): 161-74, describes three allegorical literary devices in the writings of the first-century Alexandrian Jew, Philo. One allegorical literary device had to do with the “inward sense of the passage,” which she associates, wrongly in my view, with typology. The second and third devices had to do with how Philo “structured startling metaphors that used unexpected associations” and also abused language “to simulate surprise and to use words to act as markers leading to deeper aspects of meaning.” Davis, “Allegorically Speaking,” 163-64.

The problem of allegorical interpretation then is not so much that the historicity of a certain passage is denied, though the historical features are often diminished, but that the interpretative moves are arbitrary as there is no possible way to detect the relationship between the text and the meaning ascribed to it.

A plethora of allegorical interpretations in the early church fathers could be recalled, but perhaps a few will suffice. Tertullian, Cyril of Jerusalem, and John Chrysostom all connect the dove that Noah sent out from the ark with the descending of the Holy Spirit in the synoptic Gospels since the Spirit came down upon Jesus in the form of a dove when Jesus arose from his baptism. Origen finds symbolic significance in the dimensions of Noah’s ark and he also resorts to mystical and moral allegorizing when he compares the animals of the ark with those who are saved in the church. Moses praying

---

43 Vanhoozer, “Ascending the Mountain,” 788; cf. Frei, _The Eclipse of Biblical Narrative_, 82. R. T. France, _Jesus and the Old Testament: His Application of Old Testament Passages to Himself and His Mission_ (Vancouver: Regent College Publishing, 1998), 40, writes that allegorical interpretation “has little concern with the historical character of the Old Testament text. Words, names, events, etc. are used, with little regard for their context, and invested with a significance drawn more from the allegorist’s own ideas than from the intended sense of the Old Testament. No real correspondence, historical or theological, between the Old Testament history and the application is required.” Silva, “Has the Church Misread the Bible?,” 58, agrees, for if the allegorical method was more generally about finding a deeper meaning in the text, then the distinction with typology would be less significant, but if “we narrow the meaning of allegorical so that it describes a playing down or even a rejection of historicity, then the distinction becomes valid, useful, and important.” Silva, “Has the Church Misread the Bible?,” 59-60, mentions other problems with allegorical interpretation, namely its attachment with a philosophical system which could be an alien framework, the issue of arbitrariness, and the problem of elitism as certain interpreters happen to have the spiritual acumen and maturity in possessing the key to unlock the allegorical or hidden connections from the text. Graham Keith, “Can Anything Good Come out of Allegory? The Cases of Origen and Augustine,” _EvQ_ 70 (1998): 45, finds that both Origen and Augustine “were lovers of allegory. Indeed, both found it natural to allegorize Scripture. The reason lay in their Platonic cast of mind, whereby many features of the sensible world are reflections of or rather are modelled on more enduring realities in a distinct spiritual realm.”

44 Vanhoozer, “Ascending the Mountain,” 787, citing Anthony C. Thiselton, _First Corinthians: A Shorter Exegetical and Pastoral Commentary_ (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2006), 150, notes, “Absent the original context, there are no constraints—no air traffic control—with which to rein in flights of exegetical fancy: ‘allegory (in general) rests on parallels between ideas and can become too often self-generated and arbitrary.’” Clearly Vanhoozer flies against the thoughts of Frances Young who seeks to do away with the distinction between compositional allegory and allegorical interpretation. Young, “Allegory and the Ethics of Reading,” 112. Contra Young, preserving the authorial intent and detecting an “undersense” from textual indicators in the text must be maintained to arrive at proper meanings tied to human authorial discourse, avoiding subjective readings without hermeneutical control.
with his arms outstretched during the battle with Amalek (Exod 17:8-13) was interpreted by Tertullian as a type of Christ on the cross since his arms were outstretched during the crucifixion, and Moses’ staff, which transformed the bitter waters of Marah, was seen as the cross while the transformed waters pointed to baptism. Philo’s philosophical interpretative approach seems to be appropriated by Origen and Clement leading to allegorical readings. Symbolism is employed to interpret Pharaoh’s daughter as a type of the church, the “life of Moses as an allegory of the soul’s journey to spiritual perfection,” and the waters of Marah refer to the “strictness of the virtuous life for beginners, which is gradually tempered by hope.” Justin and Irenaeus are just two of many church fathers with the exception, surprisingly, of the Alexandrian School for the most part, who view Rahab’s scarlet cord as an illustrative resemblance of the blood of Christ since it recalls the Passover lamb. The church fathers should be rightly esteemed for their high view of Scripture and defense of doctrinal truths, but clearly at times they applied mystical and foreign interpretive schemes in their readings of Scripture. For them, deeper religious truths or hidden meanings were to be unearthed as a principle of similitude and likeness was made, and the etymological significance of words led to allegorical readings based off lexical links and associative strategies. However, such allegorisms, even if

45For the examples cited, see Daniélou, From Shadows to Reality, 97-101, 104-10, 168-72.

46Daniélou, From Shadows to Reality, 220, 224-25. Carson, “Theological Interpretation,” 199, rightly says, “When Philo tells us that the respective meanings of the patriarchs Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are the three fundamental principles of a Greek education, with the best will in the world it is difficult to see how this conclusion derives from the text of Genesis.”

47Daniélou, From Shadows to Reality, 247-49. Irenaeus also links the three spies that Rahab receives with the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Despite the fact that the text indicates that only two spies were sent by Joshua (Josh 6:22), the link to the Trinity is imaginative and depends on Greek philosophy. Ibid., 249. Other examples are briefly summarized in Johnson, “A Response to Patrick Fairbairn,” 794.

48O’Keefe and Reno, Sanctified Vision, 48-56, 66-67; cf. Martens, “Revisiting the Allegory/Typology Distinction,” 310-12. Unfortunately, using lexemes as a springboard to other passages of Scripture just because the same word or imagery is present is certain to exemplify the word fallacies of the kinds catalogued in D. A. Carson, Exegetical Fallacies, 2nd ed. (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1996). In fairness, the
containing elements of truth, are unwarranted because the literal sense is obscured or distorted given the random symbolical associations or cleverly created correspondences at the level of semiotic code.

The danger is not just with “allegorical interpretations” however. Often scholars present the case for “typological interpretations.” Clarification and caution are needed though, for Ardel Caneday convincingly argues,

Typological interpretation, using the adjective to modify interpretation, creates confusion by focusing upon the act of interpretation rather than upon the act of revelation. . . . [T]ypology and allegory are fundamentally categories that belong to the act of revelation, not the act of interpretation. The reader discovers types and allegories that are already present in the text.49

The typological patterns are part of revelation because God casts and invests the types with foreshadowing significance in Scripture. The notion of “typological” and “allegorical” interpretations subtly expresses a form of reader-response hermeneutics, but the task of the reader should seek to explicate the meaning of sentences by attending to the authorial intent and their usage of literary forms, i.e., faithfully reading the text according to its propensity to allegorize is not just found in the early church fathers, for more modern examples of allegorical readings, see W. L. Wilson, Wilson’s Dictionary of Biblical Types (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1957).

49A. B. Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured: ‘Which Things Are Written Allegorically’ (Galatians 4:21-31),” SBJT 14 (2010): 68n5, emphasis original. See also A. B. Caneday, “Can You Discuss the Significance of Typology to Biblical Theology?” in “The SBJT Forum: Biblical Theology for the Church,” SBJT 10 (2006): 96-98 and A. B. Caneday, “The Muzzled Ox and the Abused Apostle: Deut 25:4 in 1 Cor 9:9” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the Society of Biblical Literature, St. Paul, March 31, 2006), 20-21. Examples of scholars who speak of “typological interpretation” include LaRondelle, The Israel of God, 35; Hamilton, “The Typology of David’s Rise to Power;” and Goppelt, Typos. Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 401, and Beale, Handbook, 24, speaks of typology as an “exegetical method” because he is countering the view of R. T. France and David Baker who believe that exegesis is only concerned with uncovering the human author’s original intent and meaning. While the association of typology as an interpretative scheme employed by readers should be avoided in light of Caneday’s remarks, Beale’s broader point is correct, for finding typological correspondences is part of the exegetical task since the framework of the canon and the “interpretation and elucidation of meaning of earlier parts of Scripture by latter ones” is necessitated given the divine author. In the end, Caneday and Beale are saying the same thing: genuine typological patterns are discerned through grammatical-historical-canonical exegesis. For additional discussions on the relation of typology to exegesis or hermeneutics, see Davidson, “The Nature [and Identity],” 12-17; Paul M. Hoskins, Jesus as the Fulfillment of the Temple in the Gospel of John, Paternoster Biblical Monographs (Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock, 2006), 23-25; Currid, “Recognition and Use of Typology,” 121; Markus, “Presuppositions,” 447-48.
genre—reading historical narratives historically, poetry poetically, and law passages should be read legally. Schodde rightly stresses that Protestant biblical interpretation rejected allegorizing and adhered to the safe and sane principle, practiced by Christ and the entire NT, of *Sensum ne inferas, sed efferas* (“Do not carry a meaning into [the Scriptures] but draw it out of [the Scriptures]”). It is true that the older Protestant theology still adheres to a *sensus mysticus* in the Scriptures, but by this it means those passages in which the sense is conveyed not *per verba* (through words), but *per res verbis descriptas* (“through things described by means of words”), as, e.g., in the parable and the type.

Thus, the role of the reader is to identify types, symbols, and allegories that are in Scripture and not creatively invent them as the phrase “typological interpretation” suggests. Similarly, Ounsworth rightly affirms that typology appeals to Scripture “as a record, and therefore retains and relies upon the literal sense of scripture. . . .”

---

50 Caneday, “Can You Discuss the Significance?,” 96. The point is an important one as O’Keefe and Reno, *Sanctified Vision*, have a whole chapter dedicated to “typological interpretation” that concentrates on “typological exegesis” as an interpretative strategy in the early church. When typological interpretation is used to associate the civil rights movement of Martin Luther King to Israel’s exodus or in terms of how patristic interpreters developed certain typologies retrospectively from the OT, then theologians have clearly departed from the identification of genuine typological patterns in Scripture to imaginatively and fancifully creating typologies (or really analogies) that have absolutely nothing to do with what the text actually says. Others in the TIS movement paddle in the same stream as O’Keefe and Reno. Young, “Typology,” 48, describes typology as “a ‘figure of speech’ that configures or reads texts to bring out significant correspondences so as to invest them with meaning beyond themselves.” Leithart, *Deep Exegesis*, 44-52, 74, also describes typology as a reading strategy that is particularly susceptible to reader-response propensities given his understanding of how the meaning of texts change over time and how typological interpretation can be applied as a general hermeneutic. For an overview of his approach and the suggestion that Leithart’s answer to avoiding false typological interpretations requires the judgment of the Church’s Magisterium (as a liturgically and theologically attuned community of believers), see Matthew Levering, “Readings on the Rock: Typological Exegesis in Contemporary Scholarship,” *Modern Theology* 28 (2012): 707-31, esp. 722-27.

51 Schodde, “Allegory,” 95, emphasis original. Vanhoozer, *Is There a Meaning?*, 311, very helpfully states, “Interpreters err either when they allegorize discourse that is intended to be taken literally or when they ‘literalize’ discourse that is intended to be taken figuratively.” There is an important distinction between literal and literalistic interpretation. Vanhoozer, *Is There a Meaning?*, 312, writes, “Literal, that is to say, *literate*, interpretation grasps the communicative context and is thus able to identify the communicative act. We grasp the literal meaning of an utterance when we discern its propositional matter and its illocutionary force—that is to say, when we recognize what it is: a command, assertion, joke, irony, parable, etc. . . .” Taking the Bible literally means reading for its literary sense, the sense of its communicative act. This entails, first, doing justice to the propositional, poetic, and purposive aspects of each text as a communicative act and, second, relating these to the Bible considered as a unified divine communicative act: the Word of God.” See also Ramm, *Protestant Biblical Interpretation*, 119-26. For the historical development of the *sensus literalis*, see Charles J. Scalise, “The ‘Sensus Literalis:’ A Hermeneutical Key to Biblical Exegesis,” *SJT* 42 (1989): 45-65.
of the literary record is not to encode the theological meaning but to reveal to the reader (or hearer) the mimetic correspondences that exist in reality.”\textsuperscript{52} The connection between two persons or events as mimetic correspondences is not established by the “creative act on the part of the interpreter so much as a discovery, a discernment of what intended (sc. by God) to be understood.”\textsuperscript{53} The same concern regarding “allegorical” and “typological” interpretation is also applicable to the term figural reading. The terminology suggests an accent on the reader’s role of constructing figural correspondences from the text. While figural reading is sometimes used as a synonym for typology (e.g., Vanhoozer, Ribbens), the language indicates that it is the reader who crafts the figural connections.\textsuperscript{54} The attention is diverted once again to the act of interpretation rather than the act of revelation. This leads not only to hermeneutical confusion and, depending on the one doing the figural reading, to treating the Scripture as a wax nose, carving and shaping out an array of superficial analogies and correspondences. Instead, reading the Bible faithfully means seeking to demonstrate the textual warrant and indicators for typological patterns. Such a constraint is necessary since there are “some interpreters (‘hyper-typers’) who see typology on almost every page of Scripture.”\textsuperscript{55}

\textbf{Third, allegorical interpretations are not exemplified in the NT as some scholars claim.} While some may claim Galatians 4:21-31 and 1 Corinthians 9:9-11 as exemplars of “allegorical” interpretation, careful reading and analysis of the OT passages

\textsuperscript{52}Ounsworth, \textit{Joshua Typology}, 52.

\textsuperscript{53}Ibid., 53. So also, Gundry, “Typology as a Means of Interpretation,” 235, finds that there is a danger “whenever typology is used to show the Christocentric unity of the Bible, it is all too easy to impose an artificial unity (even assuming that there is a valid use of the basic method). Types come to be created rather than discovered, and the drift into allegorism comes all too easily.”

\textsuperscript{54}To be fair, while Vanhoozer, “Ascending the Mountain,” 792, cf. 791, uses the language of figural reading he does claim that typological exegesis “discovers the plain sense of the author. . . . It is only when we read the plain sense of the human author in canonical context that we discern the divinely intended ‘plain canonical sense,’ together with its ‘plain canonical referent:’ Jesus Christ.”

\textsuperscript{55}Currid, “Recognition and Use of Typology,” 121.
that are invoked in these Pauline passages provide a definitive conclusion that Paul did not devise allegories. A brief discussion of each of these passages shows that Paul did not engage in “allegorical” interpretation, and therefore refutes the argument by Wilken and others that modern readers have the license to allegorize.

The use of Deuteronomy 25:4 in 1 Corinthians 9:9-10 seems puzzling as Paul appears to be lifting an ancient OT law about oxen and applying it to justify material benefits that ministers of the gospel, like Paul and Barnabas, should reap. While Deuteronomy 24-25 may appear to list a group of disconnected and unstructured laws, viable interpretations have been offered to explain why a command about oxen would appear in the context of Deuteronomy 25. Jan Verbruggen argues that “all these laws seem to deal with situations that show how one should deal with one’s fellow man” and particularly, the law about oxen (Deut 25:4) should be understood about how to care for a neighbor’s ox.56 God is concerned for the welfare of oxen, but the law is originally for humans, particularly the economic responsibility of using someone’s property. On the other hand, Caneday finds that Deuteronomy 25:4 in its original context is a proverbial saying that is attached to Deuteronomy 25:1-3, “a fitting aphoristic conclusion to reinforce the commandment that prohibits inhumane and abusive threshing of another human with excessive lashes.”57 If this is the case, Paul’s use of Deuteronomy 25:4 reflects its original proverbial nature as he reprimands the Corinthians for their mistreatment of him in prohibiting him from benefitting from his own labors. Another interpretation is that Paul is using a qal wahomer argument (from lesser to greater; a fortiori) characteristic of

56Jan L. Verbruggen, “Of Muzzles and Oxen: Deuteronomy 25:5 and 1 Corinthians 9:9,” JETS 49 (2006): 706. S. Lewis Johnson, The Old Testament in the New: An Argument for Biblical Inspiration (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1980), 44-46, also highlights the context of Deut 24-25. Johnson concludes that the literal sense was not excluded, but Paul used the passage analogically, giving it a further spiritual or moral sense even as the proverbial or figurative notion should not be excluded since the command about oxen may have been related to human interactions in the original context.

rabbinc exegesis. Accordingly, Paul argues that if the law permits animals to eat of crops in fields where they work, how much more may human laborers, such as ministers, be worthy to share in the benefits of the harvest. With these three interpretative options, the use of Deuteronomy 25:4 in 1 Corinthians 9:9 is far from being an allegorical interpretation as postulated by TIS advocates or Pauline commentators, such as Richard Longenecker. First Corinthians 9:9-11 is best categorized as an analogical use of Scripture. Paul applies a principle from an agricultural case with ethical import or Paul’s use of the muzzled ox reflects its original proverbial nature which fittingly applies to his situation.

The question of the legitimacy of allegorical interpretation has received by far the most attention with Galatians 4:21-31. Paul writes with reference to Sarah and Hagar that “these things are spoken/written allegorically: for these women are two covenants” (Gal 4:24). When instructing the Galatians to not live under the Law, Paul connects

---


61For discussion of the only use of verb form ἀλληγορέω in the NT and LXX along with helpful elucidation of Paul’s phrase, ἃτινά ἐστιν ἀλληγορούμενα, see Steven Di Mattei, “Paul’s Allegory of the Two Covenants (Gal 4.21-31) in Light of First-Century Hellenistic Rhetoric and Jewish Hermeneutics,” NTS 52 (2006): 104-9; Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured,” 53-55. While the verb can mean to “to speak allegorically” or “to interpret allegorically,” Di Mattei, “Paul’s Allegory,” 106, finds in his survey of the ancient sources that ἀλληγορέω is predominantly used by these authors in the sense ‘to speak allegorically’, in which case it is usually the author or the personified text itself which speaks
Hagar to the Mosaic covenant, the present Jerusalem, and slavery on the one hand, while implicitly associating Sarah with the Abrahamic covenant, the heavenly Jerusalem, and freedom through promise. Paul weaves together themes of Abrahamic sonship, barrenness, flesh versus Spirit, and slavery versus freedom in affirming that the Galatians are sons of the free woman (Sarah) and not of the slave woman (Hagar). The notoriously difficult passage has garnered a variety of explanations for Paul’s hermeneutic. Some believe that what Paul is doing is actually typology, even though he uses the word “allegorically,” but others think that Paul is employing an allegorical interpretation, and still others make the case for the presence of both typological and allegorical elements in Galatians 4:21-31.62

allegorically.” This assessment is crucial as it undermines the notion that Paul constructed or cleverly devised the allegorical connection. Further, Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured,” 55, makes a good case for translating the clause as “these things are written allegorically” since the clause is bracketed by two explicit OT citations on either side.

The best treatment of Galatians 4:21-31 is offered by Caneday. Individualized items of typology are present in Galatians 4:22-23 and 28-30, but in the main the passage is an allegory, but not an allegorical interpretation on the part of Paul. Caneday explains that it is unreasonable to think that Paul expects to convince his converts by grounding his argument in Gal 4:21-31 in nothing more than his adeptness to spin an impressive allegory from the Genesis narrative on the authority of a Christophany, his reception of the ‘revelation of Jesus Christ’ (1:12ff).63

While Paul makes the metaphorical connection between Hagar and Sarah to the two covenants, he finds grounding from the OT itself as Genesis 16-21 present Abraham, Sarah, Hagar, Isaac, and Ishmael as historical figures that are divinely invested with symbolism and point beyond themselves to the salvation to come in the latter days.64

Isaiah also notices these features in the Genesis account (see Isa 51:2 and 54:1, the latter technique, which makes use of prophetic texts (Isa 54:1 in this case) to read the Torah (Gen 16-17, 21:10 in this case) eschatologically.

63Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured,” 54; cf. 51.

64Ibid., 55. The Genesis narrative features “historical persons divinely invested with symbolic significances that transcend their own experiences and times, converging together within an allegorical story, bearing significance that reconfirms the promise and engenders hope that the promise will be fulfilled in the latter days when Messiah, Abraham’s true seed, is to be revealed. Thus, by quoting Isa 54:1 (in Gal 4:27), Paul is drawing the Galatians’ attention to the fact that what they are now experiencing at the hands of those who trouble them with a different gospel was allegorically written long ago in nuce in the Genesis narrative that entails Abraham, Sarah (the desolate woman), Hagar (the woman with the husband), and the contrasting conceptions and births of two boys.” Ibid., 60. Caneday’s assertions have been further buttressed by Emerson’s intertextual study of the lexical and thematic connections between Hagar/Sarah and the Sinai episodes within the Pentateuch itself, particularly how Gen 16-17, 21 link to the narratives concerning the fall, Cain, and to wilderness/wandering narratives in the book of Exodus and Numbers, see Matthew Y. Emerson, “Arbitrary Allegory, Typical Typology, or Intertextual Interpretation? Paul’s Use of the Pentateuch in Galatians 4:21-31,” BTB 43 (2013): 14-22. Emerson notices how the identification of Hagar as an Egyptian slave and how both she and Israel receive their promises from God in the wilderness lead to thematic connections between them. Further, Hagar’s and Ishmael’s wandering can be linked to Israel’s wandering in the wilderness. Another connection may be based on wordplay of Hagar’s name. Di Mattei, “Paul’s Allegory,” 119, suggests, “Paul . . . sees an elaborate allegory here in the Abrahamic narrative. Genesis’ angel of God, who reveals himself to Hagar [Gen 16:9] to establish a ‘covenant’, allegorically speaks of the revelation at Hagra (i.e. Sinai at Arabia), whereupon the angels of God mediate a covenant, the Law, to Moses (Gal. 3:20). But as Hagar’s ‘covenant’, allegorically is but temporarily established and does not alter God’s predestined promise to make a covenant with Sarah’s future and promised son, so too the giving of the Law at Sinai; it does not abrogate the covenant promises made beforehand to Abraham (Gal 3.17).”
explicitly cited by Paul in Gal 4:27) as the Isaianic intertextual development of the barren woman (Sarah) with Jerusalem provides Paul with the redemptive historical context and lens that sharpens the focus of the allegory already present in Genesis.65 Furthermore, as Caneday helpfully observes, Paul expects his readers to recognize the allegory already there in the Pentateuch by bracketing his appeal at the beginning: “Do you not hear the Law [i.e., Scripture]?” (4:21) with a reprise, “But what does the Scripture say?” (4:30).66 Caneday writes, “The Scriptures—Genesis and Isaiah—authorize his dual concluding appeal to the Galatians: (1) to cast out the Sinai covenant and its descendants, the Judaizers and those who preach ‘another gospel,’ and (2) to affirm that Gentile believers are children of promise.”67

65Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured,” 60; Harmon, “Allegory, Typology, or Something Else?,” 152-53, 156. Harmon, though very similar, differs from Caneday in finding the allegory not so much in the Genesis narrative itself, but the allegory is through the correspondences “more fully revealed through the use of a theological and textual framework provided by Isaiah 54:1 and its surrounding context.” Harmon, “Allegory, Typology, or Something Else?,” 156. He ultimately concludes that typology and allegory are present, but the allegory is based on the external framework provided by the “extra-textual” lens of Isa 54:1. The problem with this view is that it suggests that Paul or Isaiah make an allegorical interpretation which is problematic for the reasons laid out above and as discussed in Caneday’s article. For a helpful discussion of Isa 54:1 and Paul’s use of this text, see Karen H. Jobes, “Jerusalem, Our Mother: Metalepsis and Intertextuality in Galatians 4:21-31,” WTJ 55 (1993): 299-320. According to Jobes, “Jerusalem, Our Mother,” 309, “Isaiah’s transformation of the story of Israel’s childless matriarchs, beginning with Abraham and Sarah, provides a canonical basis for at least three points with which Paul later resonates. Isaiah’s proclamation (1) provides an interpretation of Sarah’s motherhood that can be taken to have wider reference than to the nation of Israel; (2) merges the concept of matriarchal barrenness and the feminine personification of capital cities to produce female images of two Jerusalems, a barren cursed Jerusalem and a rejoicing Jerusalem; and (3) introduces the concept of a miraculous birth to a barren woman as a demonstration of God’s power to deliver a nation of people from death.”

66Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured,” 55-56. A chiasm is present, for between the initial (Gal 4:21) and repriming (Gal 4:30) interrogatives (A, A’), Paul twice affirms, “for it is written” (Gal 4:22 and 27; B, B’), with these authoritative appeals to Scripture enclosing the assertion (C), “These things are written allegorically” (Gal 4:24). Ibid., 56.

67Caneday, “Covenant Lineage Allegorically Prefigured,” 56. Like Caneday, Emerson, “Arbitrary Allegory?,” 20, finds that Paul reads the Pentateuch carefully and when “he uses the term ‘allegory,’ it is not to indicate that he is moving from a textual reading to one that ignores the Pentateuch’s plain sense, but only to note that he is expounding on the full sense and interconnectedness of these related passages.” Concurring is Harmon, “Allegory, Typology, or Something Else?,” 155-56, as he also notes how Gen 16-21 has patterns that point forward to greater realities.
Therefore, while typology involves discrete historical persons, places, events and institutions, Paul chooses the term “allegory” in Galatians 4:21-31 probably because he is not meditating exclusively upon discrete figures and subjects from the Genesis accounts. Instead, his attention is upon the entire narrative of the Pentateuch concerning God’s promises to Abraham and a complex set of themes regarding the obstacles to his promises (the episode of Hagar; themes of barrenness, slavery) and how those promises are ultimately fulfilled in Abraham’s true offspring, Jesus Christ, and not through reliance on the Law-covenant at Sinai. \(^{68}\) Paul does not forge the allegory or conjure an allegorical interpretation in the manner of Philo or Origen; rather, his argument is rooted in Scripture, which can be traced. \(^{69}\) As Jobes rightly concludes, “Far from being an arbitrary allegorical assignment, the association of Hagar with the ‘now’ Jerusalem and Sarah with the ‘above’ Jerusalem follows logically from Paul’s understanding of Isa 54:1 in light of Christ’s resurrection.” \(^{70}\) The interpretative moves Paul makes may seem arbitrary, but Paul’s warrant for this allegory, like the typological connections he finds elsewhere, are grounded in the Scriptures and integral to the mystery theme (μυστήριον) where concealed and

---

\(^{68}\) I owe this insight to Ardel B. Caneday through personal correspondence. In this way, the allegory that Paul appeals to has a similarity to typology but has a crucial difference. The similarities include the assumption of the historicity of the figures and intertextual development that can be discovered within the OT itself. Paul’s use of Isa 54:1 in discussing the Hagar-Sarah allegory is instructive in the same way the writer of Hebrews uses Psalm 110:4 in the discussion of Melchizedekian typology (Heb 7:1-10). As a discrete individual, Melchizedek is a type (Gen 14:18-20), but the difference between typology and the allegory of Gal 4:21-31 is that Paul is noticing in a broader way the allegory present in the entire narrative as he deals with Hagar, Sarah, and the Abrahamic and Mosaic covenants. Paul is not concentrating on individual elements in the Genesis narrative as types in Gal 4:24-27.

\(^{69}\) Contra, Moo, *Galatians*, 294, who implies that Paul commits eisegesis when he writes that “Paul’s interpretation of the Sarah/Hagar story seems to go further in the direction of an imposition of a preconceived scheme onto a text than is typical of NT interpretation of the OT.” Joel Willitts wrongly asserts that Paul creates the allegory. Joel Willitts, “Isa 54,1 in Gal 4,24b: Reading Genesis in Light of Isaiah,” *ZNW* 96 (2005): 198, 202.

enigmatic features in the OT are now revealed in light of further revelation as the progress of Scripture unfolds.71

Fourth, appealing to the Patristics is not definitive in how to understand biblical typology and interpretation. The early church fathers have made a comeback in scholarly circles with more stress on how they interpreted Scripture and defended orthodox teachings.72 Surely drawing attention to the Patristics and their reading of Scripture is a welcome development. The understanding of typology, and more generally, the hermeneutical approach to Scripture, should be informed by earlier interpreters, but their approach is not ultimately authoritative, nor are they as significant as the NT authors. Ribbens, for example, wishes to arrive at a definition of typology that embraces “the varied τύπος interpretations of the NT and Greek fathers and not, like prefiguration typology, exclude τύπος interpretations that do not fit a preconceived definition of typology.”73 This suggestion is wrongheaded because it elevates the Fathers to the same level as the NT authors, and secondly, seeks to define typology from the τύπος-word group when the nature of typology should be derived from broader considerations from Scripture than just the use of τύπος. In this way, typology as a term should be defined in such a way to characterize unique biblical phenomena, drawn from, but not limited to, the τύπος-word group, whereby persons, events, and institutions serve as indirect prophecies or adumbrations of future realities. Moreover, even if the patristic fathers did not distinguish


72Besides the works of Frances Young cited earlier, see also Bradley G. Green, ed., Shapers of Christian Orthodoxy: Engaging Early and Medieval Theologians (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2010); Michael G. Haykin, Rediscovering the Church Fathers: Who They Were and How They Shaped the Church (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2011); Donald Fairbairn, Grace and Christology in the Early Church (New York: Oxford University Press, 2003); Gerald Bray, “The Church Fathers and Their Use of Scripture,” in The Trustworthiness of God, 157-74.

73Ribbens, “Typology of Types,” 85.
between allegory or typology, that does not mean that such a distinction is necessary, legitimate, and of critical hermeneutical importance. In fact, it is this point that later interpreters, the Protestant Reformers, provide a helpful corrective to the early church figurative approach.74

Against the Roman Catholic abuses in allegorizing Scripture, Calvin and the Reformed scholastics rejected the multiple and various senses and championed the sensus literalis—the literal sense that is derived from the intention of the divine and human authors, seeking to do justice to the grammatical, historical, rhetorical/literary elements of the text including figures of speech. In this way, rather than advocating multiple senses as imposed by the exegete, the distinct and separate senses of the quadriga had to be grafted on to the text itself as “valid applications of or conclusions drawn from the literal sense.”75

More narrowly on the subject of allegorical interpretation, the “Reformed made a strict distinction between allegories and figures that were intrinsic to the text and therefore its literal sense and allegories imposed from without by the imaginative expositor.”76

74Vanhoozer, “Ascending the Mountain,” 789-90, aptly writes, “I am less inclined to take descriptions of Patristic exegesis as normative for biblical interpretation today. [Ayres] may be right historically about the difficulty of distinguishing allegory and typology, but I believe some such distinction is both necessary and legitimate. I therefore propose to ‘reform’ (not reject!) Patristic figural interpretation. . . The way forward—call it ‘good type’—is to recover not modern historicist assumptions but rather the Protestant Reformers’ habit of following typological trajectories (i.e., the broad sweep of redemptive history), as opposed to compiling allegorical inventories (i.e., a list of detailed correspondences). Note that the focus in making inventories is on the multiple referents of individual words; by contrast, what comes to the fore in following trajectories is the importance of following the whole discourse.” In his critique of the TIS movement, Carson, “Theological Interpretation,” 199-200, is in a similar orbit as Vanhoozer on this point: “Speaking of learning from past thinkers of pre-critical eras, one begins to grow in respect for the Reformers who thought their way clear of fuzzy notions of allegory to a greater dependence on ‘literal’ interpretation (without losing a sophisticated grasp of metaphorical language), and less of TIS support for unspecified allegory.”


76Muller, Holy Scripture, 474; cf. Vanhoozer, Is There a Meaning?, 118-19. For analysis of Calvin’s rejection of allegorical interpretations even as he did fashion allegories in practice, and his appeal
Figurative or typological meanings should be indicated by the text and identified through the analogy of Scripture. The Reformer’s hermeneutic and understanding of typology serve as a guide since these principles derive from the nature of the Bible—a divine and human unified discourse that progressively unfolds—and its role as having sole authority for matters of faith. Vanhoozer rightly expounds this point:

We can now make explicit the logic governing best typological practice. The formal principle of Protestant spiritual interpretation derives from its confession of divine authorship: read the biblical parts in light of the canonical whole (i.e., as a unified divine discourse). Divine authorship also gives rise to the material principle of spiritual interpretation: read God’s involvement in Israel’s history as elements in a unified history or theodrama whose climax and end is Jesus Christ. Even more succinctly: read Scripture in redemptive-historical context. The typology the Protestant Reformers practiced ultimately presupposes neither linear nor sacramental but rather redemptive history, where type is related to antitype as anticipation is related to its realization, promise to fulfillment. The rule, then, is never to dislodge the spiritual sense given to persons, things, and events from the biblical narratives in which they are emplotted. In the words of Hans Frei: “figuration or typology was a natural extension of literal interpretation. It was literalism at the level of the whole biblical story and thus of the depiction of the whole historical reality.” To be sure, not every piece of wood figures the cross. It is the redemptive-historical context that both enables and constrains the spiritual sense. What spiritual significance things have is not a function of their sheer createdness but rather their role in the ongoing drama of redemption.77

In summary, the distinction between allegory and typology is crucial as blending the two and deriving allegorical or typological interpretations as the terminology of figural reading suggests, leads to theological confusion and faulty interpretative moves. Faithful readers of Scripture treat Scripture as a unified revelation, discovering God’s intent by explicating what biblical authors say and interpret Scripture with Scripture. In this manner, rather than the focus being in front of the text, the reader discovers and draws

---

77Vanhoozer, “Ascending the Mountain,” 793, emphasis original. Cf. Vanhoozer, Is There a Meaning?, 119. For Frei, see his The Eclipse of Biblical Narrative, 2.
out the typologies and allegories that are in the text. This brief survey of allegory and typology indicates that Woollcombe is correct when he asserts that the similarities between allegories, typology, and prophecy “are not so close as to justify ignoring the differences between them, and using one of the terms to cover them all.” Maintaining these distinctions, and more importantly, understanding biblical typology and elucidating the nature of the legitimate typological patterns, makes significant headway in understanding the relationship between the OT and NT, and in turn, formulate a whole-Bible theological system that carefully addresses the thorny issues of continuity and discontinuity.

The Hallmarks and Characteristics of Typology

Having dispensed with the controversy associating typology and allegory, unpacking the nature of typology in its own right is a challenge as typology is debated within broader biblical studies, but also divisions occur within evangelicalism since the conception of typology and its application impacts whole theological systems. In establishing the essential features of biblical typology, first an overview of the more traditional or evangelical view of typology are offered, and then a more in-depth presentation of areas of debate within evangelicalism, for example, the extent of fulfillment in typological relationships and the identification of types are explored.

The Traditional View of Typology

Aside from the typology-allegory distinction debate among church historians and TIS proponents, in biblical and theological studies there is a general scholarly consensus that typology involves the study of historical and theological correspondences within salvation history between types—identifiable as OT persons, events, or institutions—and their counterparts in the NT (antitypes) such that a significant resemblance as well as an escalation (an a fortiori quality), or qualitative progression, is

detected between the type and antitype. There are two particular areas of clarification that proponents of a more traditional view would advance in contrast to the “post-critical neo-typology view.” The first addresses the nature of the historical correspondences and the second involves the predictive or prospective element of typology.


80The terminology of “post-critical neo-typology” comes from Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 111. Exemplified by the works of Rudolf Bultmann and Friedrich Baumgärtel, modern historical criticism repudiated typology. See Claus Westermann, “Remarks on the Theses of Bultmann and Baumgärtel,” trans. Dietrich Ritschl, in Essays on Old Testament Hermeneutics, 123-33. Advocates of historical-critical presuppositions and procedures within the Biblical Theology Movement of the mid-twentieth century, representatives of post-critical neo-typology, formed “to bring together elements of the traditional typology with the findings of modern critical scholarship.” Hoskins, Jesus as Fulfillment, 27; cf. Ninow, Indicators of Typology, 43-44; and Hugenberger, “Introductory Notes,” 332-33. According to the post-critical neo-typology approach, typology is basically the result of drawing analogies or correspondences within the uniform pattern of God’s activity, it possesses no prospective aspect, and typology is understood as a theological reflection and not governed by hermeneutical regulations, thus the number of types is unlimited. Critical scholars who fit within this approach include Gerhard von Rad (“Typological Interpretation of the Old Testament,” trans. John Bright, Int 15 [1961]: 174-92 and reprinted in Essays on Old Testament Hermeneutics, 17-39; and Old Testament Theology, vol. 2, The Theology of Israel’s Prophetic Traditions, trans. D. M. G. Stalker [Edinburgh: Oliver and Boyd, 1965], 319-87); Hans Walter Wolff (“The Hermeneutics of the Old Testament,” trans. Keith Crim, in Essays on Old Testament Hermeneutics, 160-99; and “The Old Testament in Controversy,” trans. James L. Mays, Int 12 [1958]: 281-91); G. W. H. Lampe and K. J. Woolcombe (Essays on Typology); and M. D. Goulder (Type and History in Acts [London: SPCK, 1964], 1-13). For Goulder, the analogical interpretation of history is based off of the pattern of literary correspondences between narratives. Young, “Typology,” 34, seems to advance Goulder’s view. Some evangelicals who are generally aligned with the post-critical neo-typology perspective, with exception to the critical view of the historicity of the type and anti-type, include R. T. France (Jesus and the Old Testament, 39-42; and “In all the Scriptures”—a Study of Jesus’ Typology,” TSF Bulletin 56 [1970]: 13-16); and David L. Baker (Two Testaments, One Bible, 179-89). For a summary of this view, see Ninow, Indicators of Typology, 36-48, and Johnson, “The Pauline Typology,” 26-39 and for critique of this approach, see Davidson, Typology in Scripture; Davidson, “The Nature [and Identity]”; Hoskins, Jesus as the Fulfillment, 21-31; Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 395-402. For historical surveys of how typology has been understood by key interpreters throughout church history, see Davidson, Typology in
The historical correspondences of typology. Advocates of the traditional understanding of typology insist on the facticity of both the type and antitype as the typological OT persons, events, institutions, and settings/places are understood within historical reality.\(^{81}\) The assumption is that while the Bible is not a textbook of history, the historical narratives, however selective in terms of what was decided to be written and how it was to be arranged, do bestow a true recording of history as the events occurred.\(^{82}\) The historical dimension is important, for types are not abstract symbols or metaphors of spiritual ideas, but genuine historical realities; real persons and events that have been recorded accurately to reflect the historical Jesus.\(^{83}\) Adhering to special divine revelation

---

\(^{81}\) Davidson, *Typology in Scripture*, 96; Yoshikawa, “The Prototypical Use,” 23; Walter M. Dunnett, *The Interpretation of Holy Scripture* (Nashville: Thomas Nelson, 1984), 51-52. Peter V. Legarth, “Typology and its Theological Basis,” *EJT* 5 (1996): 149, writes, “The message of the type is closely determined by the concrete historical reality of the type in question. It is precisely in a concrete historical reality that God reveals himself. If this historical reality is challenged, then also the revelation of God is challenged.”


\(^{83}\) Hoskins, *Jesus as Fulfillment*, 27; cf. John H. Stek, “Biblical Typology Yesterday and Today,” *CTJ* 5 (1970): 160-61. P. A. Verhoef, “Some Notes on Typological Exegesis,” in *New Light on Some Old Testament Problems: Papers Read at the 5th Meeting of Die O.T. Werkgemeenskap in Suid-Afrika*, ed. A. H. van Zyl and A. van Selms (Pretoria, South Africa: Aurora, 1962), 60, agrees with those “who accept the historicity of the a ‘type,’ thus allotting to it a meaning in itself. This, evidently, is the case in Rom. 5:14. Adam is not a mere ‘shadow’ of the one who was to come, but has significance in himself, he being the head of all humanity.” Richard M. Davidson, “The Hermeneutics of Biblical Typology—Crucial Issues” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the Midwest Evangelical Theological Society, St. Paul, March 15, 2003), 2, rightly observes that the typological and theological arguments of Rom 5, 1 Cor 10, and 1 Pet 3 would collapse if the historical realities of the typological patterns (Adam, the exodus events, and the flood, respectively) were denied.
in history contrasts sharply from most post-critical scholars where typology is planted within a framework of theologically informed history or historical traditions.84

A second clarification in regard to the nature of the correspondences is also important for proponents of a more traditional conception of biblical typology. For the post-critical neo-typology school, the salvation historical correspondences are “brought about by the recurring rhythm of the divine activity”85 or through the “structural analogies”86 by which biblical writers re-actualize earlier events experienced as divine revelation into new situations.87 Typology becomes the application of parallel

84For example, Goulder, Type and History, 182, claims that the more a passage or incident is completely or almost wholly accounted for on typological grounds, the less likely the passage is historically factual. The historicity of types is also unnecessary for Gerhard von Rad, “Typological Interpretation,” 188, who separated the historical facts from the biblical kerygma: “The narrators are so captivated by the doxa of the event that once happened, they see and point out in the event the splendor of the divine gift in so exclusive a way, that they thereby manifestly misdraw the historical picture. There is, therefore, in the portrayal of the facts very frequently something that transcends what actually occurred. The narrator, or better . . . the ‘tradition,’ is so zealous for God that the event is straightway broadened into the typical. . . . [A] doxa is heaped on the event which reaches far beyond what actually occurred.” Furthermore, “Typological interpretation has to do only with the witness to the divine event, not with the correspondences in historical, cultural or archaeological details as the Old Testament and the New may have in common.” Von Rad, “Typological Interpretation,” 190.


87James Barr, “Biblical Theology,” in The Interpreter’s Dictionary of the Bible, Supplementary Volume, ed. G. Buttrick (Nashville: Abingdon, 1976), 108, describes von Rad’s work of separating out different groups of OT traditions, since there was no unified OT theology. Barr finds that for von Rad, the “whole is preceded by a history of Yahwistic faith and followed by a section on hermeneutical problems, and especially on the ‘actualizing’ or ‘re-presentation’ of older traditions by later ones; this last works out
circumstances, being “seen as a common human way of analogical thinking which in Scripture (and in the [neo-typological] approach) involves the recognition of correspondences within God’s consistent activity in salvation history.” Analogies or illustrations from the OT do appear in the NT as was highlighted in the previous discussion of 1 Corinthians 9:9-10. Typological models or patterns however, while

into a typological principle of exegesis, which according to von Rad is essential for the connecting of OT to NT.” Stek, “Biblical Theology,” 153; cf.156-57, finds that for von Rad, “Typology belongs, therefore, not to the historia revelationis—because of the discontinuity of the divine acts of God in history no such history exists—but to the historia theologiae which arose in Israel and the church in response to a series of events experienced as a series of divine revelations climaxing in Jesus Christ. Here typology is understood as an element in which the human response to events experienced as divine revelation which evoke new religious forms and new theological reflection within a particular religious and theological tradition.” For further on how biblical criticism, such as that exemplified by von Rad, is wedded to kerygmatic exegesis, see Kenton L. Sparks, God’s Words in Human Words: An Evangelical Appropriation of Critical Biblical Scholarship (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008), 178. Given von Rad’s presuppositional commitments, it is surprising to see evangecicals, such as Graeme Goldsworthy, Christ-Centered Hermeneutics: Foundations and Principles of Evangelical Interpretation (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2006), appeal to von Rad in explicating the theological contours of typology.

88Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 74. Examples of Davidson’s summation abound. Von Rad, Old Testament Theology, 2:364, states, “[Typology] rises out of man’s universal effort to understand the phenomena about him on the basis of concrete analogies”; cf. Wolff, “The Hermeneutics of the Old,” 180; and “The Old Testament in Controversy,” 283. Given the analogical component of typology, the NT authors, according to Lampe, “The Reasonableness of Typology,” 19, “felt free to modify the details of the narrative tradition in order to bring out the meaning which it possessed for them when it was expressed in imagery derived from the Old Testament history.” France describes the typological correspondence as both “historical (i.e. a correspondence of situation and event) and theological (i.e. an embodiment of the same principle of God’s working)” and asserts that the consistent principle of God’s working “should be seen operating in two persons or events that present a recognizable analogy to each other.” France, Jesus and the Old Testament, 41, emphasis original. France is followed by Baker, Two Testaments, One Bible, 180. Wright, Knowing Jesus, 111-13, describes typology as a normal and common matter way of knowing things, the typological correspondences being analogies as events and persons “illustrate something characteristic about the way God does things.” For H. L. Ellison, “Typology,” EvQ 25 (1953): 164, the “recognition of a true type depends not on the recognitions of such similarities [of detail between type and antitype], which need not even exist, but of a common spiritual principle operative in both type and antitype.” Dentan, “Typology—Its Use and Abuse,” 216, noting how typology played an important part in the thinking of the biblical writers, adds, “One has the feeling that New Testament writers were often driven to use any image, derived from whatever source, and used in however confused a fashion, to express the truth which was the overwhelming, and essentially inexpressible, fact of their lives—that the living God was at work amongst them.” Frye, The Great Code, 226, writes that “every text is the type of its own reading. Its antitype starts in the reader’s mind, where it is not a simple reception but the unfolding of a long and complex dialectical process, the winding of the end of a string into a ball.” P. Joseph Cahill, “Hermeneutical Implications of Typology,” CBQ 44 (1982): 274, asserts, “Typological thinking does not so much uncover as create a meaning which links the present to the past and still looks forward to the future.”

89Beale, Handbook, 67-71, also refers to Jezebel in Rev 2:20 and the reference of the rich in Rev 3:17-18 as other examples of analogy from the OT. Many direct links are drawn between the God of
involving resemblance and analogy, are much more. The historical correspondences possess the mark of divine design and are not essentially a natural analogy formed by human thought processes or ingenuity. Addressing the notion of typology as essentially that of similarity with OT facts comparable to NT events, Ellis asserts,

For the NT writers a type has not merely the property of ‘typicalness’ or similarity; they view Israel’s history as Heilsgeschichte, and the significance of an OT type lies in its particular locus in the Divine plan of redemption. When Paul speaks of the Exodus events happening τυπικῶς and written ‘for our admonition’ [in 1 Cor 10:11; cf. Rom 15:4], there can be no doubt that, in the apostle’s mind, Divine intent is of the essence both in their occurrence and in their inscripturation.90

In other words, the correspondences between type and antitype, developing along the repetition of “promise-fulfillment” patterns through redemptive history, are designed, established, and governed by God as he molds unique details of history for his purposes.91 Typological relationships are not conveniently forged by theological

---

90Ellis, Paul’s Use of the Old, 127, emphasis original; see also Terry, Biblical Hermeneutics, 247-48; Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:46; Fritsch, “Biblical Typology,” 214-15; Goppelt, Typos, 18, 130; Hoskins, Jesus as Fulfillment, 21; Johnson, Walking with Jesus, 73-74.

91Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 103-5; Lints, Fabric of Theology, 306; Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 406. The notion of typology involving the identification of God’s recurring activity in history is correct, but does not go far enough. Currid, “Recognition and Use of Typology, 128; cf. 121, rightly stresses that “typology underscores the doctrine of the sovereignty of God. It teaches that the Lord has sovereignly planned history with a unified purpose so that what God has done in the past becomes the measure of the future. He has simply designed history in such a way that certain patterns repeat themselves. In other words, God has directed history so that foreshadowings occur. And, since God has designed history that way, the biblical expositor has an obligation to search the Scriptures diligently to uncover typology.” Ounsworth, Joshua Typology, 40, writes, “What all these correspondences do have in common, however, is at least implicitly the notion that they are all determined by the divine will: it is of the nature of God’s providence that he should, as it were, stamp salvation history and religious practices of his people with the character of his saving power, making them reflections of his heavenly glory. The correspondences are of the nature of things, revealed but not created by the way in which the Old Testament is written.”
reflection or by cleverly pinpointing analogical features between earlier and later people and events; rather, grounded in God’s providence and ordination, OT types are invested by God to resemble and foreshadow greater things to come. Readers of Scripture must find textual warrant and exegetical evidence for identifying the divinely intended types present in the text since such patterns are embedded therein and are not fancifully derived from a reading strategy or hermeneutic.

The debate on the prospective nature of typology. The debate with respect to the divine intent of the typological correspondences goes hand in hand with one of the primary controversies in typological studies. Are OT types prospective, being advance prefigurations, effectively foreshadowing later patterns in history or are they retrospective in that later biblical authors, particularly the NT authors, looked back to OT texts in light of the work of Christ and through the empowerment of the Spirit and thereby forged typological connections? More simply, Moo asks, “Does the Old Testament type have a genuinely predictive function, or is typology simply a way of looking back at the Old Testament and drawing out resemblances?”

A traditional conception of biblical typology affirms that the original prototypes and types in Scripture possess a prospective or prophetic-predictive quality leading to the antitype. God has orchestrated his sovereign plan such that through the progress of revelation, “certain Old Testament events, persons, and institutions would prefigure New Testament events, persons, and institutions.” OT types are prospective in that they are


advanced presentations, predicting, and pointing forward to the antitype in Christ. On the other hand, post-critical neo-typology advocates do not find types to be predictive or prophetic in any way. Instead, the biblical writers apprehended the typological relationship retrospectively. A type has no forward reference to the future nor is it predictive. The retrospective aspect of typology is clearly emphasized in France’s study:

[The] antitype [is not] the fulfillment of a prediction; it is rather the re-embodiment of a principle which has been previously exemplified in the type. A prediction looks forward to, and demands, an event which is to be its fulfillment; typology, however, consists essentially in looking back and discerning previous examples of a pattern now reaching its culmination... The idea of fulfillment inherent in New Testament typology derives not from a belief that the events so understood were explicitly predicted, but from a conviction that in the coming and work of Jesus the principles of God’s working, already imperfectly embodied in the Old Testament, were more perfectly re-embodied, and thus brought to completion.


---

94This is not to deny that the particular OT people, institutions, events, and actions that are typological lose value and significance in their own redemptive historical setting. Hays, *Echoes of Scripture*, 100, helpfully emphasizes, “If later events disclose foundational patterns, of which the earlier may now be seen as anticipations, this means that the earlier events are themselves more rather than less laden with significance. The exodus events happened, Paul asserts [in 1 Cor 10], to the fathers in the wilderness in such a way that they can aptly serve as instruction for later generations, as Deuteronomy also proclaims.”

95Baker, *Two Testaments, One Bible*, 181; France, *Jesus and the Old Testament*, 41. Von Rad, “Typological Interpretation,” 189-90, understands typology apart from prospective prophecy: “This renewed recognition of types in the Old Testament is no peddling of secret lore, no digging up of miracles, but is simply correspondent to the belief that the same God who revealed himself in Christ has also left his footprints in the history of the Old Testament Covenant people—that we have to do with one divine discourse, here to the fathers through the prophets, there to us through Christ (Heb. 1:1).” Others who view typology as retrospective include Eichrodt, “Is Typological Exegesis an Appropriate Method?”, 229; and Geoffrey Grogan, “The Relationship between Prophecy and Typology,” *SBET* 4 (1986): 10, 13.

96France, *Jesus and the Old Testament*, 40. France also speaks of the characteristics of typology as incorporating numerous applications “of Old Testament passages which in themselves demanded no forward reference. Jesus made use of explicit predictions, but He made even more use of non-
In addition, the OT types could not be prospective or prefigure something future because that would entail an additional meaning that was hidden from the OT authors.\(^{97}\) For still others, typology involves both prospective and retrospective aspects. Greidanus, for example, says the answer “is not an either-or but a both-and: some Old Testament types are predictive and others are not. I suspect that most types are not predictive, but specific persons or events are later seen to have typological significance.”\(^{98}\)

The problem with the debate regarding the prospective versus retrospective quality of typology has to do with what is meant by “retrospective.” This is best illustrated by the recent studies of G. K. Beale. In his programmatic essay outlining the presuppositions of Jesus’ and the NT author’s exegetical method, Beale classifies typology as indirect prophecy, but at the same time suggests that the “New Testament correspondence would be drawing out retrospectively the fuller prophetic meaning of the Old Testament type which was originally included by the divine author.”\(^{99}\)

\(^{97}\)Baker, *Two Testaments, One Bible*, 181, 187-89; France, *Jesus and the Old Testament*, 41-42; cf. Foulkes, “The Acts of God,” 369-70. Hence, for the post-critical neo-typology position, typology is not a part of exegesis since true meaning and intention of the original text can only be what the human author intended. Typology is more of a theological reflection or application. Woolcombe, “Biblical Origins and Development,” 39-40, speaks of typology as both a method of exegesis and as a “method of writing,” where the NT authors borrowed terms to describe the antitype based on the prototypal counterpart in the OT. Interestingly enough, while Moo presents typology as possessing a prospective nature, being prefigurements that are divinely ordained, he claims that “typology is not an exegetical technique, nor even a hermeneutical axiom, but a broad theological construct with hermeneutical implications.” Douglas Moo, “Paul’s Universalizing Hermeneutic,” *SBJT* 11 (2007): 82; cf. 81. See also LaRondelle, *The Israel of God*, 45-46, as he follows Foulkes and argues that typology “is the theological-christological interpretation of the Old Testament history by the New Testament, which goes beyond mere exegesis.”

\(^{98}\)Greidanus, *Preaching Christ*, 253. Others who opt for a middle position include Osborne, “Type; Typology,” 931; and Hamilton, “The Typology of David’s Rise to Power,” 6, seems to go in this direction by concurring with Osborne “that more needs to be said about how and when these types would have been understood as pointing forward” (emphasis original).

writings, Beale argues for “retrospection” as an essential characteristic of typology, but not in the way that France and Baker do. For Beale, retrospection carries
the idea that it was after Christ’s resurrection and under the direction of the Spirit that the apostolic writers understood certain OT historical narratives about persons, events, or institutions to be indirect prophecies of Christ or the Church. A qualification . . . [is that] there is evidence of the foreshadowing nature of the OT narrative itself, which then is better understood after the coming of Christ.100

Beale’s comments indicate that there needs to be clarity in what is meant when the terms “prospective” and “retrospective” are applied in the discussion regarding biblical typology. As I will argue, the OT types and prototypes are by their very nature prospective since they are divinely designed by God, just as proponents of the traditional approach propose. However, when OT types were discerned to be typological from an epistemological point of view is a distinct issue. Certain types may be retrospective in the sense that the NT writers, and in turn subsequent Bible readers, recognize them through the benefit of later revelation and in light of the fulfillment in Christ. The original OT authors and audience did not have the complete revelatory picture, which means the ultimate significance was not revealed to them; they only had a vague perception of the anticipatory nature and import of OT types (1 Pet 1:10-12). Whether Abraham or Moses’ audience, for example, understood Melchizedek in the context of Genesis 14 to be typological of the Messiah is difficult to discern, but given the inner-textual development of Melchizedek in Psalm 110, there is additional revelation that God intended him to point forward to Christ (Heb 7). The Latter Prophets would have had much more clarity than Moses or Joshua just as the NT authors were granted significantly more insight into God’s plan than the prophets would have had.

If OT types are retrospective in an ontological sense though, then surely they are not God-intended anymore, the type-antitype relationship becomes a mere analogy of human thinking and are potentially arbitrary given the theological principles one uses to make such connections. The danger is that if typological patterns are retrospectively constructed by the reader, one has entered onto the path of allegorizing. On the other hand, just because some types are recognized from a retrospective standpoint does not mean that the types themselves were not prospective and intended by God.\(^{101}\) When the type is exegetically discovered to be a type either in the immediate context or through intertextual development in the canon of Scripture, then the God-given typological pattern is warranted and fits within the promise-fulfillment structure of God’s plan. Affirming typology as prospective, while qualifying that some of the types are grasped or identified in hindsight, retrospectively in terms of epistemological justification, is a crucial issue that has sadly been a point of confusion.\(^{102}\)

\(^{101}\) Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 405-6. For Carson, the divine intention of the types means that “when Paul (or, for that matter, some other New Testament writer) claims that something or other connected with the gospel is the (typological) fulfillment of some old covenant pattern, he may not necessarily be claiming that everyone connected with the covenant type understood the pattern to be pointing forward, but he is certainly claiming that God himself designed it to be pointing forward. In other words, when the type was discovered to be a type (at some point along the trajectory of its repeated pattern? only after its culmination?)—i.e. when it was discovered to be a pattern that pointed to the future – is not determinative for its classification as a type.” Ibid., 406, emphasis original.

\(^{102}\) Moo, “The Problem of Sensus Plenior,” 197, rightly concludes, “That typology does have a ‘prospective’ element, but the ‘prospective’ nature of specific Old Testament incidents could often be recognized only retrospectively. In some cases, certainly, the Israelites themselves will have recognized the symbolic value of some of their history (e.g., the Exodus) and institutions (the cultus, to some extent). But not all typological correspondence involves recognizable symbols; and the prospective element in many Old Testament types, though intended by God in a general sense, would not have been recognized at the time by the Old Testament authors or the original audience.” Cf. Naselli, From Typology to Doxology, 127; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 104-5; Hoskins, Jesus as Fulfillment, 25-26. More recently, David Crump, Encountering Jesus, Encountering Scripture: Reading the Bible Critically in Faith (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2013), 26-27, criticizes Carson’s and Moo’s approach to typology—Crump presents how Christians have built a shaky bridge from the New Testament into the Old, crossing the canonical divide by implicitly importing NT theology into the OT. Specifically challenging Moo, Crump, Encountering Jesus, 36, cf. 34-37, wonders how something can be “prospective if it was intentionally recognizable only in retrospect? ‘Prospective’ normally indicates that a clue is embedded to help the reader anticipate what is coming next. But if such an indicator is recognizable only after the fact, it has failed to indicate and its potential for suggestion is empty. It is like a highway exit sign that becomes visible only after the exit.” Crump’s view flounders on a number of points however. First, the inspiration of Scripture
Having offered clarity on what I mean by “retrospective,” there still remains the question of whether types are by nature prospective. In terms of passages that explicitly make typological references in the NT, the prospective aspect and divine intentionality of the type-antitype correspondence appear. Romans 5:14 (cf. 1 Cor 15:20-22, 45-49) and 1 Corinthians 10 serve as just two examples. In the former passage, Paul notes that Adam was a type of the one to come. “The reference to ‘the coming one’ (τοῦ μέλλοντος),” argues Schreiner, “should be understood from the perspective of Adam. In other words, from Adam’s standpoint in history Jesus Christ was the one to come.” Adam is an advance presentation of Christ. God has superintended that the first man, Adam, would prefigure Christ. The prospective aspect is also clear in 1 Corinthians 10:11. The episodes of Israel in the wilderness happened typologically (τυπικῶς συνέβαινεν) and were written down for the instruction of Christians. Davidson’s discussion of this text is significant:

Paul is not saying that the events can now be seen to be τυπικῶς—as if they became τύποι as a result of some later occurrence or factor. Rather, Paul insists that in their very happening, they were happening τυπικῶς. The τύποι-quality of the events was inherent in their occurrence, not invented by the Pentateuchal historiographer or artificially given “typical” significance by Paul the exegete. The divine intent of the events clearly includes the τύπος-nature of the event. A providential design was operative, causing the events to happen τυπικῶς. The OT events enumerated by Paul demands a whole Bible theology; the OT and NT have the same divine author, which assumes a unified plan and Jesus’ teaching also reflects how the OT anticipated him (see Luke 24:27, 44; John 5:39). Second, the progress of revelation—the layers of themes that are unpacked across the storyline of Scripture—is what helps identify the typological patterns God has intended. This occurs in the OT itself as Melchizedek, the flood, and the exodus are just a few examples of the typological patterns that the latter prophets develop from previous OT texts. Third, the mystery motif does not receive adequate attention as Crump makes sweeping dismissive generalizations. But types are predictive and are sometimes hidden because of their indirectness and because of the nature of progressive revelation: Bible readers learn of them as they observe themes develop through the further disclosure of God’s plan along the canon. More is discussed on these areas later in this chap. when the topic of exegetical warrant in identifying types is raised.

103 Thomas R. Schreiner, Romans, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1998), 280. Similarly Douglas J. Moo, The Epistle to the Romans, NICNT (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1996), 334, finds that the “future tense is probably used because Paul is viewing Christ’s work from the perspective of Adam.” Pace Poysti, “The Typological Interpretation,” 6, who rejects the foreshadowing element in Rom 5:12 and considers it to be a mere analogy fashioned by Paul as directed by the Holy Spirit. For a helpful discussion of Rom 5:12-21 as divinely ordained prefiguration, see Johnson, “The Pauline Typology,” 64-68. That Adam is a type is grounded in how Gen 3:15 connects with Gen 1-2 and additionally, implicit confirmation is found in later OT indicators (Ps 8:4-8 [cf. Heb 2:6-8] and Dan 7:13-14).
are not presented as τύποι just because of the continuity of God’s actions and purposes at all times, as true and fundamental as that is. There is involved also the Lordship of Yahweh, molding unique details of history.  

In analyzing 1 Corinthians 10:1-13, Romans 5:12-19, and Romans 4, Roehrs also finds that what happened in the Old Testament is not merely an illustration of how God acts consistently in certain or similar circumstances and at various times. The analogy is bound up in the determinate counsel of God, conceived before the foundations of the world and carried out in the course of time.

While there is a recurring pattern or rhythm to God’s consistent activity in redemptive history as the post-critical neo-typology advocates emphasize, this does not exhaust what typology is. Paul perceived the forward reference of the types because he found the intentionality and voice of God in the OT (e.g., Gal 3:8); the repeated typological patterns are found in Scripture, which is understood to be the product of divine self-disclosure.

---

104 Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 268; cf. Davidson, “The Nature [and Identity],” 9; and see Fritsch, “Biblical Typology,” 88-90; Johnson, “The Pauline Typology,” 68-74; Walter C. Kaiser, Jr., The Uses of the Old Testament in the New (Chicago: Moody, 1985), 111-21; contra the minimalistic outlook of Drane, “Typology,” 201, and pace Andrew Perriman, “Typology in Paul,” Theology 90 (1987): 200-206, who wrongly concludes that 1 Cor 10 has only a minimal sense of typology and asserts, “There is little evidence that Paul worked with a clear model of typological exegesis and in many cases it seems that the perceived correlations are illustrative or metaphorical rather than typological.” Perriman, “Typology in Paul,” 205. Johnson, Him We Proclaim, 204, rightly states that “Paul views Israel’s desert experience as history-embedded foreshadowing of the church’s privilege and trial in the new covenant.” In addition, Thomas R. Schreiner and Ardel B. Caneday, The Race Set before Us: A Biblical Theology of Perseverance and Assurance (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2001), 223, make a similar observation: “Paul holds the Israelites before the Corinthians, because he understands that God designed Israel’s rebellion and their consequences as foreshadows or types to warn Christians and to deliver us to the promised land of salvation in the last day.” They also helpfully observe that Paul restricts the foreshadowing in 1 Cor 10:12 since the church is faced with the same critical moments as Israel was, and so the typological relationship does not mean that the church will reenact Israel’s rebellion. Caneday, The Race Set before Us, 224. Perseverance is required, for Israel did not reach their goal, and so the Corinthians are warned to avoid Israel’s unfaithfulness. The lack of faith and failure with the old covenant community ultimately anticipates the faithfulness of the new covenant people of God. For further discussion, consult Jerry Hwang, “Turning the Tables on Idol Feasts: Paul’s Use of Exodus 32:6 in 1 Corinthians 10:7,” JETS 54 (2011): 586-87n67.

105 Roehrs, “The Typological Use of the Old,” 206. Note also Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 405: “Paul and some other New Testament writers understand [typological patterns] to point to the future. In other words, they are not merely convenient analogies on which later writers may draw, but recurrent patterns pointing forward to a culminating repetition of the pattern. This presupposes that God himself is directing the pattern toward the end; it does not presuppose that early observers in the cycle of patterns necessarily understood this anticipatory or predictive function.” For the prospective nature of other NT passages explicitly typological (Heb 8:5, 9:24; 1 Pet 3:21), see Davidson, Typology in Scripture.
For a passage more indirectly typological, Todd Scacewater has demonstrated that the typological link between the rejection of Isaiah’s ministry and the rejection of Jesus’ ministry presented in John 12:37-43 is of a prospective nature. John 12:37-43 features two citations from Isaiah (Isa 53:1 in John 12:38 and Isa 6:10 in 12:40) and an allusion to Deuteronomy 29:2-4 (in John 12:37), a passage that is alluded to in Isaiah 6:9-10 as well. The allusion to Deuteronomy 29:2-4 is important in establishing a prototypical pattern, for even though Israel had seen the wonders and signs that God had accomplished in redeeming them from Egypt (Exod 6:6; Neh 9:10) under Moses’ leadership, yet the people were stubborn, obstinate, and rebellious because of hardened hearts. The pattern of obstinacy continues alongside the motif of prophetic rejection (see Luke 11:47; Acts 7:52; 1 Thess 2:15; cf. Neh 9:26) with both themes coming together with the rejection of Isaiah and his message (Isa 53:1; 6:10). These twin themes of prophetic rejection and spiritual rebellion in the midst of signs and wonders find intensified realization and fulfillment in Jesus’s day as the Jews reject him, ultimately to the point of pursuing and being complicit in his death, despite the many signs he performed before them. The prospective or prophetic element of Israel’s unbelief is evident because John says their unbelief was “in order that” the word of Isaiah might be fulfilled (John 12:38) and because Isaiah decreed (John 12:39-40) that God would judicially harden corporate Israel due to their predilection for idolatry. While some view John 12:37-43 as an appeal to direct


107 Scacewater, “The Predictive Nature,” 135-36. Andreas J. Köstenberger, “John,” in Commentary on the New Testament Use of the Old Testament, 477, explains that the “internal logic connecting both passages [Isa 53:1 and Isa 6:10] is that the people’s rejection of God’s servant depicted in Isa. 53 is predicated upon their spiritual hardening mentioned in Isa. 6:10.” Tabb, “Johannine Fulfillment of Scripture,” 502, also observes a link: “In both texts, the prophet introduces one who is ‘high and lifted up’—‘The Lord’ . . . in 6:1, and ‘my servant’ . . . in 52:13—then he follows with a statement of the people’s obduracy (6:9-10, 53:1). Additionally, Isa 52:15b harkens back to the prophet’s commissioning in 6:9 with the reference to seeing, hearing, and understanding.”

108 For discussion as to why the ἵνα in John 12:38 should be understood as having telic force
prophetic proof of Jesus’ rejection—certainly the Servant of Isaiah 53:1 is a prophetic figure—nevertheless, the focus of the citations is upon Isaiah and his rejected message, which should be understood as typological of the climatic Servant-prophet whose mission and message would also be rejected (Isa 53:4-8). Thus, Isaiah’s ministry was designed by God to point forward to the rejection of a greater prophet, the Servant of the Lord. Indeed, the people “could not” believe in Jesus (John 12:39), as Scacewater explains, because the typological pattern established by Isaiah must be fulfilled by the intended antitype, or the Scriptures would be broken. This demonstrates John’s understanding that typology is predictive by nature. . . . This interesting interweaving of typology and direct prophecy suggests that John sees the two as closely related. 

In summary, God has stamped certain persons, events, and institutions to point forward as advance presentations of the greater realities tied to the person and work of Christ. Types are prospective by nature even if Bible readers come to recognize or discover the God intended typological pattern retrospectively. Even with the retrospective epistemological recognition, the types are not retrospective by nature and thus typology should not be characterized as a common way of human thinking by constructing structural similarities or analogies. Lastly, more could be added to the examples of Adam (Rom instead of be taken as resultant, and for the stronger claim as to why the Jews could not believe because (ὅτι) of what Isa 6:10 says (John 12:39), see Scacewater, “The Predictive Nature,” 132-34, 137-38; Tabb, “Johannine Fulfillment of Scripture,” 501; and D. A. Carson, The Gospel according to John, PNTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1991), 447-48.

Köstenberger, “John,” 478: “The typology extends not only to the linkage between Isaiah and his message, on the one hand, and Jesus and his message on the other, but also to the rejection of Isaiah’s message by his contemporaries and the rejection of Jesus’ message and signs (‘arm of the Lord’) by the same trajectory of people.” Scacewater, “The Predictive Nature,” 142, nicely summarizes John’s appropriation of Isaiah and Deuteronomy: “John’s apologetic argument, proven from the OT Scriptures themselves is threefold: (1) the Scripture necessitated the rejection of Jesus because of the established typological pattern of prophetic rejection; (2) God’s ensuring this rejection is righteous because of Israel’s consistent obduracy; (3) Isaiah prophesied that the Servant (who is Jesus) would be the intended antitype of this typological pattern.”

5:12), the events following the exodus (1 Cor 10:6, 11), and the rejection of Isaiah’s message (John 12:37-43). The exodus, temple, sacrificial system, flood, offices of prophet, priest, king, along with Moses, David, Solomon, and more are all types of the good things to come (Heb 10:1; Col 2:17).

The Nature of Typological Fulfillment

The contours of biblical typology, as discussed, consist of genuine historical correspondences, featuring some detailed parallel between the type and anti-type, which are of a prospective nature because God designed OT types to prefigure and point forward to NT antitypes. Since the OT types are by nature prospective, there is a “must needs be” quality to the typological pattern as the OT pre-presentation implies that the NT antitypical presentation will occur. This leads to another critical characteristic of typology: the aspect of heightening and escalation as the type looks forward to fulfillment. The OT type and NT antitype are not on the same plane as there is an element of intensification or qualitative progression. Matthew 12, for example, provides the explicit a fortiori quality of typological patterns as Jesus says he is greater than the temple (v. 6), greater than Jonah (v. 41), and greater than Solomon (v. 42). Many other examples abound. As the true bread from heaven, Jesus is greater than the manna provided in the wilderness as those


112See Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 106-7, and Thomas R. Schreiner, Commentary on Hebrews, Biblical Theology for Christian Proclamation (Nashville: B & H, 2015), 36-45, for a helpful discussion of the escalation of typological patterns. Cf. Goppelt, Typos, 18, 177, 199-202, 220; Foulkes, “The Acts of God,” 356; Richard M. Davidson, “The Eschatological Hermeneutic of Biblical Typology,” ThoRhēma 6 (2011): 36-44; Hoskins, That Scripture Might Be Fulfilled, 23; Beale, Handbook, 14, 17. Davidson, “The Nature [and Identity],” 7, rightly specifies that this aspect of typology is in “contradistinction to paraenesis, which is giving advice or warning using some example as a model, but with no higher correspondence. Thus Peter employs paraenesis when he exhorts women to be sober and modest like Sarah (1 Pet 3:1-6), but Sarah is not a type of Christian women, in the technical usage of the word ‘type.’” Goppelt, Typos, 126, makes this point as well. One possible exception of the movement from a lesser entity (the type) to a greater one (the antitype) would be the vertical typology presented in the epistle to the Hebrews.
who feed on him will not perish (John 6:32-50). The Passover anticipates the supreme Passover Lamb (1 Cor 5:7).\textsuperscript{113} Jesus is the second Adam, the Messianic Davidic king, and the new Moses, which all entail a heightened realization of the OT type. The OT typical persons, events, institutions, and experiences were preparatory then, foreshadowing better and greater realities of the redemption and salvation of the new covenant age, the inaugurated kingdom of Christ, and the new creation.

**Escalation and Fulfillment: The Christotelic and Eschatological Orientation of Typology**

Undergirding this crucial component of escalation of typological patterns in Scripture is the nature of progressive revelation as God’s plan unfolds with the OT’s thoroughly eschatological outlook (Gen 3:15 being the starting place). The OT prototypes and types are preparatory, having their goal, end, climax, and terminus in Jesus Christ. The heightening and escalation of typology in relation to the storyline of Scripture is thoughtfully summarized by Lints:

First, there was a repetition of the promise-fulfillment pattern of redemptive history: God would be continually faithful to his people and to his promises. Second, there was a difference of degree between the former acts of God and the new ones: the fulfillment of God’s promises would be even better than the recipients of the original promise had foreseen.\textsuperscript{114}


\textsuperscript{114}Lints, *The Fabric of Theology*, 305. Cf. Stek, “Biblical Typology,” 162. Hoskins, *Jesus as the Fulfillment*, 20, states, “Typology is often connected by interpreters with the movement of salvation history along a trajectory involving promise and fulfillment. Such a movement is already evident in the Old Testament itself. In the Old Testament, God’s dealings with his people were associated with certain promises. In the writings of the Old Testament prophets, God’s previous dealings with his people became patterns for his future dealings with his people. Thus Old Testament prophets ‘looked for a new David, a new Exodus, a new covenant, a new city of God.’ In doing so, they were anticipating the ultimate fulfillment of God’s promises. Thus the future realities anticipated by the prophets would not merely serve to repeat the past, but would be greater than the patterns or types that preceded them. It is therefore not surprising that the New Testament authors, who saw in Christ and the Christ-event the fulfillment of the Old Testament prophetic hopes, made use of types or patterns found in the Old Testament in their teaching about Christ, the Christ-event, and its results.” The brief citation in Hoskin’s quote comes from Von Rad, *Old Testament Theology*, 2:322-23. This notion of promise-fulfillment does not deny that there were partial
Fritsch captures the point with this analogy:

The idea of growth in the process of revelation from the less to the more, from the imperfect to the perfect, from the type to antitype is characteristic also of the realm of nature. The relation of the bud to the flower, the acorn to the oak, the embryo to the child, and the child to the man all bear witness to a unifying principle amid laws of change.115

Redemptive history with its teleological trajectory—biblical history being linear and directed to its eschatological goal—serves as the theological underpinning of typology. Thus, the OT types, while having imperfections such as spiritual flaws or moral failings (OT typical persons; e.g., David) and lacking spiritual efficacy (OT typical institutions, events; e.g. the sacrificial system, the exodus), were stamped as indirect prophetic adumbrations anticipating a future, but in view of God’s grand prophetic and covenantal promises, an intensified and escalated future with the coming of the messianic era as Christ “fills up” all that the OT types lacked.116


115Fritsch, “Biblical Typology,” 214. On the organic nature of progressive revelation moving from seed-form to tree, see Geerhardus Vos, Biblical Theology: Old and New Testaments (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1948; repr., Edinburgh: Banner of Truth, 2004), 7-8. Lints, The Fabric of Theology, 309, writes, “Redemptive revelation is woven into that fabric of history with significant threads holding the different epochs together. The affirmation of typological hermeneutics is an affirmation of the fabric-like character of redemptive revelation.” Contra Baker, Two Testaments, One Bible, 179-83; Baker, “Typology,” 152-53, who recognizes the progression from the OT to the NT, but denies the heightening or escalating characteristic of typology. Baker fails to understand that typological patterns develop along the axis of redemptive history and he reduces them to mere analogical or theological correspondences. But this misses how typological structures are embedded within the fabric of redemptive history and are inextricably linked to the promise-fulfillment structure of Scripture. All explicit typological patterns in the NT possess this important attribute.

116Moo, “The Problem of Sensus Plenior,” 191; Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 396. Rightly, Davidson, “Nature [and Identity],” 8, avers, “Christ and His work of salvation is thus the ultimate orientation point of OT types and their NT fulfillments.” Similarly, Goldsworthy, Gospel-Centered Hermeneutics, 243, states, “Typology rests on the recognition that the way God spoke and acted in the Old Testament was preparatory and anticipatory of the definitive word and act of God in Christ. . . . Type and antitype express this organic relationship between the events of the Old that pattern and foreshadow their fulfillment in the New. The heart of the antitype in the New Testament is the person and work of Jesus Christ, and especially the resurrection.” The imperfections of the OT types in comparison to the NT antitypes is indicated by the use the word “shadow” in Heb 10:1 and Col 2:17 in connection to what is to come while the usage of the word “true” in association of NT antitypes denotes that which is true and genuine in completing what preceded it (so John 1:9, 6:32; Heb 8:2 and 9:24).
Typological patterns, then, have a Christological and eschatological orientation. The escalation is intrinsic to the nature of the coming of Christ and the ushering in of the last days which Christians now live (Heb 1:2; Acts 2:16-17). While not all typological patterns are directly Christocentric—the flood typology of 1 Peter 3:18-22 does not have its antitype in the person of Christ, but to water baptism and cosmic judgment—all OT types have a Christotelic emphasis as they are qualified by their relationship to Jesus, his redemptive work, and the consummation of the new heavens and earth. 117 In other words, all typological patterns either converge or are channeled through Jesus Christ in some way. Jesus is the preeminent antitype of the OT types and shadows as shown by the examples previously discussed. Other typological relationships that are not specifically directed to the person of Christ, such as the flood-baptism typology, are established as a consequence of Christ’s redemptive work. Noah was preserved through the waters of the flood, but believers experience a greater salvation when baptized into Christ, being rescued on

117 LaRondelle, *The Israel of God*, 44-45, states, “Because the covenantal communion with God is established through Christ only, all typology in the New Testament converges and culminates in Christ. Because Christ fulfills and completes Old Testament salvation history, New Testament typology originates, centers, and terminates in Christ.” Similarly, Goppelt, *Typos*, 202, remarks that “all typology proceeds through Christ and exists in him.” The term “Christotelic” comes from Peter Enns, *Inspiration and Incarnation: Evangelicals and the Problem of the Old Testament* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2005), 154; and Peter Enns, “Fuller Meaning, Single Goal: A Christotelic Approach to the New Testament Use of the Old in Its First-Century Interpretative Environment,” in *Three Views on the New Testament*, 213-15. Enns, *Inspiration and Incarnation*, 154, states, “To read the Old Testament ‘christotelically’ is to read it already knowing that Christ is somehow the end to which the Old Testament story is heading. … A grammatical-historical reading of the Old Testament is not only permissible but absolutely vital in that it allows the church to see the varied trajectories set in the pages of the Old Testament itself. It is only by understanding the Old Testament on its own terms, so to speak, that the church can appreciate the impact that the death and resurrection of Christ and the preaching of the gospel had in its first-century setting—and still should have today. But for the church, it is vital to remember that the Old Testament does not exist simply on its own, for its own sake. It cannot stand in isolation from the completion of the Old Testament story in the death and resurrection of Christ” (emphasis original). The term “Christotelic” is perhaps more beneficial than “Christocentric” since it avoids reading Christ into every OT passage and instead accents how the OT points to the eschatological coming of Christ. See G. K. Beale, *The Erosion of Inerrancy in Evangelicalism: Responding to New Challenges to Biblical Authority* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008), 86. Nevertheless, I am adopting the term aside from Enns’ low view of Scripture which he believes entails elements of myth and legend as well as his problematic proposal for the NT use of the OT whereby the apostles committed eisegesis, manipulating OT texts and sometimes ignoring the original OT context to serve their belief that Jesus was the Christ. For an in depth critique of Enns’ approach, see Beale, *The Erosion of Inerrancy*. 
account of Christ’s resurrection and triumph over death (cf. Rom 6:3-5; Col 2:12).\footnote{118} Since Jesus brings about a new redemptive-historical epoch marked by the new covenant, the empowering presence of the Holy Spirit, the inauguration of the kingdom, the dawning of the new creation, and the fulfillment of God’s promises (2 Cor 1:20), all OT typological patterns feature an intensified character and heightened realization. The OT types reach their aim and goal in the age of fulfillment.\footnote{119} Further, the arrival and ratification of the promised new covenant (Jer 31:29-40; Ezek 36:24-38; Luke 22:20; 1 Cor 11:25; 2 Cor 3; Heb 8-10) requires that all of the typological features of the previous covenants have been inaugurated or superseded since the new covenant is the goal and terminus of the OT covenants.\footnote{120} The mediatorial work of Christ is greater than any of the OT mediators, for through him all of God’s people now have direct knowledge of the Lord and are taught by God (cf. Isa 54:13 and Jer 31:34 with John 6:45 and 1 Thess 4:9, note also 1 John

\footnote{118}For a helpful discussion of the flood-baptism typology, see Schreiner, \textit{New Testament Theology}, 744-45, and Yoshikawa, “The Prototypical Use,” 449-90. Another example of how the typological pattern does not converge directly in the person of Christ is 1 Cor 10 as Israel’s experiences in the wilderness happened typologically as warnings to the church. Yet even here with the Israel-church typology, the correspondence is drawn in light of the significance of Christ’s new covenant work since the end of the ages (1 Cor 10:11) pivots upon the manifestation of Christ (2 Tim 1:9-10). That the typological pattern is channeled through Christ is seen in the reference to the pre-existent Christ (1 Cor 10:4) and the correspondences to the Lord’s Supper and baptism (1 Cor 10:2-4), which are again brought about as ordinances of the new covenant in light of the fulfillment of Christ’s soteriological work. See Davidson, \textit{Typology in Scripture}, 282-83.

\footnote{119}For the notion of “fulfillment” in the NT as one that involves a sense of completion or consummation such that the OT prediction or promise is brought to its designed end, see, s.v. “πληρόω”; C. F. D. Moule, “Fulfilment-Words in the New Testament: Use and Abuse,” \textit{NTS} 14 (1967-68): 293-320; Moo, “The Problem of \textit{Sensus Plenior},” 191; Carson, \textit{Matthew 1-12}, 27-29, 142-44; Baker, \textit{Two Testaments, One Bible}, 208-9.

\footnote{120}Naturally, the universal structures of the creation and Noahic covenants continue on in this age, but even these covenants point to the new creation freed from sin that will come to fruition based upon the new covenant. See Gentry and Wellum, \textit{Kingdom through Covenant}. P. R. Williamson, “Covenant,” in \textit{NDBT}, 427, summarizes, “In some sense previous divine covenants culminate in the new covenant, for this future covenant encapsulates the key promises made throughout the OT era . . . while at the same time transcending them. Thus the new covenant is the climatic fulfilment of the covenants that God established with the patriarchs, the nation of Israel, and the dynasty of David. The promises of these earlier covenants find their ultimate fulfillment in the new covenant, and in it such promises become ‘eternal’ in the truest sense.” For further development, cf. P. R. Williamson, \textit{Sealed with an Oath: Covenant in God’s Unfolding Purpose}, NSBT 23 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2007), 182-207.
experience the outpouring of the eschatological Holy Spirit with the law written on the heart, and they enjoy complete forgiveness of sins.

The eschatological orientation of typological patterns is somewhat more complicated than the observation that all typological patterns in the Bible are directed toward and converge in Christ. Davidson’s research has led him to conclude that there is a three-fold eschatological substructure of biblical typology. The antitypical fulfillment of OT typology involves one or more of the three NT eschatological manifestations of the kingdom: the inaugurated, appropriated, and consummated kingdom. Davidson describes the one eschatological fulfillment of typology with three aspects this way:

1. “inaugurated,” connected with the first Advent of Christ (as Adam is a type of Christ, Rom 5); 2. “appropriated,” focusing on the time of the Church living in the tension between the “already” and the “not yet,” (as in 1 Cor 10 the Exodus experiences are ‘types’ typoi of the Christian church); or 3. “consummated,” linked to the Apocalyptic Day of the Lord and the Second Coming of Christ and beyond (as the Noahic Flood is a type of the destruction of the world in 2 Pet 3:6-7).

Although Davidson does not claim specifically that all typological patterns are directed or channeled through Christ, he does argue that the one eschatological fulfillment in three manifestations is brought to basic realization in Christ’s first advent when the age to come ruptured into this present evil age. The ecclesiological appropriation occurs because the church is in union with Christ and shares in the one who is the principal antitype.

Davidson’s categories are helpful, then, as the explicit typological patterns follow along the inaugurated eschatological framework of the NT, permitting the interpreter to determine which types have become obsolete and which are initially fulfilled and yet have continuing and ongoing fulfillment in this present age as the presence of the future overlaps with the continuity of the creation covenant realities and the post-fall

---


123Davidson, “The Eschatological Hermeneutic,” 40.
structures of the Noahic covenant. Given the inaugurated eschatological structure for typological fulfillment, the biblical texts must dictate, on a case by case basis, whether the type is completely annulled or fulfilled in Christ’s first advent, or inform the reader whether there may be additional fulfillment and appropriation in the church and in the eschaton (the new heavens and new earth). For example, the whole sacrificial system of the OT has been rendered completely obsolete and fulfilled in the sacrifice of Christ (John 1:29, 36; Rom 8:3; 1 Cor 5:6-8; 1 Pet 1:18-19; Heb 9-10; Rev 5:6-10, 13:8). The only possible appropriation is that on the basis of Christ’s atoning sacrifice Christians can now offer acceptable spiritual sacrifices (Heb 13:15; 1 Pet 2:5; cf. Rom 15:16). Every indication from the NT is that Christ’s once and for all perfect sacrifice means that the sacrificial practices of OT Israel under the Mosaic covenant are done away with now and forever. Some more traditional dispensationalists argue that memorial or even actual ceremonial non-atoning sacrifices will be offered in the future millennium. But such a position misses how the sacrificial system as a whole, tied to the old covenant, being typological and prophetic as specified by the biblical text (e.g., Isa 53) and disclosed through the covenants in the storyline, terminates in Christ’s sacrificial death on the cross. To return to the shadows of the OT cultic practices and posit them in the future is to fail to read the Bible in a redemptive historical manner, missing how such themes are developed.

---


126 Rightly, Allis, Prophecy and the Church, 246-48; Hoekema, The Bible and the Future, 204-5. For a biblical theological survey of sacrifice, see R. T. Beckwith, “Sacrifice,” in NDBT, 754-62.
progressively through the covenental epochs and reach their goal and end in the finished work of Christ.\textsuperscript{127}

A second illustration of how a type is fulfilled in Christ but with further realization or “spill-over” in the church and the consummation is in order. Tracing out the temple typology through the canon reveals that Christ is the antitypical fulfillment and replacement of the temple (Matt 12:6; Mark 14:58; John 1:14, 51; 2:14-22; 4:20-24; Heb 10:19-22; note also Matt 27:51-53 and Ezek 47:1-12; Joel 3:18; Zech 13:1, 14:8 with John 7:37-39; and Ps 118:19-27 and Dan 2:34-35 with Matt 21:42-44).\textsuperscript{128} With the eclipse of the temple through Jesus, however, the typological temple pattern is appropriated to the church, since the people of God are united to the true Temple through the Holy Spirit.

\textsuperscript{127}Benjamin L. Merkle, “Old Testament Restoration Prophecies Regarding the Nation of Israel: Literal or Symbolic?” \textit{SBJT} 14 (2010): 23, rightly observes the problem with dispensationalists who read Ezek 40-48 literalistically in arguing for the reinstitution of animal sacrifices in the millennium: “[A]ffirming that the restored people of Israel will rebuild the temple, reinstate the priesthood, and restore animal sacrifices, minimizes the complete and perfect work of Christ. His death and resurrection is the focal point of God’s great work in redemptive history. To go back to the shadows and images of the Old Testament is to neglect the centrality of Christ’s finished work on the cross.” Merkle, “Old Testament Restoration Prophecies,” 25n26, also points out that God has already given his people a memorial of Christ’s sacrifice—the Lord’s Supper. Why this new covenant meal, which is the continuing rite of the new covenant, would be replaced by animal sacrifices in the millennium is an argument with no warrant from the NT. The Lord’s Supper will cease upon Christ’s return (1 Cor 11:26), but it gives way to the messianic banquet, the marriage supper of the Lamb (Luke 22:15-18; Rev 19:7-9) and not to the OT cultic practices of sacrificing animals. Furthermore, to argue for the reinstitution of the animal sacrifices in the future millennium but not the reestablishment of the Mosaic covenant is to rip the sacrifices out of their covenental setting and context. Yet the consummation of the kingdom at Christ’s return is still tied to the new covenant age (God’s final covenant is the new covenant; 2 Cor 3:11), and so again this dispensational perspective fails since the new covenant sacrifice of Christ has been offered making the old covenant, and its sacrifices, obsolete (Heb 8:6-13). For further on the ineffectiveness of OT sacrifices, see Heb 7:11-12; and 9-10.

Temple imagery is applied to believers both corporately (1 Cor 3:16-17; 2 Cor 6:16; Eph 2:19-22; 1 Pet 2:4-10) and individually (1 Cor 6:19). The pattern takes further shape and additional realization in the new heavens and new earth with God’s presence fully realized as Jesus, the perfect temple, dwells with his people for eternity (Rev 21:22). In this way, typological patterns are always either completely fulfilled with the coming of the Christ, the primary and pervading antitype, or they are initially inaugurated by Christ with further fulfillment through the church, living in the “already” and “not yet” tension of the kingdom in the new covenant era. Finally, some typological patterns may have further realization as the temple example showed, with the second coming of Christ and the consummation of God’s kingdom. Even when the type has ongoing or continuing fulfillment, it is important to observe that there is always a transformation from the type to the antitype, hence the escalation embedded within typological relationships, because of the shifts that have occurred in light of Jesus Christ.

In summary, the heightening and escalation of the typological patterns have their focal point around the person and work of Jesus Christ as he secures a new order that realizes all that the OT types prefigured and foreshadowed. The NT antitype is greater than the OT type not just because of the better spiritual realities tied to the antitype, but also because of the greater glory that is realized now since all that the types pointed forward to have been fulfilled in the unprecedented and climatic acts of God through Jesus Christ. Hoskins rightly concludes,

[T]he antitype abundantly fills the role of the type in way that makes the type unnecessary and effectively obsolete. . . . In short, as the goal or fulfillment of the Old Testament type, the New Testament antitype fulfills and surpasses the patterns and predictions associated with the Old Testament type and in doing so takes the place of the type.129

---

129Hoskins, *Jesus as Fulfillment*, 23. Elsewhere Hoskins states that it “is important to note that Jesus does not devalue the importance of the Old Testament precursors for achieving God’s purposes in their own time. Rather, he is claiming to bring the fullness or fulfillment that was not present in the types.” Hoskins, *That Scripture Might Be Fulfilled*, 29.
Typological Fulfillment: Continuity and Discontinuity

One final area remains in the discussion regarding the relationship between the type and antitype. The characteristic of escalation in typological patterns for theological systems of continuity and discontinuity is critically significant. With some degree of resemblance or likeness between the type and antitype and grounded in the promise and fulfillment theme, typological patterns help establish the continuity of Scripture. The organic unity of Scripture is maintained between the parallels and links of OT types and that to which they point—the NT antitypes. Continuity between the OT and NT is preserved as the antitypes of the new covenant era reference back to the OT types and thus connect OT themes, covenants, and promises to the NT fulfillment, thereby bridging the gap between the testaments. Therefore, if Israel can be demonstrated to be a type of Christ and derivatively of the church, then some degree of continuity is present and that proves problematic for dispensational theology that dismisses or truncates any notion of Israel as a typological pattern.

On the other hand, typological relationships also pronounce and disclose significant areas of discontinuity in the unified plan of God. The escalation and qualitative progression of typology embraces discontinuity between Christ and the realities of new covenant era with those typological features of the OT economy. The OT types associated with the OT covenants are brought to their fulfillment either completely or partially because of the massive changes that have been inaugurated by Christ.130 If the

130See Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 107. For an overview of the lines of continuity/discontinuity in typological patterns from OT to NT, see Greg Clarke and Joshua Ng, “Bridging the Gap between the Old and New Testaments,” The Briefing, June 4, 1998, 6-10. On the discontinuity of typological patterns, Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 410, succinctly writes, “Where the polarity moves from the lamb of yom kippur to the sacrifice of the Messiah [Lev 16; Isa 53; Heb 8-10], from removal of yeast at a festival to universal moral exhortation [1 Cor 5:7-8], from a rock to Christ [1 Cor 10:4], then once again the broad appeal to the unity of the unfolding revelation embraces important elements of discontinuity. And this, Paul is convinced, is what responsible reading of the Old Testament Scripture warrants. But on this reading, the gospel that Paul preaches, though it grows out of the Old Testament and in this sense is organically tied to and authorized by the Old Testament, is that to which the Old Testament points, in such a way that the pointers, at least in some cases, fall way” (emphasis original).
role and function of Israel, including Israel’s promises, are typologically fulfilled, even partially, in the first advent of Christ, then once again the dispensational scheme collapses as such would not entail a return to the shadows of the OT with national Israel receiving the kingdom and territorial promises during the millennium and beyond. Rather, the typological pattern converges and culminates in Christ resulting in significant changes because Israel’s roles and promises terminate in Christ and the new covenant era he has ushered in. Further, if OT Israel is truly a typological pattern, then it cannot have a direct relationship to the church as the inaugurated eschatological fulfillment that is the framework of all typology requires a degree of discontinuity. In this manner, the old covenant community pointed to a greater covenant community filled by the Spirit and in faith union to the Messiah. The church, then, is not of the same nature as Israel of old because she is an organism that lives in the greater realities of what the chief antitype—Jesus Christ—has accomplished. As the eschatological people of God, the new covenant community—the church—has a nature and structure different from Israel if these typological patterns are unpacked rightly across the canon, and thus proves problematic for covenant theology.

Identifying Types: The Textual Warrant for Typology

Another vital area in the study of biblical typology is the question of exegesis: how are typological patterns discerned and are there hermeneutical controls for evaluating and confirming typology? The many disagreements regarding the textual warrant for typology are not surprising given how prophecies and typologies correlate with the “mystery” (μυστήριον) motif.131 Paul can say on the one hand that Christ and the gospel

---

131 The “mystery” theme, which frequently appears in Pauline literature (Rom 11:25; 16:25; 1 Cor 2:1, 2:7, 4:1, 13:2, 14:2, 15:51; Eph 1:9, 3:3-4, 3:9, 5:32, 6:19; Col 1:26-27, 2:2, 4:3; 2 Thes 2:7; 1 Tim 3:9, 16), is generally about how something, usually the saving purposes of God, has been hidden in the past but is now revealed and manifested. For a thorough study, see Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 412-36; and G. K. Beale and Benjamin L. Gladd, Hidden but Now Revealed: A Biblical Theology of Mystery (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2014). The “mystery” theme is key to answering why those who had the OT scriptures could be indicted for not understanding the Scriptures and at the same time did not have the
were formerly predicted and promised in the OT and now confirmed and fulfilled (e.g., Rom 1:2; 3:21; 15:8; Gal 3:8) and yet on the other hand, he presents these as formerly hidden in the OT but now revealed in light of Christ’s coming (e.g., Rom 16:25-27).\footnote{Caneday explains, “The same scriptures which revealed in advance, both prophetically and typologically, the coming of messiah, also concealed mysteries which could only be solved by later revelation. What was promised was simultaneously hidden in some substantial way.”\cite{Caneday1994}}

Caneday explains, “The same scriptures which revealed in advance, both prophetically and typologically, the coming of messiah, also concealed mysteries which could only be solved by later revelation. What was promised was simultaneously hidden in some substantial way.”\cite{Caneday1994} There is an obscurity and opaqueness to typology, but as more and more time elapses in the progress of revelation, there is also clarity.\footnote{Fritsch, “Biblical Typology,” 220, observes, “‘The type becomes more clear and understandable as the time for its fulfillment in the antitype draws near.’ Paul can understand the gospel as being both predicted in past times and now fulfilled while also hidden in the past and now revealed because they are part of an interlocking web. Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 426-27, explains, “[M]uch of the Old Testament’s promise is expressed . . . in one kind or another of typology, and fulfilled in the antitype: the Passover lamb versus the Messiah as the Passover lamb, cleaning the house of yeast in preparation for the Feast of Unleavened Bread and permanently abandoning the ‘yeast’ of all malice and evil, and so forth. Moreover, Paul certainly does not insist that when the stipulations regarding the Passover lamb were first written down, both writer and readers understood that they were pointing to the ultimate ‘lamb,’ the Messiah himself. So it would be fair to say that such notions were still hidden—hidden in plain view, so to speak, because genuinely there in the text (once one perceives the trajectory of typology), but not yet revealed. And that, perhaps, is why a ‘mystery’ must be revealed, but also why it may be revealed through the prophetic writings . . . and this is why the gospel itself, not to say some of its chief elements, can be simultaneously seen as something that has been (typologically) predicted and now fulfilled, and as something that has been hidden and has now been revealed” (emphasis original).} Recognizing and tracing types requires wisdom and much exegetical care. The next section explores the hermeneutical controls and textual warrant in validating typological structures by first briefly surveying wrong approaches.

\footnote{For discussion linking typology to the “mystery” theme, see Yoshikawa, “The Prototypical Use,” 28-34; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 104-5; Lampe, “The Reasonableness of Typology,” 29-30; A. B. Caneday, “Christ as Paul’s Bifocal Optic for Reading the Hebrew Scriptures: Mystery and Fulfillment in the Letter to the Romans” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the national Evangelical Theological Society, Lisle, IL, November 17-19, 1994).}

\footnote{Caneday, “Christ as Paul’s Bifocal Optic,” 22-23. Yoshikawa, “The Prototypical Use,” 32, notes, “Uncovering a type requires seeing connections that are not overtly stated, thus, discerning true biblical types is far more difficult than prophecies. And if prophecies suffer from misinterpretations and misidentifications, it is no surprise, then, that typology would suffer at the hands of those with ‘typomania.’”}

\footnote{Fritsch, “Biblical Typology,” 220, observes, “‘The type becomes more clear and understandable as the time for its fulfillment in the antitype draws near.’ Paul can understand the gospel as being both predicted in past times and now fulfilled while also hidden in the past and now revealed because they are part of an interlocking web. Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 426-27, explains, “[M]uch of the Old Testament’s promise is expressed . . . in one kind or another of typology, and fulfilled in the antitype: the Passover lamb versus the Messiah as the Passover lamb, cleaning the house of yeast in preparation for the Feast of Unleavened Bread and permanently abandoning the ‘yeast’ of all malice and evil, and so forth. Moreover, Paul certainly does not insist that when the stipulations regarding the Passover lamb were first written down, both writer and readers understood that they were pointing to the ultimate ‘lamb,’ the Messiah himself. So it would be fair to say that such notions were still hidden—hidden in plain view, so to speak, because genuinely there in the text (once one perceives the trajectory of typology), but not yet revealed. And that, perhaps, is why a ‘mystery’ must be revealed, but also why it may be revealed through the prophetic writings . . . and this is why the gospel itself, not to say some of its chief elements, can be simultaneously seen as something that has been (typologically) predicted and now fulfilled, and as something that has been hidden and has now been revealed” (emphasis original).}
Maximalist and Minimalist Approaches in Discerning Typological Relationships

Scholars who reject the prospective nature of typology and primarily understand typology in terms of the consistency of God’s activity (the post-critical neo-typology school), as delineated, generally argue that typology is not regulated by hermeneutical norms. For both Baker and France, typological connections are the result of the theological reflection of the relationship between persons, events, and institutions in Scripture, but are not governed directly by exegesis. With typology reduced to drawing mere analogies and resemblances, the number of types is unlimited, as Baker summarizes, “There is no exhaustive list of types and no developed method for their interpretation. On the contrary, there is great freedom and variety in the outworking of the basic principle that the Old Testament is a model for the New.”

Coming from a different hermeneutical framework, but no less maximalist in terms of postulating typological patterns, are those who swim in the stream of covenant theologian Johannes Cocceius (1603-1669). The Cocceian School (especially exemplified among Puritans) had no adequate hermeneutical controls and excessively raided the OT for types. Modern scholars, like James Jordan and Peter Leithart, as well as certain TIS

---

135Baker, Two Testaments, One Bible, 181-82; France, Jesus and the Old Testament, 41-42. Both recognize that exegesis is a prerequisite to typology, but understand typology in terms of “theological reflection” and “application.” von Rad, “Typological Interpretation,” 191, emphatically states, “As regards the handling of this sort of typological interpretation in the case of individual texts, no pedagogical norm can or may be set up; it cannot be further regulated hermeneutically, but takes place in the freedom of the Holy Spirit.” The problem with this is pinpointed by Beale, Handbook, 25, who observes, “Even those rejecting typology as exegesis employ exegetical language to describe typology.”

136Baker, Two Testaments, One Bible, 182. Von Rad, “Typological Interpretation,” 190, also thinks the number of types is unlimited. France, Jesus and the Old Testament, 43, is more cautious and would likely deny that there are unlimited typological connections, but he does see the typological method as fluid and loose as some types are more or less explicit, while others are so implicit that they “need carry no more than a verbal echo or a mere illustration of a general truth.” France, Jesus and the Old Testament, 76.

137Critiques are offered by Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:9-14; note also Ninow, Indicators of Typology, 28. Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 34-35, provides some examples of how this school viewed typical every OT event which bore superficial resemblance to Christ: “Adam’s awakening out of sleep typified Christ’s resurrection; Samson’s meeting of a lion on the way prefigured Christ’s meeting of Saul on the road to Damascus.”

On the other hand, because of the excesses of the typological maximalists of whatever stripe, Hugenberger writes that there are those who “appear distrustful of typology largely because of the apparent subjectivism of this approach, its unfalsifiable and contradictory results, and the indisputable record of interpretative excess.”\footnote{Hugenberger, “Introductory Notes,” 335.} Those reacting in this way would not necessarily invalidate biblical typology altogether but would only acknowledge typological patterns explicitly revealed in the NT. Advocates of a minimalist approach to typology follow in the footsteps of Bishop Herbert Marsh (1757-1839), who constricted typological patterns to those explicitly mentioned by Jesus or the apostles.\footnote{See Herbert Marsh, Lectures on the Criticism and Interpretation of the Bible (London: J. G. & F. Rivington, 1838), 373. For Fairbairn’s critiques of Marsh, see Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:19-24. A modern day representative of the Marsh school is Legarth, “Typology and its Theological Basis,” 148, as he argues that typology can be utilized “only in cases where the NT authors do so.” As will be explored in chap. 4, many dispensationalists are also situated within the Marshian school.}
Identifying Types: Exegetical Criteria

The maximalists and minimalists perspectives for identifying types are illegitimate. First, the maximalists position, as elucidated throughout this chapter, fails to understand the nature of typology. Typology is not a theological reflection of analogies of biblical figures, but belongs to scriptural revelation and possesses characteristics of divine design, prefiguring heightened and escalated antitypes in the fulfillment Christ has wrought. Further, the notion of the number of types being unlimited is excessive; readers are not to forge types, for to do so is to go down the path of allegorizing in arbitrarily making typological links. However, since typology has a prophetic sense, Beale is correct to classify typology within the exegetical task.141 The number of types is limited as a consequence, for only the biblical texts can establish the presence of a type.

On the other hand, while the minimalist approach correctly wants to ensure that foreign meanings are not read into OT texts, the position is too restrictive. Many of the typological relationships are directly explicated by the NT authors, but their appeal to types are not exhaustive. As Fairbairn argues, the explicit typological connections in the NT are paradigmatic of the “principles of which others of a like description are to be discovered and explained.”142 Moreover, later OT writers already begin to draw out the typological implications of previous OT texts (e.g., the latter OT prophets already develop persons, institutions, and events that anticipate fulfillment in the future), thereby evaporating any claim that the NT authors are unique in making typological connections

141Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 401; Beale, Handbook, 24-25. Berkhof, Principles of Biblical Interpretation, 145, also emphasizes, “Accidental similarity between an Old and New Testament person or event does not constitute the one a type of the other. There must be some Scriptural evidence that it was so designed by God.” Cf. Vos, Biblical Theology, 145-46. In contrast to Baker, Ninow, Indicators of Typology, 88, notes that if typology is based on sound exegesis, then it has to be guarded with a controlled hermeneutical procedure.

142Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:23. Rightly, Hamilton, “The Typology of David’s Rise to Power,” 9, writes that the problem with restricting the typological patterns to only those explicitly cited in the NT is not possible, for the NT “does not cite all of the instances of the Old Testament’s typological interpretation of itself” (emphasis original).
because of their charismatic gifting and authority as apostles. In fact, inherent textual indicators identifying types are already apparent in the OT; further, how else would the NT authors convince their readers of their interpretations of the OT texts unless the types were recognizable from the OT itself?

Avoiding the extremes of the maximalists and minimalists naturally leads to the question of the criteria for recognizing types. What are the evidences that an OT person, office, event, and institution prefigure and correspond in some salvifically significant detail to a heightened antitypical fulfillment realized in Jesus Christ? The following points from Davidson and Beale are instructive.

---


144Davidson, “The Nature [and Identity],” 15-16. More recently Evans and Novakovic state, “Many NT passages presume the readers’ familiarity with biblical narratives, which should enable them to detect the parallels between the types and the antitypes. Such correspondences are not unique to the NT. Within the OT itself typological comparisons are made. The exodus story becomes a type of salvation in Second Isaiah (Is 40:3-5; 43:16-24; 49:8-13); the wilderness rebellion (Ex 17:1-7; Num 20:1-13) is presented in Psalm 95:7-11 as an example of the hardness of heart that Israel is to avoid; the garden of Eden functions as a type for Isaiah’s portrayal of the new paradise (Is 11:6-9); and king David becomes the model for the expectations of the king who is to come in the future (Is 11:1; 55:3-4; Jer 23:5; Ezek 34:23-24; Amos 9:11).” Evans and Novakovic, “Typology,” 986. This point of recognizing the typological nature within the OT is critical, for sometimes just the presence of thematic linkages can be pressed too far in what is labelled as typology. For example, Naselli, From Typology to Doxology, 130-41, commendably presents the thematic links between Isa 40 and Job 38-41 and Rom 11. However, he is not convincing in asserting that Paul’s use of Isa 40:13 and Job 41:3a are typological in Rom 11:34-35. Rather than viewing these as typological, the citations and allusions to Isa 40:13 and Job 41:3a serve as proofs in his doxology regarding the wisdom and knowledge of God. Strictly speaking, the citations inform of God’s wisdom and his sovereign freedom in executing his plan, but neither Isa 40:13 or Job 41:3a are prophetic or point to an intensified realization to come—they are both applied in a doxological setting regarding God’s character. This does not deny the biblical theological role of Isa 40 and Job 38-41, but application of OT texts can be cited in an analogous way as was discussed earlier in the chap.

First, the immediate OT context may indicate that the author himself recognized the foreshadowing significance of a person, event, or institution. Deuteronomy 18:15-18 forecasts a greater prophet like Moses in the future. Psalm 2 and a host of other OT passages feature Davidic typology in projecting a greater David to come (e.g. Jer 23:5; Ezek 34:23, 37:24; Isa 9:5-6, 11:1-5; Hos 3:5; Amos 9:11; Zech 8:3). The early chapters of Genesis present Adam as a covenantal head and anticipate a new Adam, a seed, who will undo the fall (Gen 3:15). Similarly, Exodus 15:14-17 and Numbers 23-24 feature internal indicators of a greater exodus to come.

Second, moving beyond the immediate context, Beale suggests that “types may be discernible in the central theological message of the literary unit and not in the minute details of a particular verse.” For example, Jeremiah’s portrayal of the lament and grief over the Assyrian and Babylonian exile, metaphorically presented as Rachel weeping for her children (Jer 31:15), possesses a prophetic and prototypical announcement when one considers how this verse is couched within the messianic and eschatological setting of Jeremiah 31-34 as a whole. Matthew’s appeal to this passage (Matt 2:17-18) is understandable for the tears of the exile begun in Jeremiah’s day and associated with restoration (Jer 31:15-20) have climaxed with the tears of the mothers of Bethlehem (Ramah located not far from Bethlehem), coinciding with the arrival of the Son, who brings the new covenant and the people back from exile (Jer 31:31-34).

Third, if the immediate or broader literary context does not explicitly disclose a particular type, though textual hints and clues are present that the original OT author grasped some measure of the typological import of the larger than life features, the later

---

SBJT 12 (2008): 52-77, also provides three criteria for the evidence of a type: linguistic correspondence, sequential event correspondence, and redemptive historical import.

146Beale, Handbook, 23.

147Carson, Matthew 1-12, 95; W. D. Davies and Dale C. Allison, Jr., Matthew 1-7, ICC, vol. 1 (New York: T & T Clark, 1988; repr., 2006), 266-69; Hays, Reading Backwards, 41-43.
OT intertextual development at the epochal level reveals and deepens the typological significance and thus provides the clarifying textual warrant. Paying close attention to the redemptive historical trajectory and observing the repetitions of earlier OT references in later OT prophetic contexts indicates the presence of a typological pattern. Melchizedek, discussed earlier, is an example of a figure who receives more clarity as a type in Psalm 110 than in the context of Genesis 14. The repetition of the flood theme in the latter prophets (Isa 24:18, 28:2, 43:2, 54:8-9; Dan 9:26) and the development of Israel’s promised land (Isa 51:2-3; Ezek 36:35, 47:1-12; Joel 2:3; Zech 14:8-11; cf. Ps 2; 37; 72) are also cases in point. More examples could be given, but the lucidity of the typological correspondences emerges through the progress of revelation as later OT writers build upon and recapitulate past themes, further projecting the anticipatory import of certain OT persons, events, and institutions. The NT authors also benefit in having additional revelation with the coming and resurrection of Christ. They observe the fulfillment in Christ and shed further light and clarity on the typological roles of OT types and their corresponding antitypes.

Fourth, as Beale observes, if the OT itself shows that a later person carries on the typological function of an earlier person, “who is clearly viewed as a type of Christ by the NT, then this later OT person is also likely a good candidate to be considered to be a type of Christ.” For example, the covenantal headship and role of Adam is carried through other covenant mediators, such as Noah, Abraham, the nation of Israel, and David.

For the universalism of the land promise as a typological pattern in contrast to the dispensational view, which affirms a literalistic fulfillment of Palestine to ethnic Israel in the future, see Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 750-72; Philip Johnston and Peter Walker, eds., The Land of Promise: Biblical, Theological and Contemporary Perspectives (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2000); W. D. Davies, The Gospel and the Land: Early Christianity and Jewish Territorial Doctrine (Berkeley: University of California, 1974; repr., Sheffield: JSOT, 1994); Oren R. Martin, Bound for the Promised Land: The Land Promise in God’s Redemptive Plan, NSBT 34 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2015); Christopher C. Hong, To Whom the Land of Palestine Belongs (Hicksville, NY: Exposition, 1979); Holwerda, Jesus and Israel, 85-112; and J. G. Millar, “Land,” in NDBT, 623-27.

Adam and David are clearly viewed as typological of Christ (Gen 1-3; 5:1-2; Ps 8:4-8; and Dan 7:13-14 for Adam; Ps 2, other Davidic psalms, etc., for David), but given how the other partners of God’s covenants carry out Adam’s role of kingly dominion, they too serve a typological function. Another example, and linked to Adam, is the “seed” theme which typologically points to Christ and the church. The seed promise goes through Abraham and develops through the patriarchs, narrows down to the Davidic king, and culminates in Christ (Gal 3:16). Therefore, the patriarchs, Isaac and Jacob, key individuals through whom the seed theme progresses, along with all the Davidic kings in terms of office, are all part of this typological pattern that points to Christ.\(^{150}\) Joshua, who takes the mantle of Moses (who clearly is typological of Christ), and the whole institution of the prophets derived from Moses, should also be considered as types.

Other principles could be added, but these four points provide the guard rails for ascertaining whether an OT historical person, event, or institution prefigures a corresponding NT antitype. Two other points should also be kept in mind. First, the redemptive historical import of types coincides with the unfolding of the biblical covenants. Types are not merely sprinkled throughout the OT that arbitrarily appear here and there. The typological patterns are embedded in the eschatological orientation of the

\(^{150}\)Whether Joseph is typological of Christ is difficult to ascertain. Hamilton, “Was Joseph a Type of the Messiah?,” argues that he is based on linguistic and sequential event correspondence and redemptive historical considerations. Gerard Van Groningen, *Messianic Revelation in the Old Testament* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1990), 165-67; and Johnson, *Him We Proclaim*, 215, also considers Joseph a messianic type. The problem with appealing to linguistic correspondences and historical event sequences are that these only establish analogies between Joseph and David (e.g., both having the Spirit, being handsome in appearance, etc), but this does not reveal any prophetic aspect characteristic of typological patterns. The same argument applies to Nicholas P. Lunn, “Allusions to the Joseph Narrative in the Synoptic Gospels and Acts: Foundations of a Biblical Type,” *JETS* 55 (2012): 27-41, who finds a number of verbal allusions to the Joseph story in Luke-Acts, but again while the parallels are there, whether the prophetic import is present is not so easily discernible. One has to be careful not to press the details of the narrative too far; this is a problem that plagues Hamilton’s other article on typology as well. Hamilton, “The Typology of David’s Rise to Power.” More promising is Hamilton’s appeal to redemptive historical import as Joseph may be situated in the broader theme of the seed of the woman contending against the seed of the serpent. However, caution is still in order because David comes from the line of Judah, not of Joseph, and the later OT writers and NT writers do not seem to draw significant attention to Joseph in terms of prefiguring him or casting him as a type of the Messiah even if he is the subject of discussion (Acts 7).
OT itself which moves along the covenants. Since the covenants are fundamental to the plot structure of the Bible, they serve as the framework that the typological patterns move along and develop in pointing to Christ.\(^{151}\) Tracing the advance of a plausible typological pattern in relation to the covenants assists the reader in validating both the presence and meaning of the type and antitype relationship. How one puts together the covenants will have significant impact in how one interprets typological patterns as will be explored with how covenant and dispensational theologians interpret typological patterns that stand at the core of their respective theological systems.

Second, when dealing with an OT type it is important to note that not all the details and aspects of that particular person, event, and institution are typological.\(^{152}\) Only what is central theologically and specifically prophetic and divinely designed is typological. David is a type of Christ, but not every detail of his circumstances and life events are. Fascinating analogous features may be present in a particular OT type that coordinate with the NT antitype, but that does not necessarily mean that these specific details are also typological. Isaac is a type in terms of the broader seed theme, but caution is needed when one considers Abraham’s offering of Isaac in Genesis 22. Abraham’s willingness to not spare his son points to God’s offering of his Son (Rom 8:32); the ram that is sacrificed as a substitute for Isaac is a type as it serves as a prelude to the sacrificial system which is fulfilled in Christ’s atoning sacrifice, but Isaac’s carrying the wood and

\(^{151}\)Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 107; and see Gentry, “The Significance of Covenants,” 22-33, for how this approach differs from other biblical theological methodologies. Also seeking to discern types through a covenantal framework is David Schrock, “What Designates a Valid Type? A Christotelic, Covenantal Proposal,” *STR* 5 (2014): 3-26. Schrock’s approach is similar to mine; nevertheless, Schrock’s acceptance of ikonic mimēsis (14), which still entails allegorization (see nn. 8-9 in this chap.), and his unconvincing example of Rahab’s scarlet thread as a type organically linked to the covenantal structure of Passover (11-12, 25), leaves one with questions regarding his overall proposal. Goldsworthy, *Christ-Centered Biblical Theology*, 187, rightly states, “The redness of Rahab’s cord is not a type of Christ’s blood.”

his near sacrifice as a burnt offering should not be construed as typological. The texts indicate not only what is typological but also to what degree that extends to the details of the type in question just as a careful reading uncovers the areas of similarity and contrast and the nature of the fulfillment between the type and antitype.

**Typology and Sensus Plenior**

Lastly, since the presence and meaning of a typological pattern become more transparent through the textual development in the epochal and canonical horizons, the question of the relationship between the human and divine author and the issue of *sensus plenior* naturally arises. Was the anticipatory and indirectly prophetic import of OT persons, events, and institutions hidden from the earlier OT authors only to be revealed

---


by the divine author in later OT authors and NT writers? If so what about the grammatical-historical hermeneutic that locates meaning in the human author’s intention? Or does the later development of typology annul the OT author’s willed meaning, as Leithart postulates, “Typology is deliberate foreshadowing, and the change in meaning from expectation to conclusion is the change from promise to fulfillment. The original text changes meaning when brought into relation to other texts.”

A complete analysis of these topics cannot be managed here, but some brief comments are in order. First, the concept of sensus plenior can be helpful depending on how it is defined and whether it is conceived to be part of the literal sense. Based on the previous discussion of Scripture having only one sense, the sensus literalis, if the

\[\text{Leithart, Deep Exegesis, 64. Enns, “Fuller Meaning, Single Goal,” 167-217, also represents a position where the NT authors perceived new meanings in the OT texts that are not necessarily close to the meanings intended by the original authors.}

\[\text{The often cited definition of sensus plenior (SP) comes from the Catholic scholar who wrote frequently on the subject. See Raymond E. Brown, The Sensus Plenior of Sacred Scripture (Baltimore: St. Mary’s University, 1955), 92: “The sensus plenior is that additional, deeper meaning, intended by God but not clearly intended by the human author, which is seen to exist in the words of a biblical text (or group of texts, or even a whole book) when they are studied in the light of further revelation or development in the understanding of revelation.” See also Herman Bavinck, Prolegomena, vol. 1 of Reformed Dogmatics, ed. John Bolt, trans. John Vriend (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2003), 396-97, who describes the SP even though the term was not specifically used until the twentieth century. For Brown, the SP takes into account the words of a text but not the things written about in the text. Therefore, typology, or the “typical sense” as he describes it, differs and is distinct from the SP (in the typical sense, the things that take on a deeper meaning are the typological persons, events, and institutions in Scripture). Moo, “The Problem of Sensus Plenior,” 201-2, follows Brown’s definition. For many evangelicals, this distinction is not retained as the SP characterizes the fuller meaning intended by God but in some degree unknown by the human author which would include typology. W. Edward Glenny, “The Divine Meaning of Scripture: Explanations and Limitations,” JETS 38 (1995): 499-500, rightly points this out: “Typology by definition involves an extension of the concept found in the original affirmation (a pattern). This is of course a fuller divine meaning. Moo [and Brown] differentiates the two by describing the sensus plenior as the deeper meaning of words and typology as the deeper meaning of things. Since words represent things, the distinction is difficult to maintain.” Some Roman Catholic scholars did not ascribe the SP to the literal sense since that sense was viewed strictly as the human author’s intention. For Brown, the SP was not a “second literal sense” but rather a deepening—“an approfondissement”—of the one and only literal sense of the text. Brown, The Sensus Plenior of Sacred Scripture, 113, 145; Raymond E. Brown, “The Sensus Plenior in the Last Ten Years,” CBQ 25 (1963): 262-85, see 274-75; cf. Leopold Sabourin, The Bible and Christ: The Unity of the Two Testaments (New York: Alba House, 1980), 146-53. On the other hand, other Catholic scholars, such as Jean Daniélou, rejected the SP entirely since they linked the human authorial intent with the literal sense, and then everything beyond the literal sense was understood to be the spiritual or typical sense. So Raymond Brown, “The History and Development of the Theory of a Sensus Plenior,” CBQ 15 (1953): 153.} \]
sensus plenior is defined as an additional sense then such would have to be rejected. However, in evangelical discussions, the sensus plenior is that fuller divine meaning that transcends the understanding of the human author, being another dimension or level of the meaning, but not a completely different meaning or sense.

Some scholars, such as France and Baker, locate the literal meaning strictly to the grammatical-historical study of the human author’s willed intent found in the original context. The grammatical-historical method is required by the doctrine of inspiration, for God has caused his words to be written by human authors in various times, cultural settings, and in diverse situations, and they wrote to be understood by their audiences. But the problem with strictly limiting interpretation in this approach, noted by S. Lewis Johnson, is that Scripture is not just a human product, but a divine one as well. The identity between God’s words and the words of the biblical authors means that interpreters must understand the human author’s intent to ascertain God’s intent. However, the grammatical-historical approach is not sufficient if it is only left to the immediate literary context; the meaning of a text within the canonical context must be accounted for since the Bible is unified, the Holy Spirit being the author of the whole, and so should be read as one book. With revelation unfolding progressively—the literary corpus of the canon increasing over time—the OT authors would not have known where the whole revelation was going, nor the total scope to which his writing was ordained, and therefore would not

---

157 J. I. Packer, “Infallible Scripture and the Role of Hermeneutics,” in Scripture and Truth, ed. D. A. Carson and John D. Woodbridge (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1992), 349-50; cf. Poythress, “Divine Meaning,” 277-79. However, the doctrine of inspiration does not require that the human and divine authorial intent are of a singular, undivided meaning as in Kaiser’s single intent approach. For a critique of this approach, see Jared M. Compton, “Shared Intentions? Reflections on Inspiration and Interpretation in Light of Scripture’s Dual Authorship,” Themelios 33 (2008): 23-33. Compton, “Shared Intentions?, 33, helpfully finds that “inspiration does not require that the divine and human intentions be absolutely coextensive” and further, “while interpretation depends on the existence of overlap between the divine and human authors, its stability does not demand complete overlap.” Hermeneutical stability is provided by means of the completed canon and the progressive revelation it comprises.

have exhaustively understood the meaning, implications, and possible applications of all
that they wrote (see 1 Pet 1:10-12).\textsuperscript{159} The later parts of Scripture draw out and develop
earlier texts that are consistent with the OT authors’ understanding and yet adds clarity to
the anticipatory import of their writings.\textsuperscript{160} The \textit{sensus plenior} is helpful then in
recognizing the added dimensions of meaning, specifically the divine author’s intent in
light of the entire canon.\textsuperscript{161} This fuller sense also coincides with the “mystery” motif
referred to previously—simultaneously there are elements of the gospel grounded and

\textsuperscript{159}Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 393; Gentry and Wellum, \textit{Kingdom through
Covenant}, 85; Hoskins, \textit{Jesus as Fulfillment}, 26; Sabourin, \textit{The Bible and Christ}, 147; McCartney and
original human author may often have had an inkling that his words were pregnant with meaning he
himself did not yet understand, but he would not have been in a position to see the entire context of his
words.” On 1 Pet 1:10-12, Glenny, following Grudem, argues that v. 11 should be understood to mean that
the prophets were inquiring as to “who or what time.” Glenny, “Divine Meaning of Scripture,” 486,
perceptively adds that “1 Pet 1:12 states that it was made known to the OT prophets that they were not
ministering the things concerning Christ’s sufferings and subsequent glory to themselves but to the NT
people of God. That would be hard to comprehend if they understood all of it themselves.” Another passage
in support of a concept of SP is Dan 12:6-9.

\textsuperscript{160}Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 393; Gentry and Wellum, \textit{Kingdom through
of Sensus Plenior,” 206, writes, “God knows, as He inspires the human authors to write, what the ultimate
meaning of their words will be; but it is not as if he has deliberately created a \textit{double entendre} or hidden a
meaning in the words that can only be uncovered through a special revelation. The ‘added meaning’ that
the text takes on is the product of the ultimate canonical shape—though, to be sure, often clearly perceived
only on a revelatory basis.”

\textsuperscript{161}Vanhoozer, \textit{Is There a Meaning}, 263-65; Oss, “Canon as Context,” 116-17, 121; Glenny,
“The Divine Meaning,” 497-99; Beale, “Did Jesus and His Followers Preach?,” 400; Moo, “The Problem
329, writes that acknowledging the Scripture as the word of God “calls for recognition of dual authorship
where the divine intention appropriates, superintends, or supervenes on the human intention. . . . As with
any action, we can adequately identify what has been done in Scripture only by considering its action as a
\textit{whole}. The divine intention most comes to light when God’s communicative acts are described in
\textit{canonical} context.” Where the divine author’s meaning has little or no relationship to the meaning of
the human author then the problem with figural and allegorical readings resurfaces. For a discussion and
critique of this approach, see Poythress, “Divine Meaning of Scripture,” 243; and Michael D. Williams,
Williams’ rightly states, “\textit{Sensus Plenior} interpretation must be a development of what is said via authorial
intention. The fuller sense should be just that, a fuller sense of what is already present, not an entirely other
sense, as one finds in allegorical interpretation. While it is fair to see an oak within an acorn, it is not fair to
see a cow within an acorn. But we must not lose sight of the author and his intention” (emphasis original).
predicted in the OT even though hidden until the advent of Christ. Therefore, God’s fuller meaning, though never less than nor detached from the intended meaning of the human author, as “revealed when the text is exegeted in its canonical context, in relation to all that went before and came after, is simply extension, development, and application of what the writer was consciously expressing.”¹⁶²

The study of typology then, involves the *sensus plenior* of OT persons, events, institutions, and offices. The earlier OT authors would not have grasped the complete prefigurative import even though they would have recognized something of the “larger than life” features of the OT type.¹⁶³ Later revelation adds clarity to the prophetic expectation of the OT type and this is “open to verification, since the texts relevant to each type and antitype are within the canon.”¹⁶⁴

---

¹⁶² Packer, “Infallible Scripture,” 350. See also Johnson, *The Old Testament in the New*, 50; Bock, “Evangelicals and the Use of the Old,” 309, 315-16. Elsewhere, J. I. Packer, “Biblical Authority, Hermeneutics and Inerrancy,” in *Jerusalem and Athens: Critical Discussions on the Theology and Apologetics of Cornelius Van Til*, ed. E. R. Geehan (Nutley, NJ: P & R, 1971), 147-48, puts it this way: “Since God has effected an identity between their words and his, the way for us to get into his mind, if we may thus phrase it, is via theirs. Their thoughts and speech about God constitute God’s own self-testimony. If, as in one sense is invariably the case, God’s meaning and message through each passage, when set in its total biblical context, exceeds what the human writer had in mind, that further meaning is only an extension and development of his, a drawing out of implications and an establishing of relationships between his words and other, perhaps later, biblical declarations in a way that the writer himself, in the nature of the case, could not do. . . . The point here is that the *sensus plenior* which texts acquire in their wider biblical context remains an extrapolation on the grammatico-historical plane, not a new projection on to the plane of allegory. And, though God may have more to say to us from each text than its human writer had in mind, God’s meaning is never less than his” (emphasis original).

¹⁶³ Perhaps if Brown had considered SP to include typology and held to a different view of inspiration, then he might not have abandoned it in the end. In his later writings he noticed that the SP as he conceived it was almost never appealed to and used, even by scholars who accepted it. See Raymond E. Brown, “The Problems of the *Sensus Plenior*,” *Ephemerides Theologicae Lovanienses* 43 (1967): 460-69, esp. 462 and 464. Raymond E. Brown, “Hermeneutics,” in *The Jerome Biblical Commentary*, ed. Raymond E. Brown, Joseph A. Fitzmyer, and Roland E. Murphy (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1968), 618, found that the SP “is seldom verified and so is of little use in justifying or explaining NT, patristic, liturgical, or ecclesiastical exegesis. It is interesting to note that the proponents of the SP tend to confine their discussion of this sense to the theoretical plane, seldom appealing to it in their works of exegesis.” For further discussion, see Matthew W. I. Dunn, “Raymond Brown and the Sensus Plenior Interpretation of the Bible,” *Studies in Religion* 36 (2007): 531-51.

Summary

Typology is a crucial area for resolving the debates of systems of theologies. The theological proposal offered here has sought to carefully distinguish it from allegorization while offering adequate textual and hermeneutical controls for identifying type-antitype relationships. The antitype is either the complete or partial fulfillment of the type such that one should not expect a return of the type. Chapter 5 will seek to demonstrate that the nation of Israel is a typological pattern, though not in every detail or category, which finds its fulfillment in Christ. Before examining that typological relationship, the next two chapters offer the hermeneutics of covenant and dispensational theology, and how they understand the role of Israel in terms of typology and fulfillment through the unfolding of the covenants.
CHAPTER 3
THE HERMENEUTICS OF COVENANT THEOLOGY

Covenant or Reformed theology is a system of theology that stresses the continuity of the Bible as the “architectonic structure” or matrix providing the context for recognizing the unity of the Bible amid its diversity is the covenant. According to Robert Letham, the covenant received more detailed attention in the sixteenth century with the initial impetus arising because of the Anabaptist challenge to infant baptism. A defense of infant baptism was provided through the unity of the covenant with the practice of circumcision for Abraham’s offspring being analogous to baptism. In Reformed federal or covenant theology, three covenants are set forth which undergird this system. R. Scott Clark explains,

Those three covenants are (1) the pretemporal covenant of redemption (pactum salutis) between the Father and the Son, (2) a historical covenant of works between God and Adam as the federal head of humanity (foedus operum), and (3) a covenant of grace with the elect, in Christ, administered through a series of covenants from Adam to Christ.

---


The inter-Trinitarian covenant of redemption or counsel of peace, whereby the Father elects a people in the Son who is the guarantor and mediator of their redemption with saving faith applied by the Spirit, will not receive attention since the other two overarching theological covenants specifically concern the issue of continuity and discontinuity, centering as they do on the covenants established in history. The covenant of works and the covenant of grace are the two main constructs for how covenant theologians understand the unity of the Bible and unfold the progress of revelation. I concentrate on these two covenantal constructs and later address how these concepts shape the covenantalist’s ecclesiology and understanding of Israel.

Before unpacking the covenants of works and grace, two points should be noted. First, there are a variety of forms of covenant theology—Presbyterian and Dutch Reformed, Seventh Day Adventist, Federal Vision, and the New Perspective of Paul.  


Reformed Baptist covenant theology or 1689 Federalism also posits a covenant of works and covenant of grace, but their understanding of covenant theology diverges at significant areas from paedobaptist covenant theology. Since Baptists are in general agreement on the topic of baptism and the church as a regenerate community, the Reformed Baptist covenant theology will not receive attention in this study. Rather, the focus is particularly centered upon traditional paedobaptist covenant theology of a Presbyterian and Dutch Reformed heritage and how their form of covenant theology shapes their understanding of Israel typology as well as their ecclesiological conclusions regarding Israel and the church.

Second, there are competing views as to the nature and definition of covenant. The role and presence of oaths and the question as to whether covenants normalize existing relationships or create new relationships are just some of the issues that have arisen in recent scholarship. Furthermore, classifying covenants as conditional or

---


bilateral (sometimes referred to as suzerain-vassal) and unconditional or unilateral (sometimes referred to as royal grant) surfaces frequently in the discussions where covenants are defined. Defining God-human covenants is also disputed depending on how narrow or broad one casts the biblical data. Williamson and Stek suggest a narrow definition of covenant such that formal oaths were indispensable to the covenant that formalized existing relationships but did not establish them (thus they reject any notion of a covenant with Adam or creation). On the other hand, traditional covenantalists have described covenants in broader terms. For example, Williams finds that insisting on a single definition for covenant is inappropriate. He explains, “A covenant is a relationship between persons, begun by the sovereign determination of the greater party, in which the greater commits himself to the lesser in the context of mutual loyalty, and in which mutual obligations serve as illustrations of that loyalty.”


9 Michael D. Williams, *Far as the Curse Is Found: The Covenant Story of Redemption* (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2005), 45-46. Robertson, *The Christ of the Covenants*, 4-15, also appeals to a broad description of covenant pointing to the concept of “bond” or “relationship” with “a pledge to life and death” in order to defend his definition of covenant as “a bond in blood sovereignly administered.” Similarly, Collins, *Genesis 1-4*, 113, infers a general description for the notion of covenant: It “formally binds the parties together in a relationship; they are to be true to the covenant by keeping their promises of loyalty and commitment. There will be consequences for keeping or not keeping the covenant.” Thomas Edward McComiskey, *The Covenants of Promise: A Theology of the Old Testaments Covenants* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1985), 63, argues that the “basic idea underlying the concept of bĕrît is that of a relationship involving obligation.” Similarly, Meredith G. Kline, *By Oath Consigned: A Reinterpretation of the Covenant Signs of Circumcision and Baptism* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1968), 16. Dumbrell, *Covenant and Creation*, 20, determines from the secular biblical examples that “covenants presupposed a set of existing relationships to which by formal ceremony they gave binding expression. They operated between two parties, though the status of the parties varied considerably.” For covenant theologians defining covenants in light of ancient Near Eastern suzerain-vassal treaties, see Kline, *By Oath Consigned*, 14-22; J. V. Fesko,
a general definition is necessary, and accordingly, find that “a covenant is a solemn agreement with oaths and/or promises, which imply certain sanctions or legality.” With these general descriptions of the concept of the covenant, I turn now to focus on how covenant theologians put together the storyline of Scripture through their understanding of the covenants.

**Covenant of Works**


---

10Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond, 17; cf. Horton, Introducing Covenant Theology, 10; Daniel McManigal, Encountering Christ in the Covenants: An Introduction to Covenant Theology (West Linn, OR: Monergism, 2013), 3-4; David McKay, The Bond of Love: Covenant Theology and the Contemporary World (Fearn, Scotland: Christian Focus, 2001), 11-14. For a more technical study, see Hugenberger, Marriage as a Covenant, 171-74. Hugenberger uses a concept-oriented approach to covenant in order to distill the common features involved in the covenant arrangement and finds six senses for בְּרִית: (1) The predominant and most frequent sense where covenant stands for “an elected as opposed to natural, relationship of obligation established under divine sanction.” (2) Occasionally, the term stands for “a shared commitment to a stipulated course of action, established under divine sanction” (see Ezra 10:3 where the term bears the sense of ‘pact’). (3) The term can bear the sense of documentary witness (books/tables) of the covenant (see 1 Kgs 8:21). (4) The term bears the sense of ‘the sign of the covenant’ instead of the covenant relationship (see Gen 17:13). (5) בְּרִית can also signify a specific obligation undertaken within the covenant (Lev 24:8). (6) Idiomatic expressions are used with the term such as מִקְרַת בְּרִית (‘to cut a covenant’) and מְנַצֵּח לְבָרִית where the servant of the Lord is “given as a covenant.”

11Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 57-58, 72; Christopher J. H. Wright, Knowing Jesus
theologian John Murray, also challenges the idea of a pre-fall covenant because “the word covenant in Scripture is always used in a context of redemption. God establishes his covenant with fallen man, in order to provide a way whereby fallen humankind can be redeemed from sin.”12 Third, while the early chapters of Genesis contain commands and conditions, no oath, solemn obligation, or covenant ratification ceremony, is necessary for the concept of a b’rit.13 Nevertheless, the covenant of works, sometimes labeled as the covenant of creation, nature, or law, is an old Reformed doctrine and essential to federal theology. Not only is this doctrine present in the past luminaries of the Reformed traditions, but recent studies of the Genesis narrative (Gen 2:15-17; 6:17-18; 9:8-17), along with indications from the rest of Scripture (e.g., Rom 5:12-21, 8:20; 1 Cor 15:20-23, 45-49; Heb 2:5-18), have confirmed that Genesis 1-2 is a covenantal context with Adam as the

---

12Hoekema, Created in God’s Image, 121; cf. John Murray, Collected Writings of John Murray, vol. 2, Systematic Theology (Carlisle, PA: Banner of Truth, 1977), 49. Hoekema and Murray challenge the expression of the “covenant of works” but approve of the concepts behind the covenant of works, such as acknowledging Adam as a representative or federal head. Following Murray is McGowan, Adam, Christ and Covenant, 111-28, as he advances a headship theology rather than a covenant of works. See also Fred H. Klooster, “The Biblical Method of Salvation: A Case for Continuity,” in Continuity and Discontinuity: Perspectives on the Relationship between the Old and New Testaments, ed. John S. Feinberg (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 1988): 149. Klooster contends that biblical covenants presuppose questioning, uncertainty, and the need for reassurance, which are all the results of sin. Similarly, Stek, “‘Covenant’ Overload,” 40, argues, “Covenants served rather to offer assurances, bolster faith, and reinforce commitments. In a world not invaded by sin, there would be no need for adding oaths to commitments, no need for ‘covenants’—no more than in such a world would oaths be necessary to establish the truth of one’s ‘yes’ or ‘no’ (see Matt. 5:34-37; Jas. 5:12; cf., Heb 6:16). Biblical covenants were ad hoc emergency measures occasioned by and ministering to human weaknesses—until the kingdom of God has fully come.” G. C. Berkouwer, Sin, Studies in Dogmatics, trans. Philip C. Holtrop (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1971), 207-9, disputes the notion of a covenant of works wanting to avoid that man’s original relation with God was strictly legal or could be merited by obedience. Other critiques are summarized in Peter Golding, Covenant Theology: The Key of Theology in Reformed Thought and Tradition (Fearn, Scotland: Christian Focus, 2004), 105-9.

federal head of humanity. In terms of the theological content and formulation of the covenant of works, Charles Hodge offers an apt description:

God having created man after his own image in knowledge, righteousness, and holiness, entered into a covenant of life with him, upon condition of perfect obedience, forbidding him to eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil upon the pain of death. According to this statement, (1.) God entered into a covenant with Adam. (2.) The promise annexed to that covenant was life. (3.) The condition was perfect obedience. (4.) Its penalty was death.

Hodge’s description indicates that the covenant of works is a conditional covenant of love and law. Adam, created in a state of innocence and “in a state of positive righteousness—with all of its requisite natural and moral abilities to fulfill the commission entrusted to him,” was situated in a probationary test or trial period such that his

---


15 Charles Hodge, Systematic Theology (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1982), 2:117; cf. Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 215-17, who has a similar breakdown of the covenant of works but has a fifth element regarding the sacrament or seal of the covenant of works. Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond, 45, define the covenant of works as “God’s commitment to give Adam, and his posterity in him, eternal life for obedience or eternal death for disobedience.” Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 2:567, writes, “It was called ‘covenant of nature,’ not because it was deemed to flow automatically and naturally from the nature of God or the nature of man, but because of the foundation on which the covenant rested, that is, the moral law, was known to man by nature, and because it was made with man in his original state and could be kept by man with the powers bestowed on him in creation, without the assistance of supernatural grace. Later, when the term occasioned misunderstanding, it was preferentially replaced by that of ‘covenant of works’; and it bore this name inasmuch as in this covenant eternal life could only be obtained in the way of works, that is, in the way of keeping God’s commandments.” For detailed discussion of the covenant of works, see Witsius, Economy of Covenants, 1:41-161; and Johannes Cocceius, The Doctrine of the Covenant and Testament of God, Classic Reformed Theology, vol. 3, ed. Casey Carmichael (Grand Rapids: Reformation Heritage, 2016), 27-57. Significant statements on the covenant of works are in the Westminster Confession of Faith, chap. 7, secs. 1 and 2, and chap. 19, sec. 1.
obedience and covenant loyalty and love would have merited him the right to eat from
the Tree of Life, implicitly meaning that God would confirm him in everlasting peace and
righteousness.\textsuperscript{16} The covenant was legal in nature, for the stipulation entailed the penalty
of death for disobedience (Gen 2:17). Since Adam was not just the natural head of a
humanity, but the federal head or legal representative of all mankind, his transgression
broke the covenant and the guilt associated with Adam’s actions were imputed to his
children. The covenant of works is important not only for hamartiology, but also for the
principle of corporate solidarity with persons being either in union with Adam or in Christ.
The active obedience of Christ, with Christ perfectly satisfying the law of God in his life
as a representative of his people, and the law/gospel distinction that weaves through both
the OT and NT, both receive their foundation in Reformed theology through the doctrine
of the covenant of works.

The Perpetuity of the
Covenant of Works

As to the perpetuity of the covenant of works, there is debate among advocates
of covenant theology. Hodge, Berkhof, and Reymond affirm that the covenant of works is

not all covenant theologians agree that Adam was placed on probation. McKay, \textit{The Bond of Love}, 16,
states that the probationary notion is “highly speculative,” but he does acknowledge that it is the majority
opinion among covenantalists. Also rejecting the probationary character of the covenant of creation is
issue involving the covenant of works is the presence of God’s grace in this covenant. Both Horton and
Robert L. Reymond, \textit{A New Systematic Theology of the Christian Faith}, 2\textsuperscript{nd} ed. (Nashville: Thomas Nelson
1998), 405n23, 431-33, challenge Daniel Fuller (particularly \textit{Gospel and Law: Contrast or Continuum?
[Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1980]) and John Murray. The latter, according to Horton and Reymond,
icorrectly views divine covenants as always entailing elements of grace; hence, Murray rejects the covenant
of works. On the other hand, Reymond and other covenant theologians refute Fuller’s views because of his
claim that God’s grace is operative in all of God’s dealings with man, including the pre-fall situation with
Adam. Most covenant theologians understand the original relationship with humanity to be a voluntary
condescension rather than one of grace. The grace of God is expressed only after the fall while justice
serves as the governing principle that unifies the pre-fall and redemptive covenants. Besides Murray, other
covenantalists have argued for the gracious character of the covenant of works, such as Herman Bavinck,
Charles Hodge, R. L. Dabney, Geerhardus Vos, and more recently Henri Blocher.
in one sense abrogated but in another sense not abrogated.  

On the one hand, the eternal principles of justice continue to be in force as created man always owes God perfect obedience. Further, the curse on disobedience and sin remain even as the conditional promise, though not attainable after the fall, remains (Lev 18:5; Rom 2:6-14, 10:5; Gal 3:12). The covenant of works is no longer in force, however, in that the probationary period with Adam is over—all mankind was on probation in Adam and as a result are children of wrath by nature, no longer born in a natural and innocent state. Moreover, the means of life rested in Adam’s obedience, but following the fall, man cannot render perfect love and obedience to God and must find life through the second Adam, Christ, who has fulfilled the obligations to God and is the ground of man’s approbation before God. Christ keeps the requirements of the covenant of works. On the other hand, not all covenantalists are convinced of this perspective on the covenant of works. Letham, for example, argues that the effects of the covenant of works remain, for the pre-fall covenant was broken and now abolished. Man is still under obligation to obey God as his creature and not in covenantal terms. Letham writes,

There is no sacrament of this covenant left, no promise of life, only a sentence of death, and so no probationary period. There was no way back to the garden after Adam was cast out, no chance—even hypothetical—to take his place and try again. Given this there can be no active covenant.

According to Letham then, the covenant of works is not perpetual; rather, it is the law of God which was given in the covenant with Adam that remains.


19Letham, “Not a Covenant of Works,” 149. Letham advances that it is the law of God which was given in the covenant of works that remains as the law transcends and outlasts that covenant.
The Covenant of Works and the Mosaic Covenant

The question of the perpetuity of the covenant of works also relates to an area of internal debate among paedobaptist covenant theologians: was the Mosaic covenant in some sense a republication of the covenant of works? There is even much disagreement as to how standard this republication thesis was in the history of reformed thought. The seventeenth century was no stranger to the controversy on the nature of the Mosaic or Sinatic covenant, as both John Ball and Francis Turretin observed four positions in their day: (1) the Mosaic covenant as a covenant of works; (2) the covenant was considered neither a covenant of works or grace but subservient to the covenant of grace; (3) the Mosaic covenant was a mixture of the covenant of grace and works; and finally (4) the Mosaic covenant was posited in the covenant of grace, but promulgates the law.

20Horton, Introducing Covenant Theology, 97, follows what he describes as Meredith Kline’s “defense of the classic federal view, which identified Israel’s national covenant (Sinai) with law (indeed, the republication of the covenant of creation), and personal election and salvation with the covenant of grace (Abraham).” Further, Kline’s position, argues Horton, is “an elaboration of a significant Reformed consensus in the past.” On the other hand, Letham, who rejects the perpetuity of the covenant of works and the notion of the Mosaic covenant as a republication of the covenant of works, acknowledges that Kline’s position has formal similarities in Reformed Orthodoxy, but it was a “minority report” and never “adopted by any Reformed confession.” Letham, “Not a Covenant of Works in Disguise,” 152-69, esp. 169. Also advancing a similar position in line with Letham is Cornelius P. Venema, “The Mosaic Covenant: A ‘Republication’ of the Covenant of Works? A Review Article: The Law is Not of Faith: Essays on Works and Grace in the Mosaic Covenant,” MAJT 21 (2010): 57-76. Those aligned with Meredith Kline and Michael Horton in arguing that many within Reformed orthodoxy affirmed a doctrine of republication include Clark, “Christ and Covenant,” 403-28; Mark W. Karlberg, Covenant Theology in Reformed Perspective: Collected Essays and Book Reviews in Historical, Biblical, and Systematic Theology (Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock, 2000), 17-58; J. V. Fesko, “Calvin and Witsius on the Mosaic Covenant,” in The Law Is Not of Faith: Essays on Works and Grace in the Mosaic Covenant, ed. Bryan D. Estelle, J. V. Fesko, and David VanDrunen (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2009), 25-43; Brenton C. Ferry, “Works in the Mosaic Covenant: A Reformed Taxonomy,” in The Law Is Not of Faith, 76-105; and Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond, 105. See also Golding, Covenant Theology, 164-69.

For most modern advocates of the republication thesis, which falls generally under the third view listed, the Mosaic covenant is a legal, conditional covenant that shares in the substance of the covenant of grace in terms of individual salvation (post-fall salvation is always by grace through faith and not through obedient law keeping), and yet features a works principle reiterated from the covenant of works, which Israel was required to obey in order to receive the temporal covenantal blessings and retention of the land of Canaan (Lev 18:5, 26-28; 20:22).\(^\text{22}\) Israel was a corporate Adam, recapitulating Adam’s creation, fall, and also situated under probation, required to obey God’s commands to remain in the land and retain its national identity and status (Exod 20:12; 19:5, 7-8).

Instead, Israel received covenant curses for disobedience in the form of judgment and exile. These features of the Mosaic covenant typologically and pedagogically point to Christ’s obedience to the law as he fulfilled the stipulations of the covenant of works, meriting the blessings of salvation, and led his people to the everlasting rest of the eternal Promised Land.\(^\text{23}\)

---

\(^{22}\)Horton, *Introducing Covenant Theology*, 31-34, 47, 90, 94, 97-104, 130-31; Brown and Keele, *Sacred Bond*, 106-16; McManigal, *Encountering Christ of the Covenants*, 64-78; R. Fowler White and E. Calvin Beisner, “Covenant, Inheritance, and Typology: Understanding the Principles at Work in God’s Covenants,” in *By Faith Alone*, 147-70, esp. 159-70; Bryan D. Estelle, J. V. Fesko, and David VanDrunen, “Introduction,” in *The Law Is Not of Faith*, 6-14; Ferry, “Works in the Mosaic Covenant,” 96-97; Meredith G. Kline, *Kingdom Prologue: Genesis Foundations for a Covenantal Worldview* (Eugene, OR: Wipf & Stock, 2006), 320-23; note also Kline, *By Oath Consigned*, 22-25. Hodge, *Systematic Theology*, 2:375, after placing the Sinaitic covenant within the covenant of grace, also highlights two other aspects: “First, it was a national covenant with the Hebrew people. In this view the parties were God and the people of Israel; the promise was national security and prosperity; the condition was the obedience of the people as a nation to the Mosaic law; and the mediator was Moses. In this aspect it was a legal covenant. It said, ‘Do this and live.’ Secondly, it contained, as does also the New Testament, a renewed proclamation of the original covenant of works. It is as true now as in the days of Adam, it always has been and always must be true, that rational creatures who perfectly obey the law of God are blessed in the enjoyment of his favour; and that those who sin are subject to his wrath and curse.”

\(^{23}\)Proponents of the republication thesis view the Mosaic covenant as having the substance of the covenant of grace because it was a post-fall covenant with a history of grace (Abraham and the patriarchs) leading up to it and because it featured elements of grace (e.g., the sacrificial system), and because it ultimately pointed to the perfect law-keeper and redeemer, Jesus Christ.
Other covenantalists reject the republication thesis as they understand such a perspective to be at odds with consistently maintaining two separate covenants, the prelapsarian covenant of works and the postlapsarian covenant of grace with the Mosaic covenant substantially being a covenant of grace while only accidentally distinct from the other administrations of the covenant of grace.  

If what belongs to the substance of the covenant of works does not belong to the substance of the covenant of grace in any of its administrations, it is semantically and theologically problematic to denominate the Mosaic administration as in any sense a covenant of works.  

---

24 Venema, “The Mosaic Covenant,” 92. For Letham’s reasons for rejecting the notion of republication, see “Not a Covenant of Works,” 147-48. Letham argues that Israel was already in covenant with Yahweh through the promises of the Abrahamic covenant and the law was given to the people by God’s free grace. Noting God’s redemption of Israel from Egypt (Exod 20:2-3), Letham, “Not a Covenant of Works,” 147, asserts the “process was not ‘do this and live’ but ‘you are my people; therefore you shall do this, and in doing this you shall live.’” Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 3:220-21, also argues that the covenant at Sinai was not a renewal of the covenant of works; in it the law was made subservient to the covenant of grace. See also Robertson, Christ of the Covenants, 172-75; and John M. Frame, Systematic Theology: An Introduction to Christian Belief (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2013), 72-73.  

25 Venema, “The Mosaic Covenant,” 92, emphasis original. Venema adds that in positing a principle that substantially belongs to the covenant of works economy to the Mosaic administration, “the Mosaic economy is viewed as though it included features at some level of administration that belong to the substance of a different covenant, namely, the prelapsarian covenant of works.” Ibid., 93. Perhaps this concern is not misplaced as Reformed Baptist covenantalist Johnson, The Kingdom of God, 24, writes, “It is interesting to note that some within Presbyterian covenant theology have stepped closer to the Baptist position by confessing that the Mosaic Covenant was a republication of the covenant of works. This admission significantly advocates a higher degree of discontinuity between the old and new covenants because the Mosaic covenant no longer is considered a manifestation of the covenant of grace.” Of course even those advocating the republication thesis would still affirm the Mosaic covenant as a covenant of grace, so Horton, Introducing Covenant Theology, 54-55, though Horton is ambiguous about how exactly the Mosaic is a covenant of grace when he states, “The covenant of grace is uninterrupted from Adam after the fall to the present, while the Sinai Pact, conditional and typological, has now become obsolete (Heb. 8:13), its mission having been fulfilled (Gal. 3:23-4:7).” Horton, Introducing Covenant Theology, 75.
Furthermore, Venema and Letham are unconvinced with the understanding of typology that is postulated by adherents of the republication thesis. Venema particularly highlights the problem of typology:

From the vantage point of this understanding of the nature of biblical typology, it is difficult to make sense of the claim that the Mosaic administration functioned typologically as a kind of covenant of works, at least at the stratum of Israel’s inheritance of temporal blessings. In order for this to be the case, a disjunction has to be posited between Israel’s inheritance of temporal blessings and her inheritance of spiritual blessings. In the usual view of Reformed covenant theology, however, the temporal blessings promised Israel are regarded typologically as a foreshadowing of the full spiritual blessing of fellowship with God in a renewed creation. The promise to Israel of blessing and life in the land of promise represented in the state of her immaturity a picture of the fullness of salvation in the life to come. Canaan was a “type” of the “city that has foundations, whose designer and builder is God” (Heb. 11:10, ESV). Moreover, in Kline’s view of the typology of the Mosaic covenant, two radically opposed inheritance principles are posited, each of which is said to operate at a distinct level of Israel’s life, the earthly and the spiritual. In the case of Israel’s earthly inheritance, the operative principle is one of (meritorious) works; in the case of Israel’s spiritual inheritance, the operative principle is that of grace alone. The problem with this conception is that the typology of Mosaic economy does not foreshadow or prefigure, at least at the level of Israel’s existence as a nation in the land of promise, the blessings that are granted freely and graciously to the new covenant people of God. The blessings are different in kind; and the principles for the inheritance of these blessings are radically different. To put the matter differently, because the Mosaic administration actually consists of two levels of covenant administration, one of works and the other of grace, it cannot function at both levels as a typological promise of the new covenant, which is essentially and exclusively a covenant of grace.26

While the debate within covenant theology showcases an internal tension with how the Mosaic covenant is best understood within the conception of the two overarching covenants of works and of grace, all covenantalists interpret the moral law within the Mosaic covenant as functioning to instruct Israel for her need of a perfectly obedient Son and to arouse the consciousness of sin and one’s inability to obey God’s commands. Moreover, despite the debate over the principle of works in the Mosaic covenant, all covenantalists agree that the features of the Mosaic administration, such as the tabernacle, temple, priesthood, sacrifices, and the Promised Land, functioned typologically of the

spiritual blessings of the new covenant economy. To complete the overview of how covenantalists understand the progress and development of the storyline of Scripture, the crucial role of covenant of grace is explored next.

Covenant of Grace

The defining mark as a system of continuity for covenant theology is inexorably linked to the understanding of the unified and overarching covenant of grace, which stands as the framework for the whole progress of revelation after the fall. Genesis 3 through Revelation unfolds God’s plan of redemption in history as God, now appearing as Redeemer and Father, promises a Savior who will undo the curses of sin in graciously rescuing a people, all of which is ultimately realized in Jesus Christ’s obedience and atoning work. While the historical inauguration of the covenant of grace occurs with the gracious promise of a seed, a second Adam, who will crush the head of the serpent (Gen 3:15) and is then the basis for all the post-fall divine-human covenants (Noahic, Abrahamic, Mosaic, Davidic, and the new), the covenant of grace is grounded in and flows out of the covenant of redemption from eternity past, historically unfolding the way of

27While Venema opposes the typological argument of the covenant of works being republished in the Mosaic by Kline, Horton, and others, he affirms that because “the Mosaic administration of the covenant includes everything that belongs to the substance of the covenant of grace, it communicated the same grace of Christ, albeit in the form of anticipatory types and shadows, as is communicated in the new covenant in Christ. The promises and obligations of the Mosaic economy are substantially the same as the promises and obligations of the new covenant economy.” Venema, “The Mosaic Covenant,” 93. For further on how the Mosaic covenant as a covenant of grace was typological of salvation realities in Christ, see the Westminster Confession of Faith, section 7.5.

28Discussions of the covenant of grace may be found in Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 272-83; Hodge, Systematic Theology, 2:362-77; Turretin, Institutes of Elenctic Theology, 2:174-247; Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 3:193-232; Reymond, A New Systematic Theology, 503-37; Murray, Collected Writings, 4:223-40; Golding, Covenant Theology, 121-63; Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond, 57-71. See also the Westminster Confession of Faith chap. 7, secs. 3 and 5. A helpful definition of the covenant of grace is provided by Turretin, Institutes of Elenctic Theology, 2:175: “This covenant of grace is a gratuitous pact entered into in Christ between God offended and man offending. In it God promises remission of sins and salvation to man gratuitously on account of Christ; man, however, relying upon the same grace promises faith and obedience. Or it is a gratuitous agreement between God offended and man offending, concerning the bestowal of grace and glory in Christ upon the sinner upon condition of faith.” Cf. Witsius, Economy of Covenants, 1:165; Cocceius, The Doctrine of the Covenant, 71-72.
salvation throughout the testaments in terms of justification by faith alone in the mediator of this covenant, Jesus Christ. The gospel, which is the revelation of the covenant of grace, is the same throughout the storyline of Scripture, and therefore, there is one covenant of grace. To maintain the unity of the covenant of grace while also recognizing the different covenants throughout the OT and NT, covenantalists make a fundamental distinction between the substance and administrations of the covenant of grace. Furthermore, the nature of the covenant of grace is distinguished with respect to internal and external aspects, often referred to as the “dual aspect” of the covenant of grace. Each of these subjects, though vastly important, is summarized next.

The Substance and Administrations of the Covenant of Grace

By maintaining a distinction between the substance or essence and the administrations or dispensations of the covenant of grace, paedobaptist covenantalists understand a significant unity across the OT and NT that has direct ramifications for ecclesiology, especially as such a construction grounds a direct continuity between Israel and the church and establishes the basis for infant baptism. First, the substance of the covenant of grace, which accounts for the unity of the testaments and was already alluded

29According to Bavinck, *Reformed Dogmatics*, 3:215-16, “All the grace that is extended to the creation after the fall comes to it from the Father, through the Son, in the Holy Spirit. The Son appeared immediately after the fall, as Mediator, as the second and final Adam who occupies the place of the first, restores what the latter corrupted, and accomplishes what he failed to do. And the Holy Spirit immediately acted as the Paraclete, the one applying the salvation acquired by Christ. All the change that occurs, all the development and progress in insight and knowledge, accordingly, occurs on the side of the creature. . . . The Father is the eternal Father, the Son the eternal Mediator, the Holy Spirit the eternal Paraclete. For that reason the Old Testament is also to be viewed as one in essence and substance with the New Testament. . . . Although Christ completed his work on earth only in the midst of history and although the Holy Spirit was not poured out till the day of Pentecost, God nevertheless was able, already in the days of the Old Testament, to fully distribute the benefits to be acquired by the Son and the Spirit. Old Testament believers were saved in no other way than we. There is one faith, one Mediator, one way of salvation, and one covenant of grace.” On this point, see also Reymond, *A New Systematic Theology*, 528-35; Hodge, *Systematic Theology*, 2:366-73. For the covenant of redemption as the basis of the covenant of grace, see Geerhardus Vos, “The Doctrine of the Covenant in Reformed Theology,” in *Redemptive History and Biblical Interpretation: The Shorter Writings of Geerhardus Vos*, ed. Richard B. Gaffin, Jr. (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1980), 252.
to, is God’s sovereign initiative to dispense grace to sinful man so that the Lord will be
God to his people through the mediatory work of Christ, comprising of the same promises
made to Adam after the fall (Gen 3:15), to Noah (Gen 6:9; 7:1; 9:9, 26-27), to Abraham
(Gen 17:7), and through Moses (Exod 3:15; 19:5; Deut 29:13), David (2 Sam 7:14), and
lastly, having its fullness in the new covenant (Jer 31:33; Heb 8). The promised benefits
of the covenant of grace, namely reconciliation and communion with God, was granted to
OT and NT believers alike. Brown and Keele write, “The covenant of grace was
administered by type and shadow . . . during the times of the patriarchs . . . and of the
nation Israel, as believers put their trust in God’s promise to send the Messiah.”

Nevertheless, according to the wisdom of God the same covenant of grace was
dispensed in diverse manners. Turretin explains that the covenant of grace

had various forms and as it were faces, on account of the varied economy of the
mystery of Christ (who is its foundation), which God so willed to administer as to
propose it at first somewhat obscurely and then more clearly; first in the promise
and then in the fulfillment.

Clearer manifestations of the covenant of grace are revealed through redemptive history,
but the protoevangelium (Gen 3:15), Noahic, Abrahamic, Mosaic, Davidic, and new

30Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond, 59. The unity and substance of the covenant of grace
through the different dispensations or administrations is maintained for a variety of reasons including the
identity of the mediator (Jesus Christ) being the same in both the OT and NT, the summary expression of
the covenant that God will be the covenant Lord to his people occurs throughout Scripture, the same
condition of faith is required throughout, and the way of salvation is the same in the sense of the gospel
being promised (as in the OT) or completed and manifested (NT). See Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 277-
80; Turretin, Institutes of Elenctic Theology, 2:192-205; Witsius, Economy of Covenants, 1:292-306; Hodge,
Systematic Theology, 2:364-73; and Robertson, Christ of the Covenants, 45-52.

31Turretin, Institutes of Elenctic Theology, 2:216. Similarly, Witsius, Economy of Covenants,
1:308 (cf. 291), writes, “The difference of the testaments consists in the different manner of dispensing and
proposing the same saving grace, and in some different adjuncts and circumstances. Whatever was typical
in that dispensation, and denoted imperfection, and an acknowledgment that the ransom was not yet paid,
belongs to the Old Testament. Whatever shews that the redemption is actually wrought out, is peculiar to
the New Testament.” Karlberg, Covenant Theology, 22, highlighting the unity of the covenant of grace in
Heinrich Bullinger (1504-1575), observes that the “common formulation of the essential nature of the
Covenant of Grace is imbedded within the Reformed tradition. The employment of scholastic terminology
is clearly evident, viz., the terms ‘substance’ and ‘accidents.’ In substance there is unity; in accidents (the
historical administrations of the single Covenant of Grace) there is diversity.”
covenants are all administrations of the covenant of grace. Although these covenants differ in their accidental properties (nonessential parts) and are diverse and particular in terms of mode, they all profoundly agree in their substance.32

While all of the post-fall covenants are part of the unified covenant of grace, one covenantal administration plays a foundational role. According to Reymond, “Once the covenant of grace had come to expression in the spiritual promises of the Abrahamic covenant, the Abrahamic covenant became salvifically definitive for all ages to come.”33

The Abrahamic covenant is the most normative covenant for the NT economy. Berkhof writes,

[The] Sinaitic covenant is an interlude, covering a period in which the real character of the covenant of grace, that is, its free and gracious character, is somewhat eclipsed by all kinds of external ceremonies and forms. . . . In the covenant with

---


33Reymond, *A New Systematic Theology*, 512. Reymond adds, “So significant are the promises of grace in the Abrahamic covenant, found in Genesis 12:1-3; 13:14-16; 15:18-21; 17:1-16; 22:16-18, that it is not an overstatement to declare these verses, from the covenantal perspective, as the most important verses in the Bible.” Ibid., 513. Also highlighting how the concrete form of the covenant of grace is found in the Abrahamic covenant is Murray, *Collected Writings*, 4:223-24; Golding, *Covenant Theology*, 122; Berkhof, *Systematic Theology*, 295-97.
Abraham, on the other hand, the promise and the faith that responds to the promise are made emphatic.34

The Abrahamic is the model covenant for how God works out the covenant of redemption through the progress of revelation as the Abrahamic is tightly viewed in relation to the new covenant. Berkhof explains that the Abrahamic covenant “is still in force and is essentially identical with the ‘new covenant’ of the present dispensation.”35

The accent upon the Abrahamic covenant in the covenant of grace does not mean that paedobaptist covenant theologians do not see a qualitative difference between the Abrahamic and new covenant. The new covenant does not abrogate or cancel the Abrahamic, but fills out, extends, and expands it. The new covenant is really “new” in how it is distinguished from the old covenant: it is designed and received by all nations, dispensed with the highest level of grace with sin definitively dealt with, results in the democratization of the teaching and priestly offices (or the end of individuals as covenant mediators), marks out a new age with the Holy Spirit poured out on all flesh, and is the permanent and final arrangement before the restoration of all things.36 In sum, the new

34Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 296-97. See also Horton, Introducing Covenant Theology, 37, 54-57, 60, 70, 75, 106, as he views the Abrahamic covenant as an unconditional covenant of promise in contrast to the Mosaic (covenant of law). While the Mosaic is still part of the covenant of grace, the Abrahamic covenant is presented as having the basis and direct connection to the new covenant.

35Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 633; cf. Geoffrey W. Bromiley, Children of Promise: The Case for Baptizing Infants (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1979), 23-24; Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond, 86-87. Murray, The Covenant of Grace, 27, similarly writes, “The new economy as covenant attaches itself to the Old Testament covenant promise and cannot be contrasted with the Old Testament covenant in respect of that which constitutes the essence of the covenant of grace and promise. We can express the fact that the new covenant is the expansion and fulfillment of the Abrahamic by saying that it was just because the promise to Abraham had the bonded and oath-bound character of a covenant that its realization in the fullness of the time was inviolably certain. The new covenant in respect of its being a covenant does not differ from the Abrahamic as a sovereign administration of grace, divine in its inception, establishment, confirmation, and fulfillment.” Hodge, Systematic Theology, 2:373, also, appealing to Gal 3:13-28 and Rom 3:21, argues, “The covenant under which we live and according to the terms of which we are to be saved, is the identical covenant made with Abraham.”

covenant completes all the promises, preparatory types, shadows, and adumbrations of the OT economy, especially with reference to the institutions of the Mosaic covenant. Nevertheless, the new covenant is not new in terms of substance given the organic unity of the covenant of grace, but is new in form or mode only even as greater blessings are realized.

The Dual Aspect of the Covenant of Grace

Alongside the unity of the covenant of grace is another important theological consideration that will be surveyed briefly: the parties of the covenant of grace. For most


Not all covenantalists would agree that the new covenant is “new.” Some refer to the new covenant in terms of “renewal” (e.g., Kline, By Oath Consigned, 75). More recent works by covenant theologians have sought to explicate each of the historical covenants within the covenant of grace (e.g., McManigal, Encountering Christ; Brown and Keele, Sacred Bond; Robertson, Christ of the Covenants). However, covenantalists typically framed the Bible into a three-fold structure: (1) Adam to Abraham, (2) Abraham to Moses, and (3) Moses to Christ. Examples of this approach include Hodge, Systematic Theology, 2:373-76; Turretin, Institutes of Elenctic Theology, 2:220-25; while Witsius, Economy of Covenants, 1:313-17; and Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 292-300, also discuss the Noahic covenant. Others that employed the three-fold structure include William Ames and Johannes Wollebius (Joel R. Beeke and Mark Jones, A Puritan Theology: Doctrine for Life [Grand Rapids: Reformation Heritage, 2012], 263). See also Edmund P. Clowney, Preaching and Biblical Theology (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1979), 16; and Geerhardus Vos, Biblical Theology: Old and New Testaments (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1948; repr., Edinburgh: Banner of Truth, 2004). Graeme Goldsworthy rightly criticizes this approach because it does not allow the OT to speak for itself and provide its own epochal structures. Specifically, the move from Moses to David and the eschatological perspective of the latter prophets is neglected. Graeme Goldsworthy, Christ-Centered Biblical Theology: Hermeneutical Foundations and Principles (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2012), 87, 113.

covenant theologians, the covenant of grace is conceived as being both unconditional—God unilaterally establishes the covenant and meets the conditions himself through grace in Christ—and conditional—based on the suretyship of the last Adam (who fulfills the covenant of works). In addition, the covenant is conditional in that the satisfaction of covenant stipulations are met as those who receive the promises of the covenant possess the necessary responses of faith and repentance, but in a relative and instrumental sense for God provides the gift of faith.39

This understanding of the covenant naturally leads to a topic of more difficulty in regard to the parties or dual aspect of the covenant. According to most Reformed theologians, membership in the covenant of grace is defined as comprising the elect in Christ, but in other respects is delineated as consisting of believers and their children.40 With the conditionality of the covenant of grace in terms of individual faith, repentance, and covenant loyalty, the covenant of grace is not confined to the elect because this would not allow for covenant breakers.41 Regenerate and unregenerate are in the covenant of

39See Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 280-81; Murray, Collected Writings, 4:225-34; Venema, “Covenant Theology and Baptism,” 211. For how British Puritans emphasized the conditional side of the covenant of grace, confer Beeke and Jones, A Puritan Theology, 305-18. Witsius, Economy of Covenants, 1:281-91; Turretin, Institutes of Elenctic Theology, 2:184-89; and Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 3:229-30, all emphasize the unconditional and unilateral nature of the covenant of grace but also acknowledge the duties and obligations but in a manner that comports with the operations of grace which are unconditional. For a general overview, see also Stephen J. Wellum, “Baptism and the Relationship between the Covenants,” in Believer’s Baptism: Sign of the New Covenant in Christ, ed. Thomas R. Schreiner and Shawn D. Wright, NACSBT (Nashville: B & H, 2006), 105-7. Horton, Introducing Covenant Theology, argues throughout his work that the ANE covenantal forms permit classifying the Noahic, Abrahamic, Davidic, and new covenants as royal grant covenants that are thereby unconditional while the Mosaic covenant reflects a suzerain-vassal treaty and is thus conditional (e.g., 40-50, 68-69, 74-75). Nevertheless, the new covenant has a variety of conditions (182-86) that are real and yet graciously provided via Christ’s fulfillment of God’s standards (105, 184-85).

40Discussion of the dual aspect of the covenant of grace may be found in Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 284-89; Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 3:228-32, Golding, Covenant Theology, 128-30; and J. Mark Beach, “Calvin and the Dual Aspect of Covenant Membership: Galatians 3:15-22—the Meaning of the ‘the Seed’ Is Christ’—and Other Key Texts,” MAJT 20 (2009): 49-73; cf. 49-51, for a survey of Reformed theologians on this topic.

41Golding, Covenant Theology, 128. For covenant breaking in the new covenant community, see Richard L. Pratt, Jr., “Infant Baptism in the New Covenant,” in The Case for Covenantal Infant
grace as distinctions have been made between an external/internal covenant, or between essence and administration, or spiritual and natural, or legal versus a communion of life.\textsuperscript{42} However construed, as Bavinck notes, some are \textit{in} the covenant, but not \textit{of} the covenant, for the covenant of grace passes through history and through different dispensations and “is never made with a solitary individual but always also with his or her descendants.”\textsuperscript{43} The one unified covenant of grace in its essence, argues Horton, is unchangeable and inviolable because of the mediatorial work of Christ, but as an administration involves conditions:

\begin{quote}
[It] is a covenant made with believers and their children. Not everyone in the covenant of grace is elect: the Israel below is a larger class than the Israel above. Some Israelites heard the gospel in the wilderness and responded in faith, while others did not—and the writer to the Hebrews uses this as a warning also to New Testament heirs of the same covenant of grace (Heb. 4:1-11).\textsuperscript{44}
\end{quote}

In summary, covenantalists posit that the substance of the covenant of grace remains the same throughout the unfolding of the biblical covenants and the principle of covenant membership, a dual aspect, is present through each administration of the covenant of grace, including the new covenant. The Reformed theological grid of a covenant of works and covenant of grace naturally is foundational for paedobaptist covenant ecclesiology such as the mixed nature of the people of God, the notion of the visible and invisible church, and the correlation of baptism with circumcision in the OT.\textsuperscript{45}

\begin{footnotes}
\item[Bavinck, \textit{Reformed Dogmatics}, 3:231-32. For a helpful description of how unregenerate are in the covenant of grace in terms of responsibility, having a claim to the promises and being subject to the warnings of the covenant, and granted influential benefits of the Spirit, but only standing in the covenant in terms of a legal relationship, see Berkhof, \textit{Systematic Theology}, 289.]
\item[Horton, \textit{Introducing Covenant Theology}, 182.]
\item[For discussion of how the paedobaptist teaching of the covenant of grace relates to these areas of ecclesiology from a historical standpoint, see Denault, \textit{The Distinctiveness}, 39-54. Note also, Gentry and Wellum, \textit{Kingdom through Covenant}, 62-80.]
\end{footnotes}
genealogical principle—“to you and your offspring”—is constant throughout every administration of the covenant of grace, but germane for the purposes of this study are the clear implications that these theologically constructed covenants have in leading to a very tight relationship between Israel and the church.

**Israel and the Church in Covenant Theology**

Flowing straightforwardly from the unified covenant of grace that incorporates every covenant after Adam’s fall, covenant theologians stress the oneness of the people of God and the continuity between OT Israel and the church of the NT. There is one church embracing the people of God under both the old and new covenants.46 Berkhof expresses a representative view of the relationship between Israel and the church from a covenantal perspective:

> The New Testament Church is essentially one with the Church of the old dispensation. As far as their essential nature is concerned, they both consist of true believers, and of true believers only. And in their external organization both represent a mixture of good and evil. Yet several important changes resulted from the accomplished work of Jesus Christ. The Church was divorced from the national life of Israel and obtained an independent organization. In connection with this the national boundaries of the Church were swept away. What had up to this time been a national Church now assumed a universal character.47

Covenant theologians understand the unity of the people of God either in terms of replacement or fulfillment.48 Some covenantalists argue that the NT church actually


47Berkhof, *Systematic Theology*, 571. Besides the universal character that marks a contrast with Israel of old, Berkhof also notes the missionary role and spiritual worship of the church that are other changes for the church in the NT era. Berkhof appeals to the Belgic Confession, Article XXVII and the Heidelberg Catechism.

replaces OT Israel since Israel has forfeited its national identity by disobedience and faithlessness. Others refrain from the language of replacement and repudiate the accusation of supersessionism by delineating the continuity as one of fulfillment and redefinition. Regardless, as the embodiment and successor to Israel, the NT church is

---


---

For example, Bruce K. Waltke, “Kingdom Promises as Spiritual,” in Continuity and Discontinuity, 274, writes, “National Israel and its law have been permanently replaced by the church and the New Covenant.” Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 4:667, states, “The community of believers has in all respects replaced carnal, national Israel. The Old Testament is fulfilled in the New” (cf. 296). Mark W. Karlberg, “The Significance of Israel in Biblical Typology,” JETS 31 (1988): 263, 269, advances a similar line of thinking: “Israel as the old covenant people served a temporary purpose in God’s plan of salvation” and “[nation]al Israel as such does not retain its covenant identity in the new, eschatological age of the Spirit.” Note also Raymond O. Zorn, Christ Triumphant: Biblical Perspectives on His Church and Kingdom, rev. ed. (Edinburgh: Banner of Truth Trust, 1997), 22-49, esp. 30. The Seventh-Day Adventist Hans K. LaRondelle understands that Matt 21:43 “implies that Israel would no longer be the people of God and would be replaced by a people that would accept the Messiah and His message of the kingdom of God.” Hans K. LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy: Principles of Prophetic Interpretation (Berrien Springs, MI: Andrews University, 1983), 101 emphasis original; cf. 130-31. Other scholars also use the language of replacement when discussing the Israel-church relationship. For example, R. T. France, Jesus and the Old Testament: His Application of Old Testament Passages to Himself and His Mission (Vancouver: Regent College Publishing, 1998), 67, writes, “The implication is that the Jewish nation has no longer a place as the special people of God; that place has been taken by the Christian community, and in them God’s purposes for Israel are to be fulfilled.” Cf. John Bright, The Kingdom of God (Nashville: Abingdon, 1953), 228.

For example, Horton, The Christian Faith, 730-31, writes, “The church does not replace Israel; it fulfills the promise God made to Abraham that in him and his seed all the nations would be blessed. . . . Israel is not replaced by the church, but is the church in nuce, just as the church is the anticipation of the kingdom of God.” Likewise, Williams, Far as the Curse Is Found, 251-52, concludes, “The church does not replace Israel, nor is it simply identical to Israel. Some new historical and redemptive development has
the “true” or “new” Israel. Israel’s promises and status are transferred to the NT church.  

Even if Romans 11 teaches a mass conversion of Jews in the future, a national and political restoration of Israel is not in purview, for all the prerogatives, promises, and prophecies to OT Israel are translated to the church.


51 Zorn, Christ Triumphant, 30-38.

52 Patrick Fairbairn, The Interpretation of Prophecy, 2nd ed. (Suffolk, UK: St Edmundsbury, 1865; repr., Edinburgh: Banner of Truth, 1993), 246, writes, “Unquestionably, there is no explicit announcement to [the re-establishment of the Jewish old economy] in the whole range of the historical and epistolary writings of the New Testament. The infliction of divine judgment upon the mass of the Jewish people, was very distinctly proclaimed by our Lord himself, with the destruction of their city and temple, and the scattering of the community at once from the kingdom of God, and from the land of their fathers. But in not so much as one passage does he unequivocally indicate for them a re-gathering to their paternal home, or a reinvestment with their former relative distinctions and privileges; far less is there any statement to imply, that the temple-worship should be again set up as the common religious centre and resort of Christendom.” Later Fairbairn explains the significance of Jews coming to faith in Christ: “The only just expectation respecting the position of the Jewish people in their converted state—that alone which is warranted by the history of the past, or seems in accordance with the great principles of Christianity, is not that their singular and isolated place after they entered the church, but that their entrance itself there shall enliven and refresh her condition.” Ibid., 264. There is a minority voice within covenant theology for making a case for a “remarkable ‘fluidity’” on the future and restoration of Israel, see Willem A. VanGemeren, “Israel as the Hermeneutical Crux in Interpretation and Prophecy,” WTJ 45 (1983): 132-44; and Willem A. VanGemeren, “Israel as the Hermeneutical Crux in Interpretation and Prophecy (II),” WTJ 46 (1984): 254-97. While VanGemeren is open to Israel’s return to the land, some covenant theologians are more outspoken for not only a future conversion of Israel, but a full blown restoration. For example, Hendrikus Berkhof, Christ the Meaning of History, trans. Lambertus Buurman (London: SCM, 1966), 139-40, claims, “No matter how far Israel drifted from God’s calling, the faith of the prophets continues to live in the New Testament. This faith was that Israel’s unfaithfulness can never cancel God’s faithfulness, and that Israel will yet take a central place among the nations in the work of salvation.” Further, Berkhof, Christ the Meaning of History, 151, explains that the “last of the prophetic proclamations is the certainty that no matter how large the detours, land and people will be reunited and Israel will reach its destiny in Canaan.” There were also diverse views regarding unfulfilled prophecy and Israel’s restoration among the Puritans, see Iain H. Murray, The Puritan...
The covenant of grace serves as the grounding for the continuity of the church throughout the OT and NT, but covenantalists also establish this position by a variety of biblical and theological arguments. The main points below are by no means exhaustive, but highlight some of the important reasons covenant theologians understand the church as a singular, unified body and covenant community throughout redemptive history.

Much attention is made to how the NT authors apply the Greek word for church (ἐκκλησία), sometimes translated “congregation” or “assembly,” to the new covenant people of God when the exact same word is used in the Septuagint (LXX) to translate the Hebrew term for assembly (קָהָל). The term “church” is an OT word as it is used for the assembly of the old covenant people of God (Deut 4:10; 9:10; 10:4). The NT church looks back to the “church in the wilderness” (Acts 7:38; 1 Cor 10:1-11; Heb 12:18-28). The OT church or assembly was a prototype of the NT church and yet the terminology of ἐκκλησία designates the essence of the church throughout both the OT and NT.

Second, the OT titles and designations for Israel are applied in the NT to the church, and as such, contend covenantalists, provide rationale for a significant degree of continuity between Israel and the church. Williams succinctly describes a variety of images of Israel applied to the church:

The image of Jesus as the bridegroom (Mark 2:18-20) and the church as the bride of Christ (2 Cor. 11:2) develop the Old Testament image of Israel as the wife of God (Isa. 54:5-8; 62:5; Jer. 2:2). Other Old Testament imagery for the people of God that is carried over into the New and applied to the church includes the church as the branches of a vine (John 15), a flock led by a shepherd (Luke 12:32; John 10:1-8), the elect (Rom. 11:28; Eph. 1:4), a priesthood (1 Peter 2:9; Rev. 1:6), the remnant

---

(Rom. 9:27; 11:5-7), the true circumcision (Rom. 2:28-29; Phil. 3:3; Col. 2:11), and Abraham’s seed (Rom. 4:16; Gal. 3:29).  

Descriptions of the church as the “saints,” the “beloved,” and the “called” could also be added as these too find their origin as references to Israel. In addition, a majority of covenant theologians understand that the church is called the “Israel of God” by Paul in Galatians 6:16. Taken together, these OT titles and descriptors of Israel that are reapplied to the NT church demonstrate that the church constitutes the true Israel.

Another key factor for understanding the continuity of the people of God is how the NT portrays the blessings, privileges, and promises to Israel as now being inherited by the church. The promises of the Abrahamic covenant come to fruition through Christ with the church as the heir of the Abrahamic blessings. All the benefits of the new covenant, including the eschatological outpouring of the Holy Spirit, pass over to the church. According to Ridderbos, because of Christ’s work of fulfillment,

---


57For discussion of these areas, confer Horton, The Christian Faith, 717-23, 729-33; Williams, Far as the Curse Is Found, 252-54; Clowney, “The New Israel,” 211-16, 219-20; Ridderbos, Paul, 336-41. Many other themes could be discussed as well including election, the church as God’s dwelling (i.e., temple), the vital union in Jesus as covenant head, and the theme of worship in the assembly of God’s people. These, and more, are discussed in Edmund P. Clowney, “The Biblical Theology of the Church,” in The Church in the Bible and the World: An International Study, ed. D. A. Carson (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1987; repr., Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock, 2002), 13-87.

all the privileges Israel as God’s people was permitted to possess recurs with renewed force and significance in the definition of the essence of the Christian church: being sons of God (Rom. 8:14ff.; Eph. 1:5); being heirs according to promise (Gal. 3:29; 4:7); sharing in the inheritance promised to Abraham (Rom. 8:17; cf. 4:13; Col. 1:2); being heirs of the kingdom of God (1 Cor. 6:9, 10; 15:50; Gal. 5:21). For this reason the church may rejoice in the hope of the glory of God (Rom. 5:2; 8:21; 2 Cor. 3:7ff.; 18; Phil. 3:19), the splendor of the presence of God among his people, once the privilege of Israel (Rom. 9:4).59

Fourth and lastly, the restoration and renewal prophecies of a nationalistic Israel regathered to the Promised Land are generally understood to have been provisional, or literally fulfilled in Israel’s history, or were spiritually and symbolically or typologically fulfilled in the church through Christ’s redemptive work. Other restoration prophecies are interpreted by covenantalists to come to complete fruition with the cosmic renewal of the new heavens and earth.60 The restoration prophecies are not to be taken in a literalistic fashion, for the prophets project the future in the historical structures and imagery to which they were accustomed. Fairbairn highlights this principle: “Situated as the prophets generally were, it was quite natural, and, in a sense, necessary, that they should speak of the better things to come in language and imagery derived from such as were known and familiar to their minds.”61 One example often presented by covenant theologians is the

59Ridderbos, Paul, 336-37.

60For discussion of the OT prophecies and promises regarding Israel’s restoration, see Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 680-749; Waltke, “Kingdom Promises,” in Continuity and Discontinuity, 280-86; Hoekema, The Bible and the Future, 206-12, esp. 209-11; Fairbairn, The Interpretation of Prophecy, 270-83; Robertson, Christ of the Prophets, 453-502, esp. 486-98; Venema, The Promise of the Future, 283-86; Hendriksen, Israel in Prophecy, 16-31; Kim Riddlebarger, A Case for Amillennialism: Understanding the End Times (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2003), 68-80; Robert B. Strimple, “Amillennialism,” in Three Views of the Millennium and Beyond, ed. Darrell L. Bock (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1999), 84-100. Robert Vasholz, “The Character of Israel’s Future in Light of the Abrahamic and Mosaic Covenants,” TrinJ 25 (2004): 39-59, seeks to move away from the spiritual fulfillment interpretative approach and instead stresses how prophecies were provisional and conditional given that they were made under the auspices of the Mosaic covenant. With the abrogation of the Mosaic covenant with the new, the provisional prophecies are annulled. For how certain OT prophecies are applied to the church by NT authors, see Oswald T. Allis, Prophecy and the Church (Philadelphia: P & R, 1945), 134-66.

citation of the prophetic words of Amos 9:11-12 in the Jerusalem council described in Acts 15. The appropriation of Amos’ prophecy in the present era with the inclusion of Gentiles serves as evidence that the “body of believers in Christ stand in unbroken continuity with the covenant community of the Old Testament.”62 The OT prophecies concerning Israel’s restoration, land, temple, and the city of Jerusalem with a Davidic king ruling over the nations are all fulfilled in Jesus Christ, the church, or await a final fulfillment with the rejuvenation of the world at the consummation.63

In sum, the establishment of the NT church, according to covenant theologians, is the fulfillment of the Abrahamic promises. The prophesied future kingdom of Israel is inaugurated through Christ. The ushering in of the kingdom by Jesus ends Israel’s exile, secures salvation, and brings about the inclusion of the Gentile nations. The joining together of Jew and Gentile in the church (Eph 2:11-22) means there will be no restoration of Israel as a nationalistic entity. Israel and the church are essentially one and differ only in terms of organized, visible representations. Closely connected to the theological arguments for the continuity of Israel and the church within the framework of the covenant of grace is how typology is understood. This final and crucial discussion of how typology is used in the ecclesiology of covenant theology will draw this hermeneutical overview to a close.


63Berkhof, *Systematic Theology*, 713, finds, “The books of the prophets themselves already contain indications that point to a spiritual fulfillment, Isa. 54:13; 61:6; Jer. 3:16; 31:31-34; Hos. 14:2; Mic. 6:6-8. The contention that the names ‘Zion’ and ‘Jerusalem’ are never used by the prophets in any other than a literal sense, that the former always denotes a mountain, and the latter, a city, is clearly contrary to fact. There are passages in which both names are employed to designate Israel, the Old Testament Church of God, Isa. 49:14; 51:3; 52:1, 2. And this use of the terms passes right over into the New Testament, Gal. 4:26; Heb. 12:22; Rev. 3:12; 21:9. It is remarkable that the New Testament, which is the fulfilment of the Old, contains no indication whatsoever of the re-establishment of the Old Testament theocracy by Jesus, nor a single undisputed positive prediction of its restoration, while it does contain abundant indications of the spiritual fulfillment of the promises given to Israel, Matt. 21:43; Acts 2:29-36, 15:14-18; Rom. 9:25, 26; Heb. 8:8-13; I Pet. 2:9; Rev. 1:6; 5:10.”
Covenant Theology and Typology

The interpretation of typological patterns in covenant theology has a deep and diverse history. A historical overview and discussion of the nature of typology within covenant theology is offered as context before focusing on how the nation of Israel functions as a type. Much of how typology is understood correlates well with the proposal for typology offered in chapter 2, but differences emerge when considering how Israel is a type given the theological framework of the covenant of works and grace.

Historical Overview

For modern day covenant theologians, influential for their understanding of typology was the mid-nineteenth century Presbyterian scholar Patrick Fairbairn (1805-1874),64 “who first developed a formal list of rules for identifying types.”65 Fairbairn avoided the penchant for allegorical interpretations. The Cocceian school—derived from Johannes Cocceius (1603-1669)—had no adequate hermeneutical controls and a potentially limitless number of OT types or analogies could be interpreted since no essential principles for identifying types were in place.66 Those who would generally fall into this

---


65Paul Nevin, “The Hermeneutics of Typology” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the National Evangelical Theological Society, Toronto, ON, December 28, 1981), 4. Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:140, notes that the typological views “of our elder divines [had no] fixed or definite rules being laid down for guiding us to the knowledge and interpretation of particular types.”

66Critiques are offered by Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:9-14. Note also Friedbert Ninow, Indicators of Typology within the Old Testament: The Exodus Motif, Friedensauer Schriftenreihe: Reihe I, Theologie, Band 4 (Berlin: Peter Lang, 2001), 28. Richard M. Davidson, Typology in Scripture: A Study of Hermeneutical ΤΥΠΟΣ Structures, Andrews University Seminary Doctoral Dissertation Series, vol. 2 (Berrien Springs, MI: Andrews University, 1981), 34-35, provides some examples of how this school viewed typical every OT event which bore superficial resemblance to Christ: “Adam’s awakening out of sleep typified Christ’s resurrection; Samson’s meeting of a lion on the way prefigured Christ’s meeting of Saul on the road to Damascus.” John Owen, on the other hand, seems to have a more cautious and
camp include Witsius, and Jonathan Edwards, among other Puritans. However, Fairbairn set rules for drawing typological relations such that through proper hermeneutics, typological relations could be found and identified without necessarily needing them to be explicitly cited as such in the NT. Haphazard, subjectively analogous, accidental, or imaginative connections were to be disregarded. Without following all of Fairbairn’s rules for understanding typology, most modern day covenantalists would be aligned with his moderate approach in evading the excesses of allegorical interpretation or the overly conservative interpretative scheme that limits typological patterns to only those the NT formally announces or identifies as such.


67For Witsius' discussion of typology, see Economy of the Covenants between God and Man, 2:188-231.


70Stek, “Biblical Typology,” 134-40, 151-54. For Fairbairn’s rules for identifying types, see his chapter, “The Interpretation of Particular Types—Specific Principles and Directions,” in Fairbairn, Typology of Scripture, 1:141-67; or the summary offered by Ninow, Indicators of Typology, 29-30.

The Nature of Typology in Covenant Theology

In covenant theology, typology is one aspect of a theology of the progression of God’s acts of salvation that is directed toward Jesus Christ and the redemption he accomplishes. All redemptive history moves forward to Christ and his work and is fulfilled in Christ and the church.\(^\text{72}\) Richard Lints asserts,

> The typological relation is the central means by which particular epochal and textual horizons are linked to later horizons in redemptive revelation. It links the present to the future, and it retroactively links the present with the past. It is founded on the organic connection of God’s promises with his fulfillment of those promises.\(^\text{73}\)

For most covenantalists, including but not limited to Vos, Berkhof, Beale, Clowney, Lints, Waltke, Karlberg, Currid, Poythress, and Stek, typology involves OT historical persons, events, or institutions that are divinely designed, having a prophetic function that anticipates greater and heightened realization in the NT, namely in Jesus Christ and the church.\(^\text{74}\) Furthermore, for covenant theology, the antitype supersedes and recognizes them. Such caution is admirable. But a better grasp of biblical theology will open for us great riches of revelation. We need not lack the sound method to find these and bring them to the people of God.”


fulfills the type, which is generally understood to be a symbol or shadow of spiritual truth possessing significance for the original reader but is then developed into a discernible pattern in redemptive history as one moves across the canon.\textsuperscript{75} There is recognition among covenantalists that some types, while initially fulfilled in Christ and the church, still await complete fulfillment in the consummated state given the structure of inaugurated eschatology.\textsuperscript{76} For example, the land promise is a type that awaits full manifestation in the new heavens and earth at Christ’s return.\textsuperscript{77} Lastly, typological patterns are legitimately identified through hermeneutical procedure as textual controls and warrant must be applied for establishing typological patterns not explicitly spelled out in the NT.\textsuperscript{78}


\textsuperscript{76}Waltke, “Kingdom Promises as Spiritual,” 279; Karlberg, “Legitimate Discontinuities,” 18-19.


Israel-Church Relationship in Covenant Theology and in Typological Perspective

With this overview of the nature of typology in Reformed thought in place, it is important to focus on the function of typology in covenant theology as it relates to Israel and the Abrahamic covenant. As discussed, covenant theology places a strong emphasis on the continuity of the church, that is, there is one church of God throughout both the Old and New Testaments because of the foundational role of the covenant of grace worked out through the administrations of the covenants. There is a continuity between Israel and the church in a variety of ways as both covenant communities are comprised of believers and unbelievers (i.e., a mixed community), the continuity in covenant signs (i.e., circumcision spiritually signifies the same realities as baptism), as well as uniformity of the salvation experience of old and new covenant believers with some modifications made for the final realities that Christ has achieved.

Interwoven with this view of Israel and the church within the covenant of grace is typology. The nation of Israel, its experiences, and the OT economy as a whole were symbolic, preparatory, and typical for covenant theologians. Promises and prophecies made to Israel are fulfilled typologically in the church; there is no room for any future restoration of national Israel subsequent or alongside Christ’s return, though some covenantalists like Witsius, Vos, Venema, Mathison, Riddlebarger, Vasholz, and Holwerda do see a future salvation and ingathering of Israel into the church based upon Romans 9-11; certainly others, like Bavinck, Berkhof, Hoekema, Hendriksen, and Robertson, do not. Karlberg puts it this way: “If one grants that national Israel in OT revelation was

79For a helpful summary, note Glenny, “Typology,” 631.

80Witsius, Economy of the Covenants, 2:413-21; Geerhardus Vos, The Pauline Eschatology (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1994), 87-91; Keith A. Mathison, From Age to Age: The Unfolding of Biblical Eschatology (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2009), 570-83; Riddlebarger, A Case for Amillennialism, 180-94; Venema, The Promise of the Future, 127-39; Cornelius P. Venema, “‘In This Way All Israel Will Be Saved’: A Study of Romans 11:26,” MAJT 22 (2011), 19-40; Vasholz, “The Character of Israel’s Future,” 39-59; esp. 40-43, 57; Holwerda, Jesus and Israel, 168-75; see also VanGemeeren, “Israel as the Hermeneutical Crux (II),” 288-90. The following covenant theologians understand Rom11:26 to refer to ethnic Israel, but the salvation of elect Jews occurs throughout the new covenant era: Bavinck, Reformed Dogmatics, 4:668-
truly a type of the eternal kingdom of Christ, then it seems that, according to the canons of Biblical typology, national Israel can no longer retain any independent status whatever.”

Along the same lines, Waltke asserts,

Jesus taught in several places that the true people of God are not to be found in national Israel but in the Christian community that replaced it (cf. Mark 12:1-9; Matt 15:13). His apostles continued his teachings. They emphatically taught that the Old Covenant with its types has been done away forever in favor of the superior and eternal New Covenant that governs the church (Jer 32:40; 50:5; Ezek 16:60; 37:26; Heb 8:1-13). . . . Biblical typology as taught by Christ’s apostles disallows the notion that the material types of the Old Covenant will be reintroduced into this history after the church upon whom the end of the ages has come (cf. Heb 7:18).

Clowney also follows suit as he avers that the “church in both the N.T. and the Old is the people of God, yet O.T. Israel is also a model, a type, in its earthly form, of the spiritual and heavenly reality of the church.”

Robertson writes,

If the new covenant people of God are the actualized realization of a typological form, and the new covenant now is in effect, those constituting the people of God in the present circumstances must be recognized as the “Israel of God.” As a unified people, the participants of the new covenant today are “Israel.”


81Karlberg, “The Significance of Israel,” 259; cf. Fairbairn, The Interpretation of Prophecy, 255.


83Clowney, “Interpreting Biblical Models,” 92, emphasis original. Robertson, Christ of the Covenants, 289, argues that Israel did not function merely as type, but its typological role is significant. “The old covenant nation of Israel typologically anticipated the new covenant reality of the chosen people of God assembled as a nation consecrated to God.” For a basic overview of Israel as a type of the church, see Keith A. Mathison, Dispensationalism: Rightly Dividing the People of God? (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1995), 38-39.

84Robertson, Christ of the Covenants, 289.
Therefore, although some covenantalists emphasize typological correspondences between Israel and Jesus (or describe Jesus as the “true Israel”)\(^85\) or directly link Israel with Jesus,\(^86\) typological connections are also maintained directly between Israel and the church in terms of fulfillment or less frequently, as replacement. Yet at the same time, the overarching covenant of grace administered through the covenants also keeps Israel and the church in direct continuity. This issue raises two significant problems when considering the nature of these typological relationships for the ecclesiology of covenant theology.

First, there is a substantial question of how covenant theologians put together the typological relationship between Israel and the church. If OT Israel is typological of the church, then that would entail a qualitative progression and escalation between Israel and the church given how covenant theologians understand the characteristics of typology (and given the nature of typology as presented in chapter 2). If the “superior and eternal New Covenant that governs the church” is in effect, to use Waltke’s phrase, should there not be an escalated and heightened reality when it comes to the essential nature and structure of the new covenant community, the church, in comparison to OT Israel? Perhaps covenant theologians could offer that the escalation of the Israel-church typological relationship corresponds to the areas of the newness of the new covenant and fulfillment of the promises of Israel to the church. However, even with the contrast to the national, political, and theocratic Israel of old with the church encompassing all nations, possessing a


greater distribution and empowering presence of the Holy Spirit, and having sin finally dealt with through the cross of Christ, covenantalists still argue that the NT church is one with Israel. The dual aspect of the covenant is still operative in the new covenant era, for there are covenant breakers in the new covenant community just as there were in the nation of Israel. The church, just like Israel, is a mixed community of believers and unbelievers. In regard to essential nature then, there is no typological relationship between Israel and the church and, therefore, covenant theology cannot consistently frame Israel as a type of the church since the covenant communities are essentially the same given the basic continuity between the two. The entailment of understanding the new covenant as just another administration of the one covenant of grace theologically requires that the Israel-church typological relationship can only be applied in a truncated or inconsistent manner when one compares how other typological patterns are presented and understood by covenant theologians where the antitype always possesses a greater nature, intensification, and eschatological reality (such as the Exodus, temple, sacrifices, priesthood, and land as portrayed in Reformed theology).

How covenantalists typologically link Israel with Jesus is scripturally appropriate, but a second problem emerges in light of the implications of the Israel-Christ
typological relationship. If Jesus fulfills Israel’s promises and roles and the church is really the “true Israel” because of his manifold work on the cross, should not this new covenant community, now in direct union with Christ as their covenant head, a people now marked with the universal distribution of the Holy Spirit (Num 11:27-29; Ezek 36:25-27; Joel 2:28-32; John 7:28-39; Acts 2; Rom 8:9-11; Eph 1:13-14), known as the new humanity, the new creation, and God’s new temple, be different from OT Israel in terms of structure and nature? Covenant theologians will explain the Israel-Christ typological relationship but generally do not address the theological entailments of that to their understanding of the nature of the church as she relates to Christ.89 Jesus is presented in terms of corporate solidarity as he embodies Israel’s hopes and fulfills Israel’s roles and tasks.90 Nevertheless, if Jesus represents Israel and typologically is the true Israel, then what implications does this have for the nature of the NT community, the church, which is described as being in faith union with Christ?

The covenantal framework also impacts the interpretation of the Abrahamic covenant in terms of what is typological. In his discussion of typology, Clowney notes that the metaphors of the church in the NT involve “a transformation of figures drawn from the O.T. At times the transformation is by way of contrast: for example, the change from the Passover meal to the Lord’s Supper, or from circumcision to baptism as the

---

89One exception is Beale, who writes that “all who identify with [Jesus] become adopted as true Israel (which, recall, is a corporate Adam) and, accordingly, inherit the promises as such. . . . Accordingly, Christ as true Israel and the last Adam represents the church, so that the church becomes true eschatological Israel and part of the end-time Adam. Thus, far from being a narrow name, 'true Israel' really is a name that connotes true humanity.” Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 749, cf. 654-56. Beale’s quote comes from a chapter where he presents the church as the transformed and restored eschatological Israel because Israel’s identity and restoration promises are fulfilled in Christ and the church. However, if the church is the transformed and eschatological Israel, how could the covenant communities remain the same in terms of nature? The restoration of the remnant of Israel as seen in the fulfillment of Christ and in the church, as postulated by Beale, theologically requires the NT community of Jesus to be a completely regenerate covenant people.

initiatory rite of the people of God.” While circumcision is called a “figure” by Clowney, it is not genuinely identified as typological, at least as typology is defined and presented by covenantalists, since covenantalists argue that essentially the same spiritual meaning of circumcision comes across in the NT in the form of infant baptism. Moreover, the transition from the Passover to the Lord’s Supper in reformed circles as the topic of paedocommunion shows another area of confusion in regard to typological patterns. Some covenantalists argue that since children were involved in the Passover meal and because children in the new covenant era have already received the initial rite of the new covenant—baptism—then children should also be permitted to participate in the Lord’s Supper. Advocates of paedocommunion include Peter Leithart, Rich Lusk, and Gregg Strawbridge. See the collection of essays in The Case of Covenant Communion, ed. Gregg Strawbridge (Monroe, LA: Athanasius, 2006). Arguing against paedocommunion are Cornelis P. Venema, Children at the Lord’s Table? (Grand Rapids: Reformation Heritage, 2009) and the essays presented in Children and the Lord’s Supper, ed. Guy Waters and Ligon Duncan (Fearn, Scotland: Christian Focus, 2011). As most covenant theologians rightly argue, the Passover and the Lord’s Supper do not have the same essential meaning as the Passover was a type of Christ’s sacrificial death that is commemorated in the Lord’s Supper and further, 1 Cor 11:27-32 restricts the recipients to those who are capable to examine themselves. If only paedobaptists would apply the same hermeneutic to the topic of circumcision and infant baptism they would avoid the tension that paedocommunion advocates are trying to avoid: passive subjects who receive the rite of infant baptism but active (believing) subjects are the only recipients of the continuing rite, the Lord’s Supper. As Jewett rightly points out, “Having embraced their children in the covenant by giving them baptism, Paedobaptists exclude them from that same covenant by refusing them participation in the covenant meal. Having reasoned from inclusive circumcision to inclusive baptism, they turn about and go from an inclusive Passover to an exclusive Eucharist.” Paul K. Jewett, Infant Baptism & the Covenant of Grace (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1978), 205.

Clowney, “Interpreting Biblical Models,” 92. Interestingly, there is significant debate on the transition from the Passover to the Lord’s Supper in reformed circles as the topic of paedocommunion shows another area of confusion in regard to typological patterns. Some covenantalists argue that since children were involved in the Passover meal and because children in the new covenant era have already received the initial rite of the new covenant—baptism—then children should also be permitted to participate in the Lord’s Supper. Advocates of paedocommunion include Peter Leithart, Rich Lusk, and Gregg Strawbridge. See the collection of essays in The Case of Covenant Communion, ed. Gregg Strawbridge (Monroe, LA: Athanasius, 2006). Arguing against paedocommunion are Cornelis P. Venema, Children at the Lord’s Table? (Grand Rapids: Reformation Heritage, 2009) and the essays presented in Children and the Lord’s Supper, ed. Guy Waters and Ligon Duncan (Fearn, Scotland: Christian Focus, 2011). As most covenant theologians rightly argue, the Passover and the Lord’s Supper do not have the same essential meaning as the Passover was a type of Christ’s sacrificial death that is commemorated in the Lord’s Supper and further, 1 Cor 11:27-32 restricts the recipients to those who are capable to examine themselves. If only paedobaptists would apply the same hermeneutic to the topic of circumcision and infant baptism they would avoid the tension that paedocommunion advocates are trying to avoid: passive subjects who receive the rite of infant baptism but active (believing) subjects are the only recipients of the continuing rite, the Lord’s Supper. As Jewett rightly points out, “Having embraced their children in the covenant by giving them baptism, Paedobaptists exclude them from that same covenant by refusing them participation in the covenant meal. Having reasoned from inclusive circumcision to inclusive baptism, they turn about and go from an inclusive Passover to an exclusive Eucharist.” Paul K. Jewett, Infant Baptism & the Covenant of Grace (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1978), 205.

Clowney, The Church, 280-84; Booth, Children of Promise, 96-119; C. John Collins, “What Does Baptism Do for Anyone? Part I,” Presbyterion 38 (2012): 1-33. C. John Collins, “What Does Baptism Do for Anyone? Part II,” Presbyterion 38 (2012): 74-98. David Gibson, “Sacramental Supersessionism Revisited: A Response to Martin Salter on the Relationship between Circumcision and Baptism,” Themelios 37 (2012): 191-208; Mark E. Ross, “Baptism and Circumcision as Signs and Seals,” in The Case for Covenantal Infant Baptism, 85-111. Note Charles T. Fritsch, “Biblical Typology,” BibSac 104 (1947): 96. Fritsch does address circumcision as a “type,” but in a way more amenable to a baptist understanding. The Princeton theologian states, “The rite of circumcision had already been thought of in the Old Testament in a spiritual sense. The circumcision of the heart is mentioned in Leviticus 26:41; Deuteronomy 10:16; 30:6; Ezekiel 44:7, the circumcision of the lips in Exodus 6:12, 30, the circumcision of the ear in Jeremiah 6:10. So in the New Testament the spiritual circumcision is contrasted with the physical, as seen in Romans 2:25-29 and Philippians 3:3. In Colossians 2:11, 12 Paul argues that the circumcision of the flesh is no longer needed since the Christian is circumcised with a circumcision not made with hands, and then he goes on to describe this spiritual circumcision in the terms of baptism. In other words, just as in the Old Testament circumcision was the seal of that covenant relationship with God which was to bring salvation, so baptism in the New is the seal of that inward regeneration wrought by Christ.” See also G. K. Beale’s treatment in A New Testament Biblical Theology, 802-16. Beale identifies physical circumcision as a type of spiritual circumcision and the physical rite of baptism (808-9). But again, how can physical circumcision have typological fulfillment in physical baptism when they have the same essential meaning and are equivalent (as even Beale recognizes later, 816)? Like the Israel-church typological relationship, covenant theologians construe the typological relationship of circumcision to baptism in terms of the widening of the people who receive the sign of the covenant (baptism now applied to women and gentiles), but again, this fails to
genealogical principle (“to you and your seed”) is never handled in a typological way in covenant theology as covenantalists appeal to the “unconditional” nature of the Abrahamic covenant with the result that the physical or biological children of God’s people are always included in the covenant community throughout redemptive history. Hence, entrance into the covenant is granted to believers and their children in Reformed tradition, but such direct association between physical circumcision in the OT and baptism in the new must assume that the circumcision of the flesh was not typological of greater spiritual realities of the new covenant—circumcision of the heart for all members of the new covenant (Jer 31:28-34)—which is fulfilled with Christ having regenerate offspring (Isa 53:10-11, 54:1, 3; Eph 2:5-6; Col 2:12-13; Phil 3:3; Gal 4:26, 31; Titus 3:4-7).93

On the other hand, while circumcision and the genealogical principle are not regarded as typological in the Abrahamic covenant, covenant theologians understand the land promise as typological of the inheritance of heavenly rest. Why do covenantalists adequately understand the eschatological heightening and escalation of biblical typology which requires discontinuity in terms of the nature of the type-antitype correspondence. For more critique of the circumcision-baptism relationship in covenant theology, confer Wellum, “Baptism and the Relationship,” 153-60.

93For critique of the paedobaptist assertion that the genealogical principle remains unchanged into the Messianic new covenant, see R. Fowler White, “The Last Adam and His Seed: An Exercise in Theological Preemption,” TrinJ 6 (1985): 60-73. Robertson, Christ of the Covenants, 289-90; Jonathan M. Brack and Jared S. Oliphint, “Questioning the Progress in Progressive Covenantalism: A Review of Gentry and Wellum’s Kingdom through Covenant,” WTJ 76 (2014): 207-9; and David Gibson, “‘Fathers of Faith, My Fathers Now!’ On Abraham, Covenant, and the Theology of Paedobaptism,” Themelios 40 (2015): 26-27, argue that the genealogical principle extends to the new covenant because Jer 32:39 teaches that the children of covenant participants are included in the promise and blessings of the covenant. However, within the broader context of Jer 32:36-44, Jer 32:39 describes the benefits the new covenant people of God receive in terms of restoration. The returning remnant (Jer 32:37) will dwell in safety and they will be his people (Jer 32:38; cf. Exod 19:5). However, these will have one heart and one way and they will fear the Lord forever (Jer 32:39). This will be for their good and the good of their children after them. The everlasting covenant made with them also means that God will not turn away from them and the fear placed in their hearts means that they will not turn away from him (Jer 32:40). Far from seeing this text as proof of the genealogical principle in the prophecy of the new covenant, the passage as a whole teaches the opposite. The new covenant members will all have the fear of the Lord on their hearts (reminiscent of circumcision of the heart) and not turn away from the Lord. The benefits for God’s people are not just economic prosperity (Jer 32:42-44), but also that in the end it will be good for them and their children. Thus, there is no indication that children are automatically in the covenant community, the passage only confirms God’s goodness to the children of those who are wholly devoted to him and never turn away, being truly his people.
view the land as typological, but other features of the Abrahamic as not typological? First, given the continuity between Israel and the church within the framework of the covenant of grace, the land promise logically could not be preserved independently for national, ethnic Israel in the future. Such a literal fulfillment of the land promise strikes against the overarching covenant of grace and the unity of the one people of God in covenant theology.⁹⁴ Covenant theologians, therefore, treat the land promise as typological in one of two ways. First, some covenantalists link the land back to Eden and observe the expansion of the land promise in OT prophecies in arguing that the land points to a new heavens and new earth.⁹⁵ Second, the conditionality of the Mosaic covenant is appealed to in regard to the Promised Land as lack of faithful loyalty to the Lord leads to covenantal curses and expulsion from the land (Lev 18:25-28; 26:14-26).⁹⁶ While the land promises may seem unconditional, Reymond criticizes dispensationalists on this point:

Moses stated that the physical progeny’s obedience to God’s law was a basic requirement for inheriting and continuing to possess the land (Deut 4:25-31; 28:15-68). While the land promises may appear at times to be unconditional, they always

---

⁹⁴For example, Hoekema, *The Bible and Future*, 211, writes, “For [Israel] the land of Canaan was the land God had given to his people as their dwelling place and their possession. But the Old Testament is a book of shadows and types. The New Testament widens these concepts. In New Testament times the people of God no longer consists only of Israelites with a few non-Israelite additions, but is expanded to a fellowship inclusive of both Gentiles and Jews. In New Testament times the land which is to be inherited by the people of God is expanded to include the entire earth ” (emphasis original).


⁹⁶Horton, *Introducing Covenant Theology*, 47, comments on this issue of retention of the land of promise: “Dispensationalism . . . treat[s] the land promise as eternal and irrevocable, even to the extent that there can be a difference between Israel and the church in God’s plan. . . . [This fails] to recognize that the Hebrew Scriptures themselves qualify this national covenant in strictly conditional terms.” “The principle of law is the basis for remaining in the earthly land; the principle of promise is the basis for entering and remaining in the heavenly land.” Ibid., 101. “To be sure, the land grant itself was based on God’s gracious deliverance of the people from Egypt, but it was now theirs to lose or keep depending on how well they did in their probation in the land.” Ibid., 130.
contained the tacit requirement of obedience that had to be met for the promises to materialize and to come to lasting fruition.\textsuperscript{97}

In sum, the prominence of the Abrahamic covenant and its direct continuity to the new covenant means that very few features of it are considered typological in covenant theology. In contrast, the Mosaic covenant with its conditions or understood as a covenant of works, with the exception of the moral law, is primarily typological.\textsuperscript{98}

\textbf{Summary}

The hermeneutics of covenant theology require that the Israel-church relationship be one of unity and direct continuity. Covenant theologians cast this continuity through the framework of the theological covenants of works and grace, with all post-fall covenants having the same substance and essence. Israel is typological of Jesus and the church, but the Israel-church typology is one of correspondence and not escalation or qualitative progression normative of typological patterns because of the aforementioned hermeneutical commitments, even as covenantalists highlight the era of fulfillment that arrives with Christ.

In framing the biblical covenants into a unified covenant of grace, there is a legitimate question as to whether covenant theologians allow each covenant to be self-defining and properly unfold within its redemptive historical context.\textsuperscript{99} Further, Paul,

\textsuperscript{97}Reymond, “Israel and the Church,” 56, emphasis original. See also White and Beisner, “Covenant, Inheritance, and Typology,” 159-60.

\textsuperscript{98}Horton, \textit{Introducing Covenant Theology}, 59-60, states, “Like Paul, the writer to the Hebrews contrasts the typological covenant of law (Sinai) with the covenant of promise (Abrahamic). While the old covenant has passed away, the Abrahamic covenant has not.” See discussion above on the foundational role of the Abrahamic covenant. The stress of the typological nature of the Mosaic covenant is not all encompassing, for covenantalists do consider the Sabbath as a type having fulfillment in Jesus and experienced with believers entering God’s rest in an already, not yet fashion (Heb 3-4), but the Sabbath command must still be observed with the only change being the day—Sunday (e.g., Beale, \textit{A New Testament Biblical Theology}, 775-801).

\textsuperscript{99}Covenant theologians are directly challenged on this score by Gentry and Wellum, \textit{Kingdom through Covenant}, 71, 611-52; Wellum, “Baptism and the Relationship,” 126-27; Jon Zens, “Is There a ‘Covenant of Grace?’” \textit{Baptist Reformation Review} 6 (1977): 50. For other critiques of the covenant of
upon reflecting on the OT era, does not postulate one covenant with many administrations. Instead, he speaks of the *covenants of promise* that are now fulfilled in Christ (Gal 4:24; Eph 2:12; Rom 9:4; cf. Heb 8:7-13).\(^\text{100}\)

The typological relationship between Israel, Christ, and the church in covenant theology needs recalibration. As Murray so helpfully states,

> It would not be, however, in the interests of theological conservation or theological progress for us to think that the covenant theology is in all respects definitive and that there is no further need for correction, modification, and expansion. Theology must always be undergoing reformation. The human understanding is imperfect. However architectonic may be the systematic constructions of any one generation or group of generations, there always remains the need for correction and reconstruction so that the structure may be brought into closer approximation to the Scripture and the reproduction be a more faithful transcript or reflection of the heavenly exemplar. It appears to me that covenant theology, notwithstanding the finesse of analysis . . . needs recasting.\(^\text{101}\)

In chapters 5 and 6 I offer an alternative approach to how covenantalists construct the Israel-Christ-church typological relationship in a manner beyond what Murray would have conceded. However, first, the Israel-church relationship and nature of typology within the other significant school of theology, dispensationalism, is addressed.

---

\(^{100}\) Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 602; Zens, “Is There a ‘Covenant of Grace?,’” 45.

\(^{101}\) Murray, *The Covenant of Grace*, 4-5.
CHAPTER 4
THE HERMENEUTICS OF DISPENSATIONALISM

As a system of theology, dispensationalism and its varieties are relatively new on the scene of church history as it was first advanced by the British Plymouth Brethren leader, John Nelson Darby (1800-1882). Throughout the late nineteenth and early twentieth century, dispensationalism became a popular millennialist movement, particularly in the United States, as dispensational teachings were disseminated through the Niagara Bible Conference (1883-1897) and the well-known and popular Scofield Reference Bible (first published in 1909), which contained the annotations of C. I. Scofield.

---

In the post-World War I era, dispensationalism “enjoyed its greatest success among the Baptists, the Reformed Episcopalians, and especially the Presbyterians” as well as among the newly formed Pentecostal denominations that adopted dispensationalism except the common dispensational view of the cessation of charismatic gifts. To this day, dispensationalism continues to be a popular and evangelical movement in the United States as dispensational seminaries and schools have thrived and the emphasis on prophecies, the nation of Israel, the rapture, and the millennium continue to receive attention through books, movies, and other media.

The name “dispensationalism” is derived from the noun “dispensation,” a translation of the Greek word οἰκονομία (Eph 1:10; 3:2; 1 Cor 9:17; Col 1:25; 1 Tim 1:4) meaning administration, stewardship, or the management of a household. Although dispensationalism cannot be defined based on the term or concept of dispensation,
dispensations as distinguishable economies or periods of time during which God dispenses or administers his plan of redemption differently from other eras is important to dispensationalists and their system as a whole. According to Ron Bigalke and Mal Couch, “[d]ispensationalism is that biblical system of theology which views the Word of God as unfolding distinguishable economies in the outworking of the divine purposes for the nation of Israel in a distinct and separate manner from His purpose for the church.” For covenant theologians the role of covenant is paramount for structuring the unity of the Bible, but unlike covenentalists, [dispensationalists] do not believe that the “covenant” establishes the framework of the biblical story. This does not mean that dispensationalists deny the importance of covenants . . . but that they believe that covenants are subsidiary to another structural construction.

Feinberg that “acknowledging the word oikonomia does not make one a dispensationalist, nor does defining this term reveal the essence of dispensationalism.”


7Ron J. Bigalke, Jr., and Mal Couch, “The Relationship between Covenants and Dispensations,” in Progressive Dispensationalism: An Analysis of the Movement, 18. Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 34, summarizes the system of theology: “Dispensationalism views the world as a household run by God. In His household-world God is dispensing or administering its affairs according to His own will and in various stages of revelation in the passage of time. These various stages mark off the distinguishably different economies in the outworking of His total purpose, and these different economies constitute the dispensations.” For a more expansive definition of dispensationalism, see Craig A. Blaising, “Contemporary Dispensationalism,” SWJT 36 (1994): 5-6.

This epochal construction or dispensational framework varies among dispensational scholars depending on how the distinguishable stages within the progress of revelation are identified and understood to relate to each other. For traditional, classic dispensationalists following Scofield, including many modern, revised dispensationalists, there are seven distinct dispensations: Innocency, Conscience, Human Government, Promise, Mosaic, Grace, and Kingdom/Millennium. For contemporary progressive dispensationalists, the number of dispensations varies from two to four, to as many as seven. While the emphasis on progressive revelation and the distinguishable dispensations within the Bible is not the primary characteristic of dispensationalism or unique to dispensationalism—dispensationalists themselves have acknowledged that other Christians and Christian traditions recognize distinct epochs or dispensations in God’s overall plan and control of the world—the content and meaning of each

9Alistair W. Donaldson, *The Last Days of Dispensationalism: A Scholarly Critique of Popular Misconceptions* (Eugene, OR: Wipf & Stock, 2011), 4, critiques dispensationalism on this point: “How can the dispensations be distinguishable and at the same time indistinguishable to the point of there being a multiplicity of views within dispensational scholarship regarding their number? It seems these definite and distinguishable dispensations must be really indefinite and indistinguishable” (emphasis original). Many scholars differ in how to identify the epochs or stages of redemption, however. See my discussion in chap. 1, n. 29.


11Kenneth L. Barker, “The Scope and Center of Old and New Testament Theology and Hope,” in *Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church*, 293-328, esp. 295, argues for two major dispensations: the old covenant era and the new covenant era. For Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 120-23, four primary dispensations appear in biblical history: patriarchal, mosaic, ecclesial, and zionic (millennial and eternal), while Kreider, “What Is Dispensationalism?,” 28-36, affirms seven: creation, fall, post-flood, Abraham, the exodus/law, the Spirit (coming of Jesus), and the new heavens and earth. For progressive dispensationalists, the dispensations are not understood “simply as different arrangements between God and humankind, but as successive arrangements in the progressive revelation and accomplishment of redemption.” Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 48, emphasis original.
dispensation is important.\textsuperscript{12} Dispensationalism stresses more discontinuity than covenant theology does in regard to the relationship between Israel and the church and arrives at significantly different conclusions regarding eschatological issues, particularly the nature of the millennium, largely due to how they identify the dispensations and interpret the relationship between them in the progress of revelation.\textsuperscript{13}

The above discussion is a brief historical and general overview of dispensationalism. In what follows, the essential aspects or core beliefs of dispensationalism are offered, followed by a description of the recent expressions of dispensationalism. Next, the dispensational understanding of the essential covenants—Abrahamic, Davidic, and new—are examined since their understanding of these covenants have direct bearing on the system’s ecclesiology and eschatology. Lastly, like the examination of covenant theology in chapter 3, the dispensational hermeneutical approach to typology is examined with particular emphasis on how typology functions in relation to the nation of Israel.


The Essential Tenets of Dispensationalism

Defining the core beliefs of dispensationalism is a challenge given the varieties of characteristics offered by dispensational scholars. Moreover, the idea of dispensationalism immediately arouses the notion of a pre-tribulational rapture and other chronological events of the end leading to Christ’s premillennial reign. However, just as recognizing dispensations is not unique to dispensationalism, the pre-tribulational rapture, while affirmed by most dispensationalists, is also not essential to the position.14 Similarly, premillennialism is not a defining mark of dispensationalism since not all premillennialists are dispensationalists.

In the past thirty years, determining the core tenets of dispensationalism has also been compounded by the modifications to the system offered by progressive dispensationalists (mid-1980s to present) and to what extent these developments impact the distinctives of dispensationalism. Some of the advocates of a more traditional or normative dispensational perspective find the modifications by progressive dispensationalists to be a departure from the tradition.15 Despite the difference between


normative and progressive dispensationalism (see the next section), there is enough of a
family resemblance to observe common dispensational features, or as Michael Svigel
concludes, “Though we can speak in terms of dispensationalism as a definable and
distinguishable theological movement, we must in some ways also speak of
dispensationalisms as distinct varieties within a larger species.”16 Exploring the different
expressions or forms of dispensationalism indicates that the Israel-church distinction is at
the heart of dispensationalism. This commonality in dispensationalism is demonstrated
by how dispensationalists have characterized their system of theology, even though many
other features are offered.

Key spokesmen in dispensational scholarship have sought to define or describe
the main characteristics of dispensationalism. Probably the most recognized description
of the essentials, or the sine qua non, was offered by Charles Ryrie. He lists three marks
to the system: the distinction between Israel and the church, an approach to hermeneutics
where the Bible is interpreted in a consistently literal or plain manner, and that the
underlying purpose of God in the world is his glory.17 John Feinberg, a well-known

213-39, finds that it is questionable to call progressive dispensationalism part of the dispensational tradition. Cautions toward progressive dispensationalism are also voiced by Ryrie, “Update on Dispensationalism,” 20-26; Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 193-210; and Robert L. Thomas, “The Hermeneutics of Progressive Dispensationalism,” MSJ 6 (1995): 79-95.

16Svigel, “The History of Dispensationalism,” 93, emphasis original; cf. also 87-89. Also, in his conclusion, Herbert W. Bateman IV, “Dispensationalism Tomorrow,” in Three Central Issues, 309, finds that in lieu of the discussion within Three Central Issues, there is “hope we can put to rest the charge that progressive dispensationalists are not dispensationalists.”

17Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 46-48. Ryrie, “Update on Dispensationalism,” 21-22, complains that progressive dispensationalism reduces Israel and the church to a mere “distinction” instead of a “clear distinction” and thus a rejection of the sine qua non of traditional dispensationalism. However, while it seems progressives have modified their views of the kingdom of God by incorporating inaugurated eschatology (some progressives more than others) and have a more unified view of eternal salvation, the dispensations, and the covenants, they still affirm a strong distinction between Israel and the church as well as a future restoration of ethnic Israel in fulfillment of OT prophecies. See Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 267-70; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 28-29, 187-218; Robert L. Saucy, “Israel and the Church: A Case for Discontinuity,” in Continuity and Discontinuity, 239-59; Robert L. Saucy, “A Rationale for the Future of Israel,” JETS 28 (1985): 433-42; Robert L. Saucy, “The Crucial Issue between Dispensational and Non-Dispensational Systems,” CTR 1 (1986): 163-65; Gregg R. Allison,
systematic theologian, presents six core principles he believes are common to all forms of dispensationalism: (1) a belief that there are multiple senses to terms like “Jew” and “seed of Abraham;” (2) a literal hermeneutic whereby OT teachings or prophecies are taken on their own terms and are still in force unless the NT explicitly or implicitly cancels these prior promises; (3) an understanding of the covenants and their unconditional promises that required a future fulfillment to national Israel; (4) a distinct future for ethnic Israel as a nation; (5) a belief that the church is a distinct organism in the NT era; and (6) a philosophy of history that emphasizes both the soteriological or spiritual aspects and the social, economic, and political implications of God’s kingdom work.18 Progressive dispensationalists Craig Blaising and Darrell Bock provide a list of features that are the common strands of the tradition: (1) authority of Scripture; (2) dispensations; (3) uniqueness of the church; (4) practical significance of the universal church; (5) significance of biblical prophecy; (6) futurist premillennialism; (7) imminent return of Christ; and (8) a national future for Israel.19 Other proposals for the core beliefs of dispensationalism have also been offered.20

---


20See Bass, Backgrounds to Dispensationalism, 13-47. Dale S. DeWitt, Dispensational Theology in America during the Twentieth Century: Theological Development and Cultural Context (Grand Rapids: Grace Bible College, 2002), 44-52; esp. 52; cf. 53-76, argues that the essentials—the configuration of ideas which give theology its character—of dispensationalism, rather than distinctives, are (1) the literal interpretation of all Scripture; (2) progressive revelation; (3) dispensations as the eras of salvation history; (4) the church as a Pauline revelation; (5) distinctions between historic Israel, the church, and the future kingdom; (6) the church as free from the law under grace; and (7) the pretribulational rapture of the
Some of the characteristics of dispensationalism offered by these important representatives are not unique to the system. Ryrie’s list includes the glory of God, but this has been questioned by not just whether this was a distinctive within the historical consciousness of the dispensational tradition, but the claim is also undermined by the fact that covenant theologians and other non-dispensationalists affirm the doxological theme of Scripture.\(^{21}\) Further, acknowledging dispensations cannot be part of the essence of dispensationalism as was noted, nor can the authority of Scripture as non-dispensational evangelicals also affirm a high view of Scripture.

There is also much discussion on the role of hermeneutics and Ryrie’s principle of a consistent literal interpretation as a distinctive of dispensationalism. On the one hand, Blaising questions whether a literal interpretation characterized earlier dispensationalists, such as Darby and Scofield.\(^{22}\) In addition, Blaising and others have noted the development of hermeneutics in the past few decades as the historical-grammatical exegesis has benefitted from biblical theology and historical-literary studies, and they have also observed that the reduction of the differences in systems of theology to literal versus


spiritual interpretation is misleading.\textsuperscript{23} Furthermore, non-dispensationalists utilize the historical-grammatical hermeneutic and therefore also employ, depending on definition, a literal hermeneutic.\textsuperscript{24} Thus, Blaising concludes that a “consistently literal exegesis is inadequate to describe the essential distinctive of dispensationalism.”\textsuperscript{25} On the other hand, some dispensationalists are not willing to abandon a consistent literal hermeneutic as an essential feature as they find the hermeneutic of progressive dispensationalism problematic.\textsuperscript{26} Recently, without seeking to mediate a resolution, Nathan Holsteen observes that Blaising’s and Bock’s grammatical-historical-literary-theological approach is not the same as Ryrie’s, but nevertheless, “the unifying factor in dispensationalism is


indeed a systemic commitment to literal interpretation.” Holsteen’s claim is that the variations within dispensationalism are unified by the pursuit of a literal hermeneutic, but that the diversity of approaches arises as to when, where, how, and why dispensationalists adapt literalism. Nevertheless, many non-dispensational evangelicals are committed to the sensus literalis and interpret the Bible accordingly. Dispensationalists such as Feinberg, Bateman, Vlach, and Blaising are more on target in their conclusions that the key issue is not a literal hermeneutic or the question of consistency. More germane to the hermeneutical differences between dispensationalists and non-dispensationalists are the presuppositions in interpretation and particularly how interpreters prioritize one testament over the other, understand the NT use of the OT and typology, and more generally how interpreters comprehend the progress of revelation and integrate the relationship between earlier and later texts at the canonical level.

---

27 Nathan D. Holsteen, “The Hermeneutic of Dispensationalism,” in Dispensationalism and the History of Redemption, 112-16, quote from p. 113. Holsteen defines a literal hermeneutic as “an approach to Scripture that finds the meaning of the text in the plain or normal sense of the text in its context.” Ibid., 113. For the importance of literal interpretation to dispensationalism, see DeWitt, Dispensational Theology in America, 54-56, 77-100.


29 Stallard, “Literal Interpretation,” 18, helpfully observes, “To prove that the definition of dispensationalism is tied to literal hermeneutics in some way requires the dispensationalist to prove either that the nondispensationalist is incorrect in asserting his use of the method or that there is some particular way in which the literal hermeneutic is used that is unique to dispensationalism. . . . Therefore, it remains to be seen if there is a particular way in which a dispensationalist uses the literal hermeneutic in principle which can be distinguished from the nondispensationalist’s methods” (emphasis original).

Therefore, while a consistent literal hermeneutic is not a distinctive feature of dispensationalism, hermeneutical presuppositions factor significantly in the dispensational system as they do in any biblical or systematic theology. These hermeneutical commitments, particularly in what dispensationalists describe as a literal interpretation of the OT promises and prophecies, impinge upon the other *sine qua non* that Ryrie identifies and which is clearly a distinctive of all varieties of dispensationalism.31 The crucial mark of dispensationalism is the distinction between Israel and the church such that OT promises and prophecies to Israel must be fulfilled during the millennial reign of Christ (Rev 20:4-6).32 OT prophecies and promises, such as the possession of the promised land as described in the Abrahamic covenant, must come to pass as God will fulfill national Israel’s hopes and blessings materially in a future age that logically occurs during the millennium. This hallmark of the Israel-church distinction is not only recognized as such by the dispensational spokesmen described, but that it is an essential tenet of dispensationalism is confirmed by the vast volume of literature by dispensationalists on the topic of Israel and the church.33 Israel will be restored as a national entity in the future

---

31Stallard, “Literal Interpretation,” 34, offers the following as a replacement to Ryrie’s *sine qua non* of a consistent literal hermeneutic: “The preservation of the literal interpretation of the Old Testament at all points of theologizing in the light of progressive revelation.”


under the reign of Jesus Christ as the Davidic king and thereby exercise her mediatorial role to the nations in the promised land.\textsuperscript{34} The emphasis between Israel and the church is clearly one of discontinuity, for even in the affirmation of one people of God, the church and Israel still have distinct purposes and roles in the outworking of the kingdom of God for all forms of dispensationalism, even as the details may differ depending on the variation of dispensationalism in question. Distinguishing Israel and the church consistently with the future existence of national, political, and ethnic Israel “is probably the most basic theological test of whether or not a person is a dispensationalist.”\textsuperscript{35}

\textsuperscript{34}For Israel’s mediation to the nations in the future, see Saucy, \textit{The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism}, 259, 306-23; Saucy, “The Progressive Dispensational View,” 170-74, 198. Not all dispensationalists would agree with the description of Israel having a \textit{mediatorial} role to the nations in the millennium and beyond. Some prefer to describe Israel’s future restoration and role in terms of prominence or being a channel of blessing or having a functional role of service to the nations.

\textsuperscript{35}Ryrie, \textit{Dispensationalism}, 46. Blaising and Bock, \textit{Progressive Dispensationalism}, 267, observe that the NT never presents the inaugurated kingdom blessings “as a \textit{replacement} of the specific hopes of Israel. Instead, they are argued as \textit{compatible or complementary} to the hopes of Israel” (emphasis original). Further, “[r]eformed Jews and Gentiles will share equally in the completed blessings of the Spirit. The church in this dispensation testifies to this. . . . The same redeemed Jews and Gentiles will be directed and governed by Jesus Christ according to their different nationalities. The national identities and political
To summarize, all dispensationalists reject what they describe as “supersessionism” or “replacement theology.” Although Christ may be identified with Israel, such a relationship does not transcend or remove the idea of national Israel. The church does not supersed the nation of Israel even as they share a similar identity as the people of God. The Israel/church distinction is the defining mark of dispensationalism.

Undergirding this essential tenet are hermeneutical presuppositions regarding the progress of revelation, typology, the NT use of the OT, and understanding OT covenant promises and prophecies to Israel unconditionally and “literally.” Probably the best treatment of what constitutes the foundational beliefs of dispensationalism is the one offered by Vlach. After evaluating the core principles offered by Ryrie, Feinberg, and Blaising and Bock, Vlach adds clarity by elucidating six points that comprise the essence of dispensational theology:

1. Progressive revelation from the NT does not interpret OT passages in a way that cancels the original authorial intent of the OT writers as determined by historical-grammatical hermeneutics. . . .
2. Types exist, but national Israel is not a type that is superseded by the church. . . .
3. Israel and the church are distinct, thus the church cannot be identified as the new or true Israel. . . .
4. There is both spiritual unity in salvation between Jews and Gentiles and a future role for Israel as a nation. . . .
5. The nation Israel will be saved, restored with a unique identity, and function in a future millennial kingdom upon the earth. . . .
6. There are multiple senses of “seed of Abraham”; thus, the church’s identification as “seed of Abraham” does not cancel God’s promises to the believing Jewish “seed of Abraham.”

promises of Israel and the Gentiles in the last dispensation testifies in turn to this aspect.” Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 50.


37See Paul D. Feinberg, “The Hermeneutics of Discontinuity,” in Continuity and Discontinuity, 109-28, as he addresses these points from a dispensational perspective.

Vlach’s second point on typology will receive further attention in the following chapter. In chapters 5 and 6, I demonstrate that national Israel is indeed a type of Christ and derivatively, of the church and that accordingly, there is no future role of national Israel in the plan of God. The sharp distinction between Israel and the church, along with the other essential points, also will be undermined by my analysis. While the six points summarize key dispensational tenets, there are still significant differences among contemporary dispensationalists. An overview of two main forms is offered to appreciate the modifications implemented in some quarters of dispensational thinking.

**Modern Forms or Expressions of Dispensationalism**

Over the past thirty years and up into the contemporary discussion of dispensational theology, two varieties of dispensationalism have stood out in garnering continuing attention and academic support.\(^{39}\) Beginning in the mid-twentieth century, a form of dispensationalism arose out of the classical dispensationalism of Darby and Chafer. Referred to or identified as “revised,” “normative,” or “essentialist” dispensationalism, this more traditional form has been advocated by Ryrie, John Walvoord, Dwight Pentecost, Alva McClain and has received ongoing support from Elliott Johnson, Robert Thomas, Michael Stallard, H. Wayne House, Thomas Ice, and others.\(^{40}\) As already noted,

\(^{39}\)What has become known as classical dispensationalism, or Schofieldism, will not be included in this study since very few or any dispensational scholars advance this position today. This original form of dispensationalism emphasized the church as the heavenly people of God and Israel as the earthly people, advocated the distinction between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven, and focused on the church as a parenthesis or intercalation in redemptive history. For overviews of classical dispensationalism, see Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 23-31; Helyer, *The Witness of Jesus*, 103-9; and Blaising, “Contemporary Dispensationalism,” 6-8.

\(^{40}\)The “revised” dispensational label is from Blaising and Bock, but Ryrie and others do not use this label for themselves and instead opt to describe their view as “normative” dispensationalism or “traditional” dispensationalism. In the discussion that follows I use the two terms interchangeably. For recent works defending this form of dispensationalism, see Robert L. Thomas, “The Traditional Dispensational View,” in *Perspectives on Israel and the Church*, 87-136; David Mappes and H. Wayne House, “A Biblical and Theological Discussion of Traditional Dispensational Premillennialism,” *JMT* 17 (2013): 5-56; H. Wayne House, “Traditional Dispensationalism and the Millennium,” *CTR* 11 (2013): 3-27; Cone, *Dispensationalism Tomorrow & Beyond*; Ron J. Bigalke, Jr., ed., *Progressive Dispensationalism: An Analysis of the Movement and Defense of Traditional Dispensationalism* (Lanham, MD: University Press of America,
developments in dispensational theology have resulted in the rise of progressive
dispensationalism advocated by Blaising, Bock, Robert Saucy, Bruce Ware, and others.41
While the family resemblances are enough to categorize progressive and revised
dispensationalism together, they differ on important areas, including hermeneutics, the
kingdom, the appropriation of inaugurated eschatology, and there is a contrast in the
conception of the discontinuity between Israel and the church.

The Hermeneutical Divide of Revised
and Progressive Dispensationalism

Revised and progressive dispensationalists both seek to interpret the Bible in a
literal fashion, employing a grammatical-historical hermeneutic. There are notable
differences, however, as revised dispensationalists advocate a more strict literal
hermeneutic. According to Mappes and House, more traditional dispensationalists
practice a

common, consistent hermeneutical historical-grammatical-literal (sensus literal)
method of interpretation to discern the intention of the human author by examining
what the author affirms in the historical context of his writing and then correlate all
the material related to a topic in a compressive manner. Rather than re-interpret the
OT or practice a complementary hermeneutic, traditional dispensationalists seek to
understand the literal meaning of a text by its immediate historical-textual
parameters and then understand how this meaning relates to God’s overall program.
This system of interpretation allows the immediate historical context of a passage to
define and limit textual meaning.42

2005); and Johnson, “A Traditional Dispensational Hermeneutic,” and Stanley D. Toussaint, “Israel and the
Church of a Traditional Dispensationalist,” in Three Central Issues.

41Blaising, “Contemporary Dispensationalism,” 11, states that progressives believe in one
divine plan of holistic redemption for all peoples and that this “holistic redemption is likewise partially and
progressively realized in biblical history through a succession of divine-human dispensations and will be
ultimately fulfilled when Christ returns and completes the final resurrection. The term progressive
dispensationalism is taken from this notion of progressive revelation and accomplishment of one plan of

42Mappes and House, “A Biblical and Theological Discussion,” 8-9, emphasis original.
Johnson, “A Traditional Dispensational Hermeneutic,” 65, explains that the “literal interpretation entails
those meanings which the author intended to communicate in the expressions of the text (grammar) in the
original setting (historical). Literal thus works with a text within the frame of an author and his
communication” (emphasis original). See also Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 91-93; Ice, “Dispensational
Hermeneutics,” 30-31; and Couch, “Dispensational Hermeneutics,” 13-17. For a discussion on authorial
This plain or normal interpretative approach of literalism does allow for symbols, metaphors, and figures of speech. Stress is placed on the objectivity of the interpreter who does not read his or her theological system into the text and additionally, emphasis is placed on the static or fixed nature of meaning. On the issue of the expansion of meaning in the progress of revelation or with how later authors appropriate earlier texts, traditional dispensationalists find that meaning “is stable in spite of the perspective gained by further revelation.” There is only one single meaning as that meaning is fixed in the context of its original historical setting no matter how the NT uses the OT. Mappes and House write,

Traditional dispensationalists support the single historical, human/Divine authorial meaning for any given text. Some traditional dispensationalist [sic] support a controlled form of sensus plenior or reference plenior, though any fuller NT explanation is only an extension and development of the OT authorial verbal meaning and thus always governed by the initial pattern of authorial meaning.45


44 Johnson, “A Traditional Dispensational Hermeneutic,” 67. Johnson adds that “[w]hile the questions of history and the benefits gained in the progress of revelation may introduce added complexity to interpretation, it does not invalidate the principle that literal is what an author intends to communicate through a text.” Ibid., 67. Mappes and House, “A Biblical and Theological Discussion,” 13, find that “[s]ince the OT provides the foundational building block for NT theology, the traditional dispensationalist argues that the OT literal interpretation must be preserved in light of later progressive revelation.” In arguing against progressive dispensationalists, Thomas, “The Hermeneutics of Progressive Dispensationalism,” 89, strikingly states, “According to traditional hermeneutical principles, such a ‘bending’ [of the text] is impossible because the historical dimension fixes the meaning of a given passage and does not allow it to keep gaining new senses as it comes into new settings.” See also Feinberg, “Hermeneutics of Discontinuity,” 120, 123-24.

45 Mappes and House, “A Biblical and Theological Discussion,” 10-12, emphasis original. Cf. Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 95-96. Feinberg, “Hermeneutics of Discontinuity,” 127-28, concludes, “Where a promise or prediction is expanded or amplified, the amplification does not preclude the original addressees as a part of the referent (fulfillment) of that promise. Expansion does not require exclusion. Exclusion from any promise must be based upon some explicit or implicit statement of subsequent Scripture” (emphasis original). In addition to Feinberg, treatment of the NT use of the OT or the relationship between the testaments in revised dispensationalism is addressed by Robert L. Thomas, “The New Testament Use of the Old Testament,” in Dispensationalism Tomorrow & Beyond, 165-88; Ice, “Dispensational Hermeneutics,” 38-41; Fruchtenbaum, Israelology, 842-45; House, “Traditional Dispensationalism and the Millennium,” 6-10; and Roy B. Zuck, Basic Bible Interpretation: A Practical Guide to Discovering Biblical Truth (Colorado
Application of this hermeneutic is significant particularly for understanding OT prophecies and promises to national Israel. As Grenz observes, “The literalist hermeneutic leads dispensationalists to anticipate that prophecies concerning Israel (and perhaps the surrounding nations) will be fulfilled sometime in the future basically as they were originally given.”

Thus, normative dispensationalists claim that consistency in utilizing a plain or literal hermeneutic requires the literal fulfillment of Israel’s promises and prophecies be met with Israel’s future possession of the promised land and reception of all the national blessings.

Progressive dispensationalists also advocate a literal hermeneutic as they contend that their form of dispensationalism “is not an abandonment of ‘literal’ interpretation for ‘spiritual’ interpretation. Progressive dispensationalism is a development of ‘literal’ interpretation into a more consistent historical-literary interpretation.”

Noting the syntactical, rhetorical, history of interpretation, and literary studies, progressives call their approach the “historical-grammatical-literary-theological” method. Progressive

Springs: Victor, 1991), 260-70. Note also Elliott E. Johnson, “Dual Authorship and the Single Intended Meaning of Scripture,” BibSac 143 (1986): 218-27. Overall, traditional dispensationalists reject that the NT reinterprets OT prophecies and predictions to Israel as having fulfillment with the church. Where OT predictions are literally fulfilled requires clear indication in the NT, but other aspects of “fulfillment” include analogical correspondence or application.


47Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 52.

dispensationalists do affirm the stability of textual meaning, the dual authorship of Scripture, and deny their approach allegorizes texts or creates multiple meanings or neglects the author’s original intent.49 While the commitment to grammatical-historical interpretation is maintained, their hermeneutic is more sophisticated than that of revised dispensationalists in that it is not strictly grammatical-historical. Progressives are more sensitive to the successive stages of Scripture in not treating them as discrete, distinct arrangements, and are more complex in how they interpret OT promises through the canonical horizon.

Probably the most significant interpretative feature of progressive dispensationalism, and a point of much debate among dispensationalists, is the appeal to a complementary hermeneutic. Blaising and Bock describe the complementary concept:

According to this approach, the New Testament does introduce change and advance; it does not merely repeat Old Testament revelation. In making complementary additions, however, it does not jettison old promises. The enhancement is not at the expense of the original promise.50

The original authorial intent with applications or implications of that meaning is not eschewed in this dispensational framework, but the progress of revelation brings


50Blaising and Bock, “Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church,” 392-93. Bock, “Why I am a Dispensationalist,” 390, explains that the “complementary” hermeneutic of progressive dispensationalism meant that what the NT gives us comes in alongside what God has already revealed in the OT. God can say more in his development of promises from the OT in the NT, but not less. He can also bring fresh connections in the development of promises as more revelation fills it out. It is this dynamic of the multitemporal dimension of promise that some dispensationalists have underplayed, while covenant theologians have overplayed the NT element. Texts raising the note of fulfillment define the scope of its realization and its timing. The covenant integration argues that the OT hope has been transcended and/or more clearly articulated by the NT. Progressives argue that the NT indicates a complement of the OT promise, with more fulfillment also to come within the ethnic structures the OT had already indicated. This means that in both views the Church can exist as a distinct institution in the plan of God and yet can share in promises originally given to Israel, because God brings them into the promise through his plan involving Christ the seed of Abraham, who also was the promised vehicle through whom the world would be blessed (Galatians 3-4).” For critiques of this complementary hermeneutic by more traditional dispensationalists, see Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 205-6; Thomas, “The Hermeneutics of Progressive Dispensationalism,” 89-93; Baker, “Is Progressive Dispensationalism Really Dispensational?,” 349-54.
complementary aspects of meaning as additional elements of the text’s message take added shape.\textsuperscript{51} Progressive dispensationalists, then, offer a multilayered reading of the text in accounting for the near context and in consideration to the inter-textual literary connections that occur in the more distant contexts.\textsuperscript{52} The three levels of reading are the historical-exegetical level (the immediate context), the biblical-theological level (context of the whole book where the text is found), and the canonical-systematic level (reading a text in light of the whole canon).\textsuperscript{53} This approach to biblical texts overcomes the problems in more traditional forms of dispensationalism that do not allow the NT to develop the progress of a promise given how the OT is prioritized. Further, this hermeneutic avoids the criticisms of the revised dispensational hermeneutic that has been described as a “flat” reading or interpretation of Scripture.\textsuperscript{54} From these differing hermeneutical commitments arise other dissimilarities between progressive and revised dispensationalists, particularly

\begin{flushright}
\textsuperscript{51}Blaising and Bock, \textit{Progressive Dispensationalism}, 64, 68; Bock, “Hermeneutics of Progressive Dispensationalism,” 90, 96-98; Saucy, “The Progressive Dispensational View,” 158. Darrell L. Bock, “Current Messianic Activity and OT Davidic Promise: Dispensationalism, Hermeneutics, and NT Fulfillment,” \textit{TrinJ} 15 (1994): 71, explains, “Does the expansion of meaning entail a change of meaning? This is an important question for those concerned about consistency within interpretation. . . . The answer is both yes and no. On the one hand, to add to the revelation of a promise is to introduce ‘change’ to it through addition. But that is precisely how revelation progresses, as referents are added to the scope of a previously given promise. If the promise were present with its full meaning from the start, then where would the revelatory progress of promise reside? There would be no progression, only a re-presentation of meaning. . . . Progress and expansion can emerge as more pieces of the promise are brought together into a unified whole or as more of its elements are revealed. These additions can occur without undercutting a consistency of meaning, which is necessary for texts to be understandable and hermeneutics to be stable. In sum, the disclosure and nature of promise is not a static, but a dynamic process of progressive revelation about God’s covenants.”


\textsuperscript{54}Poythress, \textit{Understanding Dispensationalists}, 87-96.
\end{flushright}
in how each conceives of the kingdom of God and the Israel-church relationships. These areas are briefly treated next.

**The Kingdom and Inaugurated Eschatology in Dispensational Views**

Crucial modifications to the dispensational system made by progressives and contested by more traditional or revised dispensationalists are observable in regard to the theme of the kingdom of God and inaugurated eschatology (already-not yet framework).55 According to Blaising and Bock,

> The theme of the kingdom of God is much more unified and more central to progressive dispensationalism than it is to revised dispensationalism. Instead of dividing up the different features of redemption into self-contained “kingdoms,” progressive dispensationalists see one promised eschatological kingdom which has both spiritual and political dimensions.56

Writing almost a decade earlier, Saucy articulated that a newer form of dispensationalism agreed with historic premillennialists in finding it preferable to interpret this age as the first phase of the fulfillment of the one promised Messianic kingdom. The present age involves the spiritual aspects of the Messianic kingdom. . . . The remainder of the promises including those concerning Israel and the nations will find their fulfillment following the second advent.57

---

55Mark L. Bailey, “Dispensational Definitions of the Kingdom,” in Integrity of Heart, Skillfulness of Hands: Biblical and Leadership Studies in Honor of Donald K. Campbell, ed. Charles H. Dyer and Roy B. Zuck (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1994), 201-21, helpfully traverses the concept of the kingdom held by key figures in the dispensational tradition, from Darby to the present (e.g., Bock).

56Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 54; cf. Blaising, “Contemporary Dispensationalism,” 12-13; Darrell L. Bock, “The Reign of the Lord Christ,” in *Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church*, 37-67; Darrell L. Bock, “God’s Plan for History: The First Coming of Christ,” in *Dispensationalism and the History of Redemption*, 154-60. Saucy, *The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism*, 28, states, “God’s kingly rule is brought to the earth through the mediation of the kingdom of the Messiah. . . . This pervasive mediatorial kingdom program, ultimately fulfilled through the reign of Christ, is the theme of Scripture and the unifying principle of all aspects of God’s work in history. The historical plan of God, therefore, is one unified plan. Contrary to traditional dispensationalism, it does not entail separate programs for the church and Israel that are somehow ultimately unified only in the display of God’s glory or in eternity. The present age is not a historical parenthesis unrelated to the history that precedes and follows it; rather, it is an integrated phase in the development of the mediatorial kingdom. It is the beginning of the fulfillment of the eschatological promises.”

The eschatological kingdom is present in the person of king Jesus who displays, through his appearing and in his messianic and salvific work, the characteristics of the kingdom, but the kingdom is also a present reality through the church, the first institutional appearance of kingdom citizens. The not yet aspects of the kingdom, the fullness of the kingdom, await Christ’s return when all of national Israel’s promises will come to fruition and God’s enemies will be judged (occurring in the millennial and consummative phases of the kingdom). The progressive dispensational understanding of the kingdom, therefore, is an inaugurated eschatology that is similar to George Eldon Ladd’s version, although it differs from Ladd’s in placing many aspects of the OT promises to Israel into the future manifestation of the kingdom. The use of inaugurated eschatology is especially


exemplified in their view that Christ is presently reigning as the Davidic king and currently seated on David’s throne.60 This point receives more attention with the discussion of the Davidic covenant.

Most traditional or revised dispensationalists made modifications to their conception of the kingdom by rejecting the classical distinction between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven held by their predecessors.61 Nevertheless, unlike progressives, the kingdom is not a singular unified theme, and if the kingdom is present in the current dispensation, aside from God’s sovereign rule, it is only manifested in a spiritual or mystery form.62 Traditional dispensationalists also reject inaugurated eschatology and specifically the already-not yet framework that appears in progressive

Christ,” 54, although in “Current Messianic Activity,” 70n29, he does note the two formulations are “fairly close to one another.”


61 Bailey, “Dispensational Definitions of the Kingdom,” 213, finds that “Ryrie’s works reflect the developing decline of the importance of what was once considered a basic distinction within dispensationalism, namely, the clearly defined bifurcation of the kingdom of heaven and the kingdom of God.”

62 Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 180-83; John F. Walvoord, “Biblical Kingdoms Compared and Contrasted,” in Issues in Dispensationalism, 75-91, esp. 76-82; J. Dwight Pentecost, Things to Come: A Study in Biblical Eschatology (Findlay, OH: Dunham, 1958), 446-75; Pentecost, Thy Kingdom Come, 278-81, 292-98; and Benware, Understanding End Times Prophecy, 185-95. For an overview of the kingdom programs by more traditional or revised dispensationalists, see Fruchtenbaum, Israelology, 381-414; Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 39-46; cf. Bailey, “Dispensational Definitions of the Kingdom,” 209-16. Some more traditional dispensationalists do not find any presence of the kingdom during era of the church. For example, Toussaint, “Israel and the Church,” 231, submits that the “term kingdom always refers to the promised yet future fulfillment of Israel’s Old Testament covenants, promises, and prophecies. The kingdom was not present when Christ Jesus was here and it is not here even in ‘mystery form’ in this church age. It is totally future, awaiting fulfillment in the Millennium and eternity.” Alva McClain’s view of an interregnum seems similar to the position of Toussaint.
Adherents to this form of dispensationalism, moreover, are unified with earlier or classical dispensationalists in maintaining the offer, rejection, total postponement, and complete future fulfillment of the Davidic kingdom. Jesus offered the Davidic kingdom to Israel; however, it was contingent upon their response and given their rejection, the kingdom was postponed. Accordingly, Jesus is not currently ruling from the Davidic throne, but will do so in his reign during the millennium.

The Israel-Church Relationship in Dispensational Perspectives

Given the revised dispensationalist view of the kingdom, with the fulfillment of Israel’s promises as well as the earthly mediatorial kingdom postponed until after

---


65 Stanley D. Toussaint, “The Contingency of the Coming of the Kingdom,” in *Integrity of Heart*, 222-37; Stanley D. Toussaint and Jay A. Quine, “No, Not Yet: The Contingency of God’s Promised Kingdom,” *BibSac* 164 (2007): 131-47; Ron J. Bigalke, Jr., and George A. Gunn, “Contingency of the Davidic Reign in Peter’s Pentecost Sermon,” in *Progressive Dispensationalism: An Analysis of the Movement*, 179-204; Pentecost, *Things to Come*, 449-56; Pentecost, *Thy Kingdom Come*, 207-14, 225-34; Fruchtenbaum, “The Role of Israel,” 137; cf. DeWitt, *Dispensational Theology in America*, 69, 315-21. Turner, “Matthew among the Dispensationalists,” 701, finds this position mistaken: “The absence of a political kingdom, a millennium, as it were, should not be equated with a hiatus in God’s saving rule. Rather, the kingdom message summons those who hear it to turn their lives in the direction announced by Jesus with the expectation that God’s reign is beginning and will be even more extensive and intensive in the future.”

Christ’s return, the presence of the church is a parenthesis or intercalation in relation to God’s program with Israel.\(^{67}\) Mappes and House write,

> There is only one people of God soteriologically in the sense that everyone in any time period is saved by God’s grace; thus they mutually share in some of God’s promises. There are, however, two distinct peoples/programs of God historically and teleologically in accomplishing God’s purpose of glorification.\(^{68}\)

Israel is an object of unique privilege and blessing because of her national election and because God entered into unconditional covenants that featured physical and material promises. The church, however, is structured differently with its distinct dispensational placement and purpose in the age of grace. Important to this conception of the church is the *mystery* theme. According to Ryrie, “the church as a living organism in which Jew and Gentile are on equal footing is the mystery revealed only in New Testament times and able to be made operative only after the cross of Christ.”\(^{69}\) While blessings to Gentiles are predicted in the OT, the co-equality and inclusion of Jews and Gentiles in the one body of Christ, the church as an organism indwelt by Christ, was not revealed previously and

\(^{67}\)Ryrie, *Dispensationalism*, 146-47, 156; Walvoord, *The Millennial Kingdom*, 227-30; DeWitt, *Dispensational Theology in America*, 68, 199. Benware, *Understanding End Times Prophecy*, 105, writes, “Because of Israel’s disobedience and unbelief related to the Messiah Jesus, they have been *temporarily* set aside in the plan of God. The church, which is a new and different entity, has been raised up for an undetermined period of time to do God’s will and work in this world” (emphasis original). The distinction between Israel and the church extends into the future age. See Donald K. Campbell, “The Church in God’s Prophetic Program,” in *Essays in Honor of J. Dwight Pentecost*, 149-61.

\(^{68}\)Mappes and House, “A Biblical and Theological Discussion,” 15. For an overview of the revised/classical position on Israel and the church with the church as an interruption or insertion into history, see Carl B. Hoch, Jr., *All Things New: The Significance of Newness for Biblical Theology* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1995), 257-60.

\(^{69}\)Ryrie, *Dispensationalism*, 145. Ryrie argues that the church’s distinctiveness is based on its character (Christ’s indwelling and Jew-Gentile composition), its time (revealed as a mystery, exists as a result of Christ’s resurrection and ascension, and begins at Pentecost with the baptizing work of the Holy Spirit), and its difference with Israel (use of the words *Israel* and *church* show that there is no blurring between these entities). Ibid., 144-50. See also Fruchtenbaum, “Israel and the Church,” 116-18. DeWitt, *Dispensational Theology in America*, 201, summarizes this dispensational understanding of the church this way: “(1) the church was not revealed in Scripture until it was revealed by the risen Christ to Paul; (2) the church has a distinct composition and form of corporate existence beside ancient Israel; and (3) the church has a distinctive purpose to pursue, different from and more limited than that of the future messianic kingdom, but broader in important respects than that of ancient Israel under the law.”
shows that the church is something new and different from national Israel.70 Lastly, although Jews and Gentiles share in salvation, given the traditional dispensational understanding of two peoples with two purposes, Israel and the church as distinct anthropological groups will continue throughout eternity.71

In contrast to the more traditional dispensationalists, progressives—in conjunction with their understanding of the one promised kingdom having initial fulfillment with Christ’s first coming and the formation of the church—view the church as in some manner including and extending national Israel.72 Being the Messiah’s people, the church is the inaugurated form of the future kingdom of God and is described as a “sneak preview” or “functional outpost” of the kingdom.73 Moreover, rather than there being two peoples of God with separate programs or understanding the church as a


72Hoch, *All Things New*, 260, describes the progressive dispensationalism position with the subtitle: “The Church Includes and Extends Israel.” One problem is exactly how the term “church” is understood. Saucy, *The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism*, 210, explains, “If the church ultimately signifies all of God’s people who are in Christ, then surely the saved Israel will become a part of this body. By contrast, if ‘church’ applies only to the present age, then it would seem not to encompass that future Israel that will turn to God in faith. In either case, the church is not thereby identified with ‘Israel.’” Saucy, *The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism*, 209, asserts that “one never finds the term ‘church’ applied to those beyond the present age. Nowhere is the term as such, i.e., ‘the church’ applied either to the saints during the kingdom reign or in heaven either presently or in the future.” However, Saucy’s observation, though strictly true, fails to recognize that other terms or descriptions for the church demonstrate that it is the eschatological community that extends through eternity. The end of the ages has come upon the church (1 Cor 10:11) and it is the church that is comprised of kingdom priests who will reign with Christ (Rev 1:4-6; 5:9-10; cf. 1 Pet 2:9).

73Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 285-86; cf. 255-62. For the description of the church as a “sneak preview” of the future or of the kingdom,” see Bock, “The Reign of the Lord Christ,” 46, 53. Robert L. Saucy, “The Church as the Mystery of God,” in *Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church*, 155, approvingly cites Markus Barth’s description of the church as “as functional outpost of God’s kingdom.” Saucy describes the unity of the one people of God and how the church and Israel share in salvation and participate in God’s singular kingdom plan, but there are still distinctives as each have functional differences or unique roles in the outworking of the kingdom. Saucy, *The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism*, 218.
parenthesis in God’s plan, there is one people of God as the church overlaps with Israel to a degree and is deemed a vital phase of the kingdom program, fitting within the one plan of holistic redemption.⁷⁴ Stated differently, in contrast to traditional dispensational expressions, Bock writes, “Progressives give more attention to how fulfillment takes place in the messanic work of the exalted Christ in the present, while also highlighting how God’s ultimate reconciliation will one day bring together the creation into a restored and total fullness and wholeness.”⁷⁵ Progressive dispensationalists affirm greater continuity between Israel and the church than their more traditional counterparts—this is also seen in how they recognize that the church is comprised of a remnant of Israel. The presence of believing Jews within the body of Christ indicates a connection to OT Israel.⁷⁶ Furthermore, the manifestation of the church marks an initial fulfillment of OT promises and prophecies originally for national Israel. The church participates in and is a recipient of certain OT expectations and covenants in this present stage of the eschatological kingdom, not least of all the new covenant work of the Holy Spirit (e.g., Eph 1:13-14).⁷⁷

⁷⁴Blaising, “Contemporary Dispensationalism,” 11-12; Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 47; Helyer, The Witness of Jesus, 111. See also Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 188-90, 208-10, 218; Saucy, “Israel and the Church,” 240-41, 252-55, 259; Saucy, “The Progressive Dispensational View,” 180-93; Bock, “Hermeneutics of Progressive Dispensationalism,” 93. According to Blaising, “Contemporary Dispensationalism,” 11-12, progressives differ from their predecessors by not viewing “the church as a separate group of the redeemed alongside Israel, whether as a different kind of people (i.e., heavenly as opposed to earthly, as in classical dispensationalism) or a different and exclusive class in the same order of redemption (as in revised dispensationalism). There will be diversity among the redeemed due to the personal and corporate aspects of humanity. . . . The church is not an ethnic or national category of humanity along the same order as the terms Israel and Gentiles. Consequently, the church is not a distinguishable group from the redeemed Jews and redeemed Gentiles in eternity” (emphasis original). Cf. Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 49-50.


⁷⁷Hoch, All Things New, 262; Saucy, “The Progressive Dispensational View,” 184-88; Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 49, 174-211, 257-62. Saucy, “Israel and the Church,” 252, writes, “That OT prophecies were being fulfilled in the reality of the church is a common theme of NT teaching.”
Nevertheless, the church is not the new or true Israel. Imagery of OT Israel is applied to the church, but the term Israel is never conferred upon the church and the eschatological hopes of Israel, including national restoration, await fulfillment in the future manifestation of the kingdom—the millennium and the consummated state. Although progressives agree with non-dispensationalists that the “mystery” of the unity of Jews and Gentiles in Christ is a fulfillment of OT prophecies regarding the Gentiles becoming part of the people of God (Eph 3:3-6; cf. Isa 2:4; 12:3-4; 42:6; 49:6; Zech 9:9-10; Mic 4:3) and is therefore not completely unknown as traditional dispensationalists contend, this mystery does not negate the realization of all the prophecies or the future role of Israel. In the eternal state, the church is not another “people-group” among national Israel, rather, as Blaising and Bock explain,


79Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 163-67. See also Saucy, “The Church as the Mystery of God,” 127-55, esp. 147-51; Robert L. Saucy, “The Locus of the Church,” CTR 1 (1987): 387-99, esp. 397-99. In these writings, Saucy understands the content of the mystery of Eph 3:6 as entailing two senses. First, added dimensions of the messianic salvation now revealed were not specified in the OT. Thus there is new truth concerning this fulfillment with the church and Israel being largely set aside whereas the OT had projected salvation coming to the Gentiles when Christ was reigning over a restored Israel. Second, Paul’s use of mystery signifies that the salvation in Christ has dawned in actuality whereas previously this messianic activity was only predicted. For a revised dispensational critique of this view, see Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 154-56. Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 108-9, discuss the mystery of Eph 3:6 in terms of the new revelation in this dispensation of the church, although elsewhere Bock, “Current Messianic Activity,” 81 (cf. 80-85), finds that the mystery of Eph 3:6-9 is completely new “since the OT nowhere declares either the indwelling of Gentiles by the Messiah or the total equality of Jews and Gentiles in one new body. Recently, G. K. Beale and Benjamin L. Gladd, Hidden but Now Revealed: A Biblical Theology of Mystery (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2014), 159-73, have argued convincingly that the mystery of Eph 3:6 concerns how Gentiles become part of end-time Israel in the latter days and that the mystery is not specifically about the equal membership of the body of Christ. The OT already projected Gentiles becoming part of the nation of Israel as Saucy acknowledges, but the mystery concerns how Gentiles become part of the new or renewed Israel—not by following the customs and markers of the Mosaic law but by identifying with Christ, the true Israel. Beale and Gladd, Hidden but Now Revealed, 164-66. It is through the gospel that Gentiles are fellow partakers in Christ. For similar conclusions to those of Beale and Gladd, see Sigurd Grindheim, “What the OT Prophets Did Not Know: The Mystery of the Church in Eph 3,” Biblica 80 (2003): 531-53.
Redeemed Jews and Gentiles will share equally in the completed blessings of the Spirit. The church in this [present] dispensation testifies to this aspect of redemption. The same redeemed Jews and Gentiles will be directed and governed by Jesus Christ according to their different nationalities. The national identities and political promises of Israel and the Gentiles in the last dispensation testifies in turn to this aspect of redemption.80

Dispensational Understandings of the Covenants

The differences between more traditional dispensationalists and progressives also appear in their understandings of the covenants. Naturally, however, all dispensationalists differ from covenant theologians in not advocating for the theological constructs of the covenant of works and grace. The main focus for this overview of covenants within dispensational thought will be upon the Abrahamic, Davidic, and new covenants since their interpretations of these covenants are pivotal for their understanding of the Israel-church distinction (ecclesiology) and eschatology.81 The covenant of creation or covenant with Adam receives little attention in dispensational writings and although it is not ignored altogether,82 such a lack of treatment raises the specter that dispensationalists are not linking national Israel back to Adam and the pivotal creation account in the doing

---

80Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 50. See also Craig A. Blaising, “God’s Plan for History: The Consummation,” in Dispensationalism and the History of Redemption, 195-218, esp. 202-14, for a discussion on the differences between classic, revised, and progressives on the eternal state.

81For examples, Pentecost, Things to Come; Walvoord, The Millennial Kingdom; and Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism; all focus on these three covenants in their studies.

82Harless, How Firm a Foundation, 69-91, identifies a pre-fall Edenic covenant and a post-fall Adamic covenant. Both are described as suzerain-vassal covenants featuring stipulations, beneficiaries, and clear points of establishment (Gen 2:16, 17; Gen 3:1-19, respectively). Cf. Walvoord, The Millennial Kingdom, 78, as he mentions these two covenants in contrast to a covenant of works. Eugene H. Merrill, “Covenant and the Kingdom: Genesis 1-3 as a Foundation for Biblical Theology,” CTR 1 (1987): 295-308, describes an Adamic covenant (Gen 1:26-38) in terms of a suzerain-vassal covenant (298), yet in Eugene H. Merrill, Everlasting Dominion: A Theology of the Old Testament (Nashville: B & H, 2006), 238-40, he describes the Adamic covenant in Gen 1:26-28 as a royal grant type. Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 129, 216, give scant attention to the creation account and do not link national Israel back to Adam. Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 40, 44, briefly relates the Abrahamic covenant to the early chapters of Genesis, but again, there is no attempt to connect the nation of Israel back to Adam in any developed manner in terms of the unfolding plan of Scripture. Instead of referring to a covenant of creation, most dispensationalists speak of a dispensation of innocence and conscience with respect to the first three chapters of Genesis.
of biblical theology. The Mosaic covenant, which is a significant area of debate within covenant theology, is also not as significant for dispensationalism as this covenant (or dispensation of Law) is interpreted as fulfilled or abrogated. Therefore, a brief sketch of the Abrahamic, Davidic, and new covenants is in order.

The Abrahamic Covenant

For all dispensationalists, like covenant theologians, the Abrahamic covenant is foundational as a covenant and within their system of theology. According to dispensationalists, the Abrahamic covenant is a unilateral or unconditional covenant, and some will also describe it as a royal grant covenant having affinities with ANE parallels. The promissory or unconditional nature of the covenant, highlighted by God unilaterally cutting the covenant as Abram slept (Gen 15:1-21), is not negated by the fact that Abraham was obligated to serve and obey God—his obedience occasioned the blessings but the

---


promises instituted by God are subject to his divine commitment. This unconditional nature of the covenant is important for dispensationalists because the Abrahamic covenant is everlasting (Gen 13:15; 17:7, 13, 19; 1 Chr 16:16-17; Ps 105:9-10) and features physical and spiritual promises that establish the enduring or irrevocable role of the nation of Israel and her perpetual title to the promised land in God’s plan.

More specifically, the promises to Abraham envelop three crucial elements: the seed, the land, and the universal blessing to all nations. Most dispensationalists agree that the Abrahamic covenant is partially fulfilled through the church (or at the very least the church participates in the Abrahamic promises) as Christ is the singular seed who brings universal blessings to peoples and believers in and through Christ become Abraham’s spiritual seed. Further, all dispensationalists concur that the promise to Abraham of being made into a great nation and the promised land for the physical (and faithful) offspring of Abraham—the ethnic nation of Israel—await fulfillment in the future, namely the millennium.

---


87Other promises to Abraham, such as having a great name, how God will bless and curse those who bless or curse Abraham, and many others are also highlighted by dispensationalists. Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 130; Bock, “Covenants,” 174-77; Pentecost, Things to Come, 72; Harless, How Firm a Foundation, 118-21; Gromacki, “The Fulfillment of the Abrahamic Covenant,” 79-84; Bigalke, “The Abrahamic Covenant,” 43. Nevertheless, the seed, the land, and blessings for all peoples take center stage as most dispensationalists recognize. See Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 42-46; Pentecost, Things to Come, 73.

88Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 49-50, 57-58; Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 189-93; Bock, “Covenants,” 172; Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 161; Bigalke, “The Abrahamic Covenant,” 47-52; Gromacki, “The Fulfillment of the Abrahamic Covenant,” 114-16. Walvoord, The Millennial Kingdom, 145-46; Pentecost, Things to Come, 87-88; Pentecost, Thy Kingdom Come, 79-80; and Benware, Understanding End Times Prophecy, 50-52, all fail to identify Christ as the seed of Abraham though they do recognize that Gentiles become Abraham’s spiritual seed through Christ and so are heirs of the promise of Gen 12:3.

There are, however, differences between progressives and more traditional dispensationalists in terms of how they perceive the Abrahamic covenant developing in the progress of revelation. According to Bigalke, “Traditional dispensationalism interprets the spiritual promises or blessings as extending to the church, but the covenants are not fulfilled in the Church Dispensation.” In addition, the three essential aspects of the Abrahamic covenant (the seed promise, land, and universal blessings) form the basis of three sub-covenants of which they also find their fulfillment: the Davidic (national seed theme), the Palestinian or Land covenant (Deut 29-30), and the new covenant (universal blessings). Progressives, in contrast, understand the Abrahamic covenant as having a more Christological focus with Jesus inaugurating the fulfillment of this covenant (Gal 3) as he mediates the blessings to Israel and the nations. Moreover, progressives reject the notion of a Palestinian covenant as they find no evidence for it, and they understand the


92Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 189-93; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 49, 57. Despite this inaugural fulfillment wrought in Christ, Bock, “Covenants,” 172-73, still argues that a second feature or track of the Abrahamic covenant is the prominent role for the ethnic nation of Israel, and Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 57, 58, also finds the inauguration of the covenant in Christ’s redemptive work, but the “promises concerning the land and the seed that constitute the ‘great nation,’ Israel . . . [belong] primarily to the future” as these “blessings promised to Israel are nowhere reinterpreted as presently belonging to the church.” Cf. Saucy, “The Progressive Dispensational View,” 166-67.
new covenant as “the form in which the Abrahamic covenant has been inaugurated in this
dispensation and will be fulfilled in the future. The Davidic covenant is both an aspect of
Abrahamic blessings and the means by which the blessings are now inaugurated and will
be bestowed in full.”93

The Davidic Covenant

Some of the most vociferous debate among dispensationalists is centered on
the Davidic covenant and the kingdom as has already been noted in regard to the latter
topic.94 It is specifically at these points where the appropriation of inaugurated eschatology
and complementary hermeneutics by progressive dispensationalists lead to significant
areas of dispute with revised dispensationalists. Before highlighting more of these
disagreements with regard to the Davidic covenant, the areas of agreement are observed.

93Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 53, emphasis original; cf. 156-58. See
also Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 122-23. In regard to the Palestinian covenant,
Bock writes that the “so-called Palestinian covenant” is unwarranted “because (1) there is no text that
names such a covenant, and (2) the promise of land for Israel is part of the promise made to Abraham so
that this so-called covenant does not promise anything new to make it a distinct promise.” Bock,
“Covenants,” 211n1. For summary and critiques of the progressive dispensational interpretation of the
Abrahamic covenant by traditionalists, see Bigalke, “The Abrahamic Covenant,” 52-53; and Gromacki,

94For treatment of the Davidic covenant by progressive dispensationalists, see Blaising and
Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 159-71, 175-87; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism,
Activity,” 65-85. For more traditional dispensational discussions, see Pentecost, Things to Come, 100-15;
Pentecost, Thy Kingdom Come, 137-56; Walvoord, The Millennial Kingdom, 194-207; Johnson, “Covenants
in Traditional Dispensationalism,” 127-31, 139-44; Thomas H. Cragoe, “The Davidic Covenant,” in
Progressive Dispensationalism: An Analysis of the Movement, 99-134; Cleon L. Rogers, Jr., “The Davidic
Covenant in the Gospels,” BibSac 150 (1993): 458-78; Cleon L. Rogers, Jr., “The Davidic Covenant in Acts-
Revelation,” BibSac 151 (1994): 71-84; Fruchtenbaum, Israelology, 345-54, 583-86; Benware,
Understanding End Times Prophecy, 61-71; David Olander, “The Importance of the Davidic Covenant,”
(paper presented at the annual meeting of the national Evangelical Theological Society, San Francisco,
November 16, 2011); and the discussion in this chapter on “The Kingdom and Inaugurated Eschatology in
Dispensational Views.”
All dispensationalists understand the Davidic covenant as an unconditional or unilateral covenant, and like the Abrahamic, some will identify it as a royal grant. While the covenant is everlasting and eternal, enjoyment of the promises are conditioned on the obedience and faithfulness of the Davidic kings. Although there is some variation in describing the promises to David (2 Sam 7; 1 Chr 17), most dispensationalists agree that the promises entail a great name for David, a place and rest for national Israel, a house or dynasty for David (posterity), and an everlasting throne and kingdom. Moreover, dispensationalists understand the Davidic covenant to enlarge or elaborate upon the Abrahamic covenant in terms of narrowing the focus of the seed promises. Lastly, the exhaustive fulfillment of the Davidic covenant occurs when Jesus returns to earth, Israel experiences full national and political restoration, and Jesus’ reign is displayed over all.

Aside from those general areas of agreement, dispensationalists part ways in regard to the fulfillment of the Davidic covenant. Revised dispensationalists, while recognizing that Jesus is the messianic son of David, assert that the Davidic promises concerning a kingdom, throne, and reign will be fulfilled in the future as no partial or


96Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 159-61; Bock, “Covenants,” 179-81; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 60; Walvoord, The Millennial Kingdom, 195-96; Pentecost, Things to Come, 101-3; Pentecost, Thy Kingdom Come, 141-42; Benware, Understanding End Times Prophecy, 62-63; Fruchtenbaum, Israelology, 585; Cragoe, “The Davidic Covenant,” 99-100.

97As noted, traditional dispensationalists connect the Abrahamic land promises to the Palestinian covenant and view the seed promise developing in the Davidic covenant (e.g., Pentecost, Thy Kingdom Come, 140). On the other hand, progressive dispensationalists see more connections and development between the Abrahamic and the Davidic covenants. Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 63, writes, “Both Abraham and David are personally promised a ‘great name’ (2Sa. 7:9; cf. Ge 12:2) and the Lord’s blessing (2Sa 7:29; cf. Ge 12:2). In the long range, they will have kings among their offspring (2Sa 7:12-16; cf. Ge 17:6, 16) and a land or a ‘place’ for the nation (2Sa 7:10; cf. Ge 12:7). The aim of universal blessing, so important to the Abrahamic promise, is clearly associated later on with the Davidic promise (Ps 72:17; cf. Ge 12:3) and . . . may also be expressed in the initial promise (2Sa 7:19b).” Similarly, Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 166-68; Bock, “Covenants,” 179-81.
inaugurated fulfillment has occurred with Christ’s first coming.98 The Davidic covenant must be fulfilled to the nation of Israel in a literalistic manner, but the kingdom is postponed since Israel rejected the offer and did not receive Jesus.99 Further, Jesus is enthroned in heaven as the vindicated Lord and Christ on account of his resurrection and ascension (Acts 2:14-36), but he is not on the throne of David (on earth), but on the throne of God.100 Lastly, NT citations of Psalm 110 only indicate Jesus’ role as the Melchizedekian priest, but this priesthood is not a provision of the Davidic covenant.101

Traditional dispensationalists critique progressives for blurring the distinction of the universal kingdom with the Davidic kingdom and thereby compromise the distinction between Israel and the church since progressives conceive of the church as the realm of Christ’s current Davidic rule.102

In contrast, progressive dispensationalists understand the Davidic covenant as having inaugural fulfillment as the Davidic dynasty (house) culminates in Christ. Blaising and Bock rightly observe that the Davidic titles applied to Jesus, his anointing at his


baptism, and his resurrection (which fulfills the promise of raising up a Davidic descendant) are all tied back to the Davidic covenant. The Davidic kingdom is a present reality then, and Christ is sitting on the throne of David, which is not to be distinguished from the throne of God or from the language of being seated at the right hand of God. As Blaising and Bock convincingly demonstrate, the description of Christ’s enthronement is drawn from Davidic promises and additionally, the description of the Melchizedekian priesthood in Psalm 110 is part of the Davidic office and is linked to Psalm 132 (and derivatively to the Davidic covenant of 2 Sam 7) by Peter in Acts 2. There is a difference among progressives in terms of Christ’s reign on the throne, however. Saucy advances that Christ’s session on the Davidic throne carries no present function in terms of an active reign as Christ’s rule is only exercised with his second coming. For Blaising and Bock, it is Christ’s present activity that guarantees the fulfillment of all the Davidic promises in the future. Specifically, Bock’s survey of a whole constellation of titles, roles, and images associated with the rule and authority of the Davidic king, from shepherding to defeating enemies and conquering cosmic forces to the messianic activities

---


106 Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 72-76, 80, 101, 106. Saucy repeatedly states that Christ’s present reign is not functioning in terms of an actual messianic rule. Saucy is followed by his son Mark Saucy who also advances this position: Saucy, The Kingdom of God, 343-47. For critiques of these views, see Bock, “Covenants,” 218n20, 222-23n34. Cf. Moore, The Kingdom of Christ, 40-42.

107 Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 162, 180.
of granting forgiveness and distributing the Spirit, have shown that Christ is currently exercising his regal rule as the ideal Davidic king.\textsuperscript{108}

The New Covenant

The diversity of positions on the fulfillment of the new covenant, especially among more traditional dispensationalists, reveal the challenges dispensationalists have in applying a strict, consistent, literal grammatical hermeneutic as they contend with how new covenant promises or provisions to Israel are used by the NT authors with reference to the church.\textsuperscript{109} Dispensationalists generally agree that the new covenant is an eternal, unconditional, or unilateral covenant (and some describe it as a grant covenant) and that Jesus Christ is the mediator of this covenant.\textsuperscript{110} Nevertheless, the number of proposals


\textsuperscript{110}Although even here there seems to be division as some dispensationalists describe the new covenant as a suzerain-vassal covenant. See Hoch, “The New Covenant,” 65-69; Roy E. Beacham, “The
regarding the relationship between the new covenant and the church indicates the strain of maintaining the Israel-church distinction, which lies at the heart of dispensationalism.

Among more traditional dispensationalists, at least three to four differing views of the new covenant may be discerned. First, prominent dispensationalists have argued that there are two new covenants, one for Israel, and one for the church. OT and NT texts refer to the new covenant with Israel, which will be completed in the millennial kingdom. Other NT passages (1 Cor 11:25; 2 Cor 3:6) address a new covenant that is enjoyed by the church in the present age.

A second position is that the new covenant is for Israel alone, and as the sole and exclusive covenant partner, Israel will receive the fullness of the new covenant in the eschaton. The new covenant is actually not applied to the church in any manner in the NT. The salvation blessings in the church age are only similar to those promised to Israel under the new covenant. There is no indirect or direct relationship to the new covenant.

---


112 Walvoord, The Millennial Kingdom, 214-19; Ryrie, Dispensationalism, 202-4, esp. 204. Walvoord, “Does the Church Fulfill Israel’s Program?,” 219-20, changed his view to positing one new covenant with application to the church, but he later reverted back to his original position, see Walvoord, “The New Covenant,” 198-99. Ryrie appears to have followed the same pattern, so Compton, “Dispensationalism, the Church, and the New Covenant,” 6-7n12. Master, “The New Covenant,” 108, seems to articulate something similar to this position when he writes, “There are many new covenants because each dispensation is a new covenant.” For critique of the two covenant position, see Thorsell, “The Spirit in the Present Age,” 401-10; Compton, “Dispensationalism and the New Covenant,” 38.

for the church; the similarities are only due to the fact that the church is in relationship with the same new covenant mediator, Jesus Christ.

A third view popular among traditional dispensationalists with some variation, is that there is one new covenant, but in some manner the church participates in the blessings or benefits of the new covenant ratified by Christ.\footnote{Pentecost, *Thy Kingdom Come*, 174-76; Kent, “The New Covenant,” 296-98; Decker, “The Church’s Relationship,” 447-56; Harless, *How Firm a Foundation*, 174-77; Benware, *Understanding End Times Prophecy*, 75-77; Compton, “Dispensationalism, the Church, and the New Covenant,” 47-48. Although disagreeing on some details, both Elliott E. Johnson, “The Church Has an Indirect Relationship to the New Covenant,” in *Dispensational Understanding of the New Covenant*, 164-75, and Rodney J. Decker, “The Church Has a Direct Relationship to the New Covenant,” in *Dispensational Understanding of the New Covenant*, 194-222, agree that the church does not fulfill any aspect of the new covenant promises to Israel, but the new covenant still applies to the church. For critique of the single covenant, multiple participants perspective, see Cone, “Hermeneutical Ramifications,” 10-17.} Important for this view is that the church’s experience of the blessings and provisions of the new covenant (soteriological in nature), as well as the ratification of the new covenant in the death of Christ, in no way mean that the new covenant is fulfilled either partially or in terms of inauguration. With Israel as the covenant partner of the unconditional and prophesied new covenant, fulfillment must occur with the second coming of Christ.

Lastly, the new covenant is understood to be inaugurated or operative in the current age with church members participating in the initial realization of the spiritual blessings.\footnote{Pettegrew, “The New Covenant,” 265-68; Pettegrew, *The New Covenant Ministry of the Holy Spirit*, 34-38, 101-7; Ralph H. Alexander, “A New Covenant—An Eternal People (Jeremiah 31),” in *Israel, the Land and the People*, 169-206, esp. 197-98.} The full appropriation of the new covenant is directed to national Israel. This position overlaps somewhat with the progressive dispensational perspective on the new covenant.

Turning to progressive dispensationalism, progressives recognize there is one new covenant and it is established by the work of Christ. Although the new covenant in the OT context has Israel as the covenant partner, Saucy observes, “The fact that the prophetic statements are addressed only to Israel cannot logically be understood to exclude...
others from participating even though they are not a part of Israel. The texts never say that the covenant would relate only to Israel and not others.”116 The new covenant is extended to Gentiles since it restates or brings to fulfillment the promises of the Davidic and Abrahamic covenant as the universal blessing to all families (Gen 12:3) and the promise of reconciliation with the nations (e.g., Isa 55:3-5) come to initial fruition through the death of Christ which also enacts the new covenant.117 The participation of Gentiles in the new covenant does not mean that they become part of a “new Israel.” The new covenant promises involving the restoration of national Israel and the physical and material blessings, including the hope of Israel becoming a great nation (Gen 12:2), are provisions of the new covenant that await future fulfillment.118

What is vital for the progressive dispensational understanding of the new covenant, as with the other promissory covenants, is their use of inaugurated eschatology.119 The spiritual aspects or blessings of the new covenant—forgiveness of sins, indwelling of the Holy Spirit, the transformation of the heart leading to faithfulness, and a new relationship to God for all covenant participants—are now inaugurated in this


117For the relationship between the new covenant and the Abrahamic and Davidic covenants in conjunction with the inclusion of the Gentiles in the new covenant blessings, see Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 155-58; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 121-23, 131-32. Cf. Ware, “The New Covenant,” 72-73. Progressives also connect the new covenant to the Isaianic Servant who brings salvation to the nations.


age through the mediation of Christ and the agency of the Holy Spirit. The not-yet aspects include the physical or territorial and political promises as those will be consummated for national Israel in the millennium (Rom 11:25-27). However, progressives also recognize that spiritual blessings of the new covenant are not yet. Blaising and Bock, for example, observe that moral and spiritual perfection (freedom from sin) lies in the future and that the full adoption of sonship (Rom 8:23) and the resurrection of the body to a glorious one are associated with Christ’s return.\textsuperscript{120}

Therefore, according to progressives, the spiritual promises of the new covenant have an already and a not yet realization, while the material or physical promises to national Israel are entirely yet to be fulfilled. One of the thrusts of chapter 5 is to demonstrate that this asymmetrical conception of the new covenant in terms of inaugurated eschatology is off the mark. Israel’s restoration commences with the coming of Christ and the land of promise is confirmed as a typological pattern given the indications within the OT itself and based on the developments of the inheritance and rest themes in the NT.\textsuperscript{121} Taken together, the evidence strongly suggests that the entire new covenant is ratified by Christ’s work on the cross and all of the new covenant provisions and promises have a present fulfillment and a future realization equally shared by all those in union with Christ, Jew and Gentile Christians alike.

\textsuperscript{120}Blaising and Bock, \textit{Progressive Dispensationalism}, 208-10. Ware, “The New Covenant,” 95-96, arrives to the same conclusion that the new covenant spiritual aspects are not yet: “The goal [of covenant fidelity] will surely be achieved in the end. At present, however, the struggle with the world, the flesh, and the devil goes on, but it does so with the resources of a new-covenant provision to enable holiness and obedience. . . . [S]uch new-covenant faithfulness will occur fully when Christ comes again and brings to completion the new covenant, which is now inaugurated in a preliminary way.”

\textsuperscript{121}Intriguingly, Blaising and Bock, \textit{Progressive Dispensationalism}, 153-54, identify the connection between the resurrection from the dead with the inheritance of the promised land (e.g., Ezek 37:14), but they posit these blessings to the future. On the other hand, G. K. Beale, \textit{A New Testament Biblical Theology: The Unfolding of the Old Testament in the New} (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2011), 751, 761-62, 768, argues convincingly that the land promises have inaugurated fulfillment through the physical resurrection of Christ, which is also the inbreaking of the new creation. Beale thoroughly lays out how the land promises are universalized within the OT and NT in addition to the NT textual warrant for the already-not yet features (750-72). Cf. Lucas, “The Dispensational Appeal to Romans 11,” 241, cf. 241n17.
The Nature of Typology in Dispensational Theology

The previous elucidation of dispensational approaches to interpretation (whether strictly “literal” or utilizing complementary hermeneutics) and how that shapes the dispensational understandings of the kingdom, the covenants, and the Israel-church relationship provide the framework for their rendering and approach to typology. Dispensationalists recognize typological patterns in Scripture, but at the outset it is evident that national Israel is either not typological of Christ or the church (the antitypes), or Israel is typological if typology is redefined to consist of only correspondence and analogy (see chap. 2) or reframed such that antitypes are only partial or incomplete fulfillments of the type. Saucy captures this precisely when he writes,

If a type is understood as a *shadow* pointing forward to the *reality* of its antitype, then Israel is not a type. . . . On the other hand, if a type is more loosely defined simply as a general historical and theological correspondence, then the many analogies between Old Testament Israel and the New Testament people of God may well be explained by seeing Israel as a type without necessitating its cessation as a nation and the fulfillment of the promises related to its future.\(^{122}\)

Despite similarities, the particular notions of typology differ among more traditional forms of dispensationalism and progressive dispensationalism.\(^{123}\)

**Typological Perspectives within Traditional or Revised Dispensationalism**

There is some variation among more traditional dispensationalists on the topic of typology. Some articulate a view of typology that resonates with the presentation in chapter 2. Namely, in contrast to allegorization, typology, rooted in the literal sense of Scripture, is the study of persons, events, and institutions that are historically grounded, characterized by a genuine correspondence or resemblance with their antitypical


counterpart, and are divinely designed, possessing a prophetic character (prefiguration or element of foreshadowing). Among many of this group of traditional dispensationalists, positive appeal is made to Patrick Fairbairn’s classic study and textual warrant, either explicit or implicit, is required in the identification of types. Roy Zuck and others follow the Marshian principle that typological patterns are only those so designated by the NT, but some reject this extreme for a moderate approach similar to Fairbairn’s. What is not as clear in these writings is the escalation in the typological pattern or the nature of the fulfillment between the type and the antitype. For Paul Feinberg and Zuck, typology involves a heightening or escalation as antitypes are on a higher plane compared to their corresponding types, but they differ in that Zuck describes this heightening in terms of fulfillment whereas Feinberg treats typology as a separate category from the fulfillment of prophecies or predictions. Therefore, within one group of more traditional dispensationalists, a type is understood as a shadow, a form of prophecy, that reaches its

---


126 Zuck, *Basic Bible Interpretation*, 173-74; Feinberg, “Hermeneutics of Discontinuity,” 120-22 (for the feature of escalation in Feinberg’s position, see p. 121). Pentecost, *Things to Come*, 50, also notes how the antitype transcends the type. A degree of escalation is also detected in the way Tan, “Symbols and Types,” 83-84, describes messianic typologies in conjunction with OT prophecies.
reality and fulfillment in the greater antitype. With this understanding of typology and given the commitment to dispensational presuppositions, Israel is not a type as Paul Tan seems representative in stating that certain things “should not be interpreted under [the] type-antitype relationship. The different peoples of God (Israel and the Christian church) are not identical concepts.”

On the other hand, another group of revised or more traditional dispensationalists take a different approach. Rather than viewing types as shadows pointing to an antitypical reality or fulfillment, these “[d]ispensationalists do not think types necessarily are shadows, and they demand that both type and antitype be given their due meanings in their own contexts while maintaining a typological relation to one another.”

For this conception of typology, the type may have a prophetic element or be divinely designed to correspond to the antitype, nevertheless, typology is an application of historical persons, events, and institutions for illustrative or analogical purposes with no sense of fulfillment as the “NT antitypes neither explicitly nor implicitly cancel the meaning of the OT types.” These particular dispensationalists can identify national Israel as a type

---

127 Zuck, *Basic Bible Interpretation*, 173-74, 176, 178, is the clearest in positing the type as a shadow and a form of prophecy with the antitype as the heightening fulfillment of the type. Note also Tan, “Symbols and Types,” 81. Bigalke, “The Abrahamic Covenant,” 64, also speaks of typology in terms of fulfillment. See also Elliott E. Johnson, *Expository Hermeneutics: An Introduction* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1990), 126, as he generally fits into this group as well since he describes the type as a partial fulfillment of an earlier promise that anticipates an ultimate, completed fulfillment (antitype). For Johnson, only God’s promises of deliverance and blessing are involved in typology. Friederichsen, “The Hermeneutics of Typology,” 451-53, 456-57, concludes that types not only prefigure Christ, but they terminate and climax in Christ or his soteriological work and so are not illustrative analogies. OT types do not have any antitypical dimension with regard to the church. Strangely, only the Mosaic institutions, the Levitical priesthood and sacrifices, are constituted as typological in Friederichsen’s assessment (see esp. p. 461). Zuck finds many more genuine types, but like of the implications of Friederichsen’s study, he concludes that Adam is only an illustration of Christ (Rom 5:14) and the Israelite responses in the wilderness (1 Cor 10:7-10) as negative examples for Christians, but not as types. Zuck, *Basic Bible Interpretation*, 181.


130 Ibid., 79. Feinberg follows David Baker in rejecting prefiguration since that may alter the meaning of the original OT context, although he does argue that types “look to the future, but not in a way that makes their meaning equivalent to the antitype.” Ibid., 78-79. Paul Feinberg, “Hermeneutics of
of either Christ or the church because the escalation and fulfillment aspects (also dubbed as the “vanishing principle” where the antitype cancels the meaning of the type) of typology are absent.131 Fulfillment may be present in a few other typological patterns (e.g., the sacrificial system). Given these hermeneutical commitments, Matthew’s use of Hosea 11:1 (Matt 2:15) can be taken in two different ways. Matthew’s citation can be interpreted as merely an analogy or illustration between Jesus’ life and the exodus events of national Israel, or, since the meaning of the original type is never substituted or cancelled by the antitype, a typological connection is present in Matthew 2:15, but such a link does not nullify Israel’s future role.132 As this example shows, the NT writers’ use of certain OT

Discontinuity,” 121, seems to advocate a similar position as he mentions prefiguration as a feature of typology, but he rejects any prediction-fulfillment element and pairs typology with analogy. Walvoord, “Christological Typology,” 286, should also be grouped with this perspective, although he is more free in finding OT types. While noting a prophetic import with regard to types, he states that “[t]ypology is primarily concerned with application of an historical fact as an illustration of a spiritual truth” (emphasis original). Walvoord’s study of Christological typologies reduces to mere illustrations of spiritual truths with a few exceptions (e.g., OT sacrifices) Similarly, Justin Michael Brown, “Is Typology an Interpretative Method?” (Th.M. thesis, Master’s Seminary, 2014), 82-85, 101-2, affirms God’s purposeful design of the type-antitype correspondence, but rejects the prospective or prophetic element (with the exception of the OT sacrifices), dismisses antitypical fulfillment of the type, and describes typological relationships in terms of their explanatory and illustrative purposes. In this study, Brown wrongly pits typology against corporate solidarity when they should not be separated and he provides unconvincing exegesis of the hermeneutically significant τύπος passages, failing also to develop how the nature and characteristics of typology interface with many other texts lacking the τύπος term (with exception to a few passages related to the land promise). Aside from Fairbairn, Goppelt, and Davidson, Brown does not engage other important works that feature helpful conclusions regarding typology (like the works by D. A. Carson, Paul Hoskins, Friedbert Ninow, and others, see chap. 2).

131Feinberg, “Systems of Discontinuity,” 72, does describe Israel as a type of the church. For how Jesus can be thought of as the “true Israel” (or antitype of Israel) but in a way that only secures national Israel’s future restoration, consult Vlach, “What Does Christ as ‘True Israel’ Mean,” 43-54; cf. Brown, “Is Typology an Interpretative Method?,” 101-2. If the arrival of the antitype consists of the completion and fulfillment of the type, then Israel is not a type, for unconditional promises to Israel must be fulfilled and the NT still affirms Israel’s future, so Feinberg, “Systems of Discontinuity,” 79-83; Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 104-7, and Michael J. Vlach, “Have They Found a Better Way? An Analysis of Gentry and Wellum’s Kingdom through Covenant,” MSJ 24 (2013): 12-17.

132Feinberg, “Hermeneutics of Discontinuity,” 122, interprets Matthew use of Hos 11:1 as an analogy. Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 91-93; Vlach, “Have They Found a Better Way?,” 17; Vlach, “What Does Christ as ‘True Israel’ Mean,” 48; indicates a typological correspondence is present between Jesus and Israel in Matt 2:15, but such does not deny Israel’s unique eschatological place in God’s plan. It is not difficult to postulate the promised land as an analogy or as a type within this scheme; see Walvoord, “Christological Typology,” 296 (land of Canaan as analogy), and Brown, “Is Typology an

181
passages does not necessarily cancel the original meaning as the application of the OT
text differs from what the original author may have foreseen. This indicates that there is a
double fulfillment; the NT authors can use OT texts with application to the church and do
so with while maintaining the integrity of the OT’s meaning and unconditional promises
for national Israel.133

Typological Perspectives within
Progressive Dispensationalism

The appropriation of complementary hermeneutics and inaugurated eschatology
by progressive dispensationalists means that typology is framed differently than by those
proposed by more traditional dispensationalists. Nevertheless, the theological conclusions
regarding national Israel end up in the same place. Whereas progressives are more willing
to identify national Israel as a type of Jesus and the church, this typological fulfillment is
only a partial one because the literal promises and prophecies directed to Israel must have
an ultimate fulfillment in the future.134

Bock is the most visible in laying out a progressive dispensational understanding
of typology.135 Under the rubric of typological-prophetic, Bock offers two categories of

118-19. Feinberg, “Systems of Discontinuity,” 79, affirms that the NT antitype can cancel the meaning of
the OT type but only where the NT tells us. Likewise, Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 115-17.
Instead of double fulfillment, Bigalke, “The Abrahamic Covenant,” 66-67, finds the principle of double
fulfillment faulty and prefers double reference.

134Glenny, “Typology: A Summary,” 634-35. Note again the citation of Saucy referenced
above in n121, which is also expressed in Saucy, Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 31-32.

135Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 102-3; Darrell L. Bock, Proclamation
from Prophecy and Pattern: Lucan Old Testament Christology, JSNTSup 12 (Sheffield: JSOT, 1987), 49-
Contexts and Referents: The New Testament’s Legitimate, Accurate, and Multifaceted Use of the Old,” in
(Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2008), 118-21.
typological fulfillment and then offers a separate category called *authoritative illustration* or *simple typology* which also figures into his rendering of typology. The first category is typological-*prophetic* fulfillment. Under this heading, Bock discusses texts where “there is a short-term historical referent, and yet the promise’s initial fulfillment is such that an expectation remains that more of the pattern needs ‘filling up’ to be completely fulfilled.”136 Such expectations would have already been detected by the Jewish readers as passages such as Isaiah 65-66, the servant figure of the latter part of Isaiah, and short term partially realized promises (such as the “day of the Lord”) anticipate an ultimate fulfillment or completion in the future. In these OT passages, an aspect “demands fulfillment beyond the short-term event and thus points to the presence of pattern. The prophetic character of the text resides in this ‘needs to be fulfilled’ feature in the pattern.”137 The second category under typological-prophetic is *typological*-prophetic. Typological patterns with this characterization still have a forward looking element embedded in the pattern and are prophetic since God designed the correspondence; however, the pattern is not anticipated by the language of the immediate context but only becomes a decisive pattern when the fulfillment makes it apparent.138 Matthew’s use of Hosea 11:1 (Matt 2:15) and the righteous-sufferer and regal psalms are listed as examples. Overall, with the broad typological-prophetic category, Bock elucidates typology as featuring identifiable patterns that have a prophetic orientation. Given that the typical event or person anticipates completion and fulfillment, moving to consummation, an escalation is present between the type and antitype.139

---


138 Ibid., 272-73. See also Bock, “Single Meaning, Multiple Contexts,” 119-20; cf. 121.

139 See Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 103, where Bock writes, “Escalation means that [Christ] fulfills [the typological pattern] to a greater degree than others before Him, pointing to His unique and often culminating position within the pattern.” Bock, *Proclamation from Prophecy and Pattern*, 291-92n124, also states that although typology is often identified retrospectively, it is still prophetic.
In addition, Bock also has a separate category for illustration or “simple typology” where there is no prophetic import. Past OT examples that do not have a forward looking element are used for illustrative purposes in the NT, having an exhortative function for the present.\(^{140}\) Fitting this description according to Bock are 1 Corinthians 10:1-13, where the Corinthians are to learn from the past examples of bad behavior, and the use of Psalm 95 in Hebrews 3-4. In sum, the “problem is that typology . . . involves a spectrum of usage, some of which is prophetic and some of which is not, so it is not a defining characteristic of the category as a whole, but comes to us in distinct ways.”\(^{141}\) Therefore, given this view, national Israel could fit in either the typological-prophetic general heading or the “simple typology” category because neither the analogous or illustrative nature of the latter nor the multiple fulfillments of the former would exhaust or abrogate the ultimate fulfillment of the promises to national Israel in the future. The (prospective) because the pattern is worked out by God in his plan. Holding to a similar view to Bock’s, but without the explicit distinguishing categories under typological-prophetic, is W. Edward Glenny, “The Israelite Imagery of 1 Peter 2,” in *Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church*, 157-58.


\(^{141}\)Bock, “Single Meaning, Multiple Contexts,” 121. See Philip E. Powers, “Prefiguration and the Hermeneutics of Prophetic Typology” (Ph.D. diss., Dallas Theological Seminary, 1995), 184-219, 296-306, who holds a similar view to Bock’s. Although Powers does not sub-divide the typological-prophetic category as Bock does, Powers finds two major classifications of typology: analogical/theological and prophetic typology: “The key element in the analogical/theological approach to typology which differentiates it from other typological approaches is the absence of any textual indicators of prefiguration in the intended meaning of the OT human author.” Ibid., 191, 297. Prefiguration in the sense of divine foreordination, but not prediction from the OT author’s stance, is observed from a retrospective vantage point for analogical typology as later biblical authors find or forge links between events and persons of their time and those of earlier history. Examples of this form of typology according to Powers are 1 Cor 10:1-13 (like Bock) and 1 Pet 2:9-10 (see ibid., 201-5, 298). Even though Powers finds escalation in the analogical/theological typological patterns as the result of the progress of revelation, OT Israel fits into this analogical/theological category because the present application and illustrative use of Israel’s blessings to the church does not nullify the future fulfillment of provisions directed to national Israel. Ibid., 206-7; 298. Powers’ other category, prophetic typology is like analogical/theological typology in having historical correspondence, divine intent, and escalation, but prophetic typology is prefigurative in having a genuine predictive element that is part of the OT intended meaning. Also, where escalation in analogical typology expands the scope of meaning to new antitypical referents, the escalation in prophetic typology narrows to one antitype that completely fulfills the promise associated with the initial event. Ibid., 299-300; cf. 208-19.
original contextual meaning of Israel’s promises and prophecies must be maintained even if the complementary development by later texts through the progress of revelation apply such promises to Christ and the church.  

Lastly, Blaising has also discussed typology in relation to the kingdom and the church. For Blaising, typology is to be framed within a holistic eschatology that he describes as a new creation eschatology involving the redemption of all dimensions of created reality. Thus, a holistic anthropology and soteriology has multifaceted dimensions including personal, familial, ethnic, tribal, and national levels of human existence that will be redeemed and brought forward into the consummation. Crucial for Blaising is his appeal that the consummated order is multinational as the future, eternal kingdom features interrelating nations, tribes, and ethnicities. Therefore, while the historical Israelite blessings have limited application within the church, “the typology moves from OT Israel to the eschatological Israel” because the eschatological kingdom includes

142Bock recognizes that some NT texts cancel previous revelation or provide a substitution, but a complementary relationship between texts and themes is to be maintained, for “the additional inclusion of some in the promise does not mean that the original recipients are thereby excluded. The expansion of promise need not mean the cancellation of earlier commitments God has made.” Blaising and Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism, 103, emphasis original.

143Craig Blaising, “Typology and the Nature of the Church” (paper presented at the annual meeting of the national Evangelical Theological Society, San Diego, November 19, 2014).

144Ibid., 5-6. Cf. Craig Blaising, “A Critique of Gentry and Wellum’s Kingdom through Covenant: A Hermeneutical-Theological Response,” MSJ 26 (2015): 120-24. In this poor critique of Kingdom through Covenant, Blaising charges Gentry and Wellum as asserting that typology is the means of establishing the divine plan (116-17) when Gentry and Wellum do not argue that. Instead, Gentry and Wellum observe that the escalated realities that come with what Christ has accomplished by inaugurating the kingdom and bringing forth the dawning of the new creation era are precisely what the storyline of Scripture provides as God’s plan is progressively unfolded. Blaising also makes the extraordinary claim that Gentry and Wellum hold to a form of mysticism that is a variant of metaphysical personalism (124-25), but such a claim is wide of the mark as these typological patterns are not mystically dissolved into the reality of Christ’s person. Rather, Jesus is the focal point of the covenant promises and typological patterns because he is the agent of the new creation, which includes a physical new heavens and earth enjoyed by all the saints and he is the one who initiates the fulfillment of the promises through his work.
nations, including the nation of Israel.\textsuperscript{145} Blaising’s view of typology is not as defined as Bock’s, but it is clear that Israel is not a type that culminates in Christ and the church.

**Summary of the Dispensational Views on Typology**

For covenant theology, as outlined in chapter 3, there was a fairly uniform understanding of the nature and function of typology in terms of historical correspondence, divine design, indirect prophecy, and escalation. For dispensationalism on the other hand, typology is frequently ill-defined, and its characteristics are malleable as the subject is treated in a way that the core distinction between Israel and the church is kept intact. If typology consists of the elements (correspondence, prefiguration, escalation, fulfillment) as described in chapter 2, then Israel and the promised land are not types. However, Israel or the land could be typological if typology (or a separate category of typology) is characterized by the mere repetition of patterns that serve analogous or illustrative purposes. The lack of consensus on the subject of typology, as well as the inconsistent or arbitrary use of typology, pose significant problems for dispensationalism.

**Summary**

This discussion of dispensationalism demonstrates that the Israel/church distinction drives this system of theology. Unlike covenant theologians who operate with the theological covenants of works and grace, dispensationalists posit a variety of dispensations (conceived of differently) where the covenants, and particularly the Abrahamic covenant, take on prominent emphasis. For more traditional or revised

\textsuperscript{145}Blaising, “Typology and the Nature of the Church,” 9; cf. 10-14. With this proposal, it is very difficult to see how there is one people of God. The church is a singular entity comprised of people from every nation and is one congregation, one new humanity in Christ, but Blaising’s multi-national kingdom typology has many peoples of God who keep their national status. Blaising fails to see that the incorporation of Gentiles into the church is the expansion of the people of God from what was an ethnic, political nation (Israel) to an international, transnational community that is one body. Blaising, “A Critique,” 116, agrees with David Baker that typological patterns do not always involve escalation. Therefore, Israel can be confirmed as a type by either reducing typology to analogy or by removing escalation as an intrinsic feature of typology.
dispensationalists, covenant promises and prophecies are to be fulfilled to national, ethnic Israel in the future even as the NT applies such promises to the church. Nevertheless, such NT teachings only reveal that the covenant blessings are extended to the church. Progressive dispensationalists utilize a complementary hermeneutic and rightly acknowledge the presence of an inaugurated eschatological framework and so they allow for more unity between Israel and church in arguing that the initial or partial fulfillment of Israel’s promises are directed to the church in this present age. However, the inclusion of the church in Israel’s promises does not nullify the original context and the original recipients as a future realization awaits national Israel. The dispensational approaches to typology are variable. Sometimes typology is understood as featuring a predictive/prophetic import, escalation, and a notion of fulfillment between the type and antitype, but then Israel is rejected as a type. If typology is defined as primarily analogical, or if a separate category of typology exists that features illustrative uses of OT persons and events, then Israel can be a type of Christ and the church. These observations strongly suggest that the dispensational notions of typology are not adequately drawn from the text of Scripture, but are formed based on their commitments regarding ethnic, national Israel.146

Such difficulties with the nature of typology are not surprising given the dispensational hermeneutical presuppositions and their understandings of the covenants. According to dispensationalists, a literal reading of the prophecies and covenant promises requires the realization of such promises to national Israel. Nevertheless, as argued in chapter 2, typology is not analogy and typological patterns are identified through textual warrant. In the next chapter I demonstrate that Israel is a typological pattern—a shadow that points to greater realities. As a corollary, the implication of chapter 5 is that

146Though dispensationalists have written much more on typology since LaRondelle’s analysis, his observations regarding the arbitrary use of typology within dispensationalism still stands. See LaRondelle, The Israel of God, 48, 51.
dispensationalists are reading the promises to Israel in a literalistic manner and are not being sensitive to inner-canonical development of the covenant promises across the storyline of Scripture. In other words, the nation of Israel and her promises cannot be cordoned off from the larger biblical-theological structures that come before the inception of Israel and that continue and develop through Israel’s history. National Israel cannot be treated as an island or as a separate entity with unique purposes since scriptural evidence shows that Israel is rooted back in creation structures and is inseparably part of the sonship motif that looks forward to a faithful, obedient, Davidic king who is the last Adam and the Abrahamic heir. This supreme representative of Israel ushers in the new covenant era and establishes a greater covenant community—a faithful covenant people who are the true recipients of the promises, experiencing better salvific realities—a renewed, eschatological Israel that national Israel anticipated and foreshadowed.
CHAPTER 5
THE ISRAEL-CHRIST-CHURCH RELATIONSHIP

During the late twentieth century, both covenant and dispensational theology have incorporated needed modifications given the forcefulness of the NT’s presentation of inaugurated eschatology.1 Despite these welcome changes, the battle lines remain with respect to the issue of the relationship between Israel and the church. As demonstrated in chapter 3, the unity of the covenant of grace and God’s plan of redemption leads covenant theologians to a position of strong continuity; the nature of the church is essentially one with Israel of the OT with the relationship being one of substitution or fulfillment or even replacement. Thus, covenant theologians view the church as the “new Israel.” Even if there is a mass conversion of Jews in the future (Rom 11), all the prerogatives, promises, and prophecies to OT Israel are translated to the church. On the other hand, as was surveyed in chapter 4, dispensationalists maintain a sharp distinction between Israel and the church with God’s promises and plans for national Israel still awaiting literal fulfillment during the millennium. The church is not the “new Israel” even as the church participates in the new covenant in one way or another and receives OT designations for Israel.

For dispensationalists, covenant theologians are deemed guilty of “supersessionism” and so covenant theology is often labeled with the popular, pejorative moniker of “replacement theology.”2 In contrast, non-dispensational theologians have

---

1See Russell D. Moore, The Kingdom of Christ: The New Evangelical Perspective (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2004), 30-65, for how inaugurated eschatology with the “already/not yet” realities of the kingdom of God popularized by George Eldon Ladd has impacted dispensational and covenant theologies.

2See Michael J. Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel? A Theological Evaluation (Nashville: B & H, 2010), and Michael J. Vlach, “Various Forms of Replacement Theology,” MSJ 20 (2009): 57-69. For Vlach, anyone who does not believe in both a future salvation and restoration for Israel in the future is a supersessionist, thus anyone who does adhere to some form of dispensationalism would be considered a
sought to highlight the dangers of dispensationalism, given what they view as a faulty understanding of the Israel-church relationship, particularly warning of “Christian Zionism” or “separation theology” and its impact on the political state of affairs associated with the modern State of Israel.3 The issues of replacement theology and Zionism, primarily revolving around the relationship of the biblical covenants, the nature of the land promises, and the question of the restoration of Israel in Palestine as an ethnic entity, has also received much attention in theological and political writings surrounding the


Israeli-Palestinian conflicts. Given the back and forth of polemical writings between covenant and dispensational theologians there is significant doubt that evangelicalism will ever come to a consensus on this issue.

In chapter 1, the crux of the matter that needs resolution is the Israel-Christ-church relationship as a whole and the way forward is to be found in a mediating position called progressive covenantalism. Most of the writings by covenant and dispensational theologians have, for the most part, sought to address directly the relationship between Israel and the church, but the methodological approach of progressive covenantalism is first to analyze the relationship between Israel and Israel’s Messiah—Jesus Christ—and then address the relationship between Christ and the church before making theological conclusions regarding the Israel-church relationship. Stephen Wellum has made the argument that for dispensationalists, national OT Israel is not typological of Christ or

---


does not function in the same way other typological patterns do, as such would diminish the strong distinction between Israel and the church and undercut the notion of Israel receiving restoration and nationalistic promises in the future millennium. On the other hand, covenant theology does view “Christ as the ‘true Israel,’” but it moves too quickly from Israel to the church without first thinking how Israel as ‘type’ leads us to Christ as the ‘antitype,’ which then has important ecclesiological implications.” In other words, covenant and dispensational theology do not consistently appropriate the typological relationship between Israel and Christ, and derivatively through Christ, the Israel-church typology.

In this chapter, I seek to explore the latter issue of typology as characterized and developed in chapter 2 with respect to the Israel-Christ relationship foremost, in order to confirm that progressive covenantalism offers a better way of handling the biblical data. First, if the restoration promises to Israel along with their prophesied national and mediatorial roles find their typological fulfillment in Jesus, and by extension, the church, then the system of dispensationalism should be abandoned. Progressive covenantalism argues this precisely: the NT presents Jesus as the fulfillment of Israel and all the OT covenant mediators, for he ushers in the promises to Israel (restoration and return from exile, the Land, etc.), embodies their identity, and completes Israel’s role, calling, and

---

6Peter J. Gentry and Stephen J. Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant: A Biblical-Theological Understanding of the Covenants (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2012), 125, emphasis original; and for his remarks concerning the dispensational rejection of Israel and the land as legitimate types, see pp.122-24. The main thrust of Wellum’s argument is that covenant and dispensational theologians misunderstand the Abrahamic covenant by conceiving of it as unconditional at key areas pertaining to their systems (the land for dispensationalists and the genealogical principle—“to you and your offspring”—for covenant theologians) and fail to do justice to how the covenants interrelate, missing how both of these issues, the land and the genealogical principle, function typologically across the covenants as they reach their terminus in Christ (113-18). In other words, the land and the genealogical principle do not work out canonically the way dispensationalists and covenant theologians claim as one traces both themes across the covenants and specifically into the new covenant. In this way, covenantalism and dispensationalism employ the same hermeneutic, just in different areas. A very similar position to Gentry’s and Wellum’s with less emphasis on typology is Chad O. Brand and Tom Pratt, Jr., “A Progressive Covenantal View,” in Perspectives on Israel and the Church: 4 Views, ed. Chad O. Brand (Nashville: B & H, 2015), 231-80.
vocation. All the institutions (the sacrificial system, tabernacle, temple, Sabbath, feasts, the Law), identity markers (e.g., circumcision),\textsuperscript{7} offices (prophet, priest, king), and key events (e.g., the exodus) of Israel find their culmination in the life, death, resurrection, and ascension of Christ.\textsuperscript{8} As Patrick Fairbairn correctly surmised over a century ago, the Israelite nation, “with their land and their religious institutions, were, in what distinctively belonged to them under the old covenant, of a typical nature, the whole together, in that particular aspect, has passed away—it has become merged in Christ and the Gospel dispensation.”\textsuperscript{9} Jesus is the “true Israel” in that he typologically fulfills the promises directed to the nation of Israel. As the last Adam, Jesus is the one who brings to completion the covenants, inaugurates the kingdom, and establishes the prophesied new covenant with his blood.


\textsuperscript{8}Graeme Goldsworthy, Gospel-Centered Hermeneutics: Foundations and Principles of Evangelical Biblical Interpretation (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2006), 253-56, has correctly summarized how the OT stages, epochs, and structures move to their fulfillment in Christ as all things are summed up in him (Eph 1:10). F. F. Bruce, This Is That: The New Testament Development of Some Old Testament Themes (Exeter: Paternoster, 1968), 21, has also rightly captured the significance of Jesus Christ as the apex of redemptive history: “In Jesus the promise is confirmed, the covenant is renewed, the prophecies fulfilled, the law is vindicated, salvation is brought near, sacred history has reached its climax, the perfect sacrifice has been offered and accepted, the great priest over the household of God has taken his seat at God’s right hand, the Prophet like Moses has been raised up, the Son of David reigns, the kingdom of God has been inaugurated, the Son of Man has received dominion from the Ancient of Days, the Servant of the Lord, having been smitten to death for his people’s transgression and borne the sin of many, has accomplished the divine purpose, has seen light after the travail of his soul and is now exalted and extolled and made very high.”

\textsuperscript{9}Patrick Fairbairn, The Interpretation of Prophecy (Carlisle, PA: Banner of Truth Trust, 1964), 255. Thomas R. Schreiner, New Testament Theology: Magnifying God in Christ (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008), 173, similarly states, “Jesus is the true Israel who fulfills what God always intended when he chose Israel to be his people. He is the obedient Servant of the Lord who always does the will of the Father. He brings victory and freedom to his people not by waging war but by suffering in their place. His death . . . fulfills the Scriptures and is the means by which God’s saving plan is realized. Jesus is also the true and better David who fulfills the promises that a new David would come who would free Israel from exile and bring salvation to the ends of the earth.”
Second, once the typological relationship between Israel and Christ is established, the theological formulation can proceed by exploring Christ’s relation to his people before devising theological conclusions regarding Israel and the church. If Jesus is the antitypical fulfillment of Israel and all the OT covenant mediators, what implications are there for the community—the church—in faith union with this Messiah? Given the eschatological realities associated with the inauguration of kingdom breaking into this present evil age through the salvific work of Christ, including the ratification of the new covenant, a significant development in the people of God has occurred. The coming of Christ introduces a profound epochal shift entailing structural changes to the covenant community. The momentous redemptive-historical progression in light of Christ and Pentecost should, in turn, impinge on how the nature of the church’s relationship to Israel is understood. The church, made up of Jew and Gentile believers in covenantal union with Christ, does not have the same essential nature as OT Israel in contrast to how paedobaptist covenant theologians construe the nature of the church and the continuity of “signs and seals” (the Passover and circumcision having direct continuity to the Lord’s Supper and baptism, respectively). The church is a new redemptive-historical reality—the heavenly, eschatological, Spirit-empowered, new covenant community, which is the new creation (2 Cor 5:17; Gal 6:15) and new humanity in Christ (Eph 2:15). Therefore, the

church is linked to Israel only indirectly through its bond with Jesus. William Kynes explains,

The relationship between the church and Israel . . . is neither one of direct succession nor radical disjunction, but one of mediated continuity. One may describe the church as the ‘true Israel,’ but its continuity with the rejected Israel is found in the representative figure of Jesus, who bridges salvation-history even while fulfilling it.11

Likewise, Alistair Donaldson correctly concludes that the NT displays, not a radical discontinuity from Israel, but rather a progression in the development of God’s redemptive purpose—a development that has moved forward from the shadows and types of the Old Testament to the reality of Christ’s better ministry. Inherent in this progressive development there is continuity and discontinuity. There is continuity in that the redemptive story progresses according to God’s purpose, but discontinuity in that the nature of the people of God is of a greater nature than before, and the shadowy forms of Israel and her way of life have given way to the intended greater realities.12

Covenant theologians will argue for the Israel-church typological relationship, but the greater nature of the new covenant community is distorted resulting in the nullification of the intrinsic escalation of this typological relationship.13 If the church


11William L. Kynes, A Christology of Solidarity: Jesus as the Representative of His People in Matthew (Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 1991), 202. Stephen Motyer, “Israel, New,” in Evangelical Dictionary of Theology, 2nd ed., ed. Walter A. Elwell (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2001), 618-19, agrees as he also understands that the Israel-church relationship must be understood christologically. He suggests that the label “renewed Israel” would be a more fitting designation for the church than “new Israel.” Note also Stephen Motyer, “Israel (Nation),” in NDBT, ed. T. Desmond Alexander and Brian S. Rosner (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2000), 581-87. Also articulating this Israel-Christ-church relationship is C. H. Dodd, According to the Scriptures: The Sub-Structure of New Testament Theology (London: James Nisbet & Co, 1952; repr., London: Fontana, 1965), 133, when he writes, “The crucial moment in the whole episode, and its operative centre, was the passion, death, and resurrection of Jesus Christ. It is in Him that what is essential in the prophecies of the true Israel (the Servant of the Lord, the Son of Man) found fulfillment. In Him the whole Israel of God was incorporate. Its destiny was wrought out in His experience. In Him the people of God was judged, died, and rose to newness of life. Thus whatever may be predicated of the Church is predicated of it only as its members are incorporate in Christ as their ‘inclusive representative.’”

12Donaldson, The Last Days of Dispensationalism, 61. Unfortunately, Donaldson never explains his statement of God’s people having “a greater nature than before” with his presbyterianism.

13Christopher R. Bruno, Book Review: Kingdom through Covenant, Themelios 37 (2012): 504-5, rightly recognizes, “While dispensationalism has an insufficient view of typology, paedobaptist covenant theology has an under-realized view of typological fulfillment, for in the new covenant there is no gap between the sign (baptism) and the thing signified (circumcision of heart).”
continues to be a mixed community comprised of covenant breakers and keepers like Israel of old, then there is very little typological development between Israel and the church.

This chapter seeks to demonstrate that Jesus typologically fulfills OT Israel with some explorations of how the church, through Christ, inherits the promises of Israel and may be recognized as the renewed Israel. Lastly, the theological conclusions of this endeavor, particularly for dispensationalism, are offered. In the next chapter the Christ-church relationship will be discussed before the typological connections between Israel and the church are examined leading to theological summations for the Israel-Christ-church relationship as a whole. Before exploring these crucial topics, it is important to examine the terminology of “true Israel.”

The Terminology of “True Israel” and the Identity of Israel

Germane to the discussion of the Israel-Christ typological relationship is the usage of the terminology of Jesus as the “true Israel.” The case that will be made is that Jesus is the “true Israel” in the sense that eschatological fulfillment has come in Christ as he embodies the identity, vocation, and prophesied roles of corporate Israel. Jesus is the last Adam, the true Servant, the true Son, the ultimate prophet, the final priest, and the reigning, exalted king (David’s greater son). He is the faithful Israelite, perfectly obeying God in contrast to the disobedience that characterizes much of Israel throughout OT history. Identifying Jesus as the “true Israel” is a short-hand way, while recognizing that the term Israel is not applied to Jesus in the NT, of concisely describing who Jesus is as the antitypical Israel in realizing and completing the destiny, roles, function, and promises of national Israel in the plan of God.

Such terminology is often attacked in dispensational circles. Michael Vlach argues that the language of “true Israel” is a “combination of terms [that] is not found in
the Bible. Jesus does not call himself ‘true Israel’ and neither do the other NT writers.”

Many others bank on word studies on the use of Israel in the NT, asserting that the term always refers to the national, ethnic, covenant people of the OT and thus drawing the theological conclusion that OT Israel is not typological since Israel never loses its status as a national entity in the future of God’s eschatological plan. More recently, Stephen Voorwinde challenges the venerable Bauer-Danker lexicon (BDAG) for lexically associating Israel (Ἰσραήλ) with the patriarch Jacob and for having a separate entry for entitling the term to Christians. For Voorwinde, Israel refers only to the people or nation of Israel ethnically since the term never possesses any metaphorical reference: “The New Testament never calls the church ‘Israel’. It is never referred to as ‘the new Israel’ or ‘the true Israel,’ nor even as ‘spiritual Israel.’ Nor is a Gentile Christian ever called an ‘Israelite.’” Such assertions by Voorwinde could equally be applied to Jesus.

---

14Michael J. Vlach, “What Does Christ as ‘True Israel’ Mean for the Nation Israel? A Critique of the Non-Dispensational Understanding,” MSJ 21 (2012): 47. Vlach further complains that calling Jesus the “true Israel” gives the impression that the nation of Israel is not truly Israel anymore. However, the issue is how terms are defined and how the redemptive historical trajectory of the Bible is understood. Jesus can be referred to the “true David” because he fulfills the Davidic covenant as the Messiah even though the NT never uses this label for him.


17Voorwinde, “How Jewish Is Israel?”, 80, cf. 85. Interestingly enough, Voorwinde appeals to his heritage and cites from the Larger Westminster Catechism (89), but given the frequent citations to traditional dispensationalists and his sharp distinction between Israel and the church, it is fair to label him
The problem, however, with Voorwinde’s analysis against BDAG in concluding that there are no metaphorical uses for the term *Israel* is that he commits word fallacies in his lexical study.\(^{18}\) He makes false assumptions about technical meaning driven from his own theology when good cases can be made for the term *Israel* extending beyond a nationalistic, ethnic sense in Galatians 6:16, Revelation 7:4, and 21:12.\(^{19}\) More importantly, even if Voorwinde and others are correct about the ethnic limitations to the term *Israel* in the NT, the identity of Israel is not exclusively bound to the term *Israel*. Many other titles, designations, and imagery characterize and describe Israel and her vocation.\(^{20}\) Quite simply, Israel may be referred to as God’s treasured possession (Deut 7:6), called to serve and worship Him alone (Exod 7:16; Deut 4:39; see the book of Psalms), and to be a kingdom of priests and a holy nation (Exod 19:6). Having received its name from Jacob (Gen 32:28; and often called *Jacob* later in the OT, see especially in Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Micah), Israel is known as the seed or offspring of Abraham (Gen 12, 15, 17; Ps 105:6; Isa 41:8, 51:2; Jer 33:26; and such was formative in Israel’s future hope, as a dispensationalist.

\(^{18}\)See D. A. Carson, *Exegetical Fallacies*, 2\(^{nd}\) ed. (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1996), 45. One could make the case for a prejudicial use of evidence, which Carson also describes as a word-study fallacy (54), in Voorwinde’s proposal. Furthermore, Voorwinde criticizes BDAG based on his study of *Israel* in the NT but fails to recognize that BDAG also takes into account the use of Greek terms in early Christian literature.


e.g., Mic 7:18-20), and becomes God’s elect, covenant nation through his sovereign choice (Deut 4:37; 7:7; 10:15; Jer 33:24) and covenantal faithfulness to Abraham (Exod 19:4; Deut 7:8). The defining and catalyzing event for Israel as a nation is their miraculous redemption from slavery in Egypt. The exodus serves as a crucial archetype for Israel’s future characterized as a new exodus.\(^{21}\) Furthermore, the exodus is also the context where Israel is summoned as the son of God (Exod 4:22; Deut 14:1; Jer 31:20; cf. Israel as the children of God in Isa 1:2, 4; Hos 1:10; 11:1). As the firstborn son, Israel is to serve the Lord (e.g., Exod 4:23) and is denoted with the title servant or referred to as “my servant” in the second half of the book of Isaiah and elsewhere (cf. Jer 30:10; 46:27-28).\(^{22}\) Other covenantal imagery describes who Israel is in relationship to Yahweh: Israel is the wife (Isa 54:5; and as an adulterous wife in Ezek 16; Hos 1-3) or bride (Jer 2:2; cf. Jer 31:32) of the Lord. Agrarian imagery is applied to Israel too, for God is the shepherd to his sheep (Isa 40:11; Ps 100:3) or flock (Ezek 34; Ps 77:20) and Israel is described as a vine planted but judged by the Lord for its fruitlessness (Ps 80:8; Isa 5:1-7; 27:2-6; Jer 2:21, 12:10-11; Ezek 15:1-8; 19:10-14; Hos 10:1-2; 14:7).

Moreover, from a biblical-theological tracing of Scripture’s storyline, Israel is thematically and intertextually linked not just to the patriarchs but to Adam, corporately

\(^{21}\)Examples abound: Isa 11:10-16, 40:3-11, 49:8-12, 51:1-52:15; Jer 16: 14-15; 23:5-8; Ezek 11:15-20; Mic 4:6-7, 7:15-20; Hos 2:14-15; Zech 10:6-12. The paradigmatic exodus of Israel from Egypt with the themes of redemption, slavery, captivity, liberation, Passover, new creation, etc., typologically point to a greater new exodus, an eschatological event whereby Israel’s sin and rebellion are dealt with, Zion is restored, and salvation is extended to the ends of the earth. For an overview, see Rikki E. Watts, “Exodus,” in NDBT, 478-87. The significance of the exodus event cannot be understated as it is the act of creation that brings Israel into being as a nation in order that Israel may serve God and serve as God’s son. See George Atlas, “The Creation of Israel: The Cosmic Proportion of the Exodus Event,” in Exploring Exodus: Literary, Theological and Contemporary Approaches, ed. Brian S. Rosner and Paul R. Williamson (Nottingham, UK: Apollos, 2008), 30-59.

recapitulating his status and roles. As another “Adam,” Israel is called God’s son as Adam was (Luke 3:38). Themes of blessing, fruitfulness, and multiplication first directed to Adam are repeated to the patriarchs and advanced through Israel (see Gen 17:2; 28:3; 35:11; 47:27; 48:3-4; Exod 1:7; Lev 26:9; Deut 7:13; 30:9; Ps 107:38; Isa 51:2). Just as Adam enjoyed the presence of God in the arboreal temple of Eden, so Israel had the tabernacle and later the temple as the place where God’s presence was supremely manifested. Additionally, the significant offices of prophet, priest, and king exemplified

---


24Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 226-28; G. K. Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission: A Biblical Theology of the Dwelling Place of God, NSBT 17 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004), 94-96; Gary V. Smith, “Structure and Purpose in Genesis 1-11,” JETS 20 (1977): 307-19; Beetham, “From Creation to New Creation,” 245-46; N. T. Wright, The Climax of the Covenant (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1992), 21-23. Wright, The New Testament, 263, observes that at crucial turning points in the storyline—“Abraham’s call, his circumcision, the offering of Isaac, the transition from Abraham to Isaac and from Isaac to Jacob, and in the sojourn in Egypt—the narrative quietly insists that Abraham and his progeny inherit the role of Adam and Eve. There are, interestingly, two differences which emerge in the shape of this role. The command (‘be fruitful . . .’) has turned into promise (‘I will make you fruitful . . .’), and possession of the land of Canaan, together with supremacy over enemies, has taken the place of Adam’s dominion over nature.” See also Bruce K. Waltke, An Old Testament Theology: An Exegetical, Canonical, and Thematic Approach (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2007), 297.

25J. V. Fesko, Last Things First: Unlocking Genesis 1-3 with the Christ of Eschatology (Fearn, Scotland: Christian Focus, 2007), 125-26, helpfully summarizes, “God placed Adam in the garden, which was a source of sustenance and the location of the temple, and so too God placed Israel, his son, in a land flowing with milk and honey (Exod. 13:5). . . . G. K. Beale notes that ‘Israel’s land is explicitly compared to the Garden of Eden (see Gen. 13:10; Isa. 51:3; Ezek. 36:35; 47:12; Joel 2:3) and is portrayed as very fruitful in order to heighten the correspondence to Eden (cf. Deut. 8:7-10; 11:8-17; Ezek. 47:1-12).’ The promised land was also the ultimate resting place of the once ambulatory desert tabernacle – the place where Israel met with, served, and offered sacrifices to God. When the ultimate goals of the covenant made with Israel are considered, the same protological elements reappear. . . . Israel was to take the redemptive knowledge of God to the ends of the earth in the same way that Adam was to spread the image and worship of God throughout the earth ( Isa. 49:6).” Thomas R. Wood, “The Regathering of the People of God: An Investigation into the New Testament’s Appropriation of the Old Testament Prophecies Concerning the Regathering of Israel” (Ph.D. diss., Trinity International University, 2006), 190, also observes the “Edenic” conditions in the blessings section of Lev 26, with v. 12 promising that God will walk among the Israelites in a similar way as he walked with Adam and Eve in the Garden (Gen 3:8). The scholarly literature on Eden as a garden-temple with textual and theological links to the tabernacle and the Jerusalem temple is overwhelming. See Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission, 66-80; Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 617-22; G. K. Beale, “Garden Temple,” Kerux 18 (2003): 3-50; G. K. Beale, “Eden, the Temple, and the Church’s Mission in the New Creation,” JETS 48 (2005): 5-31; Gordon J. Wenham, “Sanctuary Symbolism in the Garden of Eden Story,” in “I Studied Inscriptions from the Flood:” Ancient Near
within Israel’s leadership structure go back to Adam. These offices coalesce in another son of God, another Adam, and significant representative of Israel—David. Lastly, Israel as a nation cannot be understood theologically apart from its being the means by which the promised seed (Gen 3:15) would emerge in reversing the effects of the fall and triumphing over the serpent, namely through a royal deliverer.

Therefore, theologians must address more than the usage of the term Israel and must attend to the redemptive historical development of Israel’s identity, roles, and vocation when seeking to derive biblical-theological conclusions regarding Israel’s relation to Jesus and subsequently, the church. Stated differently, the titles, metaphors, and imagery of Israel, as well as Israel’s service to the Lord and identity through covenant structures (the Law, tabernacle/temple, priestly-sacrificial system, feasts, Sabbath, circumcision, etc.) have to be taken into account through the progress of revelation (developed through the biblical covenants: creation, Noahic, Abrahamic, Mosaic, Davidic).

---

26Priestly functions are attributed to David when he brings the ark to Jerusalem (2 Sam 6:14, 17-18; cf. 8:18) and he exercised the gift of prophecy as well (for example, 2 Sam 23:1-7; Ps 22; Acts 2:30). See Bruce, This Is That, 72.

and new covenant) to the person and work of Christ if proper theological conclusions are to be drawn with respect to his relationship to Israel. The case to be demonstrated is that Jesus really is the “true Israel” in that he not only represents Israel, but fulfills Israel’s identity, calling, and promises in inaugurating the new age, ratifying the new covenant, and bringing forth the dawning of the eschatologically restored Israel—the church.

Christ as the True Israel: Israel in Typological Perspective

In examining how Jesus Christ recapitulates Israel’s role and purpose, I will explore themes associated with Israel that were embedded with eschatological and restoration elements. Most notably, the typological pattern of sonship emerges. The NT unequivocally presents Jesus as the divine Son, but he is the culmination and goal of what God’s sons through redemptive history anticipated. Jesus is presented as the antitypical Adam (Rom 5:12-21; cf. 1 Cor 15:21-22, 45-49), the covenantal head of the new humanity, restoring them to the dignity and role for which they were created by undoing the curse (Heb 2:5-18; cf. Ps 8). Furthermore, Christ is the true seed of Abraham (Gal 3:16) and the promised, ideal David (Acts 2:24-36; 13:32-37; Rom 1:3-4; Heb 1:1-14; 5:5). The correspondence is not just in terms of identity, for he fulfills the eschatological goals and promises associated with each of these covenantal figures. For example, already in Matthew’s genealogy (Matt 1:1-17) and the opening chapters of Luke’s Gospel (e.g., Luke 1:32-33, 54-55, 67-79; 2:29-32, 38), the reader receives significant indications that the climax of Israel’s story, the end of exile with the emergence of the kingdom, the promises to Abraham and David, are being fulfilled through Jesus (cf. Rom 15:8-13).28 The nation

of Israel belongs to the stream of sonship, which culminates in Christ. After addressing this critical typological pattern, other roles and titles of Israel, such as “Servant” and “Yeshurun,” and lastly the imagery of the vine also has significance for developing a full orb of understanding of the typological relationship between Israel and Christ.

**Israel-Christ Typological Pattern**

**Evidenced through Sonship**

The significant theme of sonship is the clearest textual indication of the Israel-Christ typological pattern. Focusing on this broad theme of sonship concentrates on three areas: the direct sonship link between Israel and Christ, Jesus as the antitypical offspring of Abraham, and Jesus as the greater Jacob and Son of Man. The *Son of Man* title is informative for understanding the broader Israel-Christ typological relationship even though the Son of Man figure is not explicitly a typological pattern, but is situated more generally in the realm of prophecy.

---

Direct sonship typology of Israel and Jesus. Perhaps the most recognizable typological correspondence between Israel and Christ is found in Matthew 2:15. In explaining Jesus’ departure and return from Egypt (via his family) in avoiding Herod’s wicked plot to destroy him, Matthew cites Hosea 11:1 (“out of Egypt I called my son”) as being fulfilled.\(^{29}\) The citation seems obscure since Hosea 11:1 merely recollects Israel’s original exodus (cf. Exod 4:22) and is not in itself a prediction that the messiah would come out of Egypt; however, when the broader context of Hosea 11 is considered, Hosea himself not only recalls the history of Israel’s exodus, idolatry, and God’s judgment, but he also anticipates a future restoration, a new exodus, from “Egypt” (Hos 11:10-11; cf. 11:5).\(^{30}\) Nicholas Piotrowski concludes that the

\(^{29}\)Matt 2:15 is one of eleven “formula-quotations” that highlights the theme of fulfillment in Matthew (cf. Matt 1:22; 2:5, 17, 23; 4:14; 8:17; 12:17; 13:35; 21:4; 27:9). For helpful discussion of the role of typology in many of these “formula-quotations,” see R. T. France, “The Formula Quotations of Matthew 2 and the Problem of Communication,” *NTS* 27 (1981): 233-51; and Victor Eldridge, “Typology–The Key to Understanding Matthew’s Formula Quotations?” *Colloquium* 15 (1982): 43-51. Unfortunately, Eldridge follows Richard Longenecker in asserting that modern interpreters cannot reproduce the exegesis of the NT writers, but he does make a case for the coherence of typology for some of the formula quotations over and against some scholars, such as S. V. McCasland, “Matthew Twists the Scriptures,” *JBL* 80 (1961): 143-48, who argues that Matthew misunderstood and distorted OT texts in his citations. Still, Eldridge, “Typology,” 44, 47, operates with a truncated view of typology that only involves correspondence in the recurrence of God’s saving activity. James M. Hamilton, “‘The Virgin Will Conceive’: Typological Fulfillment in Matthew 1:18-23,” in *Built upon the Rock: Studies in the Gospel of Matthew*, ed. John Nolland and Dan Gurtner (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2008), 228-47, also considers the importance of typological fulfillment in Matthew’s prologue (232-34), including Hos 11:1 in Matt 2:15 (243), but since typology for Hamilton only involves historical correspondence and escalation, he unnecessarily pits typological fulfillment against the elements of indirect prophecy. Clearly, Hos 11:1 is not a direct prediction of the Messiah coming out of Egypt, but the prospective aspects of the Israel-Christ new exodus connection is present in the context of Hos 11 and the book as a whole. Similarly, Craig L. Blomberg, “Matthew,” in *Commentary on the New Testament Use of the Old Testament*, 8, rightly notes the typological relationship between Israel and Christ in Matthew’s use of Hos 11:1, but states, “The original event need not have been intentionally viewed as forward-looking by the OT author; for believing Jews, merely to discern striking parallels between God’s actions in history, especially in decisive moments of revelation and redemption, could convince them of divinely intended ‘coincidence.’” This retrospective and analogical understanding of the typological relationship is inadequate, for as Beale has shown, Hosea, to a lesser degree, did see what Matthew sees, which is verified through textual warrant. J. R. Daniel Kirk, “Conceptualising Fulfillment in Matthew,” *TynBul* 59 (2008): 77-98, opts for a narrative perspective of the formula quotations where Matthew understood Jesus as “embodying the stories and scriptures of Israel, thereby showing himself to be the true Israel” (90, cf. 93-94), but he fails to see how the narrative embodiment he correctly pinpoints is more intimately related to, indeed, is worked out through typological patterns and prophecies embedded in the OT that point forward to the Messiah.

\(^{30}\)For a convincing analysis of the use of Hos 11:1 in Matt 2:15 as typological, see Beale, *A
retrospective look at the exodus in Hos 11:1 serves as a foil; it is preparatory for the 
future predictions in Hos 11:5 and 11:11. . . . Thus, though Hosea looks back to the 
exodus in 11:1, this retrospect has a future orientation insofar as that past event is 
the warrant for future hope. Hence the logic of Hosea is this: because Israel was 
called out of Egypt, though they return to ‘Egypt’ in exile, the nation will come out 
again from “Egypt,” out of exile. By virtue of its placement in the larger scheme of 
the book, therefore, the entire chapter orients the rest of the book toward the future.31

Additionally, the corporate identification of the people of Israel to an individual messianic 
representative is connected to the prophecy of the future king of Israel coming out of 
Egypt (Num 24:7-9, 17-19), which is echoed in Hosea 11:10-11 (cf. Num 23:22, 24; 
24:8, 9).32 Beale writes, “The Numbers passages together with Hos. 11:11 are the only 

31Nicholas G. Piotrowski, Matthew’s New David at the End of Exile: A Socio-Rhetorical Study of Scriptural Quotations, NovTSup 170 (Leiden: Brill, 2016), 129, emphasis original.

80n17. The link between the people of Israel and a representative leader is also found in Hos 1:10-11; cf. 
Hos 3:5. Interestingly, the corporate identification between an individual son and sons is established by 
another Matthew allusion to Hosea. In Matt 16:16, Jesus is identified as “the Christ, the Son of the living 
God” (ESV), which is a close parallel to the “sons of the living God” in Hos 1:10. If so, Peter’s confession 
of Jesus’ sonship asserts that “Israel’s destiny is fulfilled and summed up in the person of Jesus of Nazareth. 
Peter’s confession indicates that with Jesus comes the fulfillment of Hosea’s promise that the living God is
places in the OT where there is the combined mention of (1) God bringing Israel ‘out of
Egypt’ and (2) of either the deliverer or the delivered being compared to a lion.”

According to Hosea, the eschatological exodus of God’s son Israel would be accomplished
by a messianic Davidic king (Hos 1:10–11; 3:5); a corporate representative identified as
God’s son elsewhere (2 Sam 7:14; 2 Chr 17:13; 22:10; Ps 2:7; 89:26–27). In sum, Richard
Hays is correct when he concludes,

Matthew cannot be unaware of the original contextual meaning of Hosea 11:1 as an
expression of God’s love for Israel—a love that persists even through Israel’s
subsequent unfaithfulness (Hos 11:8–9). Indeed, Matthew’s use of the quotation
actually depends upon the reader’s recognition of the original sense. Note carefully:
if Hosea’s words (‘out of Egypt I called my son’) were hermeneutically severed
from reference to the original exodus story, the artful literary and theological effect
of Matthew’s narrative would be stifled . . . [That effect is] that Jesus now will
carry the destiny of the people Israel, and that the outcome will be the rescue
and vindication of Israel, as foreshadowed in the exodus story and brought to fulfillment
in the resurrection of Jesus.

Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 408. Beale continues by helpfully summarizing that
the “overall meaning of Hos. 11 is to indicate that God’s deliverance of the Israelites from Egypt, which led
to their ungrateful unbelief, is not the final word about God’s deliverance of them; though they will be
judged, God will deliver them again, even from ‘Egypt.’ The chapter begins with the exodus from Egypt
and ends with the same exodus from Egypt, the former referring to the past event and the latter to a future
event.” Similarly, see Richard B. Gaffin, Jr., “The Redemptive-Historical View,” in Biblical Hermeneutics:
Unfortunately, many works recognize the typological relationship between Israel and Christ in Matthew’s
use of Hos 11:1 in Matt 2:15, but fail to address the broader context of Hos 11 and the book as a whole,
which provides the textual warrant for this typological relationship as well as the grounding for the
prospective nature of this typological link. For examples, see Alan S. Bandy and Benjamin L. Merkle,
Understanding Prophecy: A Biblical-Theological Approach (Grand Rapids: Kregel, 2015), 79-80; Andreas
J. Köstenberger and Alexander E. Stewart, The First Days of Jesus: The Story of the Incarnation (Wheaton,
IL: Crossway, 2015), 79–82, and the discussion in n29 of this chap.

Richard B. Hays, Reading Backwards: Figural Christology and the Fourfold Gospel Witness
(Waco, TX: Baylor University, 2014), 40–41. As is clear from the citation of Hays, he rightly draws upon
the larger context of Hos 11, although he does not make the more comprehensive connections that Beale
does. Hays also seems to be inconsistent, for he speaks of the original sense of Hos 11, but earlier he describes
Matthew as transfiguring Hosea’s text by “reading backwards” (40). However, Beale and Gaffin are on more
sure footing in demonstrating that Matthew is elucidating the text by following Hosea’s own typological
understanding in the immediate context as well as the broader context of the whole book.
Therefore, Matthew’s citation of Hosea 11:1 with respect to Jesus’ flight to Egypt, which can be understood only in light of the broader context of Hosea 11, serves two purposes. First, the sonship language—the “son” in Hosea 11:1 is Israel, but in Matthew 2:15 the “son” is Jesus—and the fact that Hosea 11:1 is situated in the wider prophetic context of a new exodus from “Egypt,” means that Israel and Jesus are linked typologically (cf. Jer 31:9; Rom 8:29). Matthew demonstrates that Jesus is the true Israel who recapitulates and embodies Israel’s history. Beale explains that Israel, “who came out of Egypt, was not obedient and was judged but would be restored ([Hos] 11:2-11), while the former did what Israel should have done: Jesus came out of Egypt, was perfectly obedient, and did not deserve judgment but suffered it anyway.” Second, Matthew informs his readers that this son ushers in the new exodus, commencing the

---


36 Beale, *A New Testament Biblical Theology*, 412. Vlach, *Has the Church Replaced Israel?*, 92, 119, limits the significance of the fulfillment of Hos 11:1 in Matt 2:15 to that of Jesus being the “ultimate Israelite.” Charles H. Dyer, “Biblical Meaning of ‘Fulfillment,’” in *Issues in Dispensationalism*, ed. Wesley R. Willis and John R. Master (Chicago: Moody, 1994), 56, argues that the fulfillment formula of Matt 2:15 does not indicate a veiled prophecy from Hos 11:1 as Hosea is not predicting Christ; Matthew “was looking back and focusing on the contrasts between Israel’s failures as God’s son and Christ’s obedience as God’s Son.” Both Dyer and Vlach fail to grasp the larger context of Hos 11 with respect to Hos 11:1 and the citation of Matt 2:15, and thus completely miss the overtones of new exodus with implications for Israel’s restoration. Further, Dyer focuses on explicit predictive prophecy, but Matthew’s fulfillment formula also involves indirect prophecy or typology, which Dyer neglects. On the other hand, progressive dispensationalist David L. Turner, *Matthew*, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008), 91, rightly finds, “God’s special love and covenant loyalty are promised to both the nation and the kings. For Matthew, these themes are consummated in Jesus, whose individual life is an antitypical microcosm of macrocosmic typological Israel.” While recognizing the Exodus theme, Turner does not develop the implications. He agrees that there is an antitypical fulfillment in Jesus’ recapitulation of redemptive history as the Son goes through a greater exodus (cf. p. 23), but there is no discussion of how Matthew is communicating that Israel’s restoration and new exodus is being accomplished through Jesus.
restoration of Israel. Schreiner writes, “Matthew believed that the return from exile promised in Hosea ultimately became a reality with the true son of Israel, Jesus Christ.”

The Gospels further present Jesus as the antitypical Israel and the one who inaugurates Israel’s new exodus promises. The prophesied messianic forerunner, John the Baptist, preaches and prepares the way of the Lord, marking the onset of the kingdom in the wilderness. The eschatological Elijah has arrived (Mal 3:1; 4:5; cf. Matt 17:10-13), and Jesus’ baptism and the accompanying divine approval (Matt 3:15-17; cf. Mark 1:10-11; Luke 3:21-22) also point to Jesus as the true representative of Israel, the Servant of the Lord, and agent of Israel’s new exodus. According to Isaiah, Israel’s new exodus


39For further in-depth analysis of Jesus’ baptism in relation to Israel, see Holwerda, *Jesus and
and restoration would be through water (Isa 11:15; 42:15; 43:2, 16-17; 44:27-28; 50:2; 51:9-11). With the backdrop of the exodus description of Isaiah 63:11-15; 64:1 (cf. 1 Cor 10:1-4), where the Spirit brings Israel out of the water and gives them rest, Matthew 3:16-17 portrays a greater reenactment: Jesus identifies with his people, goes through the waters, and the Spirit descends upon him. The Spirit descending upon Jesus also evokes messianic prophecies where God places his Spirit upon his chosen Servant (see Isa 11:2; 42:1; 61:1; cf. Matt 12:18-21). Further, God’s perspective of Jesus in the announcement, “This is my beloved son with whom I am well pleased,” (Matt 3:17; cf. Luke 3:22; note also the heavenly voice during Jesus’ transfiguration in Matt 17:5; Luke 9:35) recalls several significant OT passages. The pronouncement echoes Isaiah 42:1 where God promises to place his Spirit upon the Servant whom his soul delights, the messianic enthronement psalm of a Davidic king (Ps 2:7: “You are my son, today I have begotten you”), the sonship of Israel, possibly echoing Exodus 4:22; Hosea 11:1; Jeremiah 31:9 or more likely Jer 38:20 LXX [=Jer 31:20] where Ephraim is called “my beloved son,”


Paul G. Bretscher, “Exodus 4:22-23 and the Voice from Heaven,” JBL 87 (1968): 301-12, argues against Isa 42:1 and Ps 2:7 as the background to the divine declaration and instead labors to demonstrate that Exod 4:22-23 is the key text. Nevertheless, the verbal links he exerts are strained and his thesis has not been adopted by scholars of the synoptic Gospels. More promising is the approach of Jeffrey A. Gibbs, “Israel Standing with Israel: The Baptism of Jesus in Matthew’s Gospel (Matt 3:13-17),” CBQ 64 (2002): 511-26. Gibbs cites four reasons for finding Jer 38:20 LXX (“A beloved son to me is Ephraim”) as a crucial allusion for Matt 3:17: (1) the adjective “beloved” modifying “son” only occurs in the LXX at Jer 38:20 and Gen 22:2, 12, 16; (2) Matthew cites Jer 38:15 LXX in Matt 2:18 and so was well aware of Jer 38; (3) the new exodus theme is prominent in both Jer 38 (see v. 8-9, 31-34) and Matt 3:4-4) the sonship typology of Israel and Jesus is already present in both Matt 2:15 and 4:1-11 (515-20). In sum, he posits that Isa 42:1 and Jer 38:20 LXX (= Jer 31:20) as the main texts behind Matt 3:17.
and possibly Isaac (Gen 22:2, 12). Demanding one specific text over another is unnecessary as taken together the new exodus restoration passage of Isaiah 42:1 with the figure of the Servant of the Lord, the royal enthronement of the king as God’s son in Psalm 2:7, and the connection to the sonship of Israel all possess an undeniably corporate character that find their fulfillment in the individual, Jesus. The theological implication is that the Father confirms Jesus as the unique Son of God, the true Israel, Servant, and king who sums up Israel by recapitulating and embodying the nation in fulfilling the OT prophecies and types that looked forward to him.

---

42 Davies and Allison, Matthew 1-7, 336-41, find Isa 42:1 and Ps 2:7 to be the primary background texts to Matt 3:17, but they suggest that Israel and Isaac could have a secondary typological import. France, The Gospel of Matthew, 123, thinks the primary allusions are to Isa 42:1 and Gen 22:2, but acknowledges that the parallel account of Jesus’ baptism in Mark’s and Luke’s Gospels readily suggest the echo to Ps 2:7. See the comments on Mark 1:11 in R. T. France, The Gospel of Mark, NIGTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2002), 80-82, where he argues that Isa 42:1 and Ps 2:7 are the main echoes. For Luke 3:22 and 9:35, Hays, Reading Backwards, 60-61, finds that Gen 22, Isa 42:1, and Ps 2:7 are the OT scriptural echoes.

43 See Kynes, A Christology of Solidarity, 27-28. The servant theme is discussed later in this chap. Though Ps 2:7 does speak of an individual as the Davidic king, the king represented the people. While it cannot be explored in detail here, verses of Ps 2 are directly cited in Acts 4:25-26; 13:33; Heb 1:5 and 5:5 (note also Rev 2:26-27; 19:15). The Gentiles and the Jews crucifying Jesus (corresponding to the nations plotting against God’s anointed Messiah in Ps 2:1-2) and God raising Jesus from the grave in vindication and exaltation (Ps 2:7; cf. Rom 1:4) are typological fulfillments of Ps 2. The coronation of a Davidic king, God’s son, is typologically and prophetically fulfilled in Jesus, the true David, who is now enthroned, inheriting the nations and possessing the ends of the earth. See Aquila H. I. Lee, From Messiah to Preexistent Son: Jesus’ Self-Consciousness and Early Christian Exegesis of Messianic Psalms, WUNT 2/192 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2005), 240-83.

44 Max Turner, Power from on High: The Spirit in Israel’s Restoration and Witness in Luke-Acts, Journal of Pentecostal Theology Supplement Series 9 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic, 1996), 201, writes that Jesus’s “endowment [of the Spirit in Luke 3:21-22] would most probably be understood as empowering the messianic son and servant to commence the promised cleansing/restoration of Zion.” James R. Edwards, The Gospel according to Luke, PNTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2015), 120-21, concludes, “In the baptism, Jesus—the true Son and thus Israel reduced to one—stands in the water with sinners as himself the ‘firstborn Son’ to redeem and restore the original ideal of divine sonship (Rom 8:29). As the Beloved Son in whom God is pleased and on whom God’s Holy Spirit rests ([Luke] 1:35; 3:22), Jesus is both the model of Israel’s sonship and the means of its fulfillment.” Likewise, Kennedy, The Recapitulation of Israel, 184, finds that with Jesus’ baptism “he is divinely declared to be the Son of God, Israel recapitulated, who also represents Israel, his people, as the Servant of the Lord.” Interestingly, Turner, Matthew, 122, concludes, “In [Matt] 3:17 Jesus is described in terms that clearly represent the Isianian Suffering Servant, whom Yahweh has chosen (cf. esp. Isa. 42:1). Related to this is the sonship typology metaphorically applied to Israel as a nation (Exod. 4:22; Jer. 3:19; 31:9, 20; Hos. 11:1) and to David as the ideal king who serves Yahweh (2 Sam. 7:5-16; Pss. 2:7; 89:3, 20, 26-27). The fulfillment of biblical covenantal promises to the nation and to the king is found in Jesus, who recapitulates Israel’s history as he
The Israel-Christ typology is also evident in the wilderness temptation (Matt 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13). Having identified with Israel in his baptism, this son is led into the wilderness for forty days to be tempted by Satan, thereby mirroring Israel’s wanderings and trials in the wilderness for forty years. As Hans LaRondelle observes, with both the nation of Israel and Jesus,

a “son of God” was tested ([Exod] 4:22; [Deut] 8:5); both times the testing occurred after their baptism ([Matt] 3:16; [1 Cor] 10:2); and each time there is the temptation to test God whether He will perform a miracle to fulfill His promises ([Deut] 6:16; [Exod] 17:2-7; [Matt] 4:3-7), as well as the test whether Israel will worship God alone ([Deut] 6:13-15; [Matt] 4:10).

Unlike Israel who had failed when faced with hunger and tempted to idolatry, Jesus is the obedient son who specifically answers and thwarts Satan’s temptations from Deuteronomy (6:13, 16; 8:3) with each citation coming from Moses’ rehearsal of Israel’s history of sin sojourns in Egypt and passes through the waters before being tested in the wilderness.” Turner’s excellent summary highlights typology and the fulfillment of covenantal promises, but how this is reconciled with his progressive dispensationalism is unclear. Lastly, Hays, Reading Backwards, 61, and Stephen J. Wellum, “The Deity of Christ in the Synoptic Gospels,” in The Deity of Christ, Theology in Community, ed. Christopher W. Morgan and Robert A. Peterson (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2011), 72-73, both observe that Jesus’ baptism and transfiguration identify him with Israel but not to the exclusion of his identity with God.

---

45See R. T. France, Jesus and the Old Testament: His Application of Old Testament Passages to Himself and His Mission (Vancouver: Regent College Publishing, 1998), 50-53; John A. T. Robinson, Twelve New Testament Studies, Studies in Biblical Theology (Naperville, IL: Allenson, 1962), 53-60; Holwerda, Jesus and Israel, 44-47; Kennedy, The Recapitulation of Israel, 184-215; Menninger, Israel and the Church, 80-81; LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy, 64-65; Kynes, A Christology of Solidarity, 28-35. There is also the presence of Adam and Moses typology in this passage, see Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 417-22. Jesus could be presented as the last Adam and true Son who does not succumb to Eden’s temptation as Mark 1:13 indicates that after his success in the wilderness wild animals were with him and the angels ministered to him. Such an idea of living with wild animals recalls second-exodus new creation passages of Isaiah (11:6-9; 43:20; 65:25). However, the allusion may be to Isa 35:8-10 and Ps 91:9-13 LXX (cf. Matt 4:5 and Luke 4:9, which explicitly allude to Ps 91 in their accounts of Jesus’ temptation). If so, the wild animals are symbolic of hostile forces, but are subjugated now that the kingdom has broken in through Jesus. On this view, see A. B. Caneday, “Mark’s Provocative Use of Scripture in Narration: ‘He Was with the Wild Animals and Angels Ministered to Him,’” BBR 9 (1999): 19-36. For the significance of Moses typology, see Dale C. Allison, Jr., The New Moses: A Matthean Typology (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1994), 165-72, and for the Moses typology in Matthew’s temptation narrative featuring Jesus as the new “Law-receiver” and new covenant mediator, note Daniel M. Gurtner, “‘Fasting’ and ‘Forty Nights:’ The Matthean Temptation Narrative (4:1-11) and Moses Typology,” in ‘What Does the Scripture Say?’ Studies in the Function of Scripture in Early Judaism and Christianity, vol 1. The Synoptic Gospels, ed. Craig A. Evans and H. Daniel Zacharias (New York: T & T Clark, 2012), 1-11.

46LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy, 65.
and failure. By citing these verses from Deuteronomy, Jesus identifies himself with Israel. Further, Jesus replays Israel’s experience in the wilderness, but as the faithful Son, he emerges victorious, thus signifying Israel’s long-hoped for renewal. Max Turner explains, “Essentially this is a story about the beginnings of Israel’s restoration, a ‘New Exodus’ begun in her messianic representative through an ordeal/contest with Satan (in which Jesus emerges as the victorious Isaianic servant-warrior).”

Similarly, Mark Strauss states, “As the messianic king and Son of God (2 Sam. 7.14; Ps. 2.7; 89.27; 4QFlor), Jesus represents the nation and fulfills the task of eschatological Israel in the wilderness.”

The evaluated texts reveal that Jesus is the antitypical son, the true Israel. The pattern of sonship which began with Adam and continued through Abraham, the nation of Israel, and the Davidic kings, reaches its culmination and fulfillment in Christ. The entailments for the church are significant. Since Christ is the true son, his followers and disciples—the church—are now sons of God (see Matt 5:9, 44-45; 13:38; Gal 3:28-29).

---

47Menninger, *Israel and the Church*, 80, writes, “The temptations of turning the stones into bread (4:3f; cf. Exod 16:4f, 14), of tempting God (4:5-7; cf. Exod 17:2, 7; cf. Ps 91:11f), and of worshipping Satan (4:8-10 cf. Exod 32:1ff) are all met with OT citations (Deut 8:3; 6:16; 6:13 respectively) that highlight Jesus’ victory over the Tempter. Where the nation failed, Jesus succeeds. He is seen here as not only the ideal Israelite but as ideal Israel itself. The Son of God not only reenacts Israel’s history, but more importantly, he withstands temptations and anticipates a new people (his followers, namely the true Israel) that will succeed where old Israel failed.”

48Turner, *Power from on High*, 204.

49Strauss, *The Davidic Messiah*, 216. Kennedy’s main conclusion in his technical study on Matt 1-4 is that Jesus does not just recapitulate Israel’s history, but embodies Israel as Son, a role which he must fulfill (Matt 3:15; cf. 1:21), for as “the true Israel, he does everything Israel was to be and do.” Kennedy, *The Recapitulation of Israel*, 225. The theme of Jesus’ obedience is also highlighted in the book of Hebrews. Thomas R. Schreiner, *Commentary on Hebrews*, Biblical Theology for Christian Proclamation (Nashville: B & H, 2015), 38-39, summarizes, “Hebrews, along with the rest of the NT, sets forth Jesus as the true Israel and the true Davidic king. He was the Son who invariably obeyed, never transgressing the will of the Lord (4:15; 7:26). The Lord promised Israel that his promises to them would be secured through obedience (Gen 18:18-19; cf. Gen 26:5), and Jesus as God’s Son learned to obey in his suffering (5:18). . . . Israel was tested in the wilderness and sinned repeatedly, but when Jesus was tested, he didn’t fall prey to sin (2:18; 4:15), and thus he was perfected via his sufferings (2:10). We see escalation in that Jesus was always the obedient Son in contrast to Israel and the Davidic kings.” Likewise, Leonhard Goppelt, *Typos: The Typological Interpretation of the Old Testament in the New*, trans. Donald H. Madvig (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1982), 99-100.
Those who receive Jesus and believe in him are the only ones who are deemed children of God (John 1:12-13). Other scriptures confirm that the kinship of belonging has been redefined. Paul tells the Galatians that in Christ Jesus they are all sons of God through faith (Gal 3:26). This would be shocking for the Jews because, as Trevor Burke writes,

Under the old economy only Israel and the Israelites were the “sons of God” (e.g., Exod. 4:22; Deut. 14:1-2; Isa. 1:2-4). But now in the accordance with the purposes of God, the scope of blessing is more far reaching because the Son of God opens up the way for Gentiles to be included and receive this filial status as well.

Additional passages with elements of exodus typology show that in the new covenant age—the era of the Holy Spirit—believers are full sons of God (Gal 4:4-7; Rom 8:14-23).

In fact, the adoption includes both Jewish and Gentile believers, for prior to the cross both were enslaved (Gal 3:22-25; 4:3; Rom 8:15), but now in the fullness of time (Gal 4:4) the eschatological climax has occurred when God sent his Son in order that all who believe may receive the adoption as sons.

---

50 Dutch Reformed theologian, Herman N. Ridderbos, *The Gospel according to John: A Theological Commentary*, trans. John Vriend (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1997), 45-46, commenting on John 1:12, writes, “In John being a child is always rooted in a new birth ‘of God,’ ‘of the Spirit,’ or ‘from above’ (cf. vs. 13, 3:3.). It denotes a totally new mode of existence, one that belongs to the ‘eschatological’ renewal of all things by God, which as ‘eternal life’ has already been initiated by the work of Christ; everywhere in the New Testament it is as such also often linked with the future (‘the revealing of the sons of God,’ Ro. 8:19; cf. Col 3:4 but also 1 Jn. 3:2). The privilege of being children of God is special and exclusive. It is not a natural quality that every human being has as a creature of God; nor is it the inalienable right of Israel as ‘his own’ (cf. 8:42). It is, rather, the gift that is given only to those who believe in the Word.”


52 Burke, *Adopted into God’s Family*, 89 (cf. 86-87), states, “Our adoption as sons, according to Paul, is not our native or natural condition. God’s family comprises solely adopted sons and daughters—there are no natural-born sons or daughters in his divine household.” See also Thomas R. Schreiner, *Galatians*, ZECNT (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2010), 269-72; Brendan Byrne, “Sons of God”—“Seed of Abraham”:” A Study of the Idea of Sonship of God of All Christians in Paul against the Jewish Background, Analecta Biblica 83 (Rome: Pontifical Biblical Institute, 1979), 176-83. The word “adoption” also appears with reference to Israel in Rom 9:4. Many dispensationalists point to Rom 9:4-5 in arguing for the special privilege of Israel. For example, see Michael G. Vanlaningham, “The Jewish People according to the Book of Romans,” in *The People, the Land and the Future of Israel: Israel and the Jewish People in the Plan of God*, ed. Darrell L. Bock and Mitch Glaser (Grand Rapids: Kregel, 2014), 121-22. In this passage, Paul says that the adoption, glory, covenants, giving of the law, worship, covenants, and patriarchs belong to Israel. But every single one of the privileges cited here have already been applied to believing Gentiles in
Israel-Jesus typology through the seed theme. The previous discussion of sonship typology is inseparable from the broader seed theme. Incredibly significant for Jews and their identity is their patrilineal descent from Abraham.53 How the seed theme is integrated in deriving the Israel-Christ-church relationship is crucial for ecclesiology as demonstrated in chapters 3 and 4 with the crucial role of the Abrahamic covenant in covenant and dispensational theologies. Significant for the purposes of this study is Galatians 3:16 (cf. 3:19). In the context of combating the claims of Judaizing agitators who sought to compel his primarily Gentile readers (cf. Gal 4:8) to be circumcised and abide by the Mosaic Law in order to belong to the people of God, Paul states, “Now the promises were made to Abraham and to his offspring. It does not say, ‘And to offsprings,’ referring to many, but referring to one, ‘And to your offspring,’ who is Christ” (ESV). For Paul, Jesus fulfills the Abrahamic covenant as he is the unique, typological seed who receives and achieves all the promises of Abraham.54 Before unpacking the implications

Rom 1-8 or elsewhere in Pauline writings. See Daniel Jong Sang Chae, Paul as Apostle to the Gentiles: His Apostolic Self-Awareness and its Influence on the Soteriological Argument in Romans, Paternoster Biblical and Theological Monographs (Carlisle, UK: Paternoster, 1997), 227, who finds that by “listing the Jewish prerogatives Paul achieves two purposes: (1) he expresses his tie with his own people, and (2) he also sums up what he has written earlier about the blessing into which (the believing) Gentiles are included. Both Jews and Gentiles equally share these privileges which previously were exclusively granted to the Jews.” Cf. Burke, Adopted into God’s Family, 168-72.

53For emphasis on Abraham as the father of the Jewish people, see Gen 25:19; 26:15, 24; 28:13; 32:9; 48:15-16; Exod 3:6; Deut 1:8; 6:10; 9:5; 30:20; Josh 24:3; 1 Chron 1:27-28, 34; 16:13. For NT passages, note Acts 3:25, the response of the Jews to Jesus in John 8:33 (cf. 8:39), and Gal 3-4 and Rom 4 where Paul specifically addresses the nature of Abraham’s offspring.

of this verse for theological systems, it is important to provide the background as to how Paul could make this argument in identifying Christ as the true seed of the Abraham.

In the Abrahamic covenant, God promises Abraham numerous offspring (Gen 12:2; 13:16; 15:5; 17:2; 22:17; 26:4; 24; 28:14; 32:12; 48:4, 19), land (Gen 12:7; 13:15; 15:18; 17:8; 22:17; 24:7; 26:3; 28:13; 35:12; 48:4), and that he would be a channel of blessing to all the families or nations of the earth (Gen 12:3; 17:4-6; 18:18; 22:18; 26:4; 28:14).55 The programmatic promises of Genesis 12:1-3 are the divine, redemptive response to the dilemma of human sin narrated throughout Genesis 3-11.56

also thinks that Christ is the typological seed of Abraham in Gal 3:16 (57, 59-60), but his understanding of typology is truncated having only correspondence and escalation but not fulfillment as he argues that ethnic Israel still remains the seed of Abraham and awaits the physical, political, and territorial Abrahamic promises in the future. Interestingly, Douglas J. Moo, Galatians, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2013), 229-30, does not describe Paul’s argument in Gal 3:16 as typological; however, Paul is “operating with certain hermeneutical axioms that provide warrant for his interpretation. Especially important is Paul’s reading of salvation history as the story of how God’s promises become applicable to a worldwide people” (230).


56William J. Dumbrell, Covenant and Creation: An Old Testament Covenant Theology, rev. ed. (Milton Keynes, UK: Paternoster, 2013), 59-70; William J. Dumbrell, The Faith of Israel: A Theological Survey of the Old Testament, 2nd ed. (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2002), 28; Stephen G. Dempster, Dominion and Dynasty: A Theology of the Hebrew Bible, NSBT 15 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2003), 75-77; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 242-44; and Hamilton, “The Seed of the Woman,” 253-74. Hamilton persuasively argues that the promises of Gen 12:1-3 are a direct answer to the curses of Gen 3:14-19 as the promise of being a great nation answers the curse of Gen 3:16, the promise of land correlates to the curse of the ground and the loss of Eden (Gen 3:17-19, 23), and the blessing to all who bless Abram correspond to the promise of crushing the head of the serpent and ultimate victory (Gen 3:15) (258-61). As Burge, Whose Land? Whose Promise?, 72, notes, the Abrahamic “covenant is not designed simply to satisfy Israel’s nationhood and give it land. Nor is the covenant designed to satisfy Israel’s self-interest. The covenant with Israel is God’s strategy to bring his goodness and righteousness to the rest of humanity. Israel is to be a nation of priests (Exod. 19:6; Deut. 7:6), mediating God’s presence and goodness to the earth.” Burge’s assertions are supported by N. T. Wright, Paul and the Faithfulness of God, book 2, Christian Origins and the Question of God (Minneapolis: Fortress, 2013), 4:783-95, who discusses the links between
The promises to Abraham are extended to his seed (Gen 13:15; 17:7-9), but clearly throughout Genesis and the rest of the OT there are important nuances in understanding the heirs of the Abrahamic covenant. First, the “seed” of Abraham refers to his natural and biological offspring, such as Ishmael, Isaac, the sons of Keturah (Gen 25:4), and from Isaac, Esau and Jacob. Nevertheless, not all of the biological offspring of Abraham enjoyed covenant privilege, for Isaac (Gen 17:20; 21:13), not Ishmael, and Jacob (Gen 28:13-14), not Esau, were the special, natural seed who received the Abrahamic promises. Clearly the nation of Israel falls into this latter “seed” category as the direct descendants of Jacob, although throughout the OT, foreigners and proselytes could enter into this covenant community through circumcision and submitting to the Mosaic Law.

The Abrahamic covenant passes down to the natural and yet special “seed” who are also to be Abraham’s children spiritually in exemplifying a faith like his. It is important to recognize that at one level the nation of Israel did receive the nationalistic promises to Abraham (Gen 12:1-2; 15:5, 18-21; 17:7-8; 22:17; 26:4; 28:14; 32:12). God initially fulfilled his promise that Abraham would become a great nation, for Israel did become as numerous as the stars of heaven (Deut 1:10; 10:22; 28:62; 1 Chr 27:23; Neh 9:23), as numerous as the sand of the sea (1 Kgs 4:20), and as the dust of the earth (2 Chr 1:9).

Moreover, there is indication that Israel did possess rest and the land during Joshua’s Adam and Abraham, how Abraham and his offspring recapitulate the role of Adam, but also how God will redeem the rest of humanity by undoing the curses through Abraham.


Alexander, “Seed,” 772; Williamson, “Abraham, Israel and Church,” 112; Bandy and
leadership (Josh 11:23; 14:15; 21:44-45; 23:14-15, 43-45) and to a greater degree of fulfillment, during the reign of Solomon as the boundaries of the nation extended to those promised to Abraham (1 Kgs 4:21; cf. 4:24-25; 5:4). Most of the Israelites, however, did not resemble their father Abraham in his faith, obedience, and loyalty and so forfeited their special covenental status, receiving the covenant curses. Ultimately, such idolatry at a national level led to the exile of both Israel and Judah (see Lev 26:14-33; Deut 4:27; 28:62-64; 31:17, 29; 32:5, 20; Ps 106:34-43; Jer 9:13-16; Ezek 12:15; 20:23-24). The promise of progeny and land never fully materialized (Isa 48:17-19), but awaited realization under a single messianic leader in the future when those who are “Not My People” would be called “sons of the Living God” and “be like the sand of the sea” (Hos 1:9-11).

From a slightly different angle, the promises to Abraham regarding descendants, land, and blessings for the nations are interwoven and inseparable. Abram is promised

Merkle, Understanding Prophecy, 98.


Throughout Genesis, “seed” conveys a notion of close resemblance between the producer and the offspring. DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 452; T. D. Alexander, “Genealogies, Seed and the Compositional Unity of Genesis,” TynBul 44 (1993): 260, 265. The storyline of the Bible shows how many of those who were physical descendants of Abraham actually demonstrated that they were of the seed of the serpent, not of the seed of the woman (Gen 3:15). The principle is clearly illustrated when Jesus refers to his Jewish interlocuters as doing the work of their father, the devil (John 8:44). John the Baptist also warned the Jews about presuming upon their patriarchal progenitor (Matt 3:9; Luke 3:8).

In other words, the giving of the promises in Gen 12:1-3, the making of the covenant in Gen 15, and the confirmation of the covenant in Gen 17 should be considered a package deal. The nationalistic promises of the Abrahamic covenant serve the larger and more significant universal purposes of blessing all the families of the earth. See Paul R. Williamson, Sealed with an Oath: Covenant in God’s Unfolding Purpose, NSBT 23 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2007), 84; Richard Bauckham, Bible and Mission: Christian Witness in a Postmodern World (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2003), 28-32, esp. 30; and Alexander, “Abraham Reassessed Theologically,” 13, who observes that the five-fold repetition of “bless” in Gen 12:2-3 reveals that the climax of the promises to Abraham lie in God’s desire to bring blessing to the nations. As Dumbrell, The Faith of Israel, 28, observes, the promise of Abraham becoming a great nation (Gen 12:2)
to be made into a great nation, but when he is renamed Abraham, God promises that he
would be the father of a multitude of nations (Gen 17:4-5). Even though this latter promise
could be fulfilled through Abraham’s natural offspring, the reiteration of the Abrahamic
promises to Jacob in Genesis 35:10-12 brings clarification. Chee-Chiew Lee argues,

Immediately after God changed Jacob’s name to Israel, he declared that “Israel” shall
become of “a nation” and “a company of nations.” As early as in Genesis, “Israel” as
“the people of God” is portrayed as consisting of physical descendants of Jacob—
the nation of Israel—and a multitude of nations. The nuance between the promise
made to Abraham in Gen 17:4-5 and its reiteration to Jacob in Gen 35:10-12 is as
follows: while Abraham becoming “the father of many nations” may still be
fulfilled through the other physical descendants of Abraham, Jacob becoming “a
nation and a company of nations” can only be fulfilled beyond his physical
descendants.63

The inextricable link between the promise of being a great nation and the global promise
of all the families of the earth being blessed is further established in how the prophets
portray the nations becoming part of end-time Israel. For example, Jeremiah 3:16-4:4
alludes to the Abrahamic promises with respect to Israel’s post-exilic restoration.64 In this
passage, Israel has multiplied and increased in the land of their fathers (Jer 3:16, 18;
hearkening back to Gen 12:7; 13:14-17; 15:18-21; 26:3-4; 28:13-14; 35:10) and nations
comprising of heart-changed people gather together with Israel in a transformed Jerusalem

“may have had Israel in view, but Israel as representative of the wider saved community to stem from her
witness. The centrality of purpose that the Babel builders had vainly sought may therefore be supplied by
this call of Genesis 12:1-3. No final political structure will prevail outside of the framework established
here. Perhaps the ‘great nation’ of this passage is to be taken eschatologically, to mean the company of the
redeemed who will fulfill the call to Abram (cf. Rev. 5:11).”

63Chee-Chiew Lee, “עִם [sic] in Genesis 35:11 and the Abrahamic Promise of Blessings for the
Nations,” JETS 52 (2009): 474. See also Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 291-93. Gentry
observes that the “company of nations” “cannot refer to the ‘tribes’ of Israel, for this would not satisfy the
Hebrew term גּוֹיִם, which refers to the groups of peoples in the world as politically and socially structured
entities with government. Nor could it be a reference to the later development when Israel was split into
two kingdoms. Two kingdoms are not exactly a company of nations” (292). In light of Gen 35:11, that
Abraham would be a father of many nations means that he is “father” in an elected rather than biological

64Ibid., 477-78; DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 463; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom
participation of the Gentiles in the glorious restoration of the Promised Land.”
called the “throne of the LORD” (Jer 3:17). Israel’s restoration and faithfulness results in the nations declaring themselves blessed (Jer 4:2; cf. Ps 72:17; Isa 2:1-4; 19:24-25; Mic 4:1-3; Zech 8:13, 22-23), which recalls Genesis 12:3 and 22:18 as they enjoy salvation under the rule of God. Furthermore, as Jeremiah further explains, part of the means the nations will be blessed is coordinated with heart circumcision (Jer 4:3-4). The sign of circumcision within the Abrahamic covenant typologically points to heart circumcision as the prophets anticipate Israel’s return from exile and restoration; a future covenant community devoted and loyal to Yahweh from the heart (Deut 30:6; Jer 9:25-26; Ezek 44:6-9; cf. 11:16-21; 18:30-32; 36:22-36).65

Likewise, the land promise, at first referring to the land of Canaan as the location where Abraham’s descendants are to become a great nation, includes a sense of expansion or universalization as the place of blessing for all nations.66 As discussed, figuratively, Israel did become like the stars of the heavens and as the dust of the earth, but the eschatological nature of these descriptions cannot be ignored as Genesis 28:14


66Christopher J. H. Wright, Old Testament Ethics for the People of God (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004), 185 (cf. 187-93), writes that Israel and the promised land “were part of the process of God’s redemptive purpose, not its final, perfected product. The theological function of both people and land together, therefore, is rather like a prototype, or a sign, pointing to something that lay beyond their present empirical reality” (emphasis original). The land promise is theologically linked to the themes of city, inheritance, rest, temple, and God’s presence (sacred space). These interconnections are investigated in P. W. L. Walker, Jesus and the Holy City: New Testament Perspectives on Jerusalem (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1996). The land is a gift from God (Lev 25:23), the place of blessing, and it is the physical sphere where one lives out their allegiance to the Lord (i.e., the locale of kingdom activity). Contra Michael Grisanti, “A Critique of Gentry and Wellum’s, Kingdom through Covenant: An Old Testament Perspective,” MSJ 26 (2015): 129-37. Grisanti fails to fit the nation of Israel within the storyline of Scripture as another Adam and completely ignores the many passages in the OT (discussed later in this chap.) that demonstrate that the promised land is expanded as a type of the entire creation in ancient Hebrew thought. Grisanti’s dismissal of edenic terminology for the promised land as merely descriptive terms (pp. 134-35) shows that he fails to link the land to the temple, but he also neglects the other phrases that invoke the original commission given in Eden (e.g., Ezek 36:10-11, 26-30). See n25 in this chap.; cf. G. K. Beale and Mitchell Kim, God Dwells among Us: Expanding Eden to the Ends of the Earth (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2014), 65-77.
strongly suggests that the multiplication of descendants goes beyond the territorial border of Canaan to that of global dimensions: “Your offspring shall be like the dust of the earth, and you shall spread abroad to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south, and in you and your offspring shall all the families of the earth be blessed” (Gen 22:17-18). Further, Isaiah 54:1-3 alludes back to Sarah and Hagar, and echoes Genesis 28:14. The offspring of the barren and desolate one, historically associated with Sarah, not Hagar, will possess the nations in a manner not suggestive of military conquest, but in terms of expanding the family tent. The description of Israel’s habitations being stretched out and spreading abroad to the right and the left (Isa 54:2-3) is indicative that the land promise exceeds a specific geographic locale to include the world and cannot be isolated from the promise to bring blessings to the nations (cf. Ps 22:27-28; 47:7-9; 72:8-11; Zeph 3:9-10). Another example where the promises of Abraham come together is likely Isaiah

67See Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 754. See also James M. Scott, Paul and the Nations: The Old Testament and Jewish Background of Paul’s Mission to the Nations with Special Reference to the Destination of Galatians, WUNT 84 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 1995), 63. Other texts indicating the expansion of the promised land include Gen 26:3-4; Exod 34:24; Num 24:17-18; Deut 19:8-9. Williamson, “Promise and Fulfilment,” 22. Based on all these texts, the assertions of Nelson S. Hsieh, “Abraham as ‘Heir of the World’: Does Romans 4:13 Expand the Old Testament Abrahamic Land Promises?” MSJ 26 (2015): 99, that “the land promises were always localized to the land of Canaan” and that the promise of an expanded promised land was never revealed to Abraham are groundless and untrue. Not only does Hsieh fail to evaluate Gen 22:17-18, he does not consider that such a theological claim leaves the statements by the author of Hebrews about Abraham looking to the city built and prepared by God (Heb 11:10, 16) to be utterly without warrant. For treatment of the promised land as typological in Heb 4 and 11, see Walker, Jesus and the Holy City, 211-13; Philip Church, “‘Here We Have No Lasting City’ (Heb 13:14): The Promised Land in the Letter to the Hebrews,” in The Gospel and the Land of Promise: Christian Approaches to the Land of the Bible, ed. Philip Church et al. (Eugene, OR: Pickwick, 2011), 147-57; and David M. Allen, Deuteronomy and Exhortation in Hebrews: A Study in Narrative Re-Presentation, WUNT 2/238 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2008), 143-55.


69DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 470; cf. Thomas Edward McComiskey, The Covenants of Promise: A Theology of the Old Testament Covenants (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1985), 54. The universalistic element of the land promise also appears in the Psalter, for the description of the recipients who are to inherit the land is cast more broadly than the nation of Israel. In general terms, those who fear Yahweh and are characterized by righteousness and meekness are those who are promised the inheritance of the land (Ps 25:12-13; 37:9, 11, 22, 29, 34; cf. Isa 57:13). Matt 5:5 alludes to Ps 37:11, which confirms the typological nature of the promised land as does several other NT texts: John 15:1-6; Rom 4:13; Eph
Theologically, the company of nations that become Abraham’s seed coupled with the
grandiose numerical imagery of Abraham’s offspring (“dust of the earth,” “stars of
heaven”) require that the land extend far beyond Palestine, for the countless numbers of
those who possess the faith of father Abraham will not be able to reside in such a narrow
strip of land. When the expansion of the land in the restoration promises is coordinated
with the depiction of the land as the Garden of Eden (e.g., Isa 51:3; Ezek 36:35) and with
how Israel will multiply and be fruitful (Jer 3:16; 23:3; Ezek 36:11), the picture becomes
clearer that the Abrahamic promises of being a great nation and possession of the land
cannot be disassociated from God’s program of blessing the nations and bringing about a
new creation.

The brief sketch of the Abrahamic covenant within the OT indicates that the
divine promises to Abraham, having nationalistic and universalistic aspects, are packaged
together in anticipation of eschatological fulfillment. This understanding of the

---

land, see O. Palmer Robertson, “A New-Covenant Perspective on the Land,” in The Land of Promise:
Biblical, Theological and Contemporary Perspectives, ed. Philip Johnston and Peter Walker (Downers
Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2000), 129-30; Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 756-57; Martin, Bound
for the Promised Land, 124; LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy, 138; Davies and Allison, Matthew
1-7, 449-51; and Carson, Matthew 1-12, 133-34, 136.

70Rikk E. Watts, “Echoes from the Past: Israel’s Ancient Traditions and the Destiny of the
Nations in Isaiah 40-55,” JSOT 28 (2004): 495, writes, “It is possible that the movement from Abraham and
Sarah to offspring ([Isa 51] v. 2), to restoration of the land (v. 3), and then to justice for the nations (vv. 4-
5) is intended not only to invoke the tradition reflected in Gen. 12.1-3 but also its progression: Abram
leaves Ur/Haran (Gen. 12.1; Isa. 40-55 just happens to be about an exodus from the same general location),
is promised that he will become a great nation and be blessed (v. 2a), and finally is declared to be a blessing
for all the peoples on the earth (vv. 2b-3).” It is noteworthy that Israel’s land is again depicted in terms of a
restored Eden and garden (Isa 51:3). Also, there are significant points of contact between Isa 51:1-8 and
Gal 3:6-9 as righteousness, faith, the summons to remember the promise of Abraham, and the inclusion of
Gentiles within God’s saving righteousness are present in both, so Matthew S. Harmon, She Must and Shall
Go Free: Paul’s Isaianic Gospel in Galatians, BZNW 168 (Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 2010), 138-40. That
Abraham’s seed is now made up of spiritual offspring, faithful Jews and Gentiles (cf. Gal 3:25-29), is only
possible because of the work of Christ (Gal 3:13-14), the true seed of Abraham (Gal 3:16).

71Adrian T. Smith, “The Fifth Gospel,” in Eyes to See, Ears to Hear: Essays in Memory of J.
Alan Groves, ed. Peter Enns, Douglas J. Green, and Michael B. Kelly (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2010), 81,
writes, “The blessing [of Gen 12:1-3] is for all the clans of the ‘adhamah—the ground that was cursed in
Genesis 3:17. In sum, the land promised to Abraham was, from the outset, part of a ‘package deal’ for the
reversal of the curse. The Promised Land was inseparable from the global goals of the redemptive drama”
interwoven nature of the Abrahamic covenant is in sharp contrast to how dispensationalists and covenant theologians understand this programmatic covenant. In sum, Abraham’s “seed” expands beyond the natural and yet special offspring of Israel to include a spiritual posterity or “seed” from among the nations, a regenerate people who possess the same faith as Abraham. Even more significant, however, is how the promises are channeled through and crystalized in one, unique, true “seed” of Abraham, a royal deliver.

The narrative of Genesis suggests, and later OT books confirm, that the Abrahamic promises come to fruition through one unique, individual, seed of Abraham. Significantly, in Genesis 17:6, 17:16, and 35:11, the promise of kings issuing from Abraham, Sarah, and Jacob are made. Intertwined with these royal promises are the themes of fruitfulness, seed, and land. Within Genesis, these promises of royal offspring look back to Genesis 3:15 and forward to Genesis 49:8-12, where a king will emerge from Judah who receives the obedience of nations (49:10; cf. Gen 27:29), and whose rule is characterized by prosperity and abundance (49:11). Validation that the Abrahamic promises coalesce in one specific “seed” of Abraham is the usage of the collective singular noun זֶרַע (“seed”). While the term is commonly applied in reference to multiple

( emphasis original). See also Bauckham, Bible and Mission, 46. Similar to the survey in terms of describing how each strand of the Abrahamic covenant is interwoven is DeRouchie’s presentation of a two stage progression. Abraham goes to the land in order to become a great nation, Israel. The first stage is realized by Israel during the era of the Mosaic covenant. The second stage was inaugurated when the representative of Israel, Jesus Christ, the true seed of Abraham, fulfilled the charge to be a blessing (Gen 12:2) by overcoming the curse in establishing the new covenant. He is the instrument of blessing (Gen 12:3) by bringing together Jews and Gentiles into one global family. See DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 459-60, 479-80.


descendants, the syntactical analyses of Collins and Alexander reveal that the term “seed” is a single individual in Genesis 3:15, 22:17b-18a, and 24:60.74 These texts, all closely associated with the Abrahamic covenant, set a trajectory that links the fulfillment of the promises to a single Messianic “seed.” Surprisingly, some dispensationalists ignore or neglect how the “seed” theme narrows down to an individual, royal figure.75

Subsequent development of the patriarchal promises in the OT connect the Abrahamic covenant to David, but also back to the conditions of Eden and the hopes of overcoming the curse of Genesis 3:15. The Balaam oracles recorded in Numbers 22-24 not only depict Israel in language reminiscent of Eden and the exodus (Num 24:5-6), but reaffirm the Abrahamic promise of blessing and cursing (Num 24:6, 12; 23:8; cf. Gen 12:3), the promise of seed (Num 23:10; cf. Gen 12:2; 13:16; 28:14), and most importantly, Balaam projects the last days when an individual Israelite seed will become exalted, having universal rule, and triumphing over his enemies (Num 24:7-9, 17-19; cf. Gen 12:3; 27:29; 49:9-10).76 The organic relationship between the Abrahamic covenant and the Davidic covenant further narrow down the promises to an individual Davidide, for a kingdom will be established for David’s “seed” (2 Sam 7:12; 1 Chr 17:11-14; Ps 89:3-4, 28, 36; cf. Ps 132:10-12; Jer 33:21).77 The great name and nation promised to Abraham


75John S. Feinberg, “Systems of Discontinuity,” in Continuity and Discontinuity, 72, in his discussion of the multiple sense of “seed” fails to observe that Christ is the true “seed” (Gal 3:16). On the other hand, Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 151, does list Christ as the unique individual seed of Abraham, but fails to account for the significance of this or the importance of Gal 3:16 in his counter arguments to “supersessionists” (150-51).


77See Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 640-44; Dempster, Dominion and Dynasty, 143; Hamilton, “The Seed of the Woman,” 267-68; Dumbrell, Covenant and Creation, 219-26; McComiskey, The Covenants of Promise, 21-30.
are directed through David (2 Sam 7:9; 1 Chr 17:8; cf. Gen 12:2), as are the promises of place (2 Sam 7:10; cf. Gen 12:7; 15:18; 17:8; Deut 11:24ff). Additionally, the promises of rest from enemies and an established throne coupled with David’s assessment of the covenant as being a charter for humanity (2 Sam 7:19b) indicate that a Davidic king will mediate the blessings to the nations and will effect God’s rule over the world through his faithfulness as God had intended with Adam in the garden (cf. Ps 89:23-29; 110:1-7).78

The ideal eschatological Davidic king is also directly related to the individual “seed” of Abraham in Psalm 72 with verse 17 alluding back to the individual “seed” of Genesis 22:18 (cf. Gen 12:3).79 Once again the covenant promises of Abraham—having a great name (Gen 12:2 with Ps 72:17), possessing the land but now in a universalized sense (Gen 15:18 with Ps 72:8; cf. Ps 2:8; Zech 9:10; 14:9),80 and the blessings of the nations (Gen 12:3 with Ps 72:11, 17)—are brought together as is the promised goal of the “seed”

78On the expression of 2 Sam 7:19b being translated as “and this is the Charter for all mankind, O Lord God!,” see Walter C. Kaiser, Jr., “The Blessing of David: The Charter for Humanity,” in The Law and the Prophets: Old Testament Studies Prepared in Honor of Oswald Thompson Allis, ed. John H. Skilton (Nutley, NJ: P & R, 1974), 298-318, esp. 310-15. Cf. Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 399-400, 641; Dumbrell, Covenant and Creation, 227; Routledge, Old Testament Theology, 235n28; McComiskey, The Covenants of Promise, 21-23. Bauckham, Bible and Mission, 42-43, observes the tension in the OT narrative as the king is the earthly deputy or vice-regent of Yahweh’s rule, but the Davidic king’s rule was localized while Yahweh’s is universal. Such tension is resolved in the Messiah.


80Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 754, rightly observes that the description of the end-time Davidic king ruling from sea to sea and from the river to the ends of the earth “is an explicit widening of the original borders of the promised land, which had been set ‘from the Red Sea to the sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness to the River [Euphrates]’ (Exod. 23:31). This is summarized in Gen. 15:18 as ‘from the river of Egypt as far as the great river, the river Euphrates.’ The psalm begins with the ‘river’ (apparently of Egypt) but substitutes ‘the end of the earth’ for the ‘river Euphrates.’ Again, the patriarchal promise related to Israel’s land is universalized by the psalm.” Cf. Bauckham, Bible and Mission, 44. Scott, Paul and the Nations, 62-63, notes how the messianic king in the OT was expected to rule the world and so the Abrahamic promise of land expands to include the whole world (he cites particularly from Sir 44:21). According to Scott, this is further illustrated in how Ps 72 shows the universal sovereignty of the king in that he rules over a group of nations (vv. 9-11, 16), which is drawn from the Table of Nations in Gen 10. Note also Katanacho, “Christ Is the Owner of Haarets,” 425-41.
of the woman (Gen 3:15) overcoming the curse (Ps 72:3-4, 9).81 Other passages point in this direction as well, as “Amos 9:11-15 likewise connects ultimate Davidic vicegerency with Edenic land and abundance, as does Ez 34.”82

These promises coalesce into the new covenant which has national (Jer 31:36-40; 33:6-16; Ezek 36:24-38; 37:11-28) and international (Isa 42:6; 49:6; 55:3-5; 56:4-8; 66:18-24; Jer 33:9; Ezek 36:36; 37:28) elements that are brought to fulfillment through a Davidic, Abrahamic son (Isa 9:6-7; 11:1-10; Jer 23:5-6; 33:14-26; Ezek 34:23-24; 37:24-28). Gentry and Wellum explain that the new covenant’s scope is viewed as universal, especially in Isaiah (42:6; 49:6; 55:3-5; 56:4-8; 66:18-24). These Isaiah texts project the ultimate fulfillment of the divine promises in the new covenant onto an ‘ideal Israel,’ i.e., a community tied to the servant of the Lord, located in a rejuvenated new heavens and new earth (Isa. 65:17; 66:22).83

The survey immediately above highlights that the prophetic trajectory of the Abrahamic covenant promises through the “seed” theme. The “seed” is a typological pattern, possessing a prospective and eschatological orientation that centers in Jesus Christ. The promises to Abraham were passed down to the patriarchs, the nation of Israel, and then to David and the kings, but they culminate, according to the NT, in Jesus since he is the true seed, true Israel, and true David. In returning to Galatians 3:16, where Paul confirms Jesus as the typological seed who inherits the promises and in whom they are realized, it is important to note three key features of this text and the passage at large. First, in the context of showing that the blessings to Israel and the nations have become a reality in Christ (Gal 3:8-9, 14) and that the fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant means that believers are not under the Mosaic Law (Gal 3:15-4:11), Paul explicitly states the Abrahamic promises were ultimately made to one offspring

81For the allusions back to Gen 3 in Ps 72, see Hamilton, “Seed of the Woman,” 269-70.

82Beetham, “From Creation to New Creation,” 249. See also Hos 2:16-3:5; Jer 30:9.

83Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 645; cf. Wellum, “Beyond Mere Ecclesiology,” 196-97; Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 179-80.
(σπέρμα)—Christ. At the outset, as observed in my survey of the Abrahamic seed theme in the OT, Paul’s interpretative move is not allegorization nor a midrashic treatment. The interplay between the plural seed and the singular seed is present in the Genesis narrative and further, the seed theme narrows down from Abraham to Israel, and then to David in the OT. Paul can emphasize that the Abrahamic promises are to the individual Jesus Christ even as he recognizes the plural sense with his use of this collective noun in Galatians 3:29 (cf. Gal 3:7). Nevertheless, there is difficulty with Paul’s citation of the OT with the phrase “and to your offspring” (Gal 3:16 ESV). Since the offspring reference is to an individual, Collins, who is followed by dispensationalist Michael Riccardi, argues that Paul is drawing from Genesis 22:17-18, one of the passages in the Genesis narrative identified earlier where the term seed refers to an individual. Paul’s citation cannot be

---


85 A minority interpretation is that the singular “offspring” refers to one family in Christ and not many families. See Wright, Climax of the Covenant, 162-68. While the principle of corporate solidarity is present (Gal 3:14, 26, 28), Wright’s interpretation is not sustainable. See the criticisms of DeRouchie and Meyer, “Christ or Family as the ‘Seed,’” 36-48, and Lionel Windsor, “The ‘Seed,’ the ‘Many’ and the ‘One’ in Galatians 3:16: Paul’s Reading of Genesis 17 and Its Significance for Gentiles,” in All That the Prophets Have Declared: The Appropriation of Scripture in the Emergence of Christianity, ed. Matthew R. Malcolm (Crownhill, UK: Paternoster, 2015), 118-19.

86 Collins, “Galatians 3:16,” 84-86; Riccardi, “The Seed of Abraham,” 56-57; cf. Andrew E. Steinmann, “Jesus and Possessing the Enemies’ Gate (Genesis 22:17-18; 24:60),” BibSac 174 (2017): 14n2, 16. See also Scott W. Hahn, Kingship by Covenant: A Canonical Approach to the Fulfillment of God’s Saving Promises (London: Yale University, 2009), 245-46, 263-64, who argues for an Isaac-Christ typology. Part of what drives Collins, “Galatians 3:16,” 82, in this direction is the following: “In my judgment, the land promise texts (such as Gn. 13:15; 17:8) are not an encouraging line for investigation, because (1) the local nature of the promised land would not easily serve Paul’s argumentative purpose for the Gentiles; and (2) none of these is in the list of ‘blessing’ texts.” It is not surprising that dispensationalists like Riccardi, “The Seed of Abraham,” 60-62, would find this line of evidence appealing, for only the third component of the Abrahamic covenant (spiritual blessings for all the families of the earth) has come to pass in dispensational thought, the ethnic and territorial aspects of the Abrahamic covenant are yet future.

According to dispensationalists then, just the particular promise of Gen 12:3 is highlighted in Gal 3 (esp. v. 8). See Saucy, “Israel and the Church,” 254; Craig A. Blaising and Darrell L. Bock, Progressive
from Genesis 22:17-18, however, for the word and (καὶ) is part of Paul’s citation in Galatians 3:16 (“and to your offspring”; καὶ τῷ σπέρματι αὐτοῦ) and it is omitted in the text of Genesis 22:18. Instead, Paul is citing from the Septuagint (LXX) of Genesis 13:15; 17:8; or 24:7. With the focus on covenant in Galatians 3:15 and 17, Genesis 17:8 is the most likely source of the citation in Galatians 3:16 since both “covenant” and “seed” terms are in the context of Genesis 17.

However, if Paul is citing from Genesis 17:8, how can he apply this passage where the term seed is used in the plural or corporate sense in contrast to other passages where seed is singular (as in Gen 3:15; 22:17b-18; and 24:60)? A viable answer is...

---

87 Schreiner, Galatians, 230; Windsor, “The ‘Seed,’ the ‘Many’ and the ‘One,’” 250n1; DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 480.

88 Schreiner, Galatians, 228, 230; Moo, Galatians, 228-29; Windsor, “The ‘Seed,’ the ‘Many’ and the ‘One,’” 115, 120-26; Yon-Gyong Kwon, Eschatology in Galatians: Rethinking Paul’s Response to the Crisis in Galatians, WUNT 2/183 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2004), 105-6; Sam K. Williams, “Promise in Galatians: A Reading of Paul’s Reading of Scripture,” JBL 107 (1988): 716-17. Kagarise, “The ‘Seed’ in Galatians 3:16,” 69, thinks that no one particular passage is behind Paul’s quotation.

89 Moo, Galatians, 228; Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 150; cf. Hans Dieter Betz, Galatians, Hermeneia (Philadelphia: Fortress, 1979), 156; DeRouchie and Meyer, “Christ or Family as the ‘Seed,’” 38. Moo notes that both Gen 15:18 and 17:8 are in Paul’s mind since “covenant” and “seed” appear in both contexts, but given that the citation includes “and,” Gen 15:18 can be ruled out as the specific source of his citation.
providing by Lionel Windsor.90 Within the text of Genesis 17 itself, according to Windsor, there is a distinction between a *plurality* and a *singularity*. The focus of Genesis 17:1-6 is on plurality, the “many nations.” From Genesis 17:7 and following, the more immediate, particular nation of Israel which constitutes Abraham’s natural *seed* is brought into focus. It is Abraham’s *singular* household (vv. 12-13) and his *singular* people (v. 14) who stand “under Abraham’s obligation of circumcision (and, consequently, of law). This obligation is not laid on the future projected ‘many’ nations of whom Abraham will ultimately be the father.”91 Paul is countering the Judaizers then by showing from Genesis 17 itself that his Gentile readers are not under the Mosaic Law since the blessing of the nations do not fall under the requirements of circumcision. More importantly, Paul’s citation of Genesis 17:8 as a reference to Christ leads to the conclusion that the nation of “Israel, the ‘seed’ which stands under covenantal obligation—is ultimately fulfilled in the person of Christ.”92 The covenant directed to Abraham’s offspring in Genesis 17:7-14, are promises, according to Paul, that are to one offspring—Christ (cf. Gal 3:19).93 The typological

90Windsor, “The ‘Seed,’ the ‘Many’ and the ‘One,’” 120-25.

91Ibid., 123. Windsor also notes, “Paul refers explicitly to two key terms from his source text: not only the term ‘seed’ (*sperma*), which denotes singularity, but also the term ‘many’ (*polys*), which denotes plurality. Although interpreters invariably notice the term ‘seed’ occurs in Gen 17, they consistently fail to notice that the equally significant term ‘many’ also occurs in Gen 17” (122). Harmon, *She Must and Shall Go Free*, 150-51, goes in a different direction in highlighting an Isaac-Christ typological link, for the corporate notion of *seed* narrows down to Isaac (Gen 17:15-19) and so “it is possible that Paul has read the interplay between a singular and plural notion of seed and concluded that a similar phenomenon has taken place in Christ: he is the singular seed through whom the covenant promises are confirmed and extended to his seed.” Nevertheless, since the citation is from Gen 17:8, right near the transition point of Gen 17, the solution posed by Windsor is more attractive.

92Windsor, “The ‘Seed,’ the ‘Many’ and the ‘One,’” 123. See also ibid., 125. Kwon, *Eschatology in Galatians*, 122-25, argues unpersuasively that Paul is presenting Christ not as the fullfiller of the Abrahamic promise, but as its original co-recipient. However, Kwon misses the significance that the Abrahamic blessing, the promise of the Spirit, has become a reality in Christ (Gal 3:14; cf. 3:8) and that the law’s reign concluded with the coming of the singular offspring for whom the promise was reserved (Gal 3:19). With reference to Gal 3:19, Schreiner, *Galatians*, 240, comments that the “fulfillment of the promise has been secured.”

93The typological relationship between the nation of Israel and Jesus as observed in this study plays out through the principle of corporate solidarity whereby the one represents the many. The Messiah represents the nation, sums up Israel’s hopes, and is the ultimate recipient of God’s promises to his people.
relationship is apparent, Christ is the true Israel (= true seed of Abraham) as Israel’s promises and obligations culminate in him.\(^{94}\) Christ, like Israel, was born under the law (Gal 4:4-5), but this unique Abrahamic seed achieves the promises and fulfills the law by his substitutionary death so that Jews and Gentiles alike, through redemption, can become the true spiritual seed of Abraham, heirs of promise (Gal 3:28-29; cf. Heb 2:10-18, esp. v. 16), and no longer be subject to the Mosaic law and its obligations.\(^{95}\)

The typological relationship is further confirmed considering that Galatians 3:16 also likely alludes to Isaiah 41:8 along with Isaiah 53:10 and 54:3.\(^{96}\) Isaiah 41:8 describes Israel as the offspring of Abraham and as the Lord’s servant, themes which are significant in the latter half of the book (Isa 40-66).\(^{97}\) As a result of his substitutionary guilt offering, the Servant of Isaiah 53 will see his “offspring” (Isa 53:10; cf. Gal 3:13) and in celebration of this salvation, the offspring of the barren woman will be numerous (Isa 54:1) and inherit the nations (Isa 54:3). As noted previously, the distinguishing

---


\(^{94}\)Johnson, “The Pauline Typology,” 186-92, helpfully highlights how the Abraham-Christ typology in Gal 3 has the characteristics of historical correspondence, divinely ordained prefiguration, eschatological intensification, and Christocentric orientation.

\(^{95}\)Burke, Adopted into God’s Family, 111-20. See also, Holwerda, Jesus and Israel, 103 (cf. 32-33), who rightly concludes that Christ is “who represents and defines the authentic covenant lineage. In Christ it has been revealed that the inheritance of the promises is not by law but by promise, that the inheritance is a gift of God’s grace (as was Canaan in the Old Testament) to those who believe.”

\(^{96}\)Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 150-61. Interestingly, Pyne, “The ‘Seed,’” 215, also links Gal 3:16 to Isaiah’s servant songs, but he in no way develops the theological import of this in relation to his dispensational theology.

\(^{97}\)DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 465-74. Not only is there an allusion to Isa 41:8 in Gal 3:16, but the typological relationship between Israel and the community addressed by Hebrews is also observable since Heb 2:10-18, a passage that also focuses on Abraham’s offspring, has several elements that link back to Isa 41:8-10; so Peter T. O’Brien, God Has Spoken in His Son: A Biblical Theology of Hebrews, NSBT 39 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2016), 135.
characteristics of the Servant is that Yahweh placed his Spirit on him (Isa 42:1) and promises to make the Servant into a “covenant for the people” (Isa 42:6; 49:8). With the themes of covenant, seed, inheritance, the nations, and the reception of the Holy Spirit present in Galatians 3, it is not difficult to see how these Isaiah passages served as a backdrop in Paul’s presentation of Christ as the Servant who redeems his people (Gal 3:13), the seed who inherits the blessed promise(s) to Abraham (3:16, 18), and how as the true heir and true Israel he shares his sonship and inheritance to all who are united to him by faith (Gal 3:26-29). An entailment of this is that the genealogical principle so critical in covenant theology has come to an end. Isaiah projects, and Paul confirms in Galatians 3-4 with the fulfillment wrought in Christ, that the Abrahamic offspring are a people corporately identified with the Messiah, the Servant’s offspring are his via spiritual adoption, not through physical descent, and they are reborn and regenerate (Isa 54:1, 3).

Second, Paul states that it was Abrahamic “promises” (plural) that were (ultimately) spoken to Christ. Paul frequently refers to the “promise” (Gal 3:17, 18, 19, 22, 29; 4:23, 28), and only to “promises” plural in Galatians 3:16 and 3:21. Nevertheless, Paul freely oscillates between a singular promise and promises throughout the chapter. The usage of the plural in 3:16 reveals that it is not just Genesis 12:3 (the blessings of the nations) in view. David Starling suggests that the promises include not only the promise of blessing to the Gentiles but also the promise of the land and the prophetic promises of restoration and the outpouring of the Spirit. All of these promises, it seems, are understood by Paul as constituting a single

---

98 Harmon, *She Must and Shall Go Free*, 158.

99 DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 483-85. DeRouchie keenly observes, “The ‘barren one’s’ lack of labor and child bearing in Isa 54:1 suggests that spiritual adoption, not physical birth, would characterize the identity of the new children. The physical genealogical principle so evident in the Abrahamic and Mosaic covenants does not continue once the Abrahamic covenant reaches its fulfillment in the new, for membership is now solely conditioned on spiritual rebirth, generated through the sacrificial death of the Servant King (Isa 53:10)” (470-71, emphasis original).
inheritance, promised by God ‘to Abraham and his offspring . . . that is, to one person, Christ.’

In contrast to dispensationalists who assert that only Genesis 12:3 is in view, the text indicates that all the Abrahamic covenant promises are included, especially the promise of land (the land is of specific focus in Gen 17:8 that Paul directly cites from in Gal 3:16), which is confirmed in Galatians 3:18 where Paul argues that the “inheritance,” a term rooted in the OT for the promised land (Gen 15:3-5; 17:8; 22:17:28:4; Num 26:53-56; Josh 11:23; etc.), is given through promise. As observed, the promised land is a typological pattern, one that Paul confirms in Galatians 3 and elsewhere (e.g., Rom 4:13). The land promise anticipates a new transformed universe, an inheritance of a

---


102 Beyond the problems with the analysis of Rom 4:13 by Hsieh, “Abraham as ‘Heir of the World’” described in n67, Hsieh’s attempt to interpret that Abraham “would be heir of the world” (ESV) as the inheritance of many nations (people, not the promised land as the eschatological world, 106-10) does not adequately address that this promise is also to Abraham’s offspring (“for the promise to Abraham and his offspring;” Rom 4:13). Moreover, Hsieh completely ignores Rom 4:14 where the theme of inheritance is sustained in Paul’s argument. In Rom 4:13, Abraham is heir of what Abraham’s offspring are also heirs of, but not by adherence to the law, but by a faith like Abraham (Rom 4:14-16). The inheritance of many nations view (also asserted by Blaising, “A Premillennial Response,” 144-45) fails, for Abraham’s offspring (referred to as “heirs”) are not inheriting nations in this text, but are heirs of the coming eschatological world of which Paul is directing their hope. See the more exegetically satisfying treatment of Rom 4:13-18 by Echevarria, “The Future Inheritance of Land,” 157-64. Scott, *Paul and the Nations*, 128, with respect to Rom 4:13 states that “those who are in Christ, the Abrahamic heir (Gal 3:16) and [Lord of all] (Rom 10:12), enjoy universal sovereignty as joint heirs with Christ (Rom 8:17, 32; Gal 4:1; cf. Dan 7:14, 18, 22, 28).” See also, Starling, “The Yes to All God’s Promises,” 194-95, who takes “world” (Rom 4:13) to go beyond any single Abrahamic promise, but concludes that Paul rejected a nationalistic view of worldwide Jewish rule and any bounded territorial fulfillment. From a different dispensational perspective, Vanlaningham, “The Jewish People,” 119-21, recognizes that the land is universalized to the whole world in Rom 4:13, but this blessing is mediated through Israel to the nations. The privilege of the land remains for Israel as this “is Paul’s way of describing how Abraham’s physical offspring (the Jewish people) ‘will
global kingdom involving a consummated new creation (Rev 21:2-3; cf. Isa 4:5-6; Heb 12:22). The inheritance of land does not await national, ethnic Israel in the future millennium and beyond; rather, the inheritance is enjoyed by all those baptized into Christ, conjoined to him by faith (Gal 3:27-29; cf. 1 Cor 12:13) since all Christians are children of promise, being born through the work of the Holy Spirit (Gal 4:6-7, 28-31).

The third and final point to observe is that the Abrahamic promises, which are ultimately intended for Christ as the singular seed, includes the gift of the Holy Spirit. The promised Holy Spirit (Gal 3:14; cf. Gal 3:2, 5; 4:6) in the OT is inextricably linked to the new covenant and Israel’s restoration promises (e.g., Isa 32:15-18; 44:3-5; 59:21; Ezek 36:26-30; 37:1-14; Joel 2:28-3:3; Zech 12:10). Paul’s argument in Galatians 3:13-14 is that Christ removed the curse of the law so that Gentiles may receive the blessing of Abraham, a blessing equivalent to or that includes the promise of the Spirit.103 There is possess the gates of his enemies,’ [(Gen 22:17)] expand into the Gentile nations of the world, and be used by God to bless those nations” (121). In making this argument, Vanlaningham assumes that the new covenant is still to be instituted to Israel in the future which will bring about a spiritual restoration so that Israel will have a mediatorial role to the nations (120). Nevertheless, Vanlaningham’s approach is unconvincing. Nowhere in the context of Rom 4 is there a hint of Paul presupposing that Israel must be in the land or that Rom 4:13 describes the end of the process of Israel’s restoration. In the context of Rom 4, the offspring of Abraham includes Jews and Gentiles who are the heirs of the world; the promise is guaranteed to all his descendants (Rom 4:16). Moreover, every indication throughout Rom 1-8 (e.g., Rom 2:29) is that the promises of the new covenant have already been ushered in. Vanlaningham misses how the Abrahamic promises are fulfilled in Christ and how the blessings to the nations are already occurring through the work of Christ. The future day referred to in Isa 54:1-3 (see p. 119) whereby Israel possesses or inherits the nations is based off of the work of the suffering Servant given the thematic parallels (52:13-53:12). This has come to fruition in Christ as Abraham’s fatherhood of the nations is already occurring with the expansion of the church, and as also indicated by Paul’s citation of Isa 54:1 in Gal 4:27. See the discussion of the servanthood typology in the next section.

103For the blessing of Abraham being identical to or part of the promise of the Spirit, see Schreiner, Galatians, 218-19; Starling, “The Yes to All God’s Promises,” 189; Longenecker, Galatians, 123. Contra Moo, Galatians, 216; and Kwon, Eschatology, 108-11. Smith, “The Fifth Gospel,” 89, also observes the importance of Paul identifying the Spirit with the blessing of Abraham in regard to the promised land: “The full impact of this identification emerges when we read Jacob’s blessing of Isaac in Genesis 28:1-4: ‘May God Almighty . . . give you and your descendants the blessing of Abraham so that you may inherit the land.’ In other words, Paul, by echoing this patriarchal promise, sees the Holy Spirit as the ultimate referent of the land. Intriguingly, he goes on to speak of the ‘fruit of the Spirit’ (Gal. 5:22-23), since this abundant fruitfulness is a harvest of virtues akin to the abundant fertility of the land of promise” (emphasis original). The importance of the fruit of the Spirit (Gal 5:22) in regard to Israel’s restoration and the new creation prophecies of Isaiah is explored by Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 583-88, and by Rodrigo J. Morales, The Spirit and the Restoration of Israel: New Exodus and New Creation Motifs.
no reference to the promise of the Spirit in the Abrahamic narrative in Genesis, but some argue that the promises to Abraham are fulfilled in the one promise of the Spirit. While this latter point is true, Paul links the gift of the Spirit to the promise of Abraham from his reading of Isaiah 44:3-5, which stands in the background of Galatians 3:14. Isaiah 44:3-5 is similar to the other restoration and new covenant prophecies in terms of positing God’s future work involving the Spirit, but in this passage alone Yahweh promises to pour out his Spirit on the offspring of servant Israel/Jacob as well as blessings on the servant’s descendants (Isa 44:3). The themes of blessing, seed, and Spirit all correlate with the themes of Galatians 3. Further, Christ is presented by Paul as Servant Israel (see the discussion for this Israel-Christ typological relationship later in this chapter) whose death (Gal 3:13) brings about the Abrahamic blessing to the Gentiles, a blessing described as the promise of the Spirit. Harmon aptly summarizes,

Thus it would appear that Paul understood Isa 44:3-5 to be an expansion of the Abrahamic promise to include the gift of the Spirit, and this link provides him with the necessary premise to link the promise to Abraham, the incorporation of Gentiles,

---


---

104 Williams, “*Promise* in Galatians,” 712-20; William B. Barclay, “The Law and the Promise: God’s Covenant with Abraham in Pauline Perspective,” in *Perspectives on Our Father Abraham: Essays in Honor of Marvin R. Wilson*, ed. Steven A. Hunt (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2010), 145-46. Williams, “*Promise* in Galatians,” 719, concludes, “The promise of numerous descendants (alluded to at Gal 3:6) and the promise of the world (cf. 3:16) are both, as well, God’s promise of the Spirit.” Richard B. Hays, *Echoes of Scripture in the Letters of Paul* (New Haven, CT: Yale University, 1989), 110-11, argues that Paul utilizes an ecclesiocentric hermeneutic as the textually based promises to Abraham are supplanted by a new reading of the promise that has no warrant in the text. This line of reasoning is problematic, however, because the content of the Abrahamic promises are not “subsumed entirely into categories supplied by the church’s experience of the Spirit” as Hays contends (110). Throughout Gal 3-4, Paul shows a sensitivity to the redemptive historical nature of Scripture, including the chronological ordering of the Abrahamic and Mosaic covenants, and care with the text of Genesis itself.

and the gift of the Spirit, and do so in the person of Christ, who is the Servant and the promised seed.\textsuperscript{106}

Given the background of Isaiah 44:3-5 in Galatians 3:14, as well as the fact that the Abrahamic covenant promises come to fruition in Christ (Gal 3:15-18), the theological implications are significant. OT Israel has not been replaced by a different people, but Israel as a corporate, national entity is summed up in and through Christ. Christ is the antitypical Israel, the Isaianic Servant, the true seed of Abraham, who brings forth the restoration promises of Israel including the nations being blessed through Abraham, the outpouring of the Holy Spirit, and the inheritance of the promised land, which is expanded to include the entire world that awaits the new heavens and earth. Accordingly, the new covenant in its entirety has been ratified in Christ, and thus, the so-called spiritual and territorial dimensions of this covenant cannot be separated from each other in the new age of the Spirit.\textsuperscript{107} In addition, with the eschatological Spirit and the Abrahamic covenant having come to pass in Christ, although such promises were originally spoken

\textsuperscript{106}\textsuperscript{Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 148.}

\textsuperscript{107}\textsuperscript{Contra, Bruce A. Ware, “The New Covenant and the People(s) of God,” in Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church: The Search for Definition, ed. Craig A. Blaising and Darrell L. Bock (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1992), 68-97, who splits the spiritual aspects of the new covenant as being implemented “now” in the church from the physical/territorial aspects, which are “not yet” fulfilled to the nation of Israel. Besides a questionable use of inaugurated eschatology, Ware misses how Israel is typological of an eschatological, restored Israel through Christ, which does not entail “a strict identity of Israel and the church” (92). As briefly discussed, the prophets already depict Gentiles among a restored people of God (e.g., Jer 4:2; 12:14-17; 16:14-18), and the NT authors can naturally apply the new covenant promises to the church due to the work of Christ. See Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 484-516; Wellum, “Beyond Mere Ecclesiology,” 195-209; and note also David G. Peterson, Transformed by God: New Covenant Life and Ministry (Nottingham, UK: InterVarsity, 2012). O’Brien observes that the new covenant established by Christ relates to the “territorial” promise in his discussion of Heb 9:15: “The old covenant promised the land of Canaan as an inheritance for God’s people. The divine purpose in Jesus’ becoming the mediator of the new covenant is that ‘those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance’ (9:15). The new covenant oracle of Hebrews 8:8-12 made no mention of inheritance, although the listeners understood themselves to be heirs of the promises made to Abraham (2:16; 6:12-18; 11:8), who have a hope of inheriting salvation in the world to come (1:14). Now, however, in 9:15 the new covenant is connected with the motif of inheritance” (23, emphasis original). Therefore, Ware’s contention that the territorial/physical aspects of the new covenant await Israel in the future also misses the typological nature of the land promise that is now redirected to the church through the new covenant work of Christ.
to Israel and Israel’s offspring-descendants (e.g., Isa 44:1-3), the recipient of the restoration promises is the church. The restoration and new covenant promises (Abrahamic blessings, the Holy Spirit, inheritance) according to Galatians 3-4 are not just for Jewish believers, but include Gentile believers, for they are on equal footing as Abraham’s offspring. They now belong to the Lord (Isa 44:5) because they belong to Christ (Gal 3:29).108

Israel-Jesus typology through other Sonship links: Jacob and the Son of Man. Based on the seed theme, it should be recognized that Jacob is typological of Christ as well since he is in the line of Abraham and the Abrahamic promises come to him and are channeled through him. The previous survey of the Abrahamic covenant shows how Jacob fits into the storyline of Scripture. Jacob is important to the identity of Israel as the nation derives its name from him and the twelve tribes of Israel spring forth from him. But beside the larger seed motif of which Jacob is a part, Jacob is also associated with Jesus in a way that again sheds light on the larger Israel-Christ relationship.

Although Jacob is not prominent in the NT aside from his patriarchal role alongside Abraham and Isaac, a crucial link between Jesus and Jacob is manifested in the NT. John 1:47-51 alludes back to an important event in the life of Jacob.109 The first hint of this arises when Jesus says Nathaniel is “an Israelite in whom there is no deceit” (John 1:47), a characterization that hearkens back to Jacob as he is a deceitful character as is also indicated by his name (Gen 27:35-36). More significantly, in John 1:51 Jesus promises

108On this point regarding the link between Isa 44:5 and Gal 3:29, see Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 149.

his disciples that they “will see heaven opened, and the angels of God ascending and
descending on the Son of Man” (ESV). The allusion to Genesis 28:12 of Jacob’s vision
of a ladder with angels ascending and descending is clear. Jacob’s vision and the words
of the Lord (Gen 28:13-15) make Jacob realize that the Lord is present (Gen 28:16) so that
he gives the place the name “house of God” (Bethel) and “gate of heaven” (Gen 28:17).
The sanctuary of Bethel as the place where God revealed himself not just points to the
tabernacle and temple, but it was also the location where God meets Jacob to extend the
Abrahamic promises to him (Gen 35:10-12). Jesus is telling his disciples that just as
“angels ascended and descended on Jacob—a sign of God’s revelation and reaffirmation
of faithfulness to his promises made to Abraham . . . so the disciples are promised further
divine confirmation of Jesus’ messianic identity.” As the Son of Man, Jesus is none
other than the distinctly human and yet divine figure of Daniel 7:13, but also, this
new event, God speaking with the Son of Man, fulfills and replaces the old, God
speaking with Jacob at Bethel. The initial event, God speaking with Jacob/Israel at
Bethel . . . initiates and anticipates a pattern whereby God speaks to his people at the
house of God. The culmination of the pattern comes when the Father in heaven
speaks to the Son of Man on earth who is both the true Jacob/Israel and the true
house of God.  

110William Dumbrell, “Israel in John’s Gospel,” in In the Fullness of Time: Biblical Studies in
Honour of Archbishop Donald Robinson, ed. David Peterson and John Pryor (Homebush West, Australia:
Lancer, 1992), 82, notes that the “climatic title Son of Man in 1:51, after the previously confessed titles,
Lamb of God, Messiah (1:41), Son of God, King of Israel (1:49), has in mind the Daniel 7 position of the
vindication of Israel by humiliation and suffering.”

111 For an in depth study of the intertextuality of John 1:51 with Gen 28 along with other
interpretative issues, see David R. Kirk, “Heaven Opened: Intertextuality and Meaning in John 1:51,”

112 Andreas J. Köstenberger, John, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2004), 85; cf. Ridderbos,
The Gospel according to John, 93-94. See also Andreas J. Köstenberger, “John,” in Commentary on the

113 Paul M. Hoskins, Jesus as the Fulfillment of the Temple in the Gospel of John, Paternoster
Biblical Monographs (Eugene, OR: Wipf & Stock, 2006), 130-31. John 1:51 is one of many passages in
John’s Gospel (e.g., 1:14; 2:14-22; 4:19-24; 7:1-8:59; 10:22-39; 11:48-52) that present Jesus as the fulfillment
and replacement of the tabernacle and temple. For discussions, in addition to Hoskins, see Andreas J.
Köstenberger, A Theology of John’s Gospel and Letters, BTNT (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2009), 422-35;
Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission, 192-200; R. J. McKelvey, The New Temple: The Church in
the New Testament, Oxford Theological Monographs (Oxford: Oxford University, 1969), 75-84; Walker,
Similarly, Carson notes that in John 1:51, “Jesus is the new Israel. Even the old Bethel, the old ‘house of God,’ has been superseded. It is no longer there, at Bethel, that God reveals himself, but in Jesus.”¹¹⁴

John can associate the angels descending upon Jacob, or Israel, with the figure of the Son of Man, identified as Jesus, because both are corporate, representative figures¹¹⁵ or because Jacob’s heavenly vision can be associated with the apocalyptic imagery of one like the son of man coming out of heaven (Dan 7:13).¹¹⁶ Regardless, the implication is that Jacob was the ancestor, progenitor, and representative of the chosen nation, but now

---

¹¹⁴ D. A. Carson, The Gospel according to John, PNTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1991), 164, emphasis original. See also John H. C. Neeb, “Jacob/Jesus Typology in John 1,51,” Proceedings 12 (1992): 83-89. Dumbrell, “Israel in John’s Gospel,” 82, makes a key observation as the narrative of John 1 passes through the witness of John the Baptist to the goal of his witness when a true Israelite recognizes Jesus as Israel’s king: “Nathanael, prompted by Andrew’s recognition of Jesus as Messiah (v. 41), is the true Israelite and he and the community will see in Jesus the locus of the new revelation of God as Jacob did (Gen 28:10-12). Jesus is thus the consummation of all Israel’s eschatological hopes.”

¹¹⁵ Kirk, “Heaven Opened,” 252, finds that “the significance of Jesus’s self-identification with Jacob is that it portrays Jesus as the originator of a New Israel. In answer to [the question of the connection between the Jacob-Jesus nexus and the title Son of Man], the title Son of Man carries the New Israel motif to its telos—a New Humanity.” Likewise, C. H. Dodd, The Interpretation of the Fourth Gospel (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1953), 245-46, observes, “It seems clear that John knew and accepted the interpretation which understood Gen. xxviii. 12 to say that the angels of God ascended and descended upon Jacob, or Israel, and that for ‘Israel’ he substituted ‘Son of Man.’ As Burney well puts it, ‘Jacob, as the ancestor of the nation of Israel, summarizes in his person the ideal Israel in posse, just as our Lord, at the other end of the line, summarizes it in esse as the Son of Man’ (Aramaic Origin, p. 115). For John, of course, ‘Israel’ is not the Jewish nation, but the new humanity, reborn in Christ, the community of those who are ‘of the truth,’ and of whom Christ is king. In a deeper sense He is not only their king, He is their inclusive representative: they are in Him and He in them.” From a more broadened perspective than Dodd, Beale astutely links Jacob’s role back to Adam, for both are to be fruitful and multiply (Gen 35:10) and both have their temple-building commission (Gen 28:13-15). The Son of Man title also refers back to Adam, and thus with reference to John 1:51, Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission, 196, writes, “Christ is affirming that he is the true Adam (‘Son of Man [Adam]’) and true Israel (e.g., Jacob’s seed), and along with this, he may also be affirming that he has finally begun to fulfill successfully the commission of Genesis 1:26-28 and to complete Jacob’s earlier small-scale building activity by establishing the true temple and increasing its borders throughout the earth.”

¹¹⁶ Köstenberger, John, 85. Köstenberger also notes that Jesus states that no one has ever gone into heaven except the Son of Man who came from heaven (John 3:13; cf. 6:53-62).
a greater Jacob has arrived with Jesus (cf. John 4:5-6 with 4:11-14). Every Jew honored Jacob/Israel as the father of the twelve tribes, but now Jesus is God’s appointed Messiah, the locus of God’s revelation and communication.117 David Kirk aptly surmises in light of John 1:51, “Jesus, in portraying himself in Jacob’s place, does not merely have in view the patriarch as an individual. Just as Jacob represents his descendants before the LORD and gives his name Israel to them, Jesus portrays himself as the representative of a new Israel, a new people of God.”118 Kirk also observes that this episode in John’s Gospel resonates with the synoptic accounts of Jesus’ baptism and the Jacob-Israel servant theme found in Isaiah 42:1 and elsewhere (cf. Isa 41:8 and 44:1).119

The other important feature of John 1:51 is Jesus’ identity as the Son of Man. Throughout the Gospels, the Son of Man title is ubiquitously applied to Jesus (about eighty times). The Son of Man figure is more of a prophetic character given the vision of Daniel 7 than a typological pattern, though the title tabs into the typological persons and roles of Adam and David.120 Nevertheless, the Christological and eschatological aspects of this

117Carson, John, 164. It is important to highlight that these themes of Jesus as the new Israel and as the fulfillment of the temple in John’s Gospel are crucial for ecclesiology and eschatology. For in these capacities, Jesus is the one whose mission is of universal scope as he brings the nations into the people of God (e.g., John 10:16; 11:51-52) and ushers in the restoration promises involving the Holy Spirit with the temple in the midst of the nations. As Salier, “The Temple,” 132, observes, with Jesus’ statement in John 7:37-39, that he is the one from whom living waters will flow, the prophesied role of the temple with respect to the nations is fulfilled: “In both Zechariah 14 and Ezekiel 37 [sic; see Ezek 47] this image of water flowing from the Temple extends beyond the borders of Israel for the benefit of the nations. This picks up some of the thought of the Old Testament prophets who depicted the eschatological hope of the restored Temple as the centre of the nations (Isa. 2:2-4; Mic. 4:1-3; Jer. 3:17).” Cf. McKelvey, The New Temple, 188-92; Köstenberger, A Theology of John’s Gospel, 433-34.

118Kirk, “Heaven Opened,” 251. Dumbrell, “Israel in John’s Gospel,” 83, has a similar conclusion: “There is no mention of the linking ladder at 1:51, but the heavens are open and thus a new phase in salvation history with the choice of the new community which will embody restored Israel has now begun.” See also John W. Pryor, John: Evangelist of the Covenant People (Downer Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 1992), 124, who avers, “One of the least noticed motifs of John’s christology is the presentation of Jesus as the embodiment of Israel.”


120Some scholars do consider the Son of Man title in reference to Jesus as typological, so E. Earle Ellis, The Old Testament in Early Christianity: Canon and Interpretation in the Light of Modern Research, WUNT 54 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 1991), 107-8; and C. A. Evans and Lidiya Novakovic,
title and role have significance for ecclesiology in terms of corporate solidarity.121 The
background of this title is derived from Daniel 7:13-14, which presents the Son of Man as
both an individual and as a corporate representative of the covenant community.122
Dempster notes, “the son of man is a distinct individual, yet intimately associated with

Nicholas Perrin (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2013), 988.

121See n93. Other treatments of the topic of corporate solidarity include Ellis, The Old Testament
in Early Christianity, 110-12; Holwerda, Jesus and Israel, 33-34; Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology,
179, 192-93; 395; 652; David G. Horrell, “‘No Longer Jew or Greek’ Paul’s Corporate Christology and the
Essays in Honour of David R. Catchpole, ed. David G. Horrell and Christopher M. Tuckett, NovTSup 99
(Leiden: Brill, 2000), 321-44; Wright, Climax of the Covenant, 41-55; Klyne Snodgrass, “The Use of the
Old Testament in the New,” in The Right Doctrine from the Wrong Texts? ed. G. K. Beale (Grand Rapids: BAKER, 1994), 37; Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 39; LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy, 64-66; Goldsworthy, The Son of God, 100-102. See also the discussion of corporate solidarity in relation to
the title “Son of Man” in Dempster, Dominion and Dynasty, 216; Dumbrell, The Faith of Israel, 308; and
“the corporate solidarity concept, the ‘one’ represents the ‘many’—the one does not substitute the
many.” Similarly, Robert Saucy, “Is Christ the Fulfillment of National Israel’s Prophesies? Yes and No!”
(paper presented at the annual meeting of the National Evangelical Theological Society, Atlanta, November
18, 2010), 6-7, in lieu of the corporate figures of Adam, the seed of Abraham, Son of Man, and the Servant
of the Lord, concludes, “In each instance the reality that the One is in a sense the life and light of the many,
and thus may be said to fulfill their destiny, does not by this negate or replace the many either as
individuals or in the fulfillment of their calling. In all of these instances the one involves the inclusion of
the many, not their substitution.” Cf. Saucy, “Israel and the Church,” 242-43. This dispensational view of
corporate solidarity will not stand, for this truncated understanding of corporate solidarity fails to address
the nature and significance of what Christ accomplishes in being the recipient and fulfiller of Israel’s
promises. Moreover, Christ does not just represent Israel, but as the antitypical Israel and last Adam, Jesus
represents and is the corporate and covenant head of the one people of God in union with him—the church.
It is because Christ fulfills Israel’s role, promises, and destiny that the church is the recipient of Israel’s
promises. Only the new covenant people of God are in union with Christ and share in the work that he has
accomplished. National, ethnic Israel is no longer the focal point, only Jewish and Gentile believers in
Christ, the true Israel, are the beneficiaries of the prophecies made to Israel in the OT (2 Cor 1:20). Also,
corporate solidarity takes its shape from the typological pattern and is not to be pitted against the type-

122For discussion of the Son of Man in Dan 7, see James M. Hamilton, Jr., With the Clouds of
Heaven: The Book of Daniel in Biblical Theology, NSBT 32 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2014), 147-
and the Future of Israel,” TynBul 26 (1975): 67; Dempster, Dominion and Dynasty, 215-17; Schreiner, The
King in His Beauty, 437-39; Schreiner, New Testament Theology, 213-16; Wright, Knowing Jesus, 148-53.
For how Daniel’s portrait of the Son of Man’s kingdom fits within the five-fold schema of the kingdom
(Dan 2, 7, 9, 11-12), see Jason Thomas Parry, “Desolation of the Temple and Messianic Enthronement in
the saints of the Most High in the same way that the Israelite king is related to his people.”¹²³ The Son of Man in Daniel 7 parallels the Davidic rock of Daniel 2:31-45 (cf. Ps 80:15-19), and the royal status and dominion also recalls Genesis 1:26-28 (cf. Ps 8:4-8), indicating that the Son of Man is the last Adam (also suggested by the juxtaposition of the four savage beasts who represent four kingdoms in opposition to God). The Son of Man is given dominion and a kingdom that will not be destroyed, all of which the saints of the Most High will possess (see Dan 7:18, 22, and 27). John links both Jacob and the Son of Man figures in John 1:51, signaling that Jesus is the fulfiller and locus of God’s promises as he is the end goal of Jacob’s vision, but also the end-time king, the Son of Man, who inaugurates the kingdom of God, which is none other than the prophesied kingdom of Israel. As the NT makes clear, the end-time Adam and Israel has arrived in Jesus with the dawning of the eschatological kingdom—the dominion and the glory prophesied in Daniel 7:14 has been given to Christ on account of his suffering, death, and ascension (Matt 26:64; John 12:23; Acts 7:55-56; cf. Eph 1:20-23). However, the saints who possess the kingdom, originally Israel in the context of Daniel 7:18 (cf. v. 22, 27), are those who are disciples and followers of Christ. The corporate solidarity works in both directions: Christ sums up Israel in himself and receives and fulfills Israel’s promises, ushering in the kingdom, for he is the Son of Man who receives the kingdom (Dan 7:13), and the church is given and possesses the kingdom through Christ since he is

¹²³Dempster, Dominion and Dynasty, 216; see also Peter Gentry, “The Son of Man in Daniel 7: Individual or Corporate?” in Acorns to Oaks: The Primacy and Practice of Biblical Theology: A Festschrift for Dr. Geoff Adams, ed. Michael A. G. Haykin (Dundas, ON: Joshua, 2003), 59-75, esp. 71. Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 193, likewise states, “Such [corporate] representation means that what is true of the representative is true of the represented. In the case of Dan. 7, the interpretative section [(v. 15-28)] refers to the Son of Man as the faithful nation Israel, presumably because he as the individual king of Israel representatively sums up the people in himself.” Scobie, The Ways of Our God, 348, notes, “In terms of the biblical community/individual dialectic, an individual ‘Son of Man’ can represent God’s people Israel as God intended them to be. Jesus is in effect the faithful remnant of God’s people reduced to one person; he alone is truly faithful, and truly fulfills the role that God intended his chosen people to play.”
the corporate and covenant head of the body of all believers. Christ’s people are the restored Israel, the new humanity because their representative king is the last Adam.124

**Israel-Christ Typological Pattern Evidenced through Servanthood**

Clearly the most prominent Israel-Christ typological relationship is observed through the sonship and seed themes. Nevertheless, other titles and roles of Israel also reveal the typological relationship between Israel and Christ. The servant theme, discussed with respect to Jesus’ baptism in Matthew 3:16-17 and in consideration of the background of Isaiah in Galatians 3, having qualities of both prophetic figure and typological import, has its fulfillment in Jesus Christ. In the OT, the notion of servanthood is interwoven with the development of sonship and kingship along with the prophetic and priestly offices.125 The theme takes on added dimensions in the prophets with the anticipation of a Servant who brings about a new world order as his task has national implications for Israel (return from exile, restoration), but more significantly, his work has an international scope in establishing a new covenant and affecting justice and salvation for the nations. The Servant ultimately brings about true servants of the Lord via a new exodus, an event unlike Israel’s exodus and liberation from Egypt. Despite Israel’s miraculous redemption from Egypt, Israel failed to live up to the servanthood to which they were called (e.g., Exod 4:23;

---

124Dodd, *According to the Scriptures*, 118, concludes, “The New Testament use of the title ‘Son of Man’ for Christ results from the individuation of this corporate conception. ‘In Christ,’ mankind is delivered and exalted by the visitation of God, and becomes a people of the saints of the Most High.” Dodd is incorrect in viewing the Son of Man as purely a corporate figure, missing the uniqueness of this distinct, individual, human-divine figure, but his observation that the church’s union with the Son of Man means that she is the saints of the Most High (Dan 7:18, 22, 25, 27) is compelling.

125For a helpful biblical-theological treatment of servanthood, see Dempster, “The Servant of the Lord,” 128-78. Dempster links servanthood to Adam (Gen 2:5, 15) and traces the theme through Noah, Abraham (Gen 18:3; and note his obedience in Gen 22:16-18), Israel (Exod 7:16, 26; 8:16; 9:1, 13; etc.), Moses (Num 11-12; Deut 34:5), and particularly the supreme role of David as the servant of the Lord (2 Sam 3:18; 7:5, 8; 1 Kgs 11:13; Ps 18:1; 36:1; 89:3, 20; 1 Chr 17:4, 7), along with the future prophesied Davidic servant of the prophets before devoting the focus to Jesus and the NT. Dempster’s analysis also shows how the servant theme develops along the covenants culminating in the new covenant and the ideal, perfect servanthood of Jesus Christ. For Servant typology, see Evans and Novakovic, “Typology,” 988.
The goal of this survey is to explore the identity and task of the Servant as presented in the book of Isaiah and demonstrate how Jesus comprehensively fulfills the Isaianic Servant role, and show how the church is made up of true, faithful servants who carry on Servant Jesus’s mission. The servant theme appears in other prophetic texts regarding Israel’s restoration (e.g., Ezek 34:23; 37:25; cf. Jer 30:8-10; 33:21-26), but Isaiah’s portrayal is the most developed and important.

The identity and mission of the Isaianic Servant. At a most fundamental level, a servant is one who is committed and obedient to their master, and who acts on behalf and with the authority of their master. In the latter chapters of Isaiah (38-66), the servant(s) theme is of paramount importance as the eschatological hopes of Israel’s restoration—the comfort and consolation of Israel’s return from physical and spiritual exile—are bound up with and accomplished through the Servant of the Lord and the figure of one who may be called an “Anointed Conqueror” (Isa 59:20-21; 61:1-3).

126 Both Ezek 34:23-24 (cf. 34:11-16) and 37:21-28 predict a time when “David my servant” will shepherd and rule over God’s people Israel, a restoration granted “to my servant Jacob” (37:25). The appointment of David, the servant and shepherd king, coincides with the restoration of the nation of Israel which is marked by purity, forgiveness of sins, the pouring out of the Spirit, national unity, and the making of a new covenant (e.g., Ezek 37:26). For development of the messianic theme in these passages, see Daniel I. Block, “Bringing Back David: Ezekiel’s Messianic Hope,” in The Lord’s Anointed, 172-83. For discussion of how Jesus fulfills Ezekiel’s messianic promises (cf. Mic 2:12-13; Isa 40:10-11; 53:5-6) in John 10 with the flock now comprising the church as Jesus’ followers, see Köstenberger, A Theology of John’s Gospel, 500-502; Ridderbos, John, 359-64; Wood, “The Regathering,” 646-49.


The identity of the Servant in the four “Servant Songs” has been the subject of much debate and speculation that cannot be explored here.\(^{130}\) It is clear though, that alongside the servant named Jacob/Israel in Isaiah (41:8, 9; 42:19; 43:10; 44:1-2, 21, 26; 45:4; 48:20), there is another servant, a faithful servant identified as “Israel” (Isa 49:3), who is anointed by the Spirit to deliver Israel and to be a witness to the nations (Isa 42:1-9; 49:1-13; 50:4-11; 52:13-53:12).\(^{131}\) The Servant is the true Israel (Isa 49:3), for he is not characterized as blind and deaf (42:18-19; 43:8) or disobedient (42:23-24) as the nation, nor is he guilty like national Israel, but rather he is faithful and innocent (50:5-9; 53:9).\(^{132}\) with the king, although he does observe that Isa 61 continues the portrayal of the Servant. Others consider Isa 61:1-3 as a fifth servant song.


\(^{131}\)Dempster, “The Servant of the Lord,” 155. Scholars typically identify the first two servant songs as comprising of Isa 42:1-4 and 49:1-6, but see Williamson, *Sealed with an Oath*, 159n44, as both 42:5-9 and 49:7-13 unpack the Servant’s work and mission. R. Reed Lessing, “Isaiah’s Servants in Chapters 40-55: Clearing up the Confusion,” *CJ* 37 (2011): 131, argues that the servant of Isa 42:1-4 is the nation of Israel and that the NT use of this passage as applied to Jesus (Matt 12:18-21) is typological. However, such an interpretation fails, for the servant is too ideal a figure and is presented in sharp contrast to Israel, so Barry G. Webb, *The Message of Isaiah: On Eagle’s Wings*, The Bible Speaks Today (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 1996), 170. Webb suggests that if Israel is in this passage, it is in the bruised reed and smoldering wick of v. 3. While Lessing’s specific treatment of Isa 42 is questionable, there is a typological relationship present because both servants are called Israel and share other titles and functions.

\(^{132}\)Rikki E. Watts, “Consolation or Confrontation? Isaiah 40-55 and the Delay of the New Exodus,” *TynBul* 41 (1990): 51, 53; Peter J. Gentry, “The Atonement in Isaiah’s Fourth Servant Song (Isaiah 52:13-53:12),” *SBJT* 11 (2007): 23; Webb, *The Message of Isaiah*, 170. John Bright, *The Kingdom of God* (Nashville: Abingdon, 1953), 150, writes, “The figure of the Servant oscillates between the individual and the group. In many places throughout the book the Servant is merely Israel (e.g., 41:8; 43:10; 44:21; 45:4), so much so that the prophet can call the Servant blind and deaf (42:19)—because that is exactly what Israel has been. In other places, although the Servant is still identified with Israel (e.g., 49:3), it is clear that he is something other than the visible people, because his first duty (49:5) is to lead Israel itself back to its destiny under God. Here it is plain that the Servant is not Israel itself but the rightous ‘Remnant’ in Israel (e.g., 44:1; 51:1, 7), the true Israel which is obedient to God’s calling and is a witness to his power in the world (49:1-6, 8-13; 42:1-7). But at all times the Servant is described in individual terms. And it is clear that sometimes this figure overshoots all that Israel, all that the true Israel, all that any individual in Israel
Moreover, the Servant of the servant songs is described in individualistic terms (e.g., Isa 49:1-2) and he is to restore Israel and the nations (Isa 42:6-7; 49:5-6), ultimately bringing about true freedom from sin through atonement (53:4-6, 8, 10-12), a task Israel could never do for itself. This agent of redemption cannot be the Persian king Cyrus (Isa 41:2; 44:24 - 45:13) even though he is described as a messiah (45:1). Cyrus’s mission is limited to ending Israel’s physical exile by releasing them from Babylon (48:14).

Only one figure could be identified with and represent the nation and yet be distinct from Israel, the one who can carry out the Servant’s task including the sacrifice of his life on behalf of the nation, and that is the Davidic king. Numerous reasons have been offered to justify the Servant’s identity with a royal messiah: the frequency of the ever was, and becomes a description of an ideal figure. He is the coming Redeemer of the true Israel who in his suffering makes the fulfillment of Israel’s task possible; he is the central actor in the ‘new thing’ that is about to take place.” Mark Gignilliat, “A Servant Follower of the Servant: Paul’s Eschatological Reading of Isaiah 40-66 in 2 Corinthians 5:14-6:10,” HBT 26 (2004): 109, also finds, “An individual arises in the midst of the people and takes on the identity and vocation of Israel. The reading of Isa 49:3 would be as follows, ‘You are my servant, You are Israel.’ An individual emerges as one who embodies the vocation of Israel as restorer of Zion but also . . . the ‘bringer of salvation to the ends of the earth’ (Isa 49:6)” (emphasis original).

133Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 440; J. Alec Motyer, “‘Stricken for the Transgression of My People:’ The Atoning Work of Isaiah’s Suffering Servant,” in From Heaven He Came and Sought Her: Definite Atonement in Historical, Biblical, Theological, and Pastoral Perspective, ed. David Gibson and Jonathan Gibson (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2013), 249. Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 386, avers, “The Lord must acquiesce in the failure of his plans and promises or else he must find a true and worthy Israel. The Servant is this wondrous new beginning.” Routledge, Old Testament Theology, 292, observes that the “relationship between the Servant and the nation may be indicated by different uses of the term ‘Israel’ in Isaiah 49:1-6. In verse 3 the Servant is identified as Israel; however, in verses 5-6 the Servant also has a mission to Israel. This is best explained by taking verse 3 to indicate that the Servant is the embodiment of what Israel was intended to be. God called the nation to be his servant. . . . The nation as a whole failed; the people were called to be witnesses, but are deaf and blind to what God has done among them (Isa. 42:18-19; 43:8). Nevertheless God’s purposes are kept alive through another Servant, who is all that Israel should be, and through whom Israel will be restored” (emphasis original).

134Watts, “Consolation or Confrontation?,” 51-52, observes that servant terminology is not applied to Cyrus and the characteristics of the Servant seem inapplicable to a military and imperial ruler. See also Webb, The Message of Isaiah, 181-84; Bruce, This Is That, 85-86, 88; Henri Blocher, Songs of the Servant: Isaiah’s Good News (London: Inter-Varsity, 1975; repr., Vancouver: Regent College, 2005), 24-25, 28, 40; John N. Oswalt, The Book of Isaiah: Chapters 40-66, NICOT (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1998), 111. Though to be sure, there are a number of verbal affinities between Cyrus and the Servant, so Bo H. Lim, The ‘Way of the Lord’ in the Book of Isaiah, LHB/OTS 522 (New York: T & T Clark, 2010), 74-76, but Cyrus’s task is purely political while the Servant’s leadership is political and spiritual (82-83).
description of David as Yahweh’s servant (e.g., 2 Sam 7:5, 8, 26), the fact that the expression “my servant” is used of David in Isaiah 37:35, the resonances of Isaiah 42:1-6 with the messianic king of Isaiah 11:1-5 as both are endowed with the Spirit (Isa 11:2; 42:1; cf. 1 Sam 16:13) and have the task of establishing justice (Isa 11:3-4; 42:1, 4), and finally, many royal images emerge in the presentation of the Servant (e.g., Isa 49:7; 52:12-15; 53:9 and note 53:2 with 11:1).  

Not only is the Servant inextricably linked to the king in the early parts of Isaiah, but the portrait of a third figure (Isa 59:20-21; 61:1-6) is presented in a manner that recalls the Servant suggesting that they are the same person. There is pause, for

---


this figure is never called a “servant” and scholars have rightly noted that the Servant fades into the background in Isaiah 56-66 as the singular usage of the term never appears after Isaiah 53. The attention shifts to the “servants” (Isa 54:17; 56:6; 63:17; 65:8-9, 13; 66:14) who carry on the mission of the Servant since he has been vindicated—having successfully completed his work he now sees his offspring (53:10). Nevertheless, the verbal associations are compelling, especially in regard to the figure of Isaiah 61:1-3. The “Anointed Conqueror” and the Servant are both endowed with the Spirit (Isa 42:1; 59:21; 61:1; cf. 11:2), proclaim freedom for the captives (42:7; 61:1; cf. 49:9), announce the favor of the Lord (cf. 49:8; 61:2), are characterized by righteousness (53:11; 61:3,10; 63:1; cf. 9:7; 11:4), and both have a ministry that envelopes Israel and the nations (42:1-4; 49:1-6; 52:12-53:12; 59:20-21 with 60:1-22; cf. 62:11-12).

The mission and task of the Servant, as already indicated, needs further elucidation. Isaiah 40:1-11 sets the stage for the work of the Servant. The prospect of judgment and the Babylonian exile (Isa 39:5-7) will not be final as God promises comfort and consolation for his people (referred to synonymously as Jerusalem; Isa 40:2) as the punishment of her sin is pardoned and forgiven (Isa 40:1-2; cf. 49:13). Israel will be reconstituted as the return from exile is depicted as a new exodus (40:3-5). The call for

137W. A. M. Beuken, “The Main Theme of Trito-Isaiah: ‘The Servants of YHWH,’” JSOT 47 (1990): 67-87; cf. Dempster, “Servant of the Lord,” 159; Beers, The Followers of Jesus, 41-44; Christopher J. Fantuzzo, “True Israel’s ‘Mother and Brothers:’ Reflections on the Servants and Servanthood in Isaiah,” in Eyes to See, Ears to Hear, 106-24. The connection between the servants and offspring of the servant is clear, as Beers, The Followers of Jesus, 43, observes, “After 56:8 the term ‘servants’ does not appear until 63:17, but the servants are still a significant theme as is seen through the use of the concept זרע (‘seed,’ 57.3-4; 59.21; 61.9) and צדקה (‘righteous[ness]’) along with some related forms in 56.1; 57.1, 12; 58.2, 8; 59.4, 9, 14, 16-17; 60.17, 21; 61.3, 10-11; 62.1-2; 63.1, which are closely connected to the servant figure in chs. 40-53. In 56.9-63.16 the righteous (servants) are a focus, for they withstand oppression as the servant’s offspring.”


comfort in verse 1 begins with the preparation of “the way” in the wilderness (40:3-4; cf. Exod 13:21-22; 23:20) and Yahweh’s coming is accompanied by the universal revelation and manifestation of his glory to all mankind (Isa 40:5; cf. 42:4, 23; 49:6; 51:4-6; 52:10). This new exodus not only parallels the exodus from Egypt, but eschatological intensification and expectation is illustrated through the language of geographic transformation and the idea that this surpassing redemption involves Israel and the Gentiles.140 Though the people are frail, the new beginning is secured by God’s Word (Isa 40:6-8) for God will come in power and with the tenderness of a shepherd as this good news of restoration goes forth from Jerusalem-Zion (40:9-11; cf. 2:3).

The goals of Isaiah 40:1-11 for the exiles ultimately come to fruition through the Servant. Although Cyrus is responsible for the physical restoration (Isa 41:2; 42:18-43:21; 44:24-48:22) as the people return to the promised land so that Jerusalem and the temple can be rebuilt (44:26-28), the second, more vital stage of spiritual restoration is secured through the Servant (Is 49:1-53:12).141 His multi-faceted accomplishments

140 Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 300, commenting on Isa 40:5, concludes, “Meditation on the exodus developed the thought that it took place not only before the watching world (all mankind/all flesh”) but also for the world (Pss 47; 95-100). This suggests taking see in the double sense of observing and experiencing” (emphasis original). See also Friedbert Ninow, Indicators of Typology within the Old Testament: The Exodus Motif, Friedensauer Schriftenreihe: Reihe I, Theologie, Band 4 (Berlin: Peter Lang, 2001), 171-72.

141 For this breakdown of Israel’s restoration in two stages comprising first of a physical return from Babylon to the land accomplished by Cyrus and then a second stage involving spiritual reconciliation, see Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 437-39; Gentry, “The Atonement,” 21-24; and DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 465. Richard L. Schultz, “Isaiah, Book of,” in Dictionary for Theological Interpretation of the Bible, ed. Kevin J. Vanhoozer (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2005), 336-44, describes Zion’s future restoration in three movements: (1) Israel’s return to the land through the political deliverer, Cyrus (Isa 40-48); (2) Israel’s spiritual restoration through the suffering Servant (Isa 49-57); and (3) Zion’s glorification by Yahweh and the nations (Isa 58-66) (340).
resound throughout the rest of the book. The Servant of the Lord ushers in the rule of
God as the presence of the kingdom emerges through his twofold task to Israel and the
world. The restoration and redemption of Israel and the nations concentrates in the
Servant’s mission of proclaiming and establishing justice, but specifically in his suffering
and death, which achieves a new covenant and implements the new exodus in bringing
about a new Zion comprised of loyal servants from all nations.

First, the task of the Servant is characterized by the bringing forth of justice
and the proclamation of freedom of sin. The message of hope and grace is extended to
Israel and the nations, for the Servant not only restores Israel in ending her spiritual
estrangement from Yahweh, but he is a “light for the nations” (Isa 42:6; 49:6) such that
God’s salvation reaches the ends of the earth (Isa 49:6; cf. 51:5; 60:9).142 The Servant is
marked by justice and righteousness like the original David (2 Sam 8:15; 1 Chr 18:14),
but in a far greater way he will certainly establish judicial order—a broad concept
involving the deliverance of Israel, the revelation of God’s truth and salvation, and the
state of societal wholeness—in the entire world (Isa 42:1-4; 49:4; cf. 9:7; 11:1-5; Jer
23:5; Ps 72:2).143 Further, the coastal peoples—the remotest parts of the earth—eagerly
wait in hope for the Servant’s instruction or torah (Isa 42:4; cf. 42:10-12; 51:5). Such
ideas resonate with Isaiah 2:2-4 where Yahweh teaches the Gentile pilgrims “his ways”
from Zion, thus indicating that the Servant’s ministry accomplishes the rule and reign of

142Dempster, Dominion and Dynasty, 177, observes that Balaam’s rising star (Num 24:17) and
Abraham’s universal blessing (Gen 12:3) have merged and are echoed in Isa 42:6-7 and 49:5-6. See
Michael F. Bird, “‘A Light to the Nations’ (Isaiah 42:6 and 49:6): Inter-Textuality and Mission Theology in
the Early Church,” RTR 65 (2006): 122-31. Commenting on Isa 42, Bird notes also the link to Gen 12:3 as
it is written “to demonstrate that although Yahweh’s salvific purposes are cocooned around Israel, and
Israel languishes in deplorable exile, the divine action in salvation will extend well beyond any particular
ethnic horizon” (124).

143For discussion of “justice” (מִשְׁפָּט) in Isa 42:1, 3, 4 see Oswalt, Isaiah 40-66, 110-11;
Dumbrell, The Search for Order, 115; Dumbrell, “The Role of the Servant,” 108-9; Webb, The Message of
Isaiah, 171; Andreas J. Köstenberger and Peter T. O’Brien, Salvation to the Ends of the Earth: A Biblical
Theology of Mission, NSBT 11 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2001), 46.
God in the renewed mount Zion.\textsuperscript{144} The Servant’s establishment of justice coincides with his work of opening blind eyes, freeing prison captives, and releasing those who sit in darkness (42:7; 49:9-10; 61:1). Along the same lines, Isaiah 61:1-3 interweaves the task of justice with the message of hope in describing the agent of God’s eschatological restoration of Israel, revealing that the Servant-Messiah is anointed with the Spirit to bring good news to the poor (cf. 40:9; 52:7-12), bind the brokenhearted, proclaim liberty to the captives (cf. Lev 25:9-13), announce the year of the Lord’s favor and the day of his vengeance, and comfort those who mourn (cf. Isa 40:1-2; 42:3; 49:13). The clear allusion to the year of Jubilee in the prophet’s vision (Isa 61:1-2; see Lev 25:8-55; cf. Isa 49:8-9), which originally was about the release of slaves, debt, and land tenure in the Mosaic Law, typologically points to a greater Jubilee that the Lord’s anointed ushers in.\textsuperscript{145} The Lord’s favor goes beyond the grieving Jews in Zion to all of God’s people everywhere (Isa 61:2-3).\textsuperscript{146} Webb writes, “Through God’s grace they become mighty oaks displaying the

\textsuperscript{144}Köstenberger and O’Brien, \textit{Salvation to the Ends of the Earth}, 47; Dumbrell, “The Role of the Servant,” 109-10. The theme of \textit{torah} being dispensed from a renewed Zion with justice as a light to the peoples occurs also in Isa 51:3-5, 7.

\textsuperscript{145}For discussion of the allusion to the year of Jubilee (Lev 25) in Isa 61:1-2, see Christopher R. Bruno, “Jesus Is Our Jubilee . . . But How? The OT Background and Lukan Fulfillment of the Ethics of Jubilee,” \textit{JETS} 53 (2010): 92-94; Childs, \textit{Isaiah}, 505; Motyer, \textit{The Prophecy of Isaiah}, 500. Bruno, “Jesus Is Our Jubilee,” 94, rightly notes, “In Isaiah 61, the Jubilee is seen as a pointer to the eschatological restoration of Israel, when all of God’s people will be permanently free from their captivity.” The typological and eschatological aspects are also discussed by Wright, \textit{Old Testament Ethics}, 205-6, 209-10, although he stresses more the social and economic angles of the Jubilee. Given the new exodus themes in the near context, the liberty from captivity should be understood primarily metaphorically: the Lord’s favor foreshadowed in the Jubilee year points to the new age of salvation wrought by the atoning work of the suffering Servant. The Sabbath and Jubilee laws are linked and have an eschatological thrust in the progress of revelation, see Andrew G. Shead, “An Old Testament Theology of the Sabbath Year and Jubilee,” \textit{RTR} 61 (2002): 19-33.

\textsuperscript{146}Williamson, \textit{Sealed with an Oath}, 162, notes, “The ‘double portion’ of blessing (Isa. 61:7) answers to the ‘double for all her sins’ (Isa. 40:2), the restoration in view here clearly transcends national hopes, incorporating ‘all who mourn’ and not simply ‘those who mourn in Zion’ (Isa. 61:2-3).” Further, while the accent is on the nation of Israel as the priests and ministers of the Lord who also enjoy the wealth of the nations (Isa 61:6), the presence of foreigners (Isa 61:5) recalls Isa 56:3 where they too participate in the covenant. The priestly role also extends to foreigners in Isa 56:6-7; 66:21. Lastly, the proclamation of hope and liberty to the captives matches the Servant’s task to the nations (Isa 42:6-7).
LORD’s splendour ([Isa 61:3]), priests of the Lord engaged in his service (6a), and eventual inheritors of all things (6b).”

Second, the Servant’s task involves being “a covenant for the people” (Isa 42:6; cf. 49:8). God’s new covenant work is embodied by the Servant who is “the agent and guarantor of God’s covenant” to all people, not just Israel. Particularly, the covenant is established by the Servant’s atoning death which brings forgiveness (Isa 53), a connection that is not explicit in Isaiah, but the intersection of the new covenant and the forgiveness of sins is clear elsewhere (Jer 31:34; cf. Zech 9:11). The “covenant of peace” (Isa 54:10) and the “everlasting covenant” (Isa 55:3; cf. 61:8) are also associated with his successful mission, for Isaiah 54-55 contains the response to, consequences of, and reality of the Servant’s restoration of Israel delineated in the fourth servant song. Furthermore, all of God’s promises, including the previous covenants, culminate and have their

147Webb, The Message of Isaiah, 235, emphasis original. Elsewhere, Webb astutely observes that the phrase “oaks of righteousness, the planting of the LORD” alludes back to Isa 6:13. The faithful remnant, the eschatological inhabitants of the new Zion, are the final outgrowth, the holy seed, of the stump. Webb, “Zion in Transformation,” 83. Beuken, “The Main Theme,” 71-72, links the phrase back to Isa 60:21. The servants resemble the Servant, the promise of a people wholly righteous is fulfilled.

148There is little significance in identifying the “people” with the nation Israel as suggested by the immediate context of Isa 49:8 because the “people” in Isa 42:6 is Israel and the nations. The phrase “covenant of the people” in Isa 42:6 is in parallelism with the nations/Gentiles (“light for the nations”) and these are the exact same world-wide people of v. 5. See Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 160n49; Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 322; Walter C. Kaiser, Jr., Mission in the Old Testament: Israel as a Light to the Nations, 2nd ed. (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2012), 60; contra Oswalt, Isaiah 40-66, 118.

149Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 160. See also Childs, Isaiah, 326; Webb, The Message of Isaiah, 172; Peterson, Transformed by God, 40; cf. Köstenberger and O’Brien, Salvation to the Ends of the Earth, 47-48. That it is the new covenant in view is established by the fact that this covenant is a future work of the messianic Servant. Also, the other references to covenant in Isaiah resonate with the new covenant themes of Jeremiah and Ezekiel. See Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 434; Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 158; cf. Oswalt, Isaiah 40-66, 438.

150Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 160-62; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 440-49. On the relationship of Isa 54-55 with the preceding servant song, see Oswald, Isaiah 40-66, 114-14; Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 443-44. Webb, The Message of Isaiah, 214, asserts that peace is the key that links Isa 54-55 together and with Isa 53: Peace is the “sum total of covenental blessing, the full enjoyment of all that God has promised.” The new age of peace has dawned by the sin bearing atonement of the Servant-messiah (Isa 53:5) as the realization of this peace is the reason for the joyful celebration (54:1; 55:12-13).
fulfillment in the new covenant of the Servant—the climatic covenant of peace (Isa 54:10)—as suggested by the text as verses 1-3 of Isaiah 54 recalls the Abrahamic covenant, verses 4-8 echo the Mosaic covenant, verses 9-10 bring the Noahic covenant to the fore, and the Davidic covenant is explicitly referenced in Isaiah 55:3-4. Clearly the Servant’s new covenant work extends beyond Israel (cf. Jer 33:9; Ezek 36:36; 37:28), for the Abrahamic family tent is expanded (Isa 54:1-3) and the mercies of this future appointed Davidic ruler, brought about by his righteous and obedient acts, means that the new covenant is extended to all as nations come running to him (55:3-5; cf. 11:10-12; 2 Sam 22:44), thus recalling the Servant’s role to bring light to the nations (cf. Isa 55:1-2).

Furthermore, not only is the scope of the new covenant significant in ranging beyond the nation Israel, but so also is the nature of the community who benefit and are transformed by it. First, with the background of the covenant of peace, Isaiah 54:13 states that all the children of the rebuilt Zion (Isa 54:11-12) will be taught by the Lord. The children are the Servant’s offspring (Isa 53:10), those counted righteous, and these

\[\text{151}\] For this observation and conclusion, see Williamson, *Sealed with an Oath*, 161; see also Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 441-45. Isaiah 51 also projects the future salvation as fulfilling the Abrahamic (51:2-3) and Mosaic covenants (51:4-7), and indirectly the Davidic covenant as well given the thematic links of “justice” and “Zion” to a Davidic king. See Paul R. House, *Old Testament Theology* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 1998), 289-90.

\[\text{152}\] Dempster, “Servant of the Lord,” 160, writes, “By [the perfect Davidic servant-king’s] righteous deeds, his mercies, a covenant can be made with everyone, thereby allowing them to experience the benefits of the covenant. This fact fulfills the Davidic hope and, as the text says, this new David continues in the train of David: he is appointed a witness to the peoples to bring light to the nations (55:4-5).” For understanding the “sure mercies of David” as a subjective genitive, see Dempster, *Dominion and Dynasty*, 180; Dempster, “Servant of the Lord,” 159-60; Gentry and Wellum, *Kingdom through Covenant*, 406-17; Peter J. Gentry, “Rethinking the ‘Sure Mercies of David’ in Isaiah 55:3,” *WTJ* 69 (2007): 279-304. Williamson, *Sealed with an Oath*, 179, notes, “The scope of this new covenant clearly transcends national and territorial borders.”

\[\text{153}\] Jesus teaches that all who come to him are drawn to him by the Father (John 6:37-45). Jesus paraphrases Isa 54:13 in John 6:45 in support of his claim that those who learn and are taught by the Father come to him. According to Carson, *John*, 293, the “passage [of Isa 54:13] is here applied typologically: in the New Testament the messianic community and the dawning of the saving reign of God are the typological fulfillments of the restoration of Jerusalem after the Babylonian exile.” Cf. Peterson, *Transformed by God*, 179-80.
children are related to the Servant as they are described as “servants” (54:17) since they follow in his footsteps in enduring affliction as he did (54:11 with 53:4), but they also enjoy the same vindication that he received (54:17 with 50:8). Everyone in this renewed city of Zion know the Lord and this matches the new covenant prophecy of Jeremiah 31:33-34 where God writes the law on the hearts of his people as all in this covenant community know him and experience the forgiveness of sin. Moreover, this future covenant community is now marked by covenant faithfulness as Williamson has pointed out from Isaiah 56:1-8, a passage that explicitly refers to the foreigners as the Lord’s “servants” (Isa 56:6):

This opening pericope (Isa. 56:1-8) addresses the scope of this new covenant community. Clearly it is both inclusive and exclusive; inclusive in that it incorporates foreigners and eunuchs (Isa. 56:3), but exclusive in that the covenant community only includes those who “hold fast to the covenant” (Isa. 56:5-6), which seems to mean maintaining covenant obligations (Isa. 56:1-2). The singling out of sabbath-
keeping for particular emphasis (cf. Isa. 56:2-3, 6) probably reflects that the root of the matter is a life made up of worship in every part; keeping sabbath is the positive counterpart to avoiding evil, and both are an expression of worship. Thus in answer to the implied question “Who is included in the new covenant community?,” this passage answers, “Everyone who gives expression to a genuine relationship with God.”

The inclusion of the nations in the covenant community in Isaiah 56 recalls other OT passages (Isa 19:24-25; 66:19-21; cf. Ps 87; Zech 2:10-12) where the future reconstituted new Israel consists of a remnant “made up of the faithful of Israel . . . as well as those from other nations who have, similarly, put their trust in Israel’s God.” Lastly, Isaiah communicates that the future coming redeemer, identified as the Servant, is the means by which the divine Spirit and word are shared with the repentant in Zion (Isa 59:20-21) and implicitly the worldwide community (Isa 59:19). Motyer explains, “Like the Servant

156Williamson, Sealed with an Oath, 163; cf. Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 445-49; Webb, “Zion in Transformation,” 79; Robin Routledge, “Replacement or Fulfillment? Re-Applying Old Testament Designations of Israel to the Church,” STR 4 (2013): 149; Schnabel, “Israel, the People of God,” 41. On Isa 56, Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 659-60, rightly highlights how Gentiles and Israelite eunuchs are identified with Israel, participate in temple worship which was not possible under the Mosaic covenant, and how the Gentile proselytes become ministering priests, a role originally preserved for the tribe of Levi. However, Beale does not address how this universal people who arise out of the eschatological work of the Servant are marked by obedience and are clearly faithful covenant keepers (56:4, 6). On the other side, Robert L. Thomas, “The Mission of Israel and of the Messiah in the Plan of God,” in Israel, the Land and the People: An Evangelical Affirmation of God’s Promises, ed. H. Wayne House (Grand Rapids: Kregel, 1998), 266, wrongly limits the plural “servants” to references of Israel (Isa 54:17; 56:6; 63:17; 65:8-9, 13-15; 66:14). Not only does this not fit the context of Isa 56:6, but the servants and offspring of the Servant expand to include all those who belong to him. See Beuken, “The Main Theme,” and DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 465-69.

157Routledge, “Replacement or Fulfillment?,” 150, cf. 144-49. For discussion of Isa 19:24-25; 66:19-21; Ps 87; and Zech 2:10-12; see Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 657-63; Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 449-61; cf. Yohanna Katanacho, “Jerusalem Is the City of God: A Palestinian Reading of Psalm 87,” in The Land Cries Out: Theology of the Land in the Israeli-Palestinian Context, ed. Salim J. Munayer and Lisa Loden (Eugene, OR: Cascade, 2012), 181-99, and Schnabel, “Israel, the People of God,” 39-42. In these texts, Gentiles are considered true eschatological Israelites. See also the study of Aaron Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity in Light of Ancient Jewish Traditions, Ancient Judaism and Early Christianity 82 (Leiden: Brill, 2013), that examines several texts (e.g., 1 Kgs 8:41-43; Isa 2:2-4; Isa 56-66; Ps 46-48; Zech 8:18-23; Mal 4:1-4; along with Second Temple and Pauline traditions) that reference the Israel-nations unification whereby Israel and the nations participate jointly in Israel’s blessings and how they look forward to the new creation and the restoration of humanity as the division between Israel and non-Israelites is overcome.

158Isa 59:20-21 concludes the chapter that is specifically focused on Israel’s sin (59:1-8), their confession and repentance (59:9-15a), and their redemption and vindication through God’s justice and righteousness (59:15b-20). Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 492-93, links the covenant of Isa 59:21 back to the covenants of Isa 42:6; 49:8; 54:10; 55:3. He finds that the recipients of the covenant through the Servant
(53:10), those to whom he secures these covenantal blessings are his ‘seed.’”159 The promise of the Holy Spirit with the Servant’s new covenant work coordinates with other OT texts where the restoration prophecies to Israel underscore the coming of the Spirit (Ezek 36:27; 37:14; 39:29; Zech 4:6; 12:10; Joel 2:28-32; cf. Isa 32:15; 44:3-4).160 The portrait Isaiah paints is the Messiah reigning over a restored and redeemed Zion community in the new covenant era.

A third and final task associated with the Servant, one that is interwoven with the other tasks, is the new exodus deliverance he brings about. Aside from the Servant, the central and controlling theme of Isaiah 40-55 is the new exodus.161 This second exodus is the eschatological paradigm of redemption (Isa 40:10; 43:1-3; 49:8-12; 51:9-11; 52:10-12), re-creation (Isa 41:17-20; 51:3; 55:12-13), and it is bound up with the pilgrimage theme as the redeemed are gathered to God’s holy mountain in Zion (51:11; 52:7-12; 56:6-8; 57:14; 60:4-7; 62:10; 66:20-23; cf. Exod 3:12; 15:17).162 As Hugenberger are the penitent of Zion, but implicitly the Gentiles as well based on Isa 59:19 and given the focus on the nations streaming to Zion in Isa 60. Childs, Isaiah, 490, also concludes regarding Isa 59:21: “The term covenant occurs infrequently in Third Isaiah, but in v. 21 seems obviously linked to its programmatic occurrence in 56:5–6, addressed to God’s servants who join themselves to him. The effect is to summarize and to interpret the whole section comprising chapters 56-59” (emphasis original).

159Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 493. Likewise, Beuken, “The Main Theme,” 70, on Isa 59, comments that in “a confession they speak repentantly (from v. 9 on), acknowledge their lack of ‘righteousness’ (vv. 4, 9, 14) and then, when God’s ‘righteousness’ comes to help (vv. 16f.), they are converted (v. 21). All this happens in terms referring to the Servant (cf. v. 9 with 50.10 and v. 21 with 42.1; 51.16).” Also, the reference to “offspring” that goes until the third generation (Isa 59:21) is framed in terms of faithfulness, for these offspring testify to the covenant and share in the Spirit of the Lord.


161Watts, “Exodus,” 483; Rikk E. Watts, Isaiah’s New Exodus in Mark, Biblical Studies Library (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2000), 79-80; and see the sources listed in n139 above.

162E. John Hamlin, “Deutero-Isaiah’s Reinterpretation of the Exodus in the Babylonian Twilight,” Proceedings 11 (1991): 75-80, observes that in the Exodus accounts the Hebrew word תָּהַּ (“earth”) prominently refers to the promised land, but in Isa 40-55 the term, appearing no less than 40 times, nearly always has a universal sense of the whole created earth (76) which leads to the conclusion that
has observed, new exodus imagery is found in the immediate contexts of the servant songs (Isa 41:17-20; 42:13-16; 48:20-22; 49:8-12; 50:2-3; 52:10-12), which suggests that the presence and task of the future Davidic Servant is closely associated with this greater exodus and the goal of God’s kingdom reign. But that the suffering Servant is the agent of the new exodus is abundantly clear from Isaiah 52:13-53:12. Like the original exodus, the arm of the Lord (Isa 53:1; 52:10; cf. 40:10-11; 51:9-11; Exod 6:6; 15:6) is the delivering instrument of the people and this is accomplished by no other than the Servant. Moreover, the atoning and sacrificial work of the Servant (Isa 53:4-12), which he endures as a silent lamb (53:7), evokes the Passover (Exod 12:3-14), Moses’ intercession for Israel’s sin (Exod 32:30-34), the Levitical sacrificial system (Lev 5-7), and the annual day of atonement (Lev 16:1-25). The greater exodus accomplished by the

Isaiah “is particularly interested in the restoration of the earth as the living space and place for all nations” (77). Such analysis challenges yet again the dispensational tenet that Israel’s restoration as a future event requires the return to the promised land. For example, “Vlach, “What Does Christ as ‘True Israel’ Mean?,” 50, argues that the Servant, Jesus, “will also restore Israel to her land (Isa 49:8)” (cf. Thomas, “The Mission of Israel,” 267). However, Isa 49:8 is connected to a greater Jubilee in the future (“time of favor”; cf. Isa 61:2-3), but furthermore, the establishment of the land within the immediate context (Isa 49:8-13) hints of something more (vv. 12-13). This text points to a new Joshua who brings about a greater exodus (see Gentry, “The Atonement,” 38). With this new exodus there is a restructuring of the people of God. As Webb, The Message of Isaiah, 195, observes, there is a “metamorphosis” of the people of God in Isa 49:7-13: “The accent does not fall on the return of the physical remnant from Babylon, or even on their spiritual restoration to the LORD, but on the mission to the Gentiles that will flow from it. The shout of praise, then, in verse 13, is the ‘Hurrah!’ of mission accomplished—a cause of rejoicing to the whole earth. But by the time we reach that point the theme of ‘comfort for the people of God’ is no longer narrowly on the captives in Babylon. They may be its most immediate point of reference, but it reaches beyond them to embrace all people. And the key to all this is the Servant of the LORD. Israel is to understand that its entire future in God’s purposes is intimately bound up with him” (emphasis original).


suffering Servant is not just for the remnant of Israel though. The Servant’s priestly and substitutionary atoning work encompasses the nations as he sprinkles the nations (Isa 52:15; cf. Exod 29:4; Lev 4:6; 14:7) who are certainly among the “many” (Isa 53:11-12) counted righteous and included in his offspring (53:10).

Although the relationship between the Israel and the nations in Isaiah 40-55 is complex, Israel’s eschatological restoration reveals that “God will grant foreign nations the status of a ‘people of God’ when the Servant of the Lord accomplishes his will; God will grant everyone who worships him in the last days the full privileges of his people.”

166 For further elucidation and rationale as to why the first common plural pronouns in Isa 53 includes an adopted remnant from the nations, see DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 468-69; cf. Motyer, “Stricken for the Transgression,” 252, 264-66; Gentry, “The Atonement,” 43. House, Old Testament Theology, 290, writes that both nations and Israelites “must be included [in the fourth servant song] because both have been promised ‘light’ (cf. [Isa] 9:2-7; 49:6; 50:10-11).”

167 Schnabel, “Israel, the People of God,” 42. There is significant debate regarding the nations in Isa 40-55, for on the one hand there is a universalistic concern for the nations as they enjoy salvation and entry into Zion (Isa 42:10-12; 45:14, 22; 49:6; 51:4-5; 55:5; cf. 56:6-7; 60:3, 6-9; 66:18-19), but on the other hand there is a particularistic outlook for Israel as the nations are judged or subjugated under Israel (Isa 40:15-17; 41:11-12; 43:3-4; 44:9-20; 45:14; 49:22-26; 51:22-23; cf. 59:18; 60:10-14; 63:3; 66:16). For an overview of the relationship of Israel to the nations in the book of Isaiah, see John N. Oswalt, “The Nations in Isaiah: Friend or Foe; Servant or Partner,” BBR 16 (2006): 41-51; Richard L. Schultz, “Nationalism and Universalism in Isaiah,” in Interpreting Isaiah: Issues and Approaches, ed. David G. Firth and H. G. M. Williamson (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2009), 122-44; and Watts, Isaiah’s New Exodus in Mark, 319-22. For specific discussions and proposals for the relationship between Israel and the nations in Isa 40-55, see D. W. Van Winkle, “The Relationship of the Nations to Yahweh and to Israel in Isaiah XL-LV,” VT 35 (1985): 446-58; D. W. Van Winkle, “Proselytes in Isaiah XL-LV? A Study of Isaiah XLIV 1-5,” VT 47 (1997): 341-59; Michael A. Grisanti, “Israel’s Mission to the Nations in Isaiah 40-55: An Update,” MSJ 9 (1998): 39-61; Pao, Acts and the Isaianic New Exodus, 218-27; James Chukwuma Okoye, Israel and the Nations: A Mission Theology of the Old Testament (Maryknoll, NY: Orbis, 2006), 129-43; Roy F. Melugin, “Israel and the Nations in Isaiah 40-55,” in Problems in Biblical Theology: Essays in Honor of Rolf Knierim, ed. Henry T. C. Sun and Keith L. Eades (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1997), 249-64; Robert Davidson, “Universalism in Second Isaiah,” SOTJ 16 (1963): 166-85; Watts, “Echoes from the Past,” 505-8. Routledge, Old Testament Theology, 330-31, finds that any synthesis of these aspects in Isa 40-55 does not do full justice to the text; nevertheless, he concludes that the nations’ “acknowledging Yahweh’s people and what he is doing among them must be part of acknowledging Yahweh.” Again, though, the emphasis is on the nations’ approach to God rather than their subordination to Israel” (331). Moreover, with the Servant’s task encompassing both Israel and the nations, the inclusion of the nations in God’s people is presented without the nations being subjected to Israel. Isaiah depicts a new Israel in the future age through the multifaceted work of the Servant. Lastly, as Gignilliat, “A Servant Follower,” 107-8, observes, “A web of complexities arises as we deal with nationalism vs. universalism (or universalism vs. particularism) in Isaiah; although, the inherently universalistic outlook of Isaiah 40-66, especially as one enters into the vision of the new heavens and the new earth in Isaiah 65, becomes more persuasive in light of the overall movement of the book.”
The Isaianic Servant and mission: Fulfilled in the NT. As the NT makes abundantly clear, Jesus Christ is the prophesied new David and the eschatological Servant envisioned in the book of the Isaiah.\(^{168}\) The portrayal of Jesus as the Isaianic Servant permeates throughout the Gospels and the epistles (e.g., Matt 12:18-21; Luke 22:37; Acts 3:13, 26; 8:28-37; 2 Cor 5:14-21; Phil 2:7; 1 Pet 2:21-25; Heb 9:28; Rev 5:6).\(^{169}\) Yet, Isaiah had presented Israel as God’s servant, but the eschatological, messianic Servant was also called “Israel” (Isa 49:3), even possessing identical titles and ascriptions of servant Israel.\(^{170}\) The Servant is the embodiment of what Israel was meant to be. The only plausible way to make sense of this is through the principle of corporate solidarity.


\(^{170}\) Kaiser, *Mission in the Old Testament*, 57, lists the individual Servant and servant Israel sharing the title of “my chosen” (Isa 42:1 and 41:8-9) and both are called from the womb (49:1 and 44:2, 24; 43:1). His assertion that individual Servant and servant Israel are both “a light to the nations” (49:6 compared with 42:6; 51:4) needs modification. In Isa 42:6, the reference to the light of the nations is in purview of the Servant (as is also indicated by the second person singular “you”) of Isa 42:1-4. In the other verse Kaiser references, Isa 51:4, it is God’s justice that will be for “a light to the nations” even though the addressee is the faithful within Israel who have responded to the Servant (cf. 50:10). On Isa 51:4, see Childs, *Isaiah*, 402. More promising is Isa 60:3, although in this passage the nations come to the light of glorified Zion. Nevertheless, Israel did have the task of being God’s witnesses (Isa 43:10, 12; 44:8).
tied to covenantal headship as seen with the cases of sonship, Abraham’s true seed, and more broadly through the notion of kingship. Further, even though the Isaianic Servant is a prophetic and eschatological figure fulfilled and realized in Christ, a typological pattern is also present. The OT most frequently describes Moses and especially David (and the kings) with servant terminology, but the nation of Israel stands within that trajectory (e.g., Deut 10:12; Luke 1:54) as do the patriarchs (e.g., Gen 26:24; Exod 32:13; Deut 9:27). All of these servants, but particularly Israel given Isaiah’s concentration on the nation as the Lord’s servant, pointed forward to a faithful, victorious, suffering Servant—a Servant who would be far greater as he receives divine affirmation, is highly exalted (Isa 52:13), and does the unique work of bearing the sins of others in justifying the many (Isa 53:4-6, 10-12). The prophecy of the Servant and the typological pattern of servanthood culminate in Jesus Christ (Acts 3:13, 26; 4:27, 30; cf. Luke 1:69; Heb 3:5-6).

The NT discloses how Jesus carries out the eschatological tasks of the Servant as well. The Gospels present the coming of Jesus as the announcement of good news to Israel: in Jesus the forgiveness of sins, the end of exile, the restoration of Israel, and the arrival of the kingdom of God commence. For example, the prologue of the Gospel of Mark (1:1-3) announces the good news (cf. Isa 40:9-11; 52:7; 61:1-2) of Jesus, identifying him as both Christ and Son of God, which evokes royal messianic hopes and telegraphs the onset of the kingdom of God (Mark 1:15). Furthermore, Mark cites Isaiah 40:3 with a fusion of other texts (Exod 23:20 and Mal 3:1) in verses 2 and 3 that not only highlight the pivotal role of John the Baptist (1:4) in fulfillment of Isaiah’s promise of a coming herald who prepares the way of Yahweh in the wilderness, but Mark’s citation


also introduces God’s deliverance of Israel through the power of Jesus. This deliverance is none other than the end of exile through a new exodus whereby God leads his people through the wilderness—their captivity to nations and to sin—back to Zion. Mark’s prologue sets the stage in revealing that the Isaianic Servant and his work (surveyed earlier in the context of the book of Isaiah) come to fruition in Jesus. The fulfillment of the Servant’s roles (bringing justice, implementing the new covenant, and accomplishing the new exodus) in Jesus’s life and death will be briefly explored.

First, as was sketched earlier, the Isaianic Servant has a task of restoring Israel, bringing justice to the nations, and proclaiming the message of salvation. Jesus fulfills the Servant’s tasks through his ministry of preaching, healing, and climatically, in bearing the sins of his people on the cross (Matt 1:21). The Lucan infancy narratives announce that the consolation and restoration of Israel has arrived with the birth of Jesus (Luke 2:25-32; cf. 1:54; Isa 40:1; 49:13; 61:2). His advent is for the glory of Israel and manifests God’s salvation in the presence of all peoples (cf. Luke 2:10). The Servant’s and Israel’s commission to the nations (Isa 49:6-9; 42:6-7; cf. 43:10, 12; 44:8) is accomplished by Jesus, for he is the light of the nations according to Luke 2:32 and Acts 26:23 (cf. Luke 1:78-79; John 1:4; 8:12; 9:5; 12:46). Further, Matthew records (4:12-17) that the

---


people dwelling in darkness have seen a great light in fulfillment of Isaiah 9:1-2 (cf. 42:6) based upon Jesus’s preaching the message of the kingdom in Capernaum, the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali. Also, in the context of his healing ministry Matthew cites Isaiah 42:1-4 in Matthew 12:18-21 in terms of fulfillment. The good news that Jesus announces and his accompanying mighty deeds—exorcisms, feedings, and healings (Luke 7:21-23; Matt 11:4-7)—point to the dawning of the new creation, signifying that the promised era of salvation has arrived. This is also seen in Luke’s record of Jesus’s citation of Isaiah 61:1-2 and 58:6 in the synagogue at Nazareth (4:16-21) that again points to Israel’s restoration and end of spiritual captivity and exile. The audience in the synagogue learns that very day (Luke 4:21) that the prophecy of an anointed Servant who is filled with the Spirit to proclaim good news to the poor, liberty to the captives, sight to the blind, and who pronounces the arrival of the eschatological Jubilee year (Luke 4:19; Lev 25:8-10) is coming to pass in the person and work of Jesus. Lastly, the Isaianic Servant’s task of bringing justice to the nations involved issuing God’s instruction or law. The Gospels present Jesus as the new law giver. For instance, Dempster writes,

---


The Sermon on the Mount is a new Torah by a new Servant of God who transcends Moses. In effect, Jesus says, “Moses said one thing then, but I now say to you . . .” This would suggest a radically new Torah proclaimed by the Servant of Isaiah 42, which will ultimately bring light to the nations.\(^{178}\)

Second, the Servant was prophesied to be a covenant for the people, a covenant that is intertextually linked to the new covenant prophecies of Jeremiah 31 and Ezekiel 36 and that is implemented through a suffering Servant who sprinkles the nations ( Isa 52:15; cf. Exod 24:8; Lev 4:6, 17), is pierced for the transgressions of others, bears the iniquities of others by becoming a guilt offering, but who brings healing, peace, and makes the many righteous ( Isa 53). According to the NT, the new covenant is ratified by Jesus’s death on the cross (Matt 26:28; Mark 14:24; Luke 22:20; Rom 11:27; 1 Cor 11:25; Heb 7:22; 8:6-13; 9:15-18; 10:14-22; 12:24; 13:20). Jesus came to “give his life as a ransom for many” (Mark 10:45; cf. Isa 53:10-12) so that the blood of the covenant (cf. Exod 24:8) is “poured out for many” (Mark 14:24; Matt 26:28; cf. Isa 53:12).\(^{179}\) Hebrews 9:28 also recalls Isaiah 53 in the context of the new covenant (Heb 9:15) and with regard to Christ’s priestly ministry as the author states that Christ has been offered to bear the sins of many (cf. Isa 53:6, 12 LXX).\(^{180}\) As the one who embodies the covenant and ratifies it through his atoning death on the cross, there is confirmation yet again that Jesus is the true Israel, the Servant par excellence.

\(^{178}\)Dempster, “The Servant of the Lord,” 166-67, emphasis original.


\(^{180}\)For discussion of the background of Isa 53 in Heb 9:28, see Peter T. O’Brien, The Letter to the Hebrews, PNTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2010), 341; Schreiner, Commentary on Hebrews, 287; and Scott W. Hahn, “A Broken Covenant and the Curse of Death: A Study of Hebrews 9:15-22,” CBQ 66 (2004): 433. Hahn also notes the allusions to Isa 53:12 in Heb 9:12, 15, as well as other keyword connections between Isa 53 and Heb 9. Hoskins, That Scripture Might Be Fulfilled, 134-35, notes the background of Isa 53:12 in Heb 9:28 and finds generally that Isa 53 is “an important contributor to sacrificial typology, because it points more directly to the form that the ultimate fulfillment of the sacrifices will take.”
The Servant’s role as a covenant for the people (Isa 42:6), as was already discussed, extends beyond national Israel as does those who benefit from his effectual, vicarious, and sacrificial death (52:15-53:12). What Isaiah anticipated receives clarity in the progress of revelation: the “many” whom the Servant atones for and the “people” for whom he is a covenant for is the church since Jesus Christ, as the prophesied Isaianic Servant and the one who fulfills his eschatological tasks, secures the salvation of those who belong to him. The NT authors understand the new covenant with reference to the messianic community only, those united to Christ by faith, because Isaiah and the other prophets projected a redefined Israel, an eschatological, transnational people of God in coordination with the future coming of the Davidic messiah (e.g., Isa 55:3-5; see the earlier discussion of the nations in Isaiah).

Moreover, the new covenant work of the suffering Servant converges with and is inseparable from the themes and typological patterns of the Passover, the sacrificial system, and priesthood (e.g., 1 Cor 5:7; John 1:29, 36; 19:36; 1 Pet 1:19; Heb 5:5-10; 7:12-8:6; 9:11-10:22). The sacrificial observances and the application of the priestly office in the OT were always carried out with reference to the covenant community only (the nation of Israel). Similarly, the Servant’s atoning work in establishing the new covenant is with respect to only the church since the church is the new covenant community made up of believing Jews and Gentiles. Comprised of true disciples of Christ, the church is the sole beneficiary of Christ’s sacrificial death and priestly mediation (Eph 5:25; John 17:6-19). The qualitative advance of these typological patterns (Passover, sacrifices, priesthood, tabernacle-temple) is that the atoning death of the Servant is far superior than the system established under the old covenant (Heb 7:23-28; 9:11-15; 10:10-12, 14; cf. Rom 8:32-34) because it definitively brings about the forgiveness of sins. Further, Jesus’s death ratifies the new covenant completely and effectively which establishes the creation of an

---

expanded covenant community (from national, ethnic Israel to an international, multi-ethnic community—the church) and results in the change to the structure and nature of this new community as all under this new covenant know the Lord, have the forgiveness of sins, and possess the gift of the Holy Spirit.\(^{182}\) What was anticipated in the OT has been confirmed and brought to completion in the NT. New covenant believers, confident in the finished work of Christ as their great high priest, draw near with true hearts full of assurance, hearts “sprinkled clean from an evil conscience” and “bodies washed with pure water” (Heb 10:22; cf. Exod 24:6-8; Ezek 36:25; Isa 52:15). The greatness of the suffering Servant’s atoning sacrificial death entails then an escalation in the people of God. The covenant community under his headship and representation is greater than national Israel in the sense that it is an international community that enjoys the complete forgiveness of sins through Christ’s once and for all death, and is characterized entirely by a Spirit-filled, faithful, regenerate people who have circumcised, Torah-inscribed hearts (Rom 2:29; 2 Cor 3:3, 16-18; Col 2:11; Phil 3:3). In sum, Jesus fulfills the Servant-Israel’s mission by his atoning death (Isa 53; cf. Rom 4:23-25; 8:32; Gal 1:4), a work that brings about the cleansing and restoration of Israel, a restoration that pointed to a renewed eschatological Israel made up of true and faithful servants (e.g., Isa 56:1-8; see further treatment later in this study). Therefore, Jesus does not restore the nation of Israel in order to bless the nations in the future millennium and beyond; he accomplishes this task in his first coming.\(^{183}\)

\(^{182}\)For analysis of the new covenant in regard to the shifts in its structure and nature, consult Carson, “Evangelicals, Ecumenism, and the Church,” 358-67; Carson, Showing the Spirit, 150-58; Wellum, “Beyond Mere Ecclesiology,” 195-202; Wellum, “Baptism and the Relationship,” 141-46; Wellum, “The New Covenant Work,” 535-37. Cf. also n155 in this chap. Peterson, Transformed by God, 82-83, asserts, “Even though the priesthood and sacrificial system provided a way of cleansing and sanctification for later generations of Israelites ([Heb] 5:1-3; 7:27; 8:3), the effect was temporary and external (9:1-10; 10:1-4). There was no definitive forgiveness of sins, as promised under the New Covenant, and no way of changing the heart of the people (10:15-18). Jesus came to make ‘purification for sins’ (1:3; 2:17; 7:27), ‘to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself’ (9:26, 28), and to sanctify and perfect a people for himself through the shedding of his blood in a single sacrifice for sins (10:10-14; 13:12).”

\(^{183}\)Contra Vlach, “What Does Christ as ‘True Israel’ Mean?,” 49-50; and Saucy, The Case for
Third, Jesus’s ministry and atoning death on the cross fulfills Isaiah’s prophecy of the new exodus. The journey out of Egypt (Matt 2:15), the baptism of Jesus, the temptation of Jesus in the wilderness, and John the Baptist’s role in preparing the way (Luke 3:4-6; cf. Isa 40:3-5), discussed earlier in this chapter, already point to the fact that Israel’s promised new exodus is inaugurated by the coming of Jesus. New exodus typology abounds in the NT and cannot be adequately canvassed here, although a few points will suffice. The clearest reference to the fulfillment of new exodus typology is in Luke 9:31 where Moses and Elijah speak to Jesus during the transfiguration regarding his “departure” (ἐξοδον) to be accomplished in Jerusalem, a reference to the redemption brought about by Jesus’s death and resurrection. Further, Moses is frequently identified as God’s servant in the OT, and in the NT readers receive confirmation that Jesus is the new Moses (John 1:17; 3:14; 6:14; Heb 3:1-6; cf. 12:18-24; cf. Deut 18:15, 18). Indeed, Jesus is greater than Moses and Joshua as he is able to provide new creation rest in bringing his people to a better promised land (Heb 4:1-11, 16, esp. 4:8). The movement from Mount Sinai to Mount Zion through Christ is manifest (Heb 12:22-24; Gal 4:24-27).

---


Additionally, Jesus is the true Passover lamb who seals Israel’s new exodus redemption (John 19:36; cf. 1:29; Exod 12:46; Isa 53:7), he is the true manna from heaven (John 6:30-59; Exod 16; Num 11:8; Ps 78:23-24) who gives life to the world (John 6:33, 51; cf. Isa 49:6), the one who fulfills Israel’s exodus feasts (John 7:1-51; 8:12-59) and who is the source of the eschatological waters of the new exodus (John 7:32-38; Exod 17:1-6; cf. Isa 12:3; 44:3; 49:9-11; 55:1-2, 6; 58:11; Ezek 36:25-27; 47:1; Joel 3:18). In sum, Jesus is the Davidic Servant who restores Israel through the new exodus he achieves by his mighty deeds (healing those with physical problems, feedings, exorcisms) and by his death and resurrection whereby he ratifies and mediates a new and better covenant (Heb 8).

For a variety of treatments on the new exodus themes and typologies in the Gospel of John, see Köstenberger, *A Theology of John’s Gospel*, 413-22; cf. 112-13, 163-65; Gerry Wheaton, *The Role of Jewish Feasts in John’s Gospel*, SNTSMS 162 (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2015), 93-111, 127-39; John A. Dennis, *Jesus’ Death and the Gathering of True Israel: The Johannine Appropriation of Restoration Theology in Light of John 11.47-52*, WUNT 2/217 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2006), 188-220; John A. Dennis, “The Presence and Function of Second Exodus-Restoration Imagery in John 6,” *Studien zum Neuen Testament und Seiner Umwelt* 30 (2015): 105-21. In the latter work, Dennis concludes, “Imagery such as the expected ‘prophet like Moses’ (John 6.14), sign-miracles such as providing bread for the multitude (6.5-11), the crossing of the sea (6.16-21), Jesus’ identification with true manna . . . all combine in this chapter to show that the day of restoration is here and that Jesus the Messiah . . . is now leading a second exodus restoration that will lead to eternal life and the restoration of a new community” (121, emphasis original).

The typological and prophetic patterns of the Davidic Son, new exodus, and the role of the Isaianic Servant converge given the intertextual resonances in Mark 6:34-44. In this narrative, Jesus has compassion on the crowd in the wilderness because they are like sheep without a shepherd (Mark 6:34), evoking Num 27:17 where Moses pleads for a successor and recalling Ezeki 34:5 where Ezekiel indicts the false shepherds of Israel. Ezekiels’ oracle promised that the solution would be found in one shepherd, the future Davidic Servant who shall feed them (cf. the role of the Servant in Isa 49:9b-10) and be prince over them (Ezek 34:23-24). Accordingly, Hays, “The Canonical Matrix of the Gospels,” 61, writes, “When Jesus feeds the multitude in Mk 6, he is not only symbolically re-enacting Moses’ manna miracle of the exodus but also prefiguring the restored Davidic kingship promised by Ezekiels’ prophecy. The two motifs (exodus and Davidic kingship) should be seen as complementary rather than as competing alternatives, precisely because the new exodus envisioned in the Old Testament, especially in Isaiah, has as its telos the restoration of God’s rulership over Israel. Consequently, the Old Testament allusions in Mk 6 lead us to perceive Jesus as a kingly figure who integrates the exodus typology with Ezekiels’ vision of a restored kingdom.” The only thing to add to Hays’s analysis of the Davidic and exodus motifs in Mark 6 is the theme of servanthood, which is tied to the fact that David is called God’s servant in Ezek 34:23 and given that the Isaianic Servant, whom I previously argued is a royal messianic figure, is charged with feeding the flock in the new exodus (Isa 49:9-10; cf. Isa 48:21).
With the implementation of the new exodus through the agency of Jesus, significant ecclesiological implications result. Israel’s identity as a covenant nation was bound up with the exodus from Egypt (e.g., Exod 6:7; 19:5-6; 29:46). In the prophetic writings of Isaiah, the new exodus has a clear eschatological dimension, for the remnant of Israelite exiles are joined with people from among the nations in a future outlook for their collective deliverance, restoration, and return to Zion.189 Israel has been an unfaithful nation, but the new exodus is grander and better as those who go through this exodus will be a faithful, covenant keeping people, a people truly rescued by God from their captivity to sin. The question then that systematic theologians have not addressed or given proper attention to is who goes through the new exodus? With the new exodus realized in Christ, those who are redeemed through Christ, the Passover lamb, and brought out of slavery to sin and into the new covenant, deemed sons of God, are those of faith, the church. This typological correspondence from Israel to the church through the new exodus wrought in Christ will also be discussed in chapter 6. However, it is important to observe that the Servant-Jesus’s task of accomplishing the new exodus is formative for the church just as the exodus was the formative event for the nation of Israel. Not surprisingly, exodus themes appear frequently with reference to the church.190 There is no

189 Routledge, “The Exodus and Biblical Theology,” 204-5, comments, “The use of exodus traditions in the later prophetic writings points a typological correspondence between the people of God in Egypt and those languishing in exile in Babylon—and their respective deliverances. This is not simply calling to mind an example of God’s redemptive power in the past in order to give reassurance for the future. It is that; but, it also points beyond it to the ongoing purpose of God for his people. The God who redeemed and created them in the exodus events continues his work of redemption, renewal, and (re-) creation—in order that the people should be what they were called to be.”

mere coincidence that the church is associated as traveling on the “way” or being designated as the “way” (see Exod 13:21-22; 23:20; Isa 40:3; cf. 30:11, 21; 35:8; 42:16; 48:17; 49:11; 57:14; 62:10) in the book of Acts (9:2; 18:25-26; 19:9, 23; 22:4; 24:14, 22), for the church is the reconstituted Israel—God’s renewed people who have been liberated from spiritual exile through the Isaianic new exodus that was prepared by John the Baptist and accomplished by Jesus.\textsuperscript{191}

Lastly, one final area needs to be addressed. The textual, epochal, and canonical horizons all point to an integral relationship of Israel—Servant—servants. As was briefly discussed, the suffering Servant is promised offspring (Isa 53:10),\textsuperscript{192} and throughout Isaiah Hebrews,\textsuperscript{a} in Reverberations of the Exodus in Scripture, ed. R. Michael Fox (Eugene, OR: Pickwick, 2014), 160-86.

\textsuperscript{191}Pao, Acts and the Isaianic New Exodus, 59-68, 249; Eckhard J. Schnabel, Acts, ZECNT (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2012), 290; Schreiner, New Testament Theology, 695-96. The “way” terminology differentiates true believers in Christ, the church, from opponents. Pao, Acts and the Isaianic New Exodus, 68, summarizes, “The Way’ functions as a symbol evoking the transformed foundation story of Israel found in Isaiah 40-55 in the construction of the identity of the community. The symbol signifies the movement’s continuity with the past as well as its distinctiveness. . . . Understanding the ‘the Way’ as an identity marker helps explain the diverse referents it embodies. The term cannot be separated from the ethic and teaching that characterizes the community. Naturally the identity of the church is connected with the figure Jesus and has to be understood within the wider plan of salvation history. Nevertheless, the primary meaning of the term is an ecclesiological one for it is used in the definition of the community as the true heir of the ancestral traditions.” The church is the fulfillment of the Isaianic hope then, and correlates with Lim’s observation regarding the change from the “way of the Lord” in Isa 40:3 to the “way of my people” in Isa 57:14. Lim, The ‘Way of the Lord,’ 119, writes that the ‘very definition of ‘my people’ has both expanded and contracted since Isa 40:1. In [Isaiah 40-55], God’s people comprised all Israel, including those of the diaspora. [Isaiah 56-66] broadens this definition such that the foreigner and eunuch are now considered part of God’s people who may worship within the house of prayer for all nations (56:1-8). At the same, [sic] time the demands for entrance into the community of God’s people have become more restrictive as well. Not any Jew or returnee, but only the righteous who observes justice can worship at God’s holy mountain (56:1; 57:13).”

\textsuperscript{192}DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 471, observes four parallels between the work of the suffering Servant and the new covenant family of Isa 54 and through the rest of the book: “(1) The ‘many’ in Isa 52:14-15 and 53:11-12 are the ‘many’ in the ‘miracle family’ of Isa 54:1. (2) The servant’s ‘offspring’ in Isa 53:11 are Sarah’s ‘offspring’ in Isa 54:3 who have been expanded by inheriting nations. (3) In Isa 53:11 the ‘righteous’ servant king makes many ‘righteous,’ and in Isa 54:14 the redeemed city is established in ‘righteousness’ (cf. Jer 23:6; 33:16). (4) The ‘servant’ singular in Isa 52:13 and 53:11 gives rise to ‘servants’ plural in Isa 54:17 and beyond (cf. Isa 65:8-9, 13-15; 66:14)—servants that explicitly include a remnant from the tribes of Israel (Isa 63:17) and the nations (Isa 56:6)” (emphasis original). Paul’s explicit citation of Isa 54:1 LXX in Gal 4:27 demonstrates that the church comprises of the children
54-66 the offspring or servants form a major theme.\textsuperscript{193} The movement is from Israel to the one who identifies with and embodies Israel as the Servant (Isa 49:3-12) to servants (Isa 54-66). The messianic Servant’s obedient and righteous activities commissioned by God bring about salvation and restoration for Israel and the nations, producing offspring and servants who carry on his mission. Moreover, the nature of the eschatological servants differs from national Israel, as Fantuzzo writes, “Only those disciples whose turning from transgression demonstrates their solidarity with the righteous Servant are true servants of Yahweh ([ Isa] 59:20; cf. 49:23; 57:13; 64:3; 65:16). Only they are the ‘Redeemed of the LORD’ (62:12).”\textsuperscript{194} From the perspective of the NT, the servants who are the Servant’s offspring, continuing the work of the Servant, is not national or political Israel, but followers of Jesus. The people who continue Jesus’ role as God’s servants and therefore enjoy the status of God’s true, faithful people, is the church. House explains, “Paul viewed the church as the ideal remnant of Jews and Gentiles and cast his own ministry

\textsuperscript{193}See n137 in this chap. Gignilliat, “A Servant Follower of the Servant,” 112-15, notes the results of Servant’s activity is the creation of righteous offspring and these servants endure the suffering and affliction as the Servant did, await the vindication that he received, and herald the good news made active and effective by the work of the Servant. Similarly, Christopher R. Seitz, Figured Out: Typology and Providence in Christian Scripture (Louisville: Westminster John Knox, 2001), 115, writes, “From chapter 54 to 66, the servant is replaced by servants. They share in the servant’s affliction, for the sake of God’s righteousness. They are the seed of the servant, which was to prosper. God’s judgment in the latter days involves a cleaving of Israel into righteous servants and wicked, idolatrous, falsely religious, oppressive counterparts, within the household of Israel. At the same time, the righteous servants of the servant are joined by the nations, and together, as Zion is restored, they take part in God’s intended bounty. The joining of the nations to Israel entails their witnessing God’s judgment, on his own people and over all creation. . . . Zion’s painless birthing of new citizens is emblematic of the new life promised for all God’s servants, offspring of Zion. Zion sees seed, and in this way the promises associated with the servant’s vindication are made good.” Cf. Fantuzzo, “True Israel’s ‘Mother and Brothers,’” 112-16.

\textsuperscript{194}Fantuzzo, “True Israel’s ‘Mother and Brothers,’” 116. Fantuzzo also observes that in the final chapters of Isaiah “[t]here is narrowing: Yahweh will restrict the Israel of God to the offspring of the Servant. Only those whose servanthood indicates their solidarity with the Servant can inhabit holy Zion” (119).
and that of the church in terms of servanthood (cf. Rom 1:1; 9-11; 15:1-2).” A few observations from the NT confirm that the church is the renewed Israel, made-up of the prophesied Isaianic servants, and assumes the role of national Israel.

Israel was to be God’s witnesses (Isa 43:10, 12; 44:8) and as observed, the one who represents and is Israel, the messianic Servant, is tasked with being a light to the nations (Isa 42:6; 49:6; cf. 51:4). The servant nation Israel “was called to have a universal role in projecting the covenant God’s salvation to the nations, [but] several Christian authors believed that this vocation had subsequently been taken over by Jesus and the church.” The church, through Jesus, takes on the role of witnessing and bringing light to the nations. Echoing Isaiah’s “light” passages, Matthew 5:14 and 5:16 intimate that Jesus’ followers are emissaries and heralds of the kingdom of God and like the Isaianic Servant they are the “light of the world” (cf. Eph 5:8-9), having the task of making that light shine before others (cf. Phil 2:15).

Further, as Thomas Moore has demonstrated, the Lucan great commission (24:46-49) has four aspects that link the disciples’ mission to that of the Isaianic Servant, Jesus. A transfer of servant motifs to Jesus’ followers is unmistakable, for they continue the Servant’s ministry of proclaiming forgiveness or release from sins (Luke 24:47; cf. 4:18; Isa 61:1) and the designation—“you are witnesses” (24:48)—verbally recalls Israel’s role in Isaiah 43:10, 12; 44:8. The extent of the

---

196Bird, “‘A Light to the Nations,’” 123. Bird further avers, “The first Christians came to realize that they had inherited the role of Israel, and that the church was to be what national Israel had failed to be, namely, a light to the nations.” Ibid., 126.
199Moore, “The Lucan Great Commission,” 53-56. Moore notes, “As ‘witnesses,’ the disciples were to take up the task of God’s servant Israel pictured in Isaiah. Just as Israel was to testify of God’s
disciples’ mission is to “all the nations” (Luke 24:47), a reference with extensive Isaianic background of the nations streaming to Zion in the last days (Isa 2:2; 66:18-20), worshipping God (56:7), and enjoying salvation which again invokes the messianic Servant’s role of being a light to the nations so that God’s salvation may reach the ends of the earth (49:6). Lastly, the Lucan great commission states that Jesus’ followers will be empowered from on high (Luke 24:49), which was fulfilled at Pentecost with the pouring out of the Spirit in Acts 1-2. As Moore has shown, the phrase “from on high” is similar to the wording of Isaiah 32:15 and is also conceptually linked to Isaiah 44:3, which was discussed in relation to Galatians 3:14. Both of these passages are tied to the eschatological transformation of Israelite society when God would pour out his Spirit, but Luke informs his readers that these prophecies are fulfilled through those who identify with Christ, being in faith union with the Spirit-anointed Servant (Isa 42:1; 61:1).

In sum, the disciples continue the ministry of the Isaianic Servant as they are commissioned (Matt 28:18-20) as Spirit-empowered servants to be his “witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth” (Acts 1:8), another verse that evokes Isaianic servant themes (e.g., Isa 49:6; 43:10, 12; 44:8) and shows that Jesus’ followers are God’s true servants, the people of the new exodus.200 By Jesus’ saving acts on behalf of His people (Isa. 43:8-13; 44:6-8), so too the disciples were to testify of God’s saving actions in Jesus’ death and resurrection.” Ibid., 55.

200 See Thomas S. Moore, “‘To the End of the Earth’: The Geographical and Ethnic Universalism of Acts 1:8 in Light of Isaianic Influence on Luke,” JETS 40 (1997): 389-99; Pao, Acts and the Isaianic New Exodus, 91-96; Beers, The Followers of Jesus, 126-33; Köstenberger and O’Brien, Salvation to the Ends of the Earth, 129-31; Kaiser, Mission in the Old Testament, 62. Turner, Power from on High, 300-301, contends that Acts 1:8 has three Isaianic allusions that “unequivocally point in the direction of Israel’s restoration. To the circle of disciples falls the vocation of the Isaianic servant, to raise up Jacob and to restore the remnant of Israel. . . . The affirmation ‘you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you’ will remind the reader of Lk. 24.49. . . . Lk. 24.49 and Acts 1.8 together evidently rest on Isa. 32.15 (LXX ‘until the Spirit from on high comes upon you’) which is about the New Exodus restoration of Israel and transformation of her ‘wilderness’ estate. Similarly, the address ‘you shall be my witnesses’ takes up Isa. 43.10-12, where restored Israel, ‘God’s servant,’ is given this commission. And thirdly, the task of bearing witness to Jesus ‘to the end of the earth’ (1.8) is widely recognized to take up the closing line of Isaiah 49.6.”
obedience and vindication through resurrection, all authority in heaven is bestowed upon him (Matt 28:18-20). He commands his servants to make disciples of all nations, to the ends of the earth (Acts 1:8), thus marking the eschatological gathering of the nations to Zion, a reality that pointed to Christ himself (Isa 2:2-5; 45:20-22; 55:5; 56:6-7; Mic 4:1-5; Zech 2:11; 8:20-23; cf. Gal 4:21-31; Heb 12:18, 22-24). 201

Moreover, Paul’s application of the servant motif to himself and others confirms that the people of God are redefined as the eschatological new Israel, inheriting the mission and role of OT Israel. In Acts 13:47, Paul cites Isaiah 49:6 and applies the text to himself and Barnabas as a command to be a light for the Gentiles. While Jewish evangelism is not rejected, Paul and Barnabas identify with Jesus, the true Servant (Acts 3:13, 26; 4:27, 30; 8:32-35), continue his ministry, and are the light of the Gentiles by virtue of their preaching Christ. 202 An appropriated or ecclesiological typological pattern is present, again via Christ, in Acts 13:47: the eschatological Servant and task is realized in Christ as he brings light to the nations (Luke 2:32; Acts 26:23) and Paul and Barnabas and the church also fulfill this promise of blessing to the nations by virtue of their relationship to Christ. 203 Later, Paul will explain his mission as the continuation of the work of Jesus as

201Kynes, A Christology of Solidarity, 182-84, 189-91; Menn, Biblical Eschatology, 31-32; Schnabel, “Israel, the People of God,” 46-47; Köstenberger and O’Brien, Salvation to the Ends of the Earth, 106, 129-31, 135-37. Terence L. Donaldson, Jesus on the Mountain: A Study in Matthean Theology, JSNTSup 8 (Sheffield: JSOT, 1985), 200 (cf. 182-88), writes, “In Jesus’ vindication on the Mountain of Commissioning . . . we see the fulfillment of the hopes of the restoration on Mount Zion: it was to Jesus . . . as the restored Son Israel—that the Gentiles were to gather to participate in eschatological salvation.” Contra John H. Sailhamer, “Evidence from Isaiah 2,” in A Case for Premillennialism: A New Consensus, ed. Donald K. Campbell and Jeffrey L. Townsend (Chicago: Moody, 1992), 79-102, as he wrongly argues that Isaiah’s vision in Isa 2:1-5 refers to a literal fulfillment in Jerusalem during the millennium of Rev 20.


the “light” of the suffering and risen messianic Servant is proclaimed to the nations through him, for Paul is both a “servant” and a “witness” (Acts 26:13, 16-18, 22-23). Also, it is clear that Paul is a servant of the Servant (2 Cor 6:4; Acts 16:17) as he develops the servant and other Isaianic motifs in 2 Corinthians 5:14-21 before citing Isaiah 49:8 in 2 Corinthians 6:2. The implication once again is that Paul identifies indirectly with Isaianic Servant of Isaiah 49 in typological fashion. The fulfillment of Israel’s restoration has arrived as the day of salvation is “now” and the reality of reconciliation and new creation in Christ has come (2 Cor 5:17-6:2; cf. Isa 49:8-13).

Jesus is the Isaianic Servant, the true Israel, but servanthood language as well as the Servant’s prophetic vocation is applied to those who follow and identify with Jesus. The church is where God’s true servants are to be found (e.g., Eph 6:6; Phil 1:1; 1 Pet 2:16; Rev 1:1); indeed, Jesus’ followers are “sons of light” (John 12:36) since they have come in faith to the one who is the light of the world (John 12:46; cf. 8:12; Isa 42:6; 49:6). The church suffers as the Isaianic Servant did (Luke 9:22; cf. Acts 9:16; 14:22; 1 Pet 2:23; Rom 8:17; Col 1:24). The church particularly develops how Davidson’s appropriated or ecclesiological typological fulfillment is at play in this text (51-53). “The prophecy of the servant finds fulfilment first of all in Jesus, but also through him in his church.” Ibid., 53. In a similar vein, Moore, “The Lucan Great Commission,” 60, suggests that the church is not the Servant since they continue the ministry of the Servant but alternatively, the church may be identified as the Isaianic Servant in fulfilling collective aspects since Jesus fulfilled the individual aspects of the Servant.

204 Bird, “A Light to the Nations,” 127-28; and Beers, The Followers of Jesus, 170-72. Moore, “The Lucan Great Commission,” 57-58, notes the application of other Isaianic servant language to Paul as he is chosen, suffers, and seeks to open the eyes of the blind in continuing the task of the Servant. These characteristics link him to Acts 1:8 and Luke 24:44-47 where Isaianic servant language is appropriated for disciples of Jesus.

Rom 8:17; 2 Cor 1:5-6; 1 Pet 2:20-24; Rev 6:11), is possessed by the Spirit through the work of the anointed messianic Servant, and carries out the Servant’s ministry in proclaiming the good news (Isa 40:9-11; 52:7; 61:1-2) in his name (Acts 3:16; 5:41), awaiting the vindication (Rev 11:18; 22:1-5) that he received through his obedient life and atoning work on the cross. Fantuzzo observes,

Jesus is the Servant of the Lord whose mediatorial role inaugurated the eschatological fulfillment of Isaiah’s vision. By faith-union with him, servants follow his pattern of Servant-ministry in their ongoing ministry of reconciliation (2 Cor. 5:17-21; cf. Isa. 49:8-13; 65:17; Matt. 5-7); 28:18-20). From Pentecost to the consummation of the age, this Isaianic vision is fulfilled in the active faith and servanthood of Jesus’ disciples. Consequently, the power to fulfill their calling comes from the redemptive accomplishment of Jesus’ messianic suffering and glory, including Pentecost. He is True Israel; in him, servants demonstrate that they are his mother, brothers, and sisters (Matt. 12:49-50).

In Romans 15 Paul confirms that Christ has become a servant of the circumcision, the Jews, on behalf of the truth of God, namely God’s covenant faithfulness, in order to confirm the promises to the patriarchs, particularly the promises to Abraham, and so that the Gentiles may be included in the people of God in glorifying God for his covenantal mercy (Rom 15:8-9a; cf. 4:9-17). In the supporting catena of scriptural citations (Rom 15:9b-12), Paul shows that Christ has fulfilled the covenant promises as Jews and Gentiles come together in the church to worship God in joy and peace (cf. Gen 12:3). In particular, Paul’s citation of Isaiah 11:10 LXX (Rom 15:12) announces the

206Fantuzzo, “True Israel’s ‘Mother and Brothers,’” 122, emphasis original.

207For discussion of Rom 15:7-13, including the difficulty surrounding the syntactical relationship between vv. 8-9, see Douglas Moo, “Paul’s Universalizing Hermeneutic,” SBJT 11 (2007): 68-70; Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration, 231-47, esp. 237-39; J. Ross Wagner, “The Christ, Servant of Jew and Gentile: A Fresh Approach to Romans 15:8-9,” JBL 116 (1997): 473-85; Chae, Paul as Apostle, 51-68; Thomas R. Schreiner, Romans, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1998), 752-59. Given that Paul uses the word διάκονος (“minister” or “servant”) to describe Jesus means it is questionable Paul is connecting him to the Isaianic Servant, so Schreiner, Romans, 754n5. Conceptually, however, the Isaianic Servant theme is present given the relationship of Isa 11 with the servant songs (discussed previously), which Paul will cite from just a few verses later (Rom 15:12) and given his quotation of Isa 52:15 in Rom 15:21. Wagner, “The Christ,” 476n18, also notes that the thought of v. 8 is similar to Phil 2:7, a text that alludes to Isaiah’s servant songs. Regardless, Paul’s description of Christ as “servant” at least highlights his eschatological role as covenant mediator.

208Discussion of Paul’s citations cannot be addressed here, but careful study of Paul’s use of Ps
eschatological realization of the Jews and Gentiles gathering around the Davidic son and servant (cf. Jer 23:5; 33:15). The messianic hope of Isaiah concerning the influx of nations, vindication of Israel, and recovery of the remnant through the second exodus (Isa 11:11-16) has been inaugurated in Christ and is extended through Paul’s and the church’s mission.209

**Israel-Christ Typological Pattern Evidenced from the Title Yeshurun**

A similar theme to the servant typology, but with a slightly different focus, is found in the overflow of blessings described in Paul’s eulogy in Ephesians 1:3-14, a passage reminiscent of the exodus and the new covenant.210 Ephesians 1:3-6 particularly has lexical and conceptual parallels to Isaiah 44:1-5: God’s election of Israel (vv. 1-2),

18:49 [17:49 LXX] (or 2 Sam 22:50 LXX), Deut 32:43 LXX, Ps 117:1 [116:1 LXX], and Isa 11:10 LXX indicates, as Hays, *Echoes of Scripture*, 71, explains, that “Paul rests his case on the claim that his churches, in which Gentiles do in fact join Jews in praising God, must be the eschatological fulfillment of the scriptural vision.” Chae, *Paul as Apostle*, 67, writes, “The quotations are presented in such a way as to show that the Gentiles belong equally to the true people of God, and so may glorify God ‘with his people’ ([Rom] 15:10).” Sherwood, *Paul and the Restoration*, 243, observes, “Paul orders his representative selections from Torah, the Prophets and the Writings aesthetically, according to a reverse chronology to pick out successively earlier events in Israel’s history and finally catapulting ahead to the culmination of that history. The catena is thus a collage that demonstrates the centrality of the scriptural hope of Israel-nations unification, and thereby provides the grounds for Paul’s argument in verses 7-9a. . . . [Paul] thus demonstrates God’s continuity in purpose to unite Israel and the nations.”

---


the future outpouring of the Spirit on his offspring (v. 3), and God’s faithfulness to the Abrahamic promises (vv. 3-5) where Gentiles join themselves to Israel.211 Each of these thematic elements unite in Ephesians 1:3-6.212 Paul praises the Father for his blessings, among them being election and adoption which comes by being “in the beloved”—Christ (v. 6). As already seen, Isaiah 44:1 refers to Israel as God’s servant, but Israel is also identified as Yeshurun (Isa 44:2; cf. Deut 32:15; 33:5, 26), a term of endearment meaning “Upright One,” but translated in the LXX of Isaiah 44:2 as “beloved” (ἠγαπημένος).213 This is the exact word Paul uses to identify Jesus Christ, for he is the “beloved” in verse 6. Therefore, given the background of Isaiah 44:1-5 in Ephesians 1:3-6, Paul understood Christ to be Yeshurun, Israel, and through him, the eschatological presence of the Spirit (Eph 1:3; cf. 1:13-14) and the blessings of the Abrahamic promises have come to fruition.

The Ephesian Christians (Jew and Gentile) are loved, adopted, and chosen by being united in the “beloved,” the true Israel. Paul’s

readers should view their salvation as the fulfillment of the second exodus and new covenant promises of the prophets. Like the promised new covenant of the second exodus—but unlike the scriptural narrations of the original exodus—the deliverance they have experienced is described as being, at its heart, not merely a defeat of

211Okoye, Israel and the Nations, 132, comments, “Isaiah 44:5 is to be interpreted in terms of inclusion of gentiles in ‘Israel’ and belonging to Yahweh.” Likewise, Webb, The Message of Isaiah, 179-80. Contra, Motyer, The Prophecy of Isaiah, 342-43, who finds links to Ps 87, but argues that v. 5 refers only to the offspring of Israel/Jacob. Oswalt, Isaiah 40-66, 168, thinks v. 5 refers to both groups.

212The findings of this section are based on the observations and excellent analysis by Joshua Greever, “Will the True Israel Stand Up? Jesus as the True Israel in Ephesians 1:3-6” (paper presented at the meetings of the National Evangelical Theological Society, Baltimore, November 19, 2013).

213Frank Thielman, Ephesians, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2010), 53-54, writes, “Ancient Jewish literature also speaks of the nation Israel as God’s ‘beloved’ (e.g., Isa. 5:1; Jer. 11:15; 12:7; Bar. 3:36 [3:37 LXX]; Jdt. 9:4), and the LXX translators consistently translated the name ‘Jeshurun,’ a biblical term of endearment for Israel, with the word ‘beloved’ (Deut. 32:15; 33:5, 26; Isa. 44:2). . . . Paul’s use of the term ‘beloved’ reflects this same alternation between a chosen and ‘beloved’ individual and God’s chosen and ‘beloved’ people. He knew the early Christian tradition that Jesus was God’s Beloved (Col. 1:13), and he frequently called God’s people God’s beloved (1 Thess. 1:4; 2 Thess. 2:13; Rom. 9:25; Col. 3:12; Eph. 5:1), sometimes in combination with the claim that God’s people are his ‘elect’ (1 Thess. 1:4). It seems likely, therefore, that when Paul calls Jesus ‘the Beloved’ in this passage he has in mind Jesus’s embodiment within himself of the beloved and elect people of God.” See also Peter T. O’Brien, The Letter to the Ephesians, PNTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1999), 105.
hostile powers but a “forgiveness of . . . trespasses.” Additional hints are added in Eph 1:13 with references to “the gospel of your salvation” and “the promised Holy Spirit,” both of which imply that the prophetic promises of post-exilic restoration of Israel have somehow been proclaimed to and fulfilled among the Gentiles.214

While Paul does not elaborate exactly how the promises are being fulfilled in the Ephesians 1:3-14, the indications are that they have occurred “in Christ” as God’s plan is “to unite all things in him” (Eph 1:10; ESV). Through union with Christ, Paul identifies Christians as the “beloved” elsewhere, thus the church is eschatological Israel.215

Israel-Christ Typological Pattern
Evidenced through Vine Imagery

Finally, another example of the Israel-Christ relationship is found in John 15:1-6. John presents Jesus as the “true vine” who stands over against Israel which is the earthly copy or shadow of the original vine now identified as Jesus.216 Throughout the OT, the vine as an image of life, fruitfulness, and hope was used to describe the nation Israel.217 Sadly, although by no fault of the vinedresser (Ezek 17:5-6), the vine produced

214Starling, “Ephesians and the Hermeneutics,” 143. Thielman, Ephesians, 82, on Eph 1:13-14 has a similar conclusion: “Here Paul speaks of the fulfillment of the prophetic promise that in the days of Israel’s restoration, God’s Spirit would dwell among his people (Isa. 32:15; 44:3; Ezek. 11:19; 36:26-27; 37:14; Joel 3:1-2 [2:28-29 Eng.]; cf. Gal. 3:14; Acts 1:4; 2:33). This fulfillment has happened ‘in Christ.’” Also embedded within Paul’s eschatological blessing is the language of inheritance (Eph 1:11, 13-14; cf. Col 1:12), which again indicates that the promised land is expanded and is given to all believers through the Holy Spirit. See Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 762-63; Echevarria, “The Future Inheritance,” 191-92; Thielman, Ephesians, 73.

215See Rom 9:22-25; 12:19; 16:5, 8, 9, 12; Eph 5:1; Col 3:12; 1 Thess 1:4; 2 Thess 2:13. For discussion of “beloved” with reference to Israel and the church, see Sears, Heirs of Promise, 76-79, and James W. Thompson, The Church according to Paul: Rediscovering the Community Conformed to Christ (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2014), 35-36.

216The adjective “true” with respect to the vine should be understood the same way that Jesus refers to himself as the “true bread” or “true food” or “true drink” in John 6. Jesus is not contrasting himself with false bread or false food or false drink or a false vine (even though Israel was unfaithful as God’s vine). Instead, Jesus is the original in comparison to the copies. I owe this insight to Ardel B. Caneday. See Geerhardus Vos, “‘True’ and ‘Truth’ in the Johannine Writings,” in Redemptive History and Biblical Interpretation: The Shorter Writings of Geerhardus Vos, ed. Richard B. Gaffin, Jr. (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 1980), 343-51.

bad fruit (Isa 5:2; Jer 2:21; Hos 10:1) because Israel swerved from following the Lord. The result of Israel’s sin was God’s judgment and destruction of his vine (Isa 5:5-7; 16:8, 10; Jer 6:9; 12:10-13; Hos 2:12; Mic 1:6; cf. Zeph 1:13). Nevertheless, covenant curses were forecast to cease as the Lord promised blessing and restoration of a healthy, fertile vine (Jer 31:5; 32:15; Amos 9:14; Hos 14:4-9). Also significant for this eschatological projection is Psalm 80, especially in the context of the final form of the psalter, where the restoration of the nation of Israel, specifically called a vine (v. 8, 14), is associated with the agency of a royal, messianic figure who is identified as “son of man” (v. 17) and possibly as the “shoot” (v. 15).218 According to the important study by Andrew Streett,219 Psalm 80 presents the restoration of Israel using vine imagery with motifs of the new exodus and new creation that is especially linked to an eschatological Davidic king.220


218See Andrew Streett, The Vine and the Son of Man: Eschatological Interpretation of Psalm 80 in Early Judaism (Minneapolis: Fortress, 2014), 37-38. The “branch” or “shoot” of Ps 80:15a is ambiguous, for it could refer to Israel or to a Davidic king (see Isa 11:1; Jer 23:5, 33:15; etc.). The messianic passage, Gen 49:8-12 (cf. vv. 22-26), connects the future king with the vine, but since the king represents the people the reference in Ps 80:15a of a “shoot” or “stalk” is left open.

219Streett, The Vine and the Son of Man, 15-47 analyzes Ps 80 within its historical context, but also rightly examines the psalm within the psalter as a unified book (pp. 49-89). Streett rightly places Ps 80 within the setting of Book III and within the psalter as whole as he incorporates the persuasive studies emphasizing the unity of the book given the significance of the five-book division, the groupings of the psalms, the placement of royal and wisdom psalms at the seams of the books, and with how Pss 1-2 and 146-50 serve as the introduction and conclusion to the psalter.

220Ibid., 26-28, argues that the new exodus motif is present by not just the rehearsal of the Exodus event (Ps 80:1, 8; cf. Exod 15:22), but the prayer of v. 14 shares exodus language (Exod 3:7, 16) in calling on God to reenact the Exodus (cf. Isa 63:15 where the same phrase “look down from heaven and see” is used in the context of rehearsing the Exodus and petitioning God to act once again). Cf. Hays, Reading Backwards, 67, as he also recognizes that both Ps 106 and 80 “recall God’s deliverance of Israel from Egypt and intercede for a similar renewal of God’s saving mercy, in which God will hear the cry of
The psalmist laments the destruction of the Israel vine but pleads to God to revive the nation (80:18)—calling for a national restoration and resurrection—through the leadership of a last Adam and Davidic king. This text is likely the most important OT allusion or intertext that backgrounds John 15.221

The prophecy of the restoration of the vine, Israel, through a son of man, the king, is fulfilled in Jesus according to John 15:1, 5.222 Although John 15 is clearly an allegory (Jesus is the vine; the Father is the vinedresser which implicitly recalls Ps 80:8-9 and 15b; the disciples are the branches), the OT eschatological and restoration implications of the vine imagery cannot be ignored. Jesus’ claim to be the “true vine” is another way of saying that he is the true Israel: as the eschatological bearer of Israel’s...
mission he sums up Israel’s purposes as he produces fruit-bearing branches and he
commences the anticipated restoration of Israel as the messianic king. Up to this point in
John’s Gospel, Jesus has “superseded the temple, the Jewish feasts, Moses, and various
holy sites; here he supersedes Israel as the very locus of the people of God.”

Furthermore, the ecclesiological implications are evident. Based on John 15:1-8, only those who are organically united with the true vine, incorporated as branches
bearing fruit, are participants in Jesus, the true Israel. These branches are clearly Jesus’
disciples, but ultimately all believers who abide in him through faith (cf. John 14:20). As
Andreas Köstenberger rightly observes, the “barely concealed reference to Israel casts
Jesus as the true vine, the representative of Israel, and his disciples as the branches,
participants in Jesus the ‘new’ Israel.”224 The same conclusion is also observed by George
Beasley-Murray: “That the Vine is Jesus, not the Church, is intentional; the Lord is
viewed in his representative capacity, the Son of God—Son of Man, who dies and rises
that in union with him a renewed people of God might come into being and bring forth
fruit.”225 Rather than understanding the church as a replacement of OT Israel, Christ is the
one who fulfills Israel’s identity and calling, the one who embodies Israel and who is the

223Carson, John, 513. Like Carson, Burge, Territorial Religion,” 394, emphasizes the broader
themes in John’s Gospel, but he also highlights the significance of the promised land in John 15: “The
christological emphasis is simply the Johannine replacement motif at work once more. Jesus replaces
festivals like the Passover (John 6) and institutions like the temple (John 2). . . . He is living bread (6:35),
living water (4:10; 7:38), and the light of life (8:12). Jewish ritual sources for these in ceremony and
tradition are now obsolete. Now in John 15 we learn that Jesus is the vine, a potent metaphor for Israel
itself. He offers what attachment to The Land once promised: rootedness and hope and life. As the final ‘I
AM’ saying, John 15:1 therefore is the culmination of the images paraded throughout the Gospel showing
that Jesus replaces what is at the heart of Jewish faith. The Fourth Gospel is transferring spatial, earthbound
gifts from God and connecting them to a living person, Jesus Christ.” Cf. Martin, Bound for the Promised
Land, 128-30.

868, points out that “Jesus is the ‘real’ vine, the vine that is the fullness of that which is only partial or even
false in other vines. Jesus, the completely obedient Son, embodies what Israel was meant to be. This image
expresses Jesus’ own perfect sonship and contrasts it with the faithlessness of the Jews who were rejecting
him, a theme clearly present in the context (Jn 15:18-16:4a).”

225Beasley-Murray, John, 272, emphasis original.
agent of Israel’s restoration in bringing about the renewed, eschatological Israel—the church.  

**Concluding Theological Synthesis**

In chapter 2, following the important work of Richard Davidson, typology was shown to be the study of the Old Testament salvation historical realities or “types” (persons, events, institutions) which God has specifically designed to correspond to, and predictively prefigure, their intensified antitypical fulfillment aspects (inaugurated, appropriated, consummated) in New Testament salvation history.

Typological patterns belong in the category of indirect prophecy as they develop along

---

226The vine/vineyard imagery is also present in the parable of the wicked tenants (Matt 21:33-43; Mark 12:1-12; Luke 20:9-18), but this parable is different from John 15 in that the son is distinct from the vineyard, which represents the nation of Israel. Furthermore, Ps 80 does not figure as prominent in the parable of the tenants as this parable is more significantly influenced by Isa 5:1-7 (e.g., Matt 21:33; Mark 12:1) and Ps 118:22-23 (Matt 21:42; Mark 12:10-11), although Streett, *The Vine and the Son of Man*, 200-208, does argue for lexical and thematic allusions to Ps 80 in Mark 12:1-12. The crux of the parable of the tenants is Jesus’ statement in Matt 21:43 that the kingdom of God will be taken from the “vine-growers” or tenant farmers (= Israel’s leaders and rulers) and given to a nation who will produce its fruit. Dispensationalists argue that this nation will be a future remnant of eschatological, national Israel and that the passage is really about new leaders for Israel, specifically the twelve apostles. So Blaising and Bock, *Progressive Dispensationalism*, 237-38, and Robert L. Thomas, “The Traditional Dispensational View,” in *Perspectives on Israel*, 95, 105; cf. David L. Turner, “Matthew 21:43 and the Future of Israel,” *BibSac* 159 (2002): 46-61. Nevertheless, the following reasons overrule such an interpretation. First, the immediate context that precipitates the transfer of the kingdom to the singular nation is the death and resurrection of Jesus (see vv. 39-42). It is more natural to understand the church as the “nation” that receives the kingdom of God following Jesus’ death and resurrection. Second, the use of Ps 118:22-23 reveals that the rejection of Jesus as the “cornerstone,” recalling temple imagery, has only led to him being the chief or foundational cornerstone of the new temple, that is, the new people of God (cf. Matt 16:16-19 and note also 21:12-15, 23ff. as the context of the parable is the temple and the language of 21:44, which also suggests temple imagery; see Beale, *The Temple and the Church’s Mission*, 183-88). The psalm in its original context refers to Israel or likely a Davidic king and so Israel and David typology are in play. Israel’s chief priests, leaders, and all others who reject Jesus are like the nations that surround the nation Israel/Davidic king in Ps 118:10-13. Third and perhaps most importantly, the reference of a singular nation in conjunction with Ps 118:22 appears again in 1 Pet 2:7-9, a passage that clearly refers to the church. Peter is likely reflecting Jesus’ teaching from the parable of the tenants. Therefore, the transfer of the kingdom is not from Jews to Gentiles, but from OT Israel to a faithful, devoted covenant community. As Charles L. Quarles, *A Theology of Matthew: Jesus Revealed as Deliverer, King, and Incarnate Creator*, Explorations in Biblical Theology (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2013), 104, rightly concludes, “God grants the kingdom to a new spiritual Israel who will produce the fruit of righteousness, honor the teaching of the prophets, and welcome the Son—all that national Israel failed to do. God’s rejection of Israel opens the way for the creation of a new people.” See also France, “Old Testament Prophecy,” 63-64, 68; France, *The Gospel of Mark*, 456-64.

the biblical covenants, pointing to and ultimately culminating in Jesus Christ, the primary antitype, with some types having further fulfillment in the church and the consummation.

This chapter has demonstrated that Jesus is the true Israel, the antitypical Israel, because he identifies with Israel, fulfills Israel’s roles, vocation, and calling, and more, he brings about Israel’s eschatological and restoration promises by inaugurating the kingdom of God and ratifying the new covenant. The Israel-Christ-church typological strands may be summed up as follows: son (Adam, Israel, David) → true Son (Jesus Christ) → sons (church); Abrahamic seeds (Israel) → true Abrahamic Seed (Jesus Christ) → Abrahamic heirs and seed of promise (church); servant-Israel → true Servant (Jesus Christ) → servants (church); Yeshurun (Israel) → Beloved (Christ) → beloved (church); vine (Israel) → true Vine (Jesus Christ) → fruitful branches (church). Furthermore, the Israel-Christ relationship is confirmed through the representative figure of Jacob and the individual and corporate aspects of the prophesied Son of Man. Important throughout this study of the Israel-Christ relationship is how these typological features cannot be abstracted from, but are rather interwoven with, other typological patterns (e.g., the new exodus theme, temple) as well as Israel’s prophecies and promises of restoration (Messianic and Davidic promises, the new covenant, the Holy Spirit, inheritance of land, nations joining and becoming part of end-time Israel, and the exilic return of a faithful remnant). While not discussed, even Jesus’ resurrection on the third day in accordance to the Scripture (Luke 18:31-33; 24:46; 1 Cor 15:4; cf. Mark 8:31; Luke 24:7, 21, 25-26), which is likely a reference to Hosea 6:2, a passage about Israel’s restoration on the third day, demonstrates how Jesus is the antitypical Israel, the agent of Israel’s restoration since Israel’s destiny is inextricably bound to her Messianic representative. Additionally important throughout

this study is textual warrant, and this analysis has shown that the Israel-Christ typological pattern has numerous indicators within the OT as well as multiple confirmations in the NT writings. The biblical-theological spade work cultivated throughout this chapter has ramifications for the reigning evangelical systems of theology.

**Implications for Dispensational Theology**

Dispensationalists reject Israel as a type of Christ and the church, or if they do acknowledge a typological relationship, it is only in the general sense of historical and theological correspondence or analogy because they believe that national, ethnic Israel awaits the fulfillment of OT promises. If the typological relationship is understood such that the shadow points to the reality in the sense that the antitype is the eschatological fulfillment of the type, then Israel is not a type for any variety of dispensationalism. Thus, dispensationalists deny that Jesus is the true, antitypical Israel and rebuff the notion of the church as the eschatologically renewed Israel. As this chapter has sought to demonstrate, the dispensational position is biblically and theologically inaccurate for the following reasons.

First, dispensationalists do not recognize the typological relationship between Israel and Christ, or they redefine the typology in this particular area, because they fail in the task of biblical theology by not being sensitive to the inner textual development of the resurrection and three days, is not directly cited in the NT is therefore apparent. It is not because it is one slight peg on which to hang so great a weight, but rather it is a cornerstone in a great number of stones which have been assembled into the form of a great temple which awaits one more event to complete the great house of God. Major turning points in the biblical narrative distributed among lesser events, focusing on the accomplishments of missions and miraculous deliverances at points of crisis, escalate and carry with them a force that develops a clear expectation for divine rescue. The increasing acceleration of this particular typology in the Hebrew Scriptures finally reaches its zenith in the death of the Messiah and his resurrection on the third day on Mount Calvary. A new temple concerned for hesed is established, a new Israel is raised from the grave, and people engrafted into this new Israel experience an initiation rite in which they die and are raised back to new life, in anticipation of a final resurrection when their mortal bodies will put on immortality.”

See chap. 4. This point is succinctly summarized by Robert L. Saucy, “The Progressive Dispensational View,” in *Perspectives on Israel*, 161-62.
nation of Israel within the storyline of Scripture. Israel is detached from the sonship, seed, servant, and vine themes in dispensational theology in the sense that these longitudinal themes and Israel’s identity and role in conjunction with them are not sufficiently interpreted. Not enough attention is paid to how the nation of Israel within these themes develop along the covenants and intersect with or are enmeshed in eschatological and restoration elements that anticipate and are fulfilled in Jesus Christ and the new covenant age. For example, in the OT new exodus themes converge with the typological patterns of sonship, servanthood, and the vine themes, which in turn climax and culminate in the work of Christ in the NT. However, dispensationalists are either missing or not formulating into their systematic conclusions how the NT presents the new exodus and other restoration prophecies, including new covenant promises, as coming to pass in Jesus, the Davidic king, Isaianic Servant, true vine, and true Israel. The nation of Israel needs to be understood in redemptive history with relation to Adam and other corporate, representative figures, such as David and the Servant. Also, how the seed theme develops within the OT itself and how the people of God is redefined in the OT with the inclusion of the nations in light of the prophesied new covenant work of the Davidic king and Servant are also not given adequate attention in dispensational theology.

Second, and related to the task of biblical theology, is the understanding of the covenants. The Abrahamic covenant promises are treated as unconditional promises to Israel in dispensational thought, but as shown, the Abrahamic promises cannot be isolated from one another as the nationalistic and universalistic aspects are held together in OT prophetic texts. All the Abrahamic promises are fulfilled in Christ (Acts 3:25-26; Rom 4:13-17; 15:8; Gal 3:13-16, 22). Moreover, that the promised land is typological, looking back to Eden and forward to the new heavens and earth, is confirmed by not only textual indications within Genesis itself, but in later OT books as well before receiving validation in the NT (e.g., Gal 3:18; Rom 4:13; Matt 5:5; Heb 4:1-11; 11:8-16; 1 Pet 1:4; Eph 1:11; 6:3). Dispensationalists also disassociate the promised land from the themes of rest,
inheritance, temple, city, Jubilee, and kingdom, but tracing this theme from the OT and into the NT will not allow for such a conclusion. Similarly, there are no “not yet” new covenant promises to national Israel awaiting completion in the future. Not only is there no indication in the NT that new covenant promises are still to be fulfilled to national, ethnic Israel in the future, but all the promises and blessings of the new covenant have come through Jesus. It is Jesus who is the covenant for the people, the Servant who cuts the covenant through his atoning death, accomplishing a sacrifice that sprinkles the nations and makes the many—Jews and Gentiles—righteous in God’s sight. Jesus’ followers possess all the benefits of the new covenant: the arrival of the prophesied Holy Spirit, which was to coincide with Israel’s restoration, forgiveness of sins, being taught by the Lord, the law written on the heart, and lastly, the inheritance is guaranteed for all new covenant members as well.

Third, the NT use of the OT is an area that has received vast attention in the past fifty or more years. While a difficult subject, the best scholarship has shown that the NT authors do not misread or misappropriate OT passages, but they are sensitive to the original context and they never cite or allude to the OT in a manner that would contravene the original OT context. In evaluating passages such as Matthew 2-4, Galatians 3, and John 15, dispensationalists come to different conclusions than those I have presented; however, this is due partly to what I believe is a lack of sensitivity to the theological significance of how the NT authors are citing and alluding to the OT. Progressive dispensationalists are better in this area, but how the apostles cite OT texts regarding Israel and Israel’s restoration promises with reference to the fulfillment wrought in Christ and with an orientation to the church is not sufficiently integrated in dispensational thought in general.

Finally, in tracing the Israel-Christ typological pattern through the OT and NT, it has been found that the typological pattern coincides with the principle of corporate solidarity. Jesus is the one who represents the many whereby all of Israel’s hopes and
promises converge and climax. Dispensationalists redefine corporate solidarity such that Jesus represents Israel but does not fulfill or replace national Israel. Yet, the problem is that the NT authors do not merely identify Jesus with Israel or merely present him as Israel’s representative in general, they actually show how Israel’s prophecies and the promises to Israel’s figureheads or corporate representatives (Abraham, Moses, David, etc.) come to fruition in Christ as he representatively sums up the people in himself. Jesus is the recipient and fulfiller of all the promises. When discussing the principle of corporate solidarity, the eschatological nature of the work of Christ cannot be sidelined, but dispensationalists have failed to contend with this aspect. Moreover, the other side of the corporate solidarity principle has not been given enough attention. Christ sums up the many, but he is now the representative and covenant head of his people—the church. All that is true of Christ is true of his people. Why Jewish Christians would have additional promises or benefits that Gentile Christians do not possess is not supported by the NT. Dispensationalists will argue that the NT still presents Israel having a future role as a national political ethnic entity, but the next chapter will seek to demonstrate that these texts are misconstrued. All believers are united in Christ and are equal sharers in the salvation and all the benefits he secures for them.

Implications for Covenant Theology

The focus of this chapter on the Israel-Christ relationship has more direct application to dispensational theology. After all, most covenant theologians would be in accord with the presentation of Jesus as the true Israel and affirm OT Israel’s typological function. Still, in terms of ecclesiology, covenant theologians have not comprehensively understood the place of Christ in putting together the Israel-church relationship. As Graeme Goldsworthy observes, “It has been one of the mistakes of some Reformed theologians to emphasize the role of the church as the new Israel and the new people of
God without first highlighting Jesus as the new Israel.”230 The typological pattern is Israel to Christ and then to church, but covenant theology collapses Israel and the church in terms of substitution or direct continuity without fully appreciating that Israel is typologically linked foremost to Christ who brings about, in conjunction with the better covenantal realities he secures, a transformed covenant community united to him by faith. This new covenant community is made up of members who have all experienced the work of the Spirit and enjoy the forgiveness of sins. The eschatological element embedded within the typological pattern means there is an escalation or heightening in the people of God due to the work of Christ. The genealogical principle does not continue straight over into the NT. Isaiah and the NT authors present sonship through the Messiah as being based on spiritual adoption.231 Abraham’s offspring are those of faith and no longer consist of believers and their children.

Second and relatedly, there are other implications for covenant theology in regard to the doctrine of the church. Christ is the typological fulfillment of Israel who brings about Israel’s promises, but the inauguration of Israel’s restoration poses problems for covenant theology. In the exodus led by Moses, the whole covenant community was


231As R. Fowler White, “The Last Adam and His Seed: An Exercise in Theological Preemption,” *TrinJ* 6 (1985): 70-71, observes, “According to the physical interpretation of the genealogical principle, the Servant would by his death without physical offspring jeopardize the covenant’s continuity and fulfillment. But, according to the spiritual reinterpretation of the genealogical principle, the Servant would by his resurrection with the spiritual offspring secure the covenant’s continuity and fulfillment. For through the justification of the many by the righteousness of one (cf. Rom 5:17-19), Christ would see his offspring, prolong his days and prosper in the will of the LORD. . . . [C]ontrary to the infant baptist’s expectation, but according to Isaiah’s prophecy, inclusion within the covenant family can no longer be decided by reference to the genealogical relationship between the covenant family and the covenant head in physical terms. The death and resurrection of Christ, the new covenant mediator, has established the necessity and propriety of reinterpreting the genealogical relationship between the covenant family and the covenant family head in spiritual terms. . . . In the light of the Servant’s fulfillment of the covenant in his resurrection, Isaiah summons spiritual Zion, breft [sic] of physical children under covenant curse, to rejoice over the multitude of her spiritual children, the fruit of her union with her spiritual husband, the LORD himself (Isa 54:1-5; cf. Deut 30:6). By eschatological correspondence the apostle Paul designates the church collectively as the wife of the Lord of the covenant (Eph 5:22-33) and individually as the children of covenant promise, born to heavenly Jerusalem (‘our mother’) according to the Spirit (Gal 4:26-31).”
brought out and delivered from Egypt. In the new exodus, God promises a greater work, the deliverance of sin that brings about regeneration and forgiveness for the exiled Israelite remnant and people who join them from among the nations. The prophets project a covenant community expanding to include Gentiles, but more, all of God’s people, the entire covenant community, journeys through the new exodus accomplished by the atoning work of the Servant. The new exodus, new covenant, and Israel’s restoration anticipated a people who would return from exile and would be followers of the Lord, marked by obedience. In short, the prophets anticipated a faithful covenant community, a new covenant community comprised of covenant keepers (see the discussion regarding Isa 56:1-8). Moreover, the priestly work of Christ mediates for the entire covenant community as he intercedes and dies for his people. Baptist ecclesiology can better account for these massively critical areas.

In the next chapter, the Christ-church relationship is investigated through the key theological theme of union with Christ. After the nature of Christ’s union with his new covenant people is presented, the relationship between Israel and the church will be examined including how this typological pattern is refracted through Christ. The contours of this typological relationship will also be explored in terms of Israel’s restoration and new exodus promises and how these come over to the church. Conclusions will again be derived and applied to the two dominant theological systems.
CHAPTER 6
THE ISRAEL-CHURCH RELATIONSHIP VIA CHRIST:
IMPLICATIONS FOR ECCLESIOLOGICAL FORMULATION

The argument of this chapter is two-fold. The Israel-church relationship is *indirect*—the church is the fulfillment of Israel *only* in Christ, the true Israel. Further, the Israel-church relationship is indirect in the sense that it is not a one-to-one correspondence or equivalence; the church is greater than Israel by being a faithful and regenerate people as the eschatological covenant community in union with Christ. Such a formulation is at odds with both covenant theology and dispensationalism. For covenant theology, the danger is that the church is collapsed into Israel because the continuity of the people of God is inescapable given the backdrop of their understanding of the theological construct of covenant. With a covenant of grace framework, one can observe, for example, the many titles and designations of Israel directly applied to the church in the NT\(^1\) and conclude that the relationship is direct or one of fulfillment, but either way, the church is one with Israel and of the same nature in terms of consisting of covenant keepers and breakers. On the other hand, the error of dispensationalism is to keep Israel and the church so separate such that two peoples of God are given God’s distinct plans for Israel and the church. Alternatively, for dispensationalists who maintain that there is one people

of God, the problem remains. How Jewish Christians can be recipients of OT nationalistic promises apart from Gentile Christians in a future millennial stage is confounded by the fact that all believers’ identity is in Christ (Gal 3:26-29; 1 Cor 12:12-13) and all the promises and inheritance are theirs through him (Rom 4:12-17; 2 Cor 6:16-7:1; Eph 1:11-23; Heb 9:15) as is fitting for adopted sons of God (Rom 8:15-17; Gal 4:4-7).2

Ecclesiology must emerge from Christology: the church is the new, eschatological Israel because Christ, the last Adam, is the new covenant head of his people, the one who reconstitutes the true people of God through his cross. More specifically, it is because Jesus is the antitype of OT Israel that his disciples are deemed the true circumcision (Phil 3:3; Col 2:11), inward Jews (Rom 2:28-29), and Abraham’s spiritual seed (Gal 3:7-9; Rom 4:16-18).3 The redemptive-historical move from Israel to the church is a typological one via Christ. National Israel is the OT type or shadow that pointed forward to Christ, the true Israel, and through Christ, to the church as well. To develop this typological pattern, first the relationship of Christ to his people is considered by exploring individual and corporate union with Christ. Next, specific passages in the NT that confirm the Israel-church typological relationship via Christ will be evaluated, and in the third and final section of this chapter, passages that appear to undermine my proposal as defeaters for the Israel-Christ-church relationship are briefly examined. For example, Romans 11, appealed to by dispensationalists, is taken to indicate a future for national, political Israel, but this will be shown to be a misinterpretation. This passage does not nullify the Israel to church typological pattern.

---


Christ’s Union with His People: Individual and Corporate

Union with Christ is a gloriously massive subject at the core of Christianity that is focused on the nature of believers being united in, participating and identifying with, and sharing in Christ and his benefits. It is a perennial subject not just for NT scholars, but systematic theologians concentrate on union with Christ, particularly in

4Constantine R. Campbell, Paul and Union with Christ: An Exegetical and Theological Study (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2012), 331-32, highlights the comprehensive nature of the subject: “Salvation, redemption, reconciliation, creation, election, predestination, adoption, sanctification, headship, provision, his death, resurrection, ascension, glorification, self-giving, the gifts of grace, peace, eternal life, the Spirit, spiritual riches and blessings, freedom, and the fulfillment of God’s promises are all related to union with Christ.” For an overview of the formal concepts or the grammar for talking about union with Christ as objective/subjective/intersubjective and the concepts of union, participation, identification, incorporation, representation, and substitution, see Kevin J. Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ’ to ‘Being in Christ’: The State of Union and the Place of Paul in Discourse, New Testament Exegesis, and Systematic Theology Today,” in “In Christ” in Paul: Explorations in Paul’s Theology of Union and Participation, ed. Michael J. Thate, Kevin J. Vanhoozer, and Constantine R. Campbell, WUNT 2/384 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2014), 24-26.


regard to the doctrine of salvation, although the topic relates to the role of the Holy Spirit and is crucial for ecclesiology in terms of conceiving of the nature of the church as the new covenant community in Christ. Although not receiving focused attention here, theologians have rightly noted that union with Christ is not exclusively about the salvation wrought by Christ since the person and work of Christ are inseparable just as the benefits of the giver cannot be received apart from the giver himself.\(^7\) For the purposes of exploring the relationship between Christ and the church and how that relates to the Israel-church typology, union with Christ in view of the individual is briefly sketched before illustrating how this matches and correlates with the church’s corporate unification with Christ. The NT authors’ language of salvation and union with Christ for the individual Christian corresponds with how they describe salvation and union with Christ with reference to the church, the corporate covenant community.\(^8\) Just as individual believers are united to the life, death, and resurrection of Christ, so it is with regard to the church as the church is the community of those identified with Christ. After exploring individual and corporate union with Christ, the implications of the church’s union with Christ will be brought to bear on covenant and dispensational theologies.

---

\(^7\)Johnson, *One with Christ*, 17-18; cf. 36-38. Letham grounds union with Christ in the incarnation as the Son united himself with a human nature and as the last Adam undoes the damage caused by the first Adam in his active and passive obedience which brings about salvation for those members of the human race who are in solidarity with him (Letham, *Work of Christ*, 77-79; Letham, *Union with Christ*, 19-43; cf. Ferguson, *The Holy Spirit*, 109-10). Some wrongly take this incarnational union in a universal way as if all human beings participate in Christ simply by being human. See the discussion in Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 17-18.

\(^8\)The idea of correlating individual and corporate union with Christ and how the NT describes these in similar ways is from Stephen J. Wellum, based upon personal conversations.
Individual Union with Christ

Murray correctly writes,

Union with Christ is really the central truth of the whole doctrine of salvation not only in its application but also in its once-for-all accomplishment in the finished work of Christ. Indeed, the whole process of salvation has its origin in one phase of union with Christ and salvation has in view the realization of other phases of union with Christ.9

The redemption and atonement achieved through the cross have pivotal ramifications for humanity as one is either “in Adam” or he or she is “in Christ” (1 Cor 15:22). Those who are in Christ (which is interchangeable with the expression of Christ being in us10) through the supernatural work of the Holy Spirit (believers can also be said to be “in the Spirit” [Rom 8:9-10]) experience new life and have freedom from the consequences of Adam’s fall. The breadth and depth of union with Christ are vast, but focus will be given to three areas: the scope of the union, the already-not yet character of the metaphors for salvation for those united to Christ through the Spirit, and the nature of the union.11

The scope of union with Christ. First, scholars regularly acknowledge that the scope of union with Christ extends from eternity to eternity: past (election), present (the Spirit’s application of Christ’s salvific work to believers), and future (glorification

9Murray, Redemption Accomplished, 161.

10Passages such as Gal 2:20; Col 1:27; Rom 8:10; 2 Cor 13:5; Eph 3:17 speak of Christ dwelling in his people while other texts teach that Christians are in Christ (John 15:4-5; 7; 1 Cor 15:22; 2 Cor 5:17; 12:2; Gal 3:28; Eph 1:4; 2:10; Phil 3:9; 1 Thess 4:16). Some passages have both concepts present (John 6:56; 15:4; 1 John 4:13), which indicate the two ideas are complementary ways of expressing the same reality. See Hoekema, Saved by Grace, 54-55; and Demarest, The Cross and Salvation, 326-27.

The span of salvation has its source in the eternal election of God. God had chosen Abraham and his offspring Israel to be his treasured possession (Deut 7:6-7; 14:2; Isa 41:8), but Paul writes of a sovereignly determined pre-temporal union with Christ “before the foundation of the world” (Eph 1:4; cf. 2 Tim 1:9). God the Father chose Christ from eternity (1 Pet 1:20) and he chose a people from eternity not apart from Christ, but who are chosen in Christ. This predetermined oneness and covenantal union with Christ are based upon his redemptive work. Those who have faith in Christ are incorporated into his death and resurrection (Gal 2:20; 1 Cor 15:20; Col 2:12-13; 3:1) and such a union is actualized and experienced when persons come to faith through the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. Finally, while believers share and participate in Christ and his blessings now, the full manifestation and goal of union with Christ is the consummation and eternal glorification in the new heavens and earth (e.g., Phil 3:20-21; Rom 8:17).

Before turning to the nature of union with Christ, the present and future dimensions of salvation in Christ need further elaboration.

The Character of salvation in Christ: now and not yet. The salvation applied to the believers as they are united to Christ is a like a multifaceted diamond. Just as a diamond has many faces or aspects, so Christ’s salvific work has many dimensions or aspects (regeneration, justification, sanctification, etc.), but they are interwoven into a single, unified whole. These aspects of the application of redemption for those unified with Christ in the Spirit have an eschatological dimension. Ferguson explains, “Those

---

who live in the Spirit, and thus participate in Christ, also live in this world, dominated as it is by the flesh. For that reason, there is always an already/not-yet character to the present experience of salvation.”13 A helpful way of categorizing the present and future dimensions of salvation is offered by Thomas Schreiner and A. B. Caneday. God’s work of salvation in Christ may be classified into five metaphors: deliverance, renewal, legal, cultic or transformative, and family.14

New life in Christ is portrayed as a deliverance. Schreiner and Caneday find the images of salvation, redemption, and the kingdom of God under the idea of deliverance. Salvation refers to one’s rescue from sin and God’s wrath, having a background in God’s salvation of Israel in Egypt (Exod 14:13; 15:2) and God’s promises to save his people in the future kingdom (Isa 35:4; 45:17; 49:6; 52:10; Jer 31:7-9). According to the NT, believers have been rescued (Eph 2:5, 8; Titus 3:5; Rom 8:24) but there is a not yet reality too as believers possess salvation in the future (Matt 10:22; Rom 5:9-10; 13:11-14; 1 Thess 5:8-9; Heb 1:14; 9:28; 1 Pet 1:5). Redemption, likewise, connotes deliverance and signifies liberation, just as the liberation from Egypt typologically anticipates freedom from the power of sin, death, and Satan that believers experience in Christ. Christian redemption is both a present and future reality.15 The kingdom of God is also a deliverance image since believers are transferred from one realm to another (Col 1:12-13). The kingdom is

13Ferguson, The Holy Spirit, 102. For both the present and future eschatological reality of union with Christ, including the already-not yet of the believer’s resurrection, sanctification, and justification, see Gaffin, By Faith, Not by Sight, 56-68, 75-108; cf. Letham, Union with Christ, 89-90.

14The discussion that follows is based on the study and observations of Thomas R. Schreiner and Ardel B. Caneday, The Race Set before Us: A Biblical Theology of Perseverance and Assurance (Downer Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2001), 46-86. Also, I am treating the metaphors in a slightly different order than Schreiner and Caneday to generally reflect how the ordo salutis is typically presented.

15Schreiner and Caneday assert that the “promise made to Israel regarding redemption has now been fulfilled in Christ.” Ibid., 58. For the realization of redemption in the present, they cite Eph 1:7; Rom 3:24; 1 Cor 1:30; Col 1:14; 1 Pet 1:18-19; Titus 2:4; Heb 9:12. The future reality of redemption is taught in Luke 21:28; Rom 8:23; and Eph 1:13-14.
inaugurated (e.g., Matt 12:28; Luke 17:21) but not yet consummated (Matt 6:10; 26:29; Acts 14:22; 1 Cor 15:50).

NT authors also depict believers united in Christ with renewal metaphors consisting of regeneration, new creation, and resurrection.\textsuperscript{16} Regeneration is conceptually linked with new birth (John 3:3; 1:12-13; 1 John 2:29; 3:9; 4:7; 1 Pet 1:3, 23), but the term παλιγγενεσία occurs in the NT in only two places (Titus 3:5; Matt 19:28). For the Christian, regeneration is a past act or reality whereby the Spirit renews a person, bringing them to an initial living union with Christ (cf. Eph 2:4-5). However, Ferguson is correct to note that regeneration does not end where faith begins because Matthew 19:28 indicates that the regeneration is fully realized in the consummation.\textsuperscript{17} Another renewal metaphor relates to how believers are a new creation (2 Cor 5:17; Gal 6:15) and new persons in Christ (Eph 2:10). Through Christ, the last Adam, believers are already a new creation (Gal 6:14), but the ongoing work of transformation continues as Paul’s commands of putting off the old self and putting on the new self (Eph 4:22, 24; Col 3:9-10) demonstrate that a process culminates when believers are fully renewed (1 John 3:2) in a completed new creation (Rev 21:1, 3-4). Last, just as Christ was resurrected, those unified with him will also experience the resurrection of the body in the future (John 5:24-25, 28-29; 1 Cor 15:20-23; Phil 3:11). The emphasis is on the not yet of the resurrection, but Christ is already resurrected and those in him are already raised and seated with him in the heavenly places (Eph 2:6; Col 2:12; 3:1) and now have resurrection power to walk in newness of life (Rom 6:3-5).

The third classification involves the legal or penal realm and includes righteousness/justification and the forgiveness of sins. Debates regarding justification and

\hfill

\textsuperscript{16}Schreiner and Caneday, \textit{The Race Set before Us}, 64-67, also list conversion and eternal life as renewal metaphors that will not be discussed here.

\textsuperscript{17}Ferguson, \textit{The Holy Spirit}, 102-3, 117. Schreiner and Caneday, \textit{The Race Set before Us}, 60-61, describe regeneration as an entirely past reality, but they never consider Matt 19:28.
imputation notwithstanding, justification is still best understood in a forensic sense whereby believers stand right with God as God imputes the righteousness of Christ into their account.\(^{18}\) Justification is an end-time verdict rendered in the present and righteousness is also an end-time gift granted now. Righteousness awaits the final day of God’s declaration (Gal 5:5; Rom 2:13; 3:20), but the saving righteousness of God is a gift now received by faith through the blood of Christ as believers are so identified with Christ that his righteousness becomes theirs (Rom 3:21-24; 5:1-2, 9; 8:1; 1 Cor 1:30; 2 Cor 5:21; Gal 2:16; Phil 3:9; Acts 13:9). Furthermore, the need for the forgiveness of sins conjures the image of God as divine judge with guilty sinners before him (Rom 1:18-3:20; Eph 2:1-3). However, those trusting in Jesus are forgiven (Acts 2:38; 10:43; 13:38) and have this forgiveness in the present (Eph 1:7; Col 1:14; cf. Heb 9:1-10:18), even as believers continue to ask for the forgiveness of their sins (Matt 6:14-15; 1 John 1:8-10).

The fourth metaphor is tied to the OT cultic language associated with the theme of holiness with respect to the temple, God’s people Israel who are called to be holy, and ceremonial cleansing. The NT applies such holiness language to believers: those sanctified and called to perfection. At the time of conversion, coincident with faith, repentance, and the baptism of the Spirit (1 Cor 12:13; Rom 6:3-4; Gal 3:26-27), believers are sanctified and designated as saints or holy ones (Rom 1:7; 1 Cor 1:2; Eph 1:1; etc). Already, believers are definitively holy, set apart, and devoted to the Lord (1 Cor 6:11; Heb 9:13-14; 10:10), but this holiness is to grow progressively (Rom 6:19-22; 1 Thess 4:3-8; 1 Pet 1:15-16). The exhortations to holiness indicate the not yet aspect of sanctification— a not

yet realization that awaits the last day when believers will be made holy (1 Thess 5:23-24; Phil 1:6).

A fifth set of metaphors are familial. Under the metaphors of family, Schreiner and Caneday identify adoption, inheritance, and reconciliation. Adoption was discussed in chapter 5, but it is important to note that adoption goes back to the nation of Israel (Rom 9:4) and that Paul states that believers in Christ are already adopted (Rom 8:15-17; Gal 4:5; Eph 1:5). The not yet aspect of adoption is also taught (Rom 8:23). Similarly, those who are in Christ are already children and sons of God (this Israel-church typological relationship will be discussed later) now that the age of fulfillment has arrived (Gal 2:26; 3:7; 3:26; 4:6-7; 4:28; Heb 2:10; 12:5-11) even as there is a future dimension to sonship as well (Matt 5:9; Rom 8:19; Phil 2:15). Inheritance and heirship also evoke familial notions and again goes back to the nation of Israel and the promised land (see chap. 5). According to the NT, this inheritance and status as heirs belong to those who are identified with Christ. Believers are heirs now (Rom 8:17; Gal 3:29; 4:7; Titus 3:7) even as the inheritance of eternal life, the kingdom, and the new heavens and earth are future blessings (e.g., Matt 5:5; 19:29; 25:34; Luke 10:25; 1 Cor 6:9-10; 1 Pet 1:4). Lastly, reconciliation depicts the new relationship God’s children now have even though they were estranged from him as enemies (Rom 5:10-11). Through the death of Christ (Col 1:22; 2 Cor 5:18), believers are now reconciled to God.

In summary, the believer’s salvation is multifaceted. To use the analogy of Kevin Vanhoozer, salvation is like a single Christological coat of many colors. Those who are in Christ possess and share in all that Christ accomplished, participating in his death and resurrection. The inseparable aspects of redemption have an eschatological

---

19 Schreiner and Caneday, *The Race Set before Us*, 67-71. They also list *children of God* as a familial metaphor.

structure: the blessings are already experienced and they are not yet as the salvation blessings and the full realization of union with Christ await the consummation.

**The nature of union with Christ.** What it means to be united to Christ is a difficult matter and many answers have been provided to unpack the concrete content of this union. Descriptions are necessary even though there is mystery since being one with Christ transcends complete comprehension. Nevertheless, theologians have described union with Christ as Trinitarian as believers have communion and fellowship with the members of the Trinity.\(^{21}\) Further, the union may be described as *spiritual* in that the Holy Spirit is the agent who regenerates and indwells believers and unites them to Christ so that a spiritual relationship is effected as the one in Christ enjoys Christ’s presence (John 14:16-20; 1 Cor 6:16-19; 12:13; Rom 8:9-11; 1 John 3:24; 4:13).\(^{22}\) Being in Christ is also a vital (John 5:26; 11:25; Col 3:3-4), organic (John 15), and comprehensive relationship as the Christian’s union is appropriated and lived out through faith.\(^{23}\) The relationship with Christ is also a mysterious union (Eph 5:32; Col 1:26-27).\(^{24}\) Particularly important to understanding union with Christ and especially for how the church is conceived of in relation to Christ is the covenantal and eschatological nature of the union.

---

\(^{21}\)Johnson, *One with Christ*, 42-45; Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 26; Campbell, *Paul and Union with Christ*, 363-67, 409; Burger, *Being in Christ*, 509-10, 554; Murray, *Redemption Accomplished*, 171-73; cf. 168-69. Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 27-28, also uses the concepts of communication and communion to explain the ontological implications of union and participation in Christ. Since the Spirit enables believers to share in the Son’s life, love, and fellowship with the Father, so being in Christ means being “communicants” in the triune fellowship. The goal of communication is communion: “To be in Christ is to commune with Christ and other communicants in the commune that is Christ Jesus” (28, emphasis original).


The familial aspects of union with Christ, such as adoption and the marital motif that describes the church’s intimate union with Christ (Rom 7:1-4; 1 Cor 6:15-17; 2 Cor 11:2-3; Eph 5:22-31), the representative characteristics of Christ’s mediation, and the atoning death of Christ that brings about the new covenant and the accompanying redemption and salvation, all indicate that union with Christ is foremost covenantal. This is also noticeable in how Paul presents Adam and Christ as covenantal/representative heads in Romans 5:12-21 (cf. 1 Cor 15:21-22); indeed, Adam is a type of the one to come (Christ) in the sense of being the head or representative whose actions effect those in him. Adam’s disobedience as the natural and federal head of the human race had the consequences of death, sin, and condemnation for all of humanity and brought about curses and devastation upon the cosmos, ushering in an age marred by sin and death. Except for Jesus, all human beings have a corrupt nature and are polluted by Adam’s sin as his guilt is imputed to all (Rom 5:12, 15-19; 1 Cor 15:21-22; Ps 51:5). Sin and death reign over Adam’s descendants, but the second Adam, Christ, inaugurates a new eschatological age of resurrection and life by overcoming Adam’s sin so that those conjoined to him by faith have grace and all the blessings outlined with respect to the deliverance, renewal, legal, transformative, and family metaphors (and more, e.g., glorification). Christ is the covenant/federal head of his people, but more precisely, he

25 Of course, Paul’s primary purpose in Rom 5:12-21 is not to explain the transmission of sin, but the grace and gift of righteousness received through Christ. For discussion of how all become sinners on the basis of Adam’s sin with Adam functioning as the representative and head of humanity, see Anthony A. Hoekema, Created in God’s Image (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1986), 148-67; Schreiner, Paul: Apostle of God’s Glory, 146-50; Thomas R. Schreiner, Romans, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1998), 288-90; cf. John Murray, The Imputation of Adam’s Sin, reprinted in Justified in Christ, 203-94; Ferguson, The Holy Spirit, 108-9; Letham, The Work of Christ, 75-77, 235-36. See also Douglas J. Moo, The Epistle to the Romans, NICNT (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1996), 323-29. Contra Johnson, One with Christ, 62-65; and Campbell, Paul and Union with Christ, 343-47. Campbell wrongly reduces the contrasts between Adam and Christ to domains or spheres where they serve as the entry points and he dismisses the notion of corporate solidarity with Adam and Christ in his study of Rom 5:12-21. For further on the Adam-Christ typology and the role of Adam and Christ as corporate figures, see Son, Corporate Elements, 39-65.

is the new covenant mediator and representative. Union with Christ, being “in Christ,” which cannot be disassociated from the gift and ministry of the Holy Spirit, who is also linked to the new covenant promises (Ezek 36:24-27; Joel 2:28-29), must be understood in relation to the new covenant.\textsuperscript{27} If one is in Christ, having been transferred from being in Adam to Christ, then one is now a new creation and possesses all the benefits of the new covenant, experiencing these blessings now.

As a final note and as a segue to the church’s union with Christ, the covenantal nature of union with Christ corresponds directly with corporate solidarity (the “one” and the “many”) and with what some scholars describe as the “incorporative union” of believers in Christ.\textsuperscript{28} In chapter 5, the principle of corporate solidarity was discussed in terms of how Jesus Christ identified with Israel and fulfilled Israel’s vocation, calling, and promises as Israel’s messiah and representative.\textsuperscript{29} As Vanhoozer summarizes, “the Messiah does what Israel (and Adam) failed to do, and thereby receives the inheritance promised to Adam, Abraham, and David, as does anyone else who is ‘in’ (i.e., represented by and incorporated into) the Messiah.”\textsuperscript{30} Stated differently, the relationship between the

\textsuperscript{27}Interestingly, where union with Christ is discussed in relation to covenant (e.g., Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 26-27), the new covenant is seldom referred to, if at all. However, Ferguson, \textit{The Holy Spirit}, 106, writes, “At the heart of this new covenant lies the work of Christ through whom renewal and restoration come. New covenant union with God is specifically a union to Christ by the Spirit which brings us the communication of redemptive blessings.” In his study, Macaskill, \textit{Union with Christ}, 108-10, 227-29, 297-300, discusses the importance of the new covenant for understanding participation in Christ.

\textsuperscript{28}See Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 15-16, and the references he cites. Vanhoozer rightly notes that “incorporative union” is not to be confused with earlier proposals regarding “corporate personality” such as those offered by H. Wheeler Robinson. On this point, see also Macaskill, \textit{Union with Christ}, 101-2.


\textsuperscript{30}Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 16.
covenant nation, Israel, and Christ is one of corporate representation that is also of a
typological nature. On the other hand, on account of who Christ is and what he
accomplishes in ratifying the new covenant and securing redemption, the principle of
corporate solidarity takes a different contour with reference to Christ and the NT people
of God. All those in Christ share in and possess all the benefits of that union—all that
Christ achieved and secured in regard to the promises, resurrection, eternal life, etc.—is
theirs since Christ is their covenant head and representative. The incorporative union
into Christ is also participation in the new covenant. The relationship formed in/by/through
Christ between God and his people after the cross is not a typological one in contrast to
the Israel-Christ relationship, but is instead a direct covenantal, vital, organic, and spiritual
union. E. Earle Ellis explains that this new covenant corporate solidarity:

31 This point regarding union with Christ raises the question of the salvation of OT saints, the
faithful remnant of Israel. While OT saints were elected, regenerated by the Spirit, justified by faith, saved
on the basis of Christ’s future atoning work, had communion and covenantal union with God, not all of the
OT faithful were indwelt by the Spirit. The Spirit did come upon some of the OT saints, but God’s dwelled
among his people through the tabernacle and later, the temple. OT saints trusted in God’s promises, and
many explicitly looked forward to the Messiah, but the union with Christ that the NT people of God
experience is an eschatological reality based on Christ’s resurrection and the new covenant and soteriological
benefits that appear in these last days (see John 14). Not only does the whole new covenant community
experience the circumcision of heart, but all of the NT people of God have greater access to the presence of
God since God’s Spirit indwells them. For a treatment of the variety of positions regarding regeneration
and the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit for OT saints and a defense of the position that each faithful
member of Israel was not indwelt by the Spirit but rather that God was with or among his people, see James
M. Hamilton, Jr., God’s Indwelling Presence: The Holy Spirit in the Old and New Testaments, NACSBT
(Nashville: B & H, 2006), 9-56. See also the brief analysis of Demarest, The Cross and Salvation, 338-39;
143-45.

32 A distinction must be made between the OT people of God and the NT people of God. The
church is not ontologically new since God has always called out and saved a people for himself (the elect),
but the nature and structure of the people of God has forever changed due to the coming of Christ and his
work on the cross which brings about the fulfillment of OT promises and secures greater soteriological
blessings. With Christ and the new age he establishes, there is a redemptive-historical shift in the people of
God. See Stephen J. Wellum, “Beyond Mere Ecclesiology: The Church as God’s New Covenant
Community,” in The Community of Jesus: A Theology of the Church, ed. Kendell H. Easley and Christopher
W. Morgan (Nashville: B & H, 2013), 195-96; D. A. Carson, “When Did the Church Begin?” Themelios 41
and those who lean in that direction view the church’s inception with the event of Pentecost. See for example,
Gregg R. Allison, Sojourners and Strangers: The Doctrine of the Church, Foundations of Evangelical
Theology (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2012), 78-82. Covenant theologians, however, typically understand
very probably underlies the conviction of the early Christians that those who belong to Christ, Israel’s messianic king, constitute the true Israel. Consequently, it explains the Christian application to unbelieving Jews of Scriptures originally directed to Gentiles [(Acts 4:25ff.; Rom 8:36, 9:25, 10:13)] and, on the other hand, the application to the church of Scriptures originally directed to the Jewish nation [(2 Cor 6:16ff.; Heb 8:8-12; 1 Pet 2:9)].

**Corporate Union with Christ and Its Correlation with Individual Union**

The purpose of developing the scope, character, and nature of union with Christ and the soteriological aspects for the believer in Christ is to show that these features and characteristics of the individual believer’s union with Christ has direct correlation with the corporate unification of the church with Christ. Individual and corporate union with Christ are presented together in the NT. To establish this link between the individual and the covenant community at large, the points of contact between the aspects of the individual and corporate dimensions of union with Christ will be explored in the same categories of the scope, character, and nature of union with Christ. In discussing the corporate nature of union with Christ, distinctive corporate metaphors of union with Christ (the body of Christ and God’s temple) will also be referenced to further unpack the nature of the church in relationship to Christ. The theological entailments and implications of the church’s incorporation into Christ for both covenant theology and dispensationalism will then be offered.

Pentecost as a renewal and stress more the continuity between Israel and the church. See Edmund P. Clowney, *The Church*, Contours of Christian Theology (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity 1995), 53-55, and note also Torrance, *Atonement*, 353-54. George Johnston, *The Doctrine of the Church in the New Testament* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1943), 56-57, argues that the “‘Church,’ should be reserved for the society which gathered itself into a vital fellowship as a result of the Resurrection, inspired and called by God. It is new as resulting from the regal power exerted in Christ for salvation; as an ‘Israel’ united to a Suffering Servant it is set to bear witness, to Jew and Gentile, of the love and redeeming grace of God; it stands under the Cross, a group which henceforth, so long as it is true to the Lord it acknowledges, has no national bounds” (emphasis original).

Throughout One with Christ, Marcus Johnson contends that how one understands the nature of union with Christ determines to a significant degree how one understands the nature of salvation. Further, he suggests, “The same applies to our understanding of the nature of the church. The way we conceive of salvation ought to determine the way in which we conceive of the church, because ecclesiology is simply the robust application of our christology and soteriology.” Indeed, the nature of the church is bound up with the person of Christ and the work of salvation he has accomplished. The identity of the church is derived from Jesus Christ, for the church is the community of those who have been united to the life, death, and resurrection of Christ. What is true of the individual’s salvation and union with Christ is also true of the community of Christ.

On the relation between individual and corporate union with Christ, Bruce Demarest helpfully observes,

In certain texts Paul envisaged the intimate relationship of the individual Christian with Christ (2 Cor 5:17; Phil 3:9). In other texts he wrote of the union of multiple believers with Christ, viewed as an aggregate of individuals. In the following Scriptures Paul juxtaposed the many and the one who are in union with Christ (Rom 8:1, cf. v. 2; 1 Cor 1:30, cf. vv. 29, 31; Eph 1:3-4, cf. v. 13; Phil 1:1, 14; 2:1, cf. v. 4; Col. 1:27, cf. v. 28). In still other texts the union envisaged is corporate (1 Cor 15:22; Gal 3:28; Eph 2:13, cf. v. 15). Sometimes Paul contemplated entire churches as being in Christ (and the Father) (Gal 1:22; 1 Thess 1:1; 2:14; 2 Thess 1:1).

Paul discusses the individual Christian’s union with Christ, but also reflects upon groups of Christians and churches collectively as being in Christ. Given this general contour of Paul’s thought, it is helpful to note specifically how the individual and corporate union coincides. This issue will be explored by linking back to the points regarding individual union with Christ.

34Johnson, One with Christ, 199.

35Demarest, The Cross and Salvation, 327. See also Parsons, “‘In Christ’ in Paul,” 27. Donald Guthrie, New Testament Theology (Leicester: Inter-Varsity, 1981), 651, states, “The same personal emphasis is found when Paul speaks of whole communities being ‘in Christ’ (cf. 1 Thes. 1:1; Phil. 1:1; 1 Thes. 2:14). What is true of the individual is also true of the community. Indeed it is questionable whether Paul separated the two concepts in his own mind.”
The scope of corporate union with Christ. First, regarding the scope of union with Christ where a person’s union with Christ extends from eternity past to future glorification and is sourced in the election of God, the same principle is observed with respect to the church. In his study of the church in Paul’s theology, James Thompson finds that the church of the Thessalonians shared in Israel’s identity as the elect and holy but that the Christological foundation, their identity in Christ (1 Thess 1:1; 2:14), is what separated them from the synagogue, from Gentile outsiders (4:5; also indicating that the Gentile Thessalonian believers are part of the people of God whose roots lie in ancient Israel), and is what evoked hostility from outsiders (1:6; 2:14; 3:2-4).\(^{36}\) The Thessalonian church is loved and chosen by God (1:4) and the deep solidarity of believers with Christ is highlighted as those who are with Christ will be so in the future (4:14, 17; 5:10) even as they are with him in the present (1:1). Thompson explains that Paul affirms, “Both ‘we who are alive’ (4:17; i.e., those who are in Christ, 1:1) and those who are ‘dead in Christ’ (4:16) will be ‘with him’ in the future. The church came into being ‘through him’ in the past, lives ‘in him’ in the present, and will be ‘with him’ in the future.”\(^{37}\) The scope of union with Christ for the individual matches with the scope of union with Christ for the church.

The corporate character of salvation in Christ. The deliverance, renewal, legal, cultic, and family metaphors that characterized the believer’s already-not yet salvation also correlate corporately when considering the church’s relationship to Christ. The first metaphor of deliverance consisted of salvation, redemption, and the kingdom of God. These aspects also apply to the church. In Christ, the church is made up of the people who have been saved and will be saved as Paul speaks of God saving “us” in his letters to the churches (e.g., 1 Cor 1:18; Eph 2:5, 8; cf. Rom 8:14; 2 Tim 1:9) and he

\(^{36}\)Thompson, The Church according to Paul, 47, 54.

\(^{37}\)Ibid., 55.
exhorts the church to godly living as salvation lies ahead (Rom 13:11; cf. 1 Thess 5:8-9). Further, the church is composed collectively of the redeemed through Christ as the personal plural pronouns indicate (see 1 Cor 1:30; Eph 1:7; 1 Pet 1:18-19). With respect to the kingdom, individual believers are transformed from the domain of darkness to the domain of the kingdom, and on the corporate plane, the church may be described as kingdom citizens, subjects of the kingdom.38

The renewal metaphors of regeneration, new creation, and resurrection that characterize the believer’s union with Christ also apply to the whole church. Those who have received Jesus (John 1:12-13; 1 John 5:4) and conduct themselves in love and righteousness (1 John 2:29; 3:9; 4:7; 5:4, 18) have been born of God. Paul states that the washing of rebirth has happened to “us” (Titus 3:5) as God’s regenerating work applies to all of his people. Paul also explicitly describes the church as the people Christ has given himself up for and has cleansed through the washing of water and the word (Eph 5:26). In addition, while individuals who are in Christ become a new creation (2 Cor 5:17), the language of new creation also applies to believers (Gal 6:15) as the church is the new man or new humanity in Christ (Eph 2:15; cf. v. 10). Similarly, through Christ, the church has resurrection power (Rom 6:4) and is already raised up with Christ and seated with him (Eph 2:6).

The legal metaphors of salvation again are indicative of the parallel nature of individual and corporate union with Christ. Justification and righteousness belong to each individual believer in Christ, and yet these realities are true of the community as Paul tells the church of Rome that “we have now been justified by his blood” (Rom 5:9; emphasis added). The righteousness of God is for all who believe (Rom 3:22) as God justifies certain Jews and Gentiles by faith (3:30). Regarding forgiveness, Paul’s letters to the Ephesians and Colossians refer to how “we” have redemption, the forgiveness of sins (Col 1:14; 405

Eph 1:7). Likewise, the author of Hebrews refers to his recipients as “brothers” who have confidence to enter the holy places by the blood of Jesus with their hearts sprinkled clean and bodies washed which illustrates how God’s people enjoy the forgiveness of sins (Heb 10:19-22). The individual and corporate nature of being in Christ need to be kept together.

The fourth metaphor had to deal with cultic imagery invoking the concept of holiness. While the theme of holiness is of critical importance for individual believers, it is also significant with reference to the church as a whole. Believers are holy and are to grow in holiness, but the church is the temple of God, God’s holy nation (see the later discussion of 1 Pet 2:9). Believers are called saints and holy ones, and Paul states that the church in Corinth is “sanctified in Christ Jesus” (1 Cor 1:2). One of the purposes of the cross is that Christ may make the church holy, washing and cleansing her so that she will be presented as a radiant church, without stain or wrinkle, holy and blameless (Eph 5:25-26).

Fifth, individual and corporate union with Christ correlate with regard to the familial metaphors. A Christian is adopted, a child of God, and an heir through Christ. Likewise, the church is the community of believers adopted as children of God who possess the inheritance by being united to Christ. To the saints at Ephesus, Paul says God predestined “us” for adoption through Jesus Christ (Eph 1:5), and Peter tells the churches scattered in Asia Minor that they have an inheritance kept in heaven for them (1 Pet 1:4). Also, what is true of the individual’s reconciliation is true of the church (e.g., Eph 2:16). Torrance writes, “The church is the community of the reconciled, redeemed through the

----

39Eckhard J. Schnabel, “The Community of the Followers of Jesus in 1 Corinthians,” in The New Testament Church: The Challenge of Developing Ecclesiology, ed. John P. Harrison and James D. Dvorak, McMaster Biblical Studies Series 1 (Eugene, OR: Pickwick, 2012), 105, asserts, “Paul’s theological understanding of the fundamental nature of the church is focused on the phrase ‘in Christ.’ It is as a result of the person, the life, the death, and the resurrection of Jesus Christ that the Corinthian believers who assemble in the ‘church of God’ have been ‘sanctified’ and declared to be ‘saints’ (1:2).”
blood of Christ, for in him God has abolished the enmity and sin that estranged us from him.**40**

The nature of corporate union with Christ. As was previously discussed, the nature of union with Christ featured vital, organic, spiritual, and fundamentally covenantal elements. The focus here will be upon the covenantal nature of the union as it pertains to the subject of this study. As far as individual union with Christ, one is either in Adam, or he or she has Christ as their covenant head. The covenantal nature of union with Christ also applies to the church at the corporate level. One passage that not only highlights the corporate nature of new covenant union with Christ but also discusses the unification of Jewish and Gentile believers as co-members of God’s household, the church, is Ephesians 2:11-22.**41** This passage is closely related to Ephesians 2:1-10 both structurally and thematically, but whereas Ephesians 2:1-10 focused on the believer’s union with Christ in his resurrection, ascension, and enthronement as the solution to the predicament of sin, in Ephesians 2:11-22 the vertical relationship to God continues but Paul also emphasizes how union with Christ is key in establishing horizontal


reconciliation, overcoming the division of Jews and Gentiles and demonstrating their joint identity as the new covenant community (God’s singular body, household, new humanity, and Spirit-filled new temple). Corporate union with Christ (Eph 2:11-22) correlates and is theologically linked to the individual’s union with Christ (Paul collectively speaks of a person’s salvation and new life in Eph 2:1-10). Concentrating on Ephesians 2:11-22 more specifically, the aspects of union with Christ in this passage including the corporate images that appear in this text are underscored before exploring the covenantal nature of the union.

The importance of union with Christ in Ephesians 2:11-22 is crucial. Paul reminds the Gentile Christian readers of their past plight and existence as a people separated from Christ, outside of Israel’s privileges and covenants, and without God in a hopeless state (Eph 2:11-12). But now Gentile believers have been brought near “in Christ” by the means of his blood (Eph 2:13; note also the “in Christ” language in Eph 2:6, 7, 10). Their desperate situation has been dramatically changed as God has incorporated Gentiles into Christ, bringing them near to both God and to Israel. Indeed, it

---


43 Thielman, Ephesians, 177, writes that in Eph 2:1-22 “Paul has demonstrated to his Gentile Christian readers the depth of their plight prior to their trust in the gospel at both the individual and corporate levels. Individually, God has rescued them from being led toward his eschatological wrath by the world, its evil prince, and their own sinful tendencies (2:1-3). Corporately, God rescued them from an ethnic hostility that kept them alienated from both the promises of God in the Scriptures and from God himself.” More broadly, Christopher W. Morgan, “The Church and God’s Glory,” in The Community of Jesus, 224, observes that in the letter to the Ephesians, “union with Christ relates to three recurring spheres: personal, communal, and cosmic. In Christ, we as individuals are linked to Christ’s death and resurrection and thus receive salvation (1:3-14; 2:1-10). In Christ, we together are linked to Christ’s death and resurrection and thus are united to one another as God’s people, the church (2:11-22; 3:1-6). And in Christ, the whole cosmos is linked to Christ’s saving work and is being reconciled (1:9-10; 3:9-11).”

44 Campbell, Paul and Union with Christ, 87-88; Arnold, Ephesians, 157; and Hoehner, Ephesians, 361-62, all argue for the locative sense of “in Christ” for Eph 2:13 instead of the instrumental sense. Thielman, Ephesians, 148, rightly observes the same pattern found in Eph 2:1-10: Paul begins this pericope “with a description of the plight of existence without God (vv. 11-12; cf. vv.1-3) and then explains the divine response to that plight (vv. 13-18; cf. vv. 4-8). It ends with a description of the positive implications that God’s response to the human plight has for present existence (vv. 19-22; cf. v. 10).”
is “in himself” (Eph 2:15) that Jews and Gentiles are made one, joined together, and it is “through him” (Eph 2:18) that access to God is obtained for all who believe.\(^{45}\) In removing the enmity of the law of Moses (Eph 2:14-16), both Jews and Gentiles are reconciled to God and both are united together into a new humanity in Christ. Frank Thielman commenting on verse 15, rightly observes,

Paul has already used the verb κτίζω (ktizō, create) to refer to the individual believer as God’s new creation no longer living under the sway of the world, the devil, and the flesh but in the way God originally created human beings to live (2:10; cf. vv. 2-3). Here too Paul has the new creation in mind, but now conceived as a corporate event, making peace between two estranged groups, Jews and Gentiles.\(^{46}\)

For Paul, the reality of new creation through union with Christ is true of both the individual believer and the community, the church (cf. also 2 Cor 5:17; Gal 6:15).

Furthermore, two of the common NT images or metaphors for corporate union with Christ appear in this context as well: the body of Christ and the temple.\(^{47}\) Christ

\(^{45}\)For a discussion of these phrases as they relates to union with Christ, see Campbell, *Paul and Union with Christ*, 178, 262. Cf. Thielman, *Ephesians*, 171, 174.

\(^{46}\)Thielman, *Ephesians*, 170. Sherwood, *Paul and the Restoration of Humanity*, 256, notes that Eph 2:15 shows that the eschatological restored new humanity is christocentric. For further analysis of the new creation in Christ, see Lincoln, *Ephesians*, 143-44; O’Brien, *The Letter to the Ephesians*, 199-200. A. T. Lincoln explains, “The Church, to which the Gentile Christian readers now belong, is ‘one new person’ and through his death Christ is said to have created this one new person in himself (2.15). The corporate new humanity is embraced in Christ’s own person, and this notion appears to build on Paul’s Adamic Christology with its associated idea of Christ as inclusive representative of the new order, into whom believers are incorporated (cf. 1 Cor. 12.12, 13; 15.22, 45-9; Gal. 3.27, 28; Rom. 12.5; cf. also Col. 3.10, 11). The Church is a new creation which replaces the old order’s divided humanity of Jew and Gentile. The new person is not merely an amalgam of elements of the old in which the best of Judaism and the best of Gentile aspirations have been merged. Instead the previous ethnic and religious categories have been transcended.” Andrew T. Lincoln and A. J. M. Wedderburn, *The Theology of the Later Pauline Letters*, New Testament Theology (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1993), 94.

\(^{47}\)For discussion of the three prominent images of the church in union with Christ—the body of Christ, the temple of God, and marriage—see Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 20-21; Campbell, *Paul and Union with Christ*, 267-310, 331, 355-56, 373, 381-83; Thomas R. Schreiner, *New Testament Theology: Magnifying God in Christ* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2008), 714-19, and see 708, 752-53, for the church as the bride of Christ; Thompson, *The Church according to Paul*, 66-73, 202-13; Demarest, *The Cross and Salvation*, 331-33 (although he does not mention the church as the temple); Macaskill, *Union with Christ*, 147-71 (although he does not appeal to the imagery of marriage or bride); Son, *Corporate Elements*, 83-111, 121-37; and Ronald Y. K. Fung, “Some Pauline Pictures of the Church,” *EvQ* 43 (1981): 89-107. Besides these three, other corporate metaphors for union with Christ have been offered. Campbell, *Paul and Union with Christ*, 310-23, discusses the metaphor of new clothing with respect to the language of putting on Christ. While some describe adoption as a blessing of union with Christ or as a metaphor for
accomplishes reconciliation as both groups are made into one entity (Eph 2:14), one new man (2:15), and both form one body (Eph 2:16), a unified people where peace is established with God and each other.\textsuperscript{48} The body imagery is used for the church throughout Ephesians (Eph 1:22-23; 3:6; 4:4, 11-16; 5:23, 29-30) and Paul’s other writings (Rom 12:4-5; 1 Cor 10:16-17; 12:12-27). The human body metaphor highlights the organic nature of union with Christ, and in this context the unity of the church is stressed through Christ’s reconciling work on the cross as both Jews and Gentiles form one body along with the fact that they are fellow citizens and equally members of God’s household or family (Eph 2:19; cf. Eph 1:5; 4:6; Gal 6:10).

Additionally, although once aliens and strangers, Gentile believers are pieced together with Jewish believers into a single dwelling place, a holy temple “in the Lord” (Eph 2:21). Christ is the one “in whom” (Eph 2:21, 22) the whole temple building is being constructed and grows together.\textsuperscript{49} The mixture of building and organic images (cf. 4:15-16) emerges from the fact that the cornerstone (Christ; 2:20; cf. Isa 28:16), “unites the building because it is organically as well as structurally bound to it.”\textsuperscript{50} The mixed salvation, Vanhoozer, “From ‘Blessed in Christ,’” 21, lists adoption as a metaphor for union with Christ as saints participate in Christ’s sonship and are adopted into the family of God.

\textsuperscript{48}Campbell, \textit{Paul and Union with Christ}, 277-78, argues unconvincingly that “in one body” (Eph 2:16) refers to Christ’s crucified body, not to the church. Nevertheless, the presence of the adjective “one” strongly suggests that the parallel is to the one entity (Eph 2:14) and the one new man (2:15). Note also Col 3:15. Rightly, Son, \textit{Corporate Elements}, 95-96; Thielman, \textit{Ephesians}, 172; Lincoln, \textit{Ephesians}, 144-45; Arnold, \textit{Ephesians}, 165; Hoehner, \textit{Ephesians}, 382-83; O’Brien, \textit{The Letter to the Ephesians}, 201-2; Macaskill, \textit{Union with Christ}, 151; Yee, \textit{Jews, Gentiles and Ethnic Reconciliation}, 171; cf. 175-80.


metaphors not only affirms personal union with Christ as individual stones are added upon the temple building by the Spirit, nor just the union of believers with one another as they are joined and built together, but especially corporate union is highlighted as the whole construction, the church, is organically and structurally united to its cornerstone, Christ.51 By union with Christ and the filling actualized by the Spirit, the church is God’s new temple (cf. 1 Pet 2:5), the eschatological dwelling place of God that is the realization of what the OT Jerusalem temple anticipated. That former place of purification and sacrifice, where God’s presence was manifested, the locale where heaven and earth met, was first fulfilled in the incarnation, death, and resurrection of Christ and as Ephesians 2:21-22 makes clear, it is also fulfilled by those assembled in Christ. One other ecclesiological point may be observed from Paul’s corporate temple imagery in Ephesians 2:20-22. While Paul describes the local church or congregation as the temple of God (1 Cor 3:16-17; 2 Cor 6:16-7:152), here in Ephesians, the church as the “holy temple in the Lord” is not the universal or so-called “invisible” church, but is rather a

indwelling is a hope that will not be realized till some point in the future when the building is finished. . . . Viewed as the building the church is still under construction; viewed as a temple, however, it is an inhabited dwelling.” G. K. Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission: A Biblical Theology of the Dwelling Place of God, NSBT 17 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004), 263, observes that the growth of the temple occurs also in 1 Cor 3:6-7, 10, 12, 14, and is fitting since the borders of Eden’s and subsequent temples were to expand and grow until they reached the ends of the earth with God’s presence. 51See Peterson, “The New Temple,” 170; cf. 165 Note also Son, Corporate Elements, 133, 135-36.

While I am not able to develop in detail here, the significance of Paul’s use of the array of OT citations and allusions in 2 Cor 6:16-18 (see Lev 26:11-12 and Ezek 37:26-27 for 2 Cor 6:16; Isa 52:11; Ezek 11:17; 20:34, 41 for 2 Cor 6:17; and 2 Sam 7:13-14 for 2 Cor 6:18), especially the prophetic texts which looked forward to Israel’s restoration and new temple expectations, and the fact that all “these promises” (2 Cor 7:1) are directed to the Corinthian readers, demonstrate that the church is the end-time temple, the beginning fulfillment of the anticipated eschatological, restoration oriented promises concerning the post-exilic temple. See Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission, 253-56; Joshua M. Greever, “‘We Are the Temple of the Living God’ (2 Corinthians 6:14-7:1): The New Covenant as the Fulfillment of God’s Promise of Presence,” SBJET 19 (2015): 97-118; James M. Scott, “The Use of Scripture in 2 Corinthians 6:16c-18 and Paul’s Restoration Theology,” JSNT 56 (1994): 73-99; and David I. Starling, Not My People: Gentiles as Exiles in Pauline Hermeneutics, BZNW 184 (Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 2011), 61-106.
heavenly, eschatological entity.\textsuperscript{53} Based on their union with the risen and ascended Christ, believers are already seated with Christ in the heavenly sphere (Eph 2:5-6; cf. Col 2:12-13; 3:3), they are the new humanity which entails cosmic proportions (Eph 2:15), they have access to the heavenly Father through Christ (2:18), they are already citizens of the heavenly city-temple (2:19; cf. Phil 3:20; Gal 4:26), and they are unified together in experiencing the dwelling presence (Eph 2:22) of the God in heaven.\textsuperscript{54} The church participates in and manifests the worship of the glorified end-time congregation in the heavenly city (Heb 12:22-24) such that every gathering of the local church “may be regarded as an earthly expression of the heavenly church” even as the church anticipates the ultimate reality of the new Jerusalem in the new creation (Rev 21:1-4).\textsuperscript{55} Through

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{54}See Peterson, “The New Temple,” 171. Andrew T. Lincoln, \textit{Paradise Now and Not Yet: Studies in the Role of the Heavenly Dimension in Paul’s Thought with Special Reference to His Eschatology}, SNTSMS 43 (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1981), 149-50, rightly remarks, “What is of course distinctive about heaven being the place of the Church’s life in Paul’s thought is that this is totally dependent on his focus on Christ in heaven and the believer’s union with him and therefore participation in the life and reign which is his in the heavens.” Max Turner, “Mission and Meaning in Terms of ‘Unity’ in Ephesians,” in \textit{Mission and Meaning: Essays Presented to Peter Cotterell}, ed. Antony Billington, Tony Lane, and Max Turner (Carlisle, UK: Paternoster, 1995), 145, noting the eschatological perspective of Eph 2:19-22, finds that Gentiles are full members of God’s heavenly city-temple household and that to “say believers are already citizens of that temple city is to say that they now (in union with Christ) participate in that heavenly city, and that it shall finally be revealed and displace all that we know of as reality in this age” (emphasis original).
\item \textsuperscript{55}Peterson, “The New Temple,” 172, emphasis original. See also Robert Banks, \textit{Paul’s Idea of Community: The Early House Churches in their Historical Setting} (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1980), 43-51, as he argues that the idea of a “universal church” is not developed in Paul’s writings and “various local churches are tangible expressions of the heavenly church” as no suggestion can be found “of a visible, universal church to which local gatherings are related as the part to the whole” (p. 47).
\end{itemize}
union with Christ, “each church is the full manifestation in space and time of the one, true, heavenly, eschatological, new covenant church.”

Lastly, Ephesians 2:11-22 displays corporate union with Christ as comprehensively by nature a new covenant union. Throughout the pericope the problems Paul raises are resolved though union with Christ which is fleshed out in the context of new covenant realities. The plight of the Gentiles is covenantal, for they were separated from Israel’s messiah, excluded from citizenship with the people of God, strangers to Israel’s covenants, and outside of a covenant relationship with God (Eph 2:11-12). Moreover, the dilemma requires a covenantal solution in that the old covenant with its nationalistic orientation and slave-inducing stipulations not only divided Jews and Gentiles (2:13-15), but also estranged both groups from God (2:16-18; cf. 2:3). It is by the means of Christ’s death on the cross (2:13-16), itself a new covenant sacrifice, that the whole law-covenant is nullified and put to death so that both Gentile and Jewish believers are united into one and are reconciled to God in Christ, having peace. Moreover, the notion of peace is not generic, but is indicative of wholeness, a well-being that is characteristic of a covenant relationship. The repetition and prominence of the theme of peace in Ephesians 2:14-18 (explicitly mentioned in 2:14, 15, 17) and the modified

58Ibid., 77-79. Andrew T. Lincoln, “The Church and Israel in Ephesians 2,” CBQ 49 (1987): 613, comments that the author “does not spell out how it is that Israel too was alienated from God and needed reconciliation; but we should probably assume that . . . he believed that the law which separated Israel from the Gentiles had also come to separate Israel from God and to hold her in a state of slavery and condemnation (cf. Gal 3:10-22; 2 Cor 3:7-11; Rom 3:19-20; 7:7-25; 9:30-10:4).” See also, Thielman, Ephesians, 172-73; O’Brien, The Letter to the Ephesians, 202-3.
60O’Brien, The Letter to the Ephesians, 193, notes, “Paul employs the term ‘peace’ four times (vv. 14, 15, 17 [twice]), as well as the related motifs of reconciliation (v. 16), making the two into one (v. 14), creating one new humanity (v. 15), and gaining access to the Father in one Spirit (v. 18).”
citation of Isaiah 57:19 (note also Isa 52:7) in Ephesians 2:17 (and possible allusions to Isa 57:19 in Eph 2:13 and Isa 9:6 in Eph 2:14) indicates that the Isaianic covenant of peace (i.e., the new covenant; Isa 54:10; cf. 54:13; 55:12; Ezek 37:23-24, 26) which is secured by the suffering Servant’s death (see esp. Isa 53:5 with 57:19) and the accompanying themes of restoration, new exodus, and the reconstituted and faithful covenant community (including the inclusion of foreign nations) are all soteriological and eschatological realities for Paul that now define and identify Jewish and Gentile believers in union with Christ.61 Further, the mention of the Spirit as the place of access to God (Eph 2:18) and as the means God indwells the church (2:22) is contextually connected to

61See Greever, “The Nature of the New Covenant,” 80-83, and for the elements of Isaiah’s new exodus in Eph 2, see David Starling, “Ephesians and the Hermeneutics of the New Exodus,” in Reverberations of the Exodus in Scripture, ed. R. Michael Fox (Eugene, OR: Pickwick, 2014), 144-48. Also, Robert H. Suh, “The Use of Ezekiel 37 in Ephesians 2,” JETS 50 (2007): 715-33, finds a number of resonances and thematic affinities between Ezek 37 and Eph 2:11-22. There are significant interpretative difficulties with Isa 57:19. Some understand the “far” and the “near” to refer to Gentiles and Jews, respectively. So Thorsten Moritz, A Profound Mystery: The Use of the OT in Ephesians, NovTSup 85 (Leiden: Brill, 1996), 32-34, 45-55; Yee, Jews, Gentiles and Ethnic Reconciliation, 180-81; and similarly Thielman, Ephesians, 158, 174n33, and Frank S. Thielman, “Ephesians,” in Commentary on the New Testament Use of the Old Testament, ed. G. K. Beale and D. A. Carson (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2007), 817-18, although he qualifies this position by stating that it is the broader context (Isa 55:5; 56:6-8), not the immediate context of Isa 57, that suggests a reference to Gentiles is in the background. If this is the case, then Paul’s use of Isa 57:19 is straightforward as Isaiah’s restoration prophecy of the unification of Israel with other peoples is realized in the gospel. However, many others take the “far” and the “near” to refer to Jews in the dispersion and the “near” to refer to Jews in the land. So Lincoln, Ephesians, 146-47; O’Brien, The Letter to the Ephesians, 207; Arnold, Ephesians, 156, 166; Hoehner, Ephesians, 386-87; Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 258-59; cf. 116-20; and Starling, Not My People, 167-94, esp. 178-79. If the latter interpretation is correct, then the proposal by Starling, Not My People, 193 (cf. 201), is attractive since new exodus typology is in play as the Gentiles are in solidarity with Jews in their spiritual death such that “Gentiles can find themselves addressed in a promise originally given to exiled Israelites because the predicament of exile which the promises addressed corresponded so precisely with their own predicament as Gentiles, spiritually dead and far off from God.” Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 258-59, also finds that the substitution of Gentiles for the far off, distant Israelites in Eph 2:17 “does little violence to the Isaianic source” given that all the parties were at one time removed from God’s presence “until he actually creates shalom between them and himself. Furthermore, the proximity of Israel-nations unification in Ephesians 2:14b-16 amplifies Isaiah’s implicit unification of Israel, so that it now becomes explicit that reconciliation and shalom between Israel and God is likewise fused to reconciliation and shalom within Israel. In this sense, for the author of Ephesians Isaiah’s intimacy with God is expressed in terms of his audience’s unification with Jewish believers. That is, Christ is ‘our’ shalom (v. 14a) in that he reconciles believers into the eschatological new humanity of Israel and also reconciles this christocentrically reconstituted Israel to God, with both dimensions being bound up as one act of reconciliation” (emphasis original). Contra, Hoehner, Ephesians, 387, who argues that Paul implements the imagery of Isa 57:19, but not its meaning.
union with Christ. This also reveals that another new covenant reality—the promise of the Spirit (e.g., Ezek 36:26-27; Isa 32:15; 44:3)—is coordinate with the privileged nature of the believers’ new situation in Christ. God’s eschatological temple now formed via union with Christ (Eph 2:21-22) also reflects the new covenant restoration hopes involving God’s residence among his reconstituted people (see Ezek 37:26-28). The establishment of eschatological peace, the inclusion of Gentiles into God’s new humanity, and the corporate conjoining of Jews and Gentiles as God’s holy temple all indicate that the OT prophecies involving the end-time gathering of the nations with Israel in unified worship at the Jerusalem temple (Isa 56:3-8; 66:18-20; cf. Isa 2:1-5; Mic 4:1-5) have come to fulfillment through Christ’s work on the cross, a realization now occurring for those in solidarity with Christ.

62Arnold, Ephesians, 163, 167-68, 173; see also Lincoln, Ephesians, 149-50, 158-59. Cole, He Who Gives Life, 220, describes the Holy Spirit as the designer of the church’s unity in Christ and “it is through Christ but in or by the one Spirit . . . that both Jewish and Gentile believers have access to the Father (Eph. 2:18).” Cole also provides a helpful overview of the Holy Spirit’s role in Israel’s eschatological hopes in the re-creation of God’s people, the outpouring of the Spirit on God’s end-time people, and the Spirit’s connection to a new creation (pp. 131-41).

63See Greever, “The Nature of the New Covenant,” 84. Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 259 observes that in being called God’s “holy temple” and “dwelling,” the church is not just restored humanity, but evinces restored creation as well.

64McKelvey, The New Temple, 111-12; O’Brien, The Letter to the Ephesians, 212-13, 220; Thielman, Ephesians, 184; Thielman, “Ephesians,” 818; Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission, 260-63; Peterson, “The New Temple,” 172. Starling, “Ephesians and the Hermeneutics,” 147, asserts, “Sanctuary imagery of these verses [(Eph 2:21-22)] is another echo of the exodus and new exodus narratives of the Old Testament, in which the story of Israel’s salvation culminates in them being brought (back) into the sanctuary of the promised land (e.g., Exod 15:17; Ezek 37:26-27; Zech 2:10-12).” For focused treatments of the church’s relationship to Israel in Eph 2:11-22, see Lincoln, “The Church and Israel,” 607-17; and Curt Niccum, “Heaven Can’t Wait: The Church in Ephesians and Colossians,” in The New Testament Church, 130-47, esp. 131-37. Overall, Eph 2:11-22 confirms that the church is the restored, eschatological Israel, the new creation in Christ. As Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 261, notes, in Eph 2:11-22 the author “views the accomplishment of God’s purposes within human history in terms of Israel-nations unification, that is, the restoration of humanity, and also in terms of the restoration of creation—of which the new humanity is not just constitutive, but which it is (metaphorically) christocentrically identified! This state of affairs is marked by a saturation of shalom, both within humanity and between humanity and God (vv. 14, 15, 17 x 2). . . . [A]ll this is the eschatological realization of Scripture, the fulfillment for Israel of God’s promises to Israel, regarding Israel.” Cf. Schreiner, New Testament Theology, 715-16.
The death of Christ has conferred a new eschatological status upon his followers. Races and ethnicities continue, but the church is the new humanity, the one body of Christ, and God’s holy temple – his dwelling place – which means that the Jew-Gentile divisions and distinctions are past, for the unification of Jews and Gentiles through union with Christ means that race “has lost it determinative religious significance (cf. Gal. 3.28; Col. 3.11; Rom. 10.12). What matters now is not whether a person belongs to this race or that but whether or not he is a member of the new society, the people of God who have come into being with the death (and resurrection) of Christ.”

A person becomes a member of this new society through a covenantal union with Christ and similarly, Ephesians 2:11-22 also shows that the church is to be understood as the community in new covenant union with Christ.

**Theological Synthesis of Christ’s Relation to the Church for Systems of Theology**

The aim of the first section of this chapter was to examine the Christ-church relationship with concentration upon union with Christ for the purposes of informing the broader topic of the Israel-Christ-church relationship. The union with Christ theme in the NT has many dimensions and here the surface has only been scratched, but observations on the scope, soteriological aspects, and nature of the individual believer’s and the church’s participation and incorporation into Christ reveal a symmetry. The same truths for the individual believer in their union with Christ also appear with respect to the church. These findings have significant theological import for systems of theology in terms of how they formulate their ecclesiology with respect to union with Christ.

**Theological implications for dispensationalism.** At the center of dispensational thought is the distinction between Israel and the church with OT promises

---

remaining for national Israel. What is not clear is how the church’s union with Christ fits within this theological framework. Union with Christ functions as the fulfillment of OT covenantal themes.⁶⁶ Israel was God’s covenant nation, but now through union with Christ, it is the church, the new covenant community of Jews and Gentiles, that is God’s holy and covenant nation (1 Pet 2:9). Further, union with Christ is not just soteriological, but eschatological. With the coming of Christ in the fullness of time and in these last days and based on the salvation and new covenant blessings he has secured through the cross, there is now nothing left outside of Christ—all the OT promises and new covenant benefits are found in Christ and are enjoyed through him. These blessings in him are eschatological, for being adopted in Christ, a son of God through Christ, a co-heir in Christ, a kingdom citizen, possessing salvation as one redeemed and counted righteous in Christ, and being indwelt by the Spirit all carry eschatological overtones now that the new covenant era is manifested. To argue that national Israel will be restored in the future with a unique identity is to miss the point, because the only identity that matters to the NT authors is whether one is identified with Christ and thereby, a member of the church, the body of Christ, God’s new temple, and one new humanity. Israel’s long anticipated salvation and restoration, including the ingathering of the nations, and Israel’s structures (e.g., sacrificial system, temple, priesthood) have all culminated in Israel’s antitype, Christ and are now the exclusive benefits of those incorporated into and represented by Christ.

Secondly, union with Christ impinges on the dispensational emphasis placed on the promised land and the notion of a re-built temple in the millennium. Vanhoozer, in his study on union with Christ and topology, concludes that the “church is the place ‘in Christ’ where all of God’s promises are fulfilled.”⁶⁷ All the important and holy physical

---

⁶⁶ Tim Ward, “The Union of the Believer with Christ in Paul,” in In Christ Alone, 43-44; see also Macaskill, Union with Christ.

places for Israel, specifically, the land, Jerusalem, and the temple, are all typologically fulfilled in Christ and therefore, God no longer resides there but he is now covenantally present wherever the church of Christ may be found. Alistair Donaldson rightly states, “To be in Christ is therefore now the ‘place’ of inheritance and where the blessing of life—i.e., the kingdom of God—are experienced.” The blessings once promised through the land are now found in Christ. In addition, the prophetic hopes involving the temple of Jerusalem are fulfilled by Christ and those who are being built into God’s holy temple in him (Eph 2:20-22; 1 Pet 2:4-8). God no longer dwells among his people in a physical structure, rather, eschatological fulfillment has arrived as God dwells within his people through Christ and by the agency of the Spirit. All that the Jerusalem temple looked forward to is now enjoyed in Christ; positing any theological significance for a future temple in Jerusalem is a hermeneutical mistake.

Lastly, the study of corporate union with Christ featured the covenantal unity of the church, especially in consideration of Ephesians 2:11-22. There are no unique promises or benefits for Jewish believers, for Paul teaches that Jews and Gentiles are one body and one new humanity in Christ. Gentiles have been brought near and are now fellow citizens, members of God’s household, built together with Jewish believers as people through “spiritual union with Jesus Christ as it bears conscious witness to Him. Israel retains its status as the people of God in its physical union with Christ and unconsciously bears testimony to Christ in its history” (25). However, where is this spiritual/physical dichotomy of union with Christ delineated in the NT? Union with Christ and the blessings entailed therein are comprehensively presented in the NT as directed toward those, whether Jews or Gentiles, who have faith in Jesus Christ.


God’s end-time temple, and fellow heirs and partakers of promise (Eph 3:6). All the blessings and promises of the new covenant brought about through the cross are equally received by Jewish and Gentile Christians. Joshua Greever is surely correct when he finds that “Paul’s teaching concerning the ‘one new man’ in Christ suggests there is a unified people of God reconstituted along the lines of faith in Christ, as opposed to distinct peoples of God within the same covenant community.” Jews and Gentiles in union with Christ together are the eschatological new humanity in Christ, sharing in the same privileges and responsibility of citizenship (Eph 2:12, 19), having the same identity and function in Christ, and both experience not just the same salvific benefits, but equally possess all that was Israel’s and more (Eph 2:14-22). Gentiles do not become incorporated into national Israel, more significantly, they are made one with Jewish Christians in the new covenant community, the renewed and eschatological Israel, the people of God in Christ.

**Theological implications for covenant theology.** Covenant theologians have produced robust theologies of union with Christ. However, the commitment to the

---


71Greever, “The Nature of the New Covenant,” 89n29. Contra Robert L. Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism: The Interface Between Dispensational and Non-Dispensational Theology (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1993), 218, as he wrongly distinguishes Israel’s and the church’s identity and kingdom function and yet postulates that they share in the same salvation of God and serve in the one kingdom. It is difficult to not view two peoples of God with this formulation and Saucy clearly does not have a robust understanding of union with Christ. Earlier in his book, Saucy does conduct an analysis of Eph 2:11-22 (see pp. 158-62), but he does not concentrate on the importance of union with Christ and fails to discuss how the church is the new humanity and the eschatological significance of the Jew-Gentile unity, especially as they are the new temple. Gentiles are no longer strangers to Israel’s covenants. Carl B. Hoch, Jr., “The New Man of Ephesians 2,” in Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church: The Search for Definition, ed. Craig A. Blaising and Darrell L. Bock (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1992), 98-126, provides a thorough treatment of Eph 2:11-22. Nevertheless, Hoch’s three-fold structure of the new man in Christ as anthropological, ecclesiological, and ethical (pp. 116-20), excludes the eschatological significance of the church as God’s new humanity in the fullness of the times (Eph 1:9-10). While Hoch recognizes areas of continuity and discontinuity between Israel and the church (p. 126), he misses how the church transcends both Israel and Gentile entities as the eschatological people of God. This is similarly noticeable in Taylor, “The Continuity of the People of God,” 14.
covenant of grace framework results in understanding the church as having the same composition as OT Israel, made-up of believers and unbelievers. The corporate images of union with Christ (the church as the body, bride, and temple of Christ) are not neglected in covenant theology, yet, covenant theologians have not adequately considered the correlation of the NT’s presentation of individual and corporate union with Christ.\(^72\) The descriptions and language for the individual believer’s incorporation into Christ and salvation correspond to how the church is presented in union with Christ. The objective work of the cross applied to the believers is also applied to the whole covenant community. As I have sought to show, the scope, soteriological aspects, and nature of union with Christ with respect to the individual believer categorically matches with how the church is described. Stephen Wellum is correct when he states, “To be ‘in Christ’ (and thus in the new covenant, a member of his *ekklesia*) means that one is a regenerate believer. The NT knows nothing of one who is ‘in Christ’ who is not regenerate, effectually called by the Father, born of the Spirit, justified, holy, and awaiting glorification.”\(^73\) The NT presents the new covenant people of God as those who are faithful, unified with Christ. Paul did not just contemplate an aggregate of believers as being in Christ, he also asserted that entire churches, local congregations, as being in Christ (1 Cor 1:2; Gal 1:22; Eph 1:1; Phil 1:1; 1 Thess 1:1; 2:14; 2 Thess 1:1).

In considering Ephesians 2:11-22, the view that the church is a mixed community of covenant keepers and breakers will not stand. As Greever again helpfully points out,

\(^72\)For example, Horton, *The Christian Faith*, 587-619, 724-27, 733-37, considers union with Christ and discusses corporate metaphors of union with Christ (bride and body of Christ), but he does not examine the correlation between the believer’s union with Christ with the church’s union with Christ in the areas I have outlined. Likewise, Louis Berkhof, *Systematic Theology*, rev. ed. (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1996), 447-53. Murray, *Redemption Accomplished*, 161-73, discusses union of Christ with respect to believers, but his findings are not brought to bear on the nature of the church.

all members of the new covenant community have been reconciled to God through
the death of Christ (2:13, 16). In Paul’s theology, to be a member of the new covenant
community is to be at peace with God, for the covenant is defined as a “covenant of
peace.” To be a member of this new covenant is to be a member of the “one new
man,” all of whom have put on Christ (2:15; cf. 4:22-24). To be part of God’s
household is to be part of God’s temple and thus to have unhindered access into his
presence by the Spirit (2:18-22; cf. Isa 56:6-7). . . . Now that the new covenant has
dawned in Christ, Paul does not regard Gentiles in the new covenant as truly
“uncircumcised” any longer, for the inward circumcision of the heart to which
physical circumcision pointed has become a reality for them in the new covenant
community (cf. Col 2:11 [and Eph 2:11]). . . . This community-wide circumcision of
the heart is the mark of membership in God’s people, a people defined not by
genealogy and ethnicity but by regenerate hearts.  

Moreover, Paul presented the church in Ephesians 2:11-22 as the body of
Christ and as the holy temple, marked by the presence of the Holy Spirit. These images
indicate that the new covenant community is made-up of believers only, for how can an
unbeliever be a member in Christ’s body or how can the temple contain stones that are
not conjoined to Christ? The church is also God’s new humanity, the new creation in
Christ, but such a portrayal assumes that the church as a whole consists of people
represented by the last and final Adam.

Lastly, appeals to a visible-invisible church distinction are misguided. Certainly there are spurious professions and unbelieving people do gather with God’s people for corporate worship, but such is actually irrelevant to the nature of the church since John makes a distinction between those who are “with us” versus those who persevere and show that they were “of us.” The presentation of the church in Ephesians 2:20-22 and in other texts (Col 1:18; Heb 12:22-24) suggests that new covenant congregations, unlike Israel of old, are the extensions and expressions of the one

---

74 Greever, “The Nature of the New Covenant,” 86-87, emphasis original.
75 See Hammett, Biblical Foundations, 83.
76 E.g., Berkhof, Systematic Theology, 565-67.
heavenly, eschatological, and spiritual church of Christ. This assumes the church is a regenerate community and that the “visible” local church is not by nature a mixture of believers and unbelievers.\textsuperscript{78} In the end, covenant theology fails to integrate the NT’s teaching of union with Christ in their doctrine of the nature of the church.

**The Church as the Renewed Israel: The Israel-Church Relationship in Typological Perspective**

In chapter 5, the Israel-Christ typological relationship was evaluated and in the first part of this chapter the church’s relationship to Christ was explored in terms of union with Christ. The last area of inquiry in thinking through the Israel to Christ to church framework is to explore how Israel relates to the church. Through Christ, the bond between OT Israel and the church is typological. Since the typological relationship features correspondence (continuity) but also escalation and eschatological advance (discontinuity), the theological entailment is that the strict continuity between Israel and the church offered by covenant theologians and the strong separation of the two entities which defines dispensationalism are both to be rejected. The typological relationship is through Christ as one must never lose sight of the fact that even though there has always been one people of God ontologically, Christ is the key link in the chain or the hinge upon which there is redemptive historical development and progress as the people of God goes from national Israel to an international, eschatological community of believers in Christ—the church. The burden of this section is to show that the Israel-church relationship is typological in the traditional sense of typology (see chapter 2). Schreiner and Caneday correctly pinpoint the importance of this point:

> We need to recognize the typological relationship between Israel and the church, because the New Testament distinguishes the two as shadow is to reality. According to Paul’s theology, Israel was unfaithful and rebellious, but the church is obedient and submissive to Christ (Rom 3:3; 1 Cor 10:1-13; Eph 5:22-33). Israel descended

ethnically from Abraham, but all who are in Christ are Abraham’s spiritual descendants (Rom 2:25-3:9; Gal 3:29).  

In investigating the Israel-church typological relationship via Christ, the focus will be on texts and themes that explicate the nature of the church as the antitype of national Israel and additionally, on passages that have significant implications for understanding the church as the renewed and restored Israel. First, the two passages of Scripture where the Israel-church relationship feature typological correspondences, 1 Peter 2:4-10 and 1 Corinthians 10:1-13, will be examined. Further, a brief summation of the church as Abraham’s true offspring, the children of God, along with the church as God’s flock will also indicate the eschatological advance between Israel and the church within a typological structure. Finally, a consideration of Galatians 6:16 is offered as this important text, although highly debated and not specifically featuring an Israel-church typology, still links the church to Israel and has implications for the Israel-Christ-church relationship.

Before moving to the Israel-church typology, one noteworthy observation that cannot be developed here is with respect to Jesus’ selection of the twelve disciples. It is extremely likely the twelve disciples symbolize the twelve tribes and represent the remnant of Israel, the renewed Israel that is reconstituted around Jesus. The eschatological

---


restoration has begun in embryonic form and the twelve disciples are significant in establishing the nucleus of the restored Israel (Luke 6:12-16; cf. Eph 2:20). Further, although Judas had to be replaced in accordance to Scripture (Acts 1:20; Ps 109:8), the election of Matthias (Acts 1:21-26) does not just complete the circle of the twelve in their capacity as witnesses of Jesus’ resurrection, although that is crucial. But Matthias’ selection is also necessary in completing the role of the twelve over the eschatological Israel (Luke 22:30) and especially for how Luke unfolds Israel’s restoration in Acts. The reestablishing of the representative and symbolic function of the twelve as the core of the restored Israel is critical before the outpouring of the Spirit at Pentecost. The link between the twelve tribes and the twelve apostles is explicit in Revelation 21:12-14 where the people of God are presented as complete and finished, depicted as a new Jerusalem with the name of the twelve tribes on the gates and the names of the twelve apostles on the twelve foundations. (Matt 10:1-4) echoes Moses’s election of tribal leaders in Num 1:5. Second, the correspondence to the twelve patriarchs is explicit in Matt 19:28.

81Eckhard J. Schnabel, “Apostle,” in Dictionary of Jesus and the Gospels, 2nd ed., ed. Joel B. Green, Jeannine K. Brown, and Nicholas Perrin (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2013), 34-45, esp. 43-44; Leonhard Goppelt, Typos: The Typological Interpretation of the Old Testament in the New, trans. Donald H. Madvig (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1982), 107-8. Goppelt states, “Jesus creates the new people of God in that he, like God, calls from the crowd the twelve who follow him in continuous fellowship and he sends them forth to gather the twelve tribes. They are the representatives of and the active nucleus for the formation of the twelve new tribes” (Typos, 108). Ladd, A Theology of the New Testament, 107, also finds that the “[r]ecognition that the twelve were meant to constitute the nucleus of the true Israel does not exclude the view that the number 12 also involved a claim upon the entire people as Jesus’ qāḥāl. Twelve as a symbolic number looks both backward and forward: backward to the old Israel and forward to the eschatological Israel. . . . By the acted parable of choosing the twelve, Jesus taught that he was raising up a new congregation to displace the nation that was rejecting his message” (emphasis original).

The emphasis is on the twelve apostles as the foundation of the church (see Rev 21:19-20). G. K. Beale rightly observes that the apostles as the foundation of the city and the names of the twelve tribes on the gates is the opposite of what one would have expected “since Israel preceded the church in redemptive history. But the reversal figuratively highlights the fact that fulfillment of Israel’s promises has finally come in Christ, who together with the apostolic witness to his fulfilling work, forms the foundation of the new temple, the church, which is the new Israel. . . .” Having briefly discussed the movement from Israel to Jesus and his appointment of the twelve disciples as the foundation of the renewed Israel, I turn now to examine the typological relationship between Israel and the church.

First Peter 2:4-10: The Church as the Renewed Israel in Christ

One significant passage that highlights how the church is the antitype of Israel through Jesus is 1 Peter 2:4-10. From the very beginning of the epistle, Peter identifies his primarily Gentile audience with language of exile and diaspora, imagery of OT Israel now applied to the eschatological people of God. The prophets anticipated and foresaw

---

84 First Pet 1:14, 18, 21; 4:2-4, indicate the original readers were predominantly Gentile, and yet the exilic language associates them with Israel as does the term Gentiles which refers to non-Christian outsiders in 1 Pet 2:12, so Richard Bauckham, “James, 1 Peter, Jude, and 2 Peter,” in A Vision for the Church: Studies in Early Christian Ecclesiology in Honour of J. P. M. Sweet, ed. Marcus Bockmuehl and Michael B. Thompson (Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1997), 160-61. The majority view is that the recipients of Peter’s letter were primarily Gentile as the verses cited reference sins and vices typical of Gentile pagans. See
the salvation to come in the Christ and such prophecies not only apply to the church, but were specifically intended for the church (1 Pet 1:10-12). In 1 Peter 2:4-10, the identity and function of the church is presented in a way to indicate that the church is the fulfillment of Israel through Christ.85 Jesus, the resurrected messiah (1 Pet 1:21; cf. 1:3; 3:18), is the “living stone” and the cornerstone laid in Zion (2:4, 6; cf. Isa 8:14-15; 28:16; Ps 118:22; Matt 21:42-44). Those conjoined to him by faith are the “living stones” of God’s “spiritual house” or new temple (cf. 2 Sam 7:13; 1 Kgs 3:2). The church is “being built up”86 by God (cf. Matt 16:18) for the purpose of serving as priests to offer spiritual
sacrifices (1 Pet 2:5; cf. Eph 2:20-22). The implication is that the “temple in Jerusalem is no longer the center of God’s purposes; rather, the church of Jesus Christ, composed of believers . . . constitutes the temple of God.” Through union with Christ, what is true of Christ (the “living stone,” 1 Pet 2:4, the elect and precious cornerstone, v. 6) is true of the church (the “living stones,” the building which takes it shape from the cornerstone and forms God’s elect race). By being in solidarity with the vindicated and resurrected Lord (vv. 6-7), God’s new temple and household of believers takes on Israel’s identity and role in a heightened, eschatological sense. Furthermore, the church is not just the new

---

87For further on the church as the “spiritual house” (1 Pet 2:5) in the sense that the church is where the Holy Spirit dwells and is present, along with the reference of “house” being a description of the church as God’s new temple given the context of the “stone” complex, priesthood, and sacrifices, see Achtemeier, 1 Peter, 155-56, 158-59; Doering, “You are a Chosen Stock,” 255-56; Ernest Best, “1 Peter II 4-10—A Reconsideration,” NovT 11 (1969): 270-93, esp. 280; Mary Jo Bailey Wells, God’s Holy People: A Theme in Biblical Theology, JSOTSup 305 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic, 2000), 216-17; Andrew M. Mbuvi, Temple, Exile and Identity in 1 Peter, LNTS 345 (New York: T & T Clark, 2007), 90-95; Peter H. Davids, The First Epistle of Peter, NICNT (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1990), 86-87; contra John H. Elliott, 1 Peter, Anchor Bible, vol. 37b (New York: Doubleday, 2000), 414-18, who unpersuasively argues that “house” refers to household or family in 1 Pet 2:5 with no allusion to the temple. The connection of the spiritual house with the temple of Jerusalem is further underscored by 1 Pet 2:6 with the cornerstone being laid in Zion which also conjures up ideas of the temple. Dan G. McCartney, “House, Spiritual House,” in Dictionary of the Later New Testament and its Developments, ed. Ralph P. Martin and Peter H. Davids (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 1997), 507-11, thinks that both temple and family/household ideas are merged together in 1 Pet 2:5 (see p. 510). Clearly the imagery of a building made up of stones on the foundation of Christ indicates that the temple reference is foremost. McCartney helpfully observes that the “spiritual house” is permanent and not a temporary arrangement until a proper temple can be reconstituted (see p. 511).

88Schreiner, New Testament Theology, 744. Similarly, Richard T. France, “First Century Bible Study: Old Testament Motifs in 1 Peter 2:4-10,” JEPTA 28 (1998): 35, writes, “The house of God is no longer a building in Jerusalem, but is made up of living stones who themselves had no part in national Israel, but who through being ‘built upon’ Jesus have inherited Israel’s privileged place as the locus of God’s true worship and presence on earth.” Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 741, notes that the “building of the latter-day temple was to occur in conjunction with other restoration promises and was one of the telltale signs that the restoration was commencing.” Mbuvi, Temple, Exile and Identity, 94-95, and Wells, God’s Holy People, 217, also find typological fulfillment as the OT physical temple pointed to the new eschatological reality, the church. For general discussion of typology in 1 Pet 2:4-10, see Goppelt, Typos, 153-55.

89Peterson, “The New Temple,” 172, rightly describes the church from this passage in 1 Peter as “the community of all who have come to Christ and fulfil the role of eschatological Israel. However, this new people of God is not simply an earthly entity, with its locus in Jerusalem or Rome or anywhere else. Its locus is in heaven because it consists of those who have been brought by faith to the resurrected and exalted Christ (2:4-5; cf. 3:21-22).” Similarly, John H. Elliott, The Elect and the Holy: An Exegetical Examination of 1 Peter 2:4-10 and the Phrase βασίλειον ἱεράτευμα, NovTSup 12 (Leiden: Brill, 1966; repr., Eugene
temple that the OT physical temple foreshadowed, but is also the priests who serve and minister in the temple. The church is corporately God’s priesthood and as such the church communicates God’s glory to the nations (2:7) and mediates God’s blessings in the world (cf. vv. 5, 9) through Jesus Christ.90

The theological conclusion to be drawn from 1 Peter 2:4-5, is that while Peter employs OT cultic imagery to describe the church (temple, priesthood, sacrifices) that link the church back to OT Israel, his description of the nature of the new covenant community is markedly different than national Israel. The church consists of believers who have come to Jesus (2:4) and who are “living stones” that are unified together as the eschatological temple, a community who in totality is indwelt by the Spirit (2:5; cf. 1:2; 4:14) and not just comprised of Spirit-filled individuals, and that is uniformly a holy priesthood that offers acceptable spiritual sacrifices through Christ. Such things could not be said of the old covenant community of Israel. The nation of Israel was not a holy priesthood or a spiritual temple and their animal sacrifices were often not accompanied by a whole-hearted devotion or done so in the power of the Spirit. The whole new covenant community is incorporated into Christ with each member being a living stone in the spiritual house. The church is also the holy priesthood “which takes the place of the Levitical priesthood of the old temple.”91 The eschatological advance or heightening characteristic of the Israel-church typology is further elucidated and made explicit in the following verses.

OR: Wipf & Stock, 2005), 198, writes, “All that has been anticipated aforetime under the Old Dispensation has now reached its culmination in the union between the Elect Stone and the Elect Race.”

90The spiritual sacrifices in 1 Pet 2:5 are not just the proclamation of God’s excellencies though, for surely spiritual sacrifices entail everything that is pleasing to God in one’s conduct and dedication to God by the sanctifying work of the Spirit (cf. Rom 12:1; Heb 9:13-14; 12:28-29; 13:15-16). See Peterson, “The New Temple,” 174-75; Wells, God’s Holy People, 219-21; Schreiner, 1, 2 Peter, Jude, 107-8; Karen H. Jobes, 1 Peter, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2005), 150-51. For a helpful biblical theological treatment of priesthood from the OT to Christ as the eschatological priest and the priesthood of all believers that supersedes the OT priesthood through union with Christ, see Alex T. M. Cheung, “The Priest as the Redeemed Man: A Biblical-Theological Study of Priesthood,” JETS 29 (1986): 265-75.

91France, “First Century Bible Study,” 35.
First Peter 2:6-8 reveals how Christ as the divine and eschatological cornerstone divides people into two groups, unbelievers and those who constitute the church, believers. The emphatic contrast between the status of unbelievers and believers is further highlighted as Peter describes the church as God’s chosen race, royal priesthood, holy nation, special possession, and the people God has claimed through his remarkable mercy (2:9-10).92 These titles of the church are characteristic of its present status since the eschatological salvation is already achieved through Jesus Christ (v. 10): “It is Jesus Christ and the bond of faith which determine and acknowledge the eschatological present and the ascription of titles of election.”93 The OT language that Peter alludes to in verse 9 and 10 is from Exodus 19:5-6; Isaiah 43:20-21; and Hosea 2:23. Exodus 19:6 is Israel’s charter statement when it was constituted as God’s people following the exodus and as such features the divine goal of the covenant relationship: if Israel obeys God’s covenant then they would be God’s treasured possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation. Peter applies these designations to the church because they are the people of the new exodus.94 The Israel and exodus typology is also evident from Isaiah 43:20-21 (cf. Isa 43:16-19) as God’s chosen race is depicted coming out of the Babylonian exile with overtones of new creation. Regardless of ethnic background, the church is now the true race, the antitypical descendants of Abraham, that God redeems through the lamb of the greater exodus (see 1

---

92For discussion of these OT titles and allusions of Israel and their application to the church, see D. A. Carson, “1 Peter,” in Commentary on the New Testament Use of the Old Testament, 1030-33; Elliott, The Elect and the Holy, 38-47; Achtemeier, 1 Peter, 163-68. In regard to the church being a royal priesthood, Mbuvi, Temple, Exile and Identity, 107, observes, “For Ezekiel, the foreigner could not present offerings at the temple nor even serve as a priest [Ezek 44:6-16]. 1 Peter reverses the edict and without apology regards the Gentile believers as part of the new ‘holy’ and ‘royal’ priesthood. Second, we note that 1 Peter does not seem to leave room at all for any other special lineage of priests, Levitical or otherwise. The believers constitute the new priesthood.” These changes from the OT administration to the NT arrangement can only be possible in light of the work of Christ.

93Elliott, The Elect and the Holy, 47. See also Wells, God’s Holy People, 221, 224.

94Bauckham, “James, 1 Peter,” 161; Carson, “1 Peter,” 1030-31; Schreiner, New Testament Theology, 743; cf. Wells, God’s Holy People, 222; Jobes, 1 Peter, 158-59.
Pet 1:19; cf. Isa 53:7; note 1 Pet 1:2 with Exod 24:6-8). Lastly, Peter’s use of Hosea 2:23 (cf. Hos 1:9-11) in 1 Peter 2:9-10 indicates that God’s mercy on the church fulfills Hosea’s restoration prophecy. In the context of Hosea, God has disowned Israel because of her idolatry and spiritual adultery. Israel is no longer the covenant people; they are “not my people,” becoming just like a Gentile nation, cut off from the promises. In Hosea 2:23, however, God promises to mercifully restore this faithless, gentile-like nation. According to Peter, the prophecy regarding God’s “Gentile” people returning and becoming his people once again is understood to be typologically fulfilled as God’s mercy is extended to the church, including those who really are Gentiles.95 Throughout this passage, Peter is making it clear that “the privileges belonging to Israel now belong to Christ’s church. The church does not replace Israel, but it does fulfill the promises made to Israel; and all those, Jews and Gentiles, who belong to Christ are now part of the new people of God.”96

95Carson, “1 Peter,” 1031-32. See also Jobes, 1 Peter, 163-64; Schreiner, 1, 2 Peter, Jude, 114. Carson, “1 Peter,” 1032, helpfully observes, “The logic of the situation—that if the ancient covenant people have become ‘Gentiles,’ then perhaps God’s mercy may extend to those who are (racially) Gentiles—breeds a second line of thought: God’s merciful handling of his own ‘Gentile’ people becomes an action, a pattern, a ‘type,’ of his handling of even more Gentiles.” Bauckham, “James, 1 Peter,” 161, also notes that Peter’s “image of ‘new birth (1.3; 23), effected by God’s word which also accomplishes the new Exodus (1 Pet. 1.24-25; Isa 40.7-8), is probably also to be connected with the prophecy of Hosea. This new birth makes those who previously were not God’s people ‘children of the living God’ (Hos 1:10).” The usage of Hos 1:10; 2:23 is also applied by Paul in Rom 9:23-26. For discussion, see Beale, A New Testament Biblical Theology, 705-8. Davids, The First Epistle of Peter, 93, writes, “Unlike Israel these Christians never experienced themselves as unfaithful to the covenant, but they did realize that were once outside God’s favor, that is, rejected.”

96Schreiner, 1, 2 Peter, Jude, 115. Likewise, Wells, God’s Holy People, 227, concludes, “Not only are Christians given the title λαός (‘people’), which previously served as the ethnic (as well as theological) designation for Jewish Israel; they are also termed (far more specifically) a γένος (‘race’) despite the fact that they are drawn from many nations. This makes the point even more emphatically: that ethnic boundaries are superseded. Prerequisites for belonging to the eschatological λαός are no longer historical or genetic but purely religious: belief in Jesus the Christ.” Cf. Goppelt, Typos, 140-41, 154-55. Contra, Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 205-6, and W. Edward Glenny, “The Israelite Imagery of 1 Peter 2,” in Dispensationalism, Israel and the Church, 156-87. Curiously, Glenny recognizes the typological patterns in 1 Pet 2:4-10, including the element of escalation and advancement intrinsic to typological relationships, but he then nullifies these typological links when he concludes that these typological patterns do “not negate the future fulfillment of the national, political, and geographic promises . . . made to Israel in these [OT] contexts” (p. 187). If so, Peter’s usage of these texts are purely analogical, not typological. As I have argued, these OT texts featuring Israel’s national/political identity and role which Peter directly applies to the church through Christ are typological because of the fulfillment accomplished by Christ as he establishes the prophesied true temple and executes the new exodus. Glenny is also
The implications of 1 Peter 2:4-10 are significant for systems of theology. For Peter, the church is the eschatological people of God that is inextricably linked to the promises and heritage of OT Israel. A variety of OT typological patterns converge in this passage as Peter teaches that the church is the new temple, the new priesthood, and via the new exodus in Christ (Isa 43:20-21; Hos 2:15, 23; cf. Exod 19:1-6) the church is the fulfillment of OT Israel in being the elect race, holy nation, and the people (λαός; 1 Pet 2:9-10; cf. Deut 4:20; 14:2; Heb 2:7; 4:9) set aside for God’s special possession. Further, the church carries out the task that Israel was originally assigned in the aftermath of the Babylonian exile (Isa 43:21): declaring God’s praises and his mighty acts of salvation and transformation (1 Pet 2:9). Dispensationalism fails to account for the typological fulfillments presented in this passage. Peter identifies the church as the restored and renewed Israel through Christ. The church is now God’s people (2:10) because of their faith union with the eschatological cornerstone that has been laid in Zion (2:6). The privileges and identity of Israel are now the church’s in an escalated and heightened sense through the living stone—Jesus Christ—and the salvation he has accomplished in the last days (1:20-21). If there was to be a future restoration of national and political Israel, Peter’s allusions to key OT structures (temple, priesthood, sacrifices) with reference to inconsistent, for Christ can be the final fulfillment of the typological patterns of 1 Pet 2:6-8, but the church is only the initial fulfillment of the pattern described in 1 Pet 2:9-10 (p. 186). This is unconvincing, for if Christ, the living stone and cornerstone laid in Zion, is the end of the road for these typological patterns, why would this not be the case for those conjoined to this eschatological stone, the living stones—the church—in these last times (1 Pet 1:20)?

97Contra Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 148-50. Vlach’s attempts to counter what he describes as a supersessionist reading of 1 Pet 2:9-10 (whereby the church replaces Israel and believing Gentiles are identified as “Israel”) ultimately fail. Peter’s point is not to argue a one-to-one correspondence between Israel and the church, rather, the typological correspondences reveal that the end-time people of God, the church, is not equivalent or equal to national Israel, but is the far greater covenant community through union with Christ even as it takes on the status and identity of what national Israel was unable to achieve. Israel’s identity markers and titles come over to the church in an escalated sense (a feature indicative of all typological patterns), and once the antitype has arrived given the eschatological orientation, there is no need to posit a future for national Israel. Vlach arguments ignore the eschatological significance of the work of Christ and his theological conclusions are not grounded in actual exegesis of 1 Pet 2:4-10.
being fulfilled with the church as well as Peter’s application of Israel’s pivotal identity markers to the church renders such a notion to be counterintuitive and unexpected.  

Peter’s understanding of the church as the people of God is emphatically Christocentric and eschatological.

On the other hand, Peter does not just present the church as an equivalence to or in direct continuity with OT Israel as the ecclesiological formulations of covenant theology indicate. Rather, the new covenant community obeys the word by putting on faith in Christ in contrast to those appointed to stumble (2:6-7). Peter’s readers are those who have experienced the new birth (1:3, 23) and conversion (2:9; cf. 2:25) in receiving God’s mercy in Christ (2:10). Moreover, according to Peter, the new covenant community is comprised of living stones built together as the spiritual house indwelt by the Holy Spirit because they have come to Christ and are conjoined to this living stone as their foundation. Each member of the new covenant community is considered a living stone; the structure of the new temple is not made up of living and dead stones. The escalation and heightening of the typological relationship between Israel and the church is also unavoidable in this passage of 1 Peter because the church is the restored Israel, for the

---

98In lieu of his study of 1 Pet 2:4-10, France, “First Century Bible Study,” 42-43, observes, “How central to Peter’s thinking was the view that the people of God was now, since the coming of Christ, focused not in the national community of Israel but in a reconstituted people of God, drawn from all nations, whose unity was to be found not in political or racial solidarity, but in relationship to Jesus. . . . [I]t is remarkable how reluctant some Christian readers of the Bible are to adopt this central insight of the New Testament theology. Some still look for a central place for national Israel in the future outworking of God’s purpose, basing their belief not on the teaching of Jesus and his apostles but on elements of Old Testament prophecy interpreted without reference to the New Testament’s view that it is in Christ, and derivatively in his people, that those promises have been and continue to be fulfilled. Our study of these verses in Peter’s letter have introduced us to one strong expression of this new Christian perspective, but it does not stand alone. Throughout Peter’s letter, the same perspective keeps emerging, and it is consistently found through the writings of the New Testament, however different they may be in focus and in literary form. New Testament Christians would not have understood the preoccupation of some of their successors [i.e., dispensationalists] with the supposed literal fulfillment of Old Testament prophecy in a specifically Jewish context or if they had understood it, they would have wished to remonstrate with such a reversion to the perspective of the days of preparation before Christ came.”

99The imagery associated with light and darkness at the end of 1 Pet 2:9 strongly suggests that conversion is in view. See Achtemeier, 1 Peter, 166-67; Davids, The First Epistle of Peter, 93; Schreiner, 1, 2 Peter, Jude, 116.
new covenant community has gone through the new exodus in Christ and thus, in contrast to Israel of old, Peter’s readers, and by extension the church, truly are the chosen race, the royal priesthood, the holy nation, and the people of God. While believers need encouragement and are exhorted to contemplate whether they have experienced the kindness of the Lord (1 Pet 2:3), Peter does not present the church as a mixed covenant community but as the new covenant people who belong to Jesus and are joined to him.

First Corinthians 10:1-13:
The Typology of Israel’s Wilderness Events and the Church as the End-Time People of God

Another passage featuring an Israel-church typological correspondence, or that more specifically discloses that Israel’s experiences through the exodus and the wilderness have typological import for the church is 1 Corinthians 10:1-13. The passage is challenging, however, and interpreters are divided whether the pericope is strictly paraenesis or combines paraenesis with typology. Further, does the Israel to Christ to

church relationship hold if Paul directly corresponds Israel with the church, applying what Richard Hays describes as an ecclesiocentric hermeneutic? In what follows I seek to demonstrate that there is a typological relationship presented between Israel and the church in 1 Corinthians 10:1-13 that entails both continuity (correspondence) and discontinuity (escalation/heightening), and that this relationship, though not as explicitly Christocentric, hinges upon the person and work of Christ.

By way of overview, Paul’s readers in Corinth are predominantly converted Gentiles who were former idolaters (1 Cor 6:9-11; 8:7; 12:2). Turmoil was occurring in the church as Paul addresses issues of factionalism (1:10-4:21), sexual immorality (5:1-7:40), idolatry (8:1-11:1), divisions in regard to corporate worship (11:2-14:40), and confusion regarding the resurrection of the dead (15:1-58). Nevertheless, despite all their problems which incur Paul’s exhortations and stern warnings throughout the letter, Paul rebuilds the ecclesial identity, addressing the church in Corinth as “saints,” and referring to them as those who are called, sanctified in Christ (1:2), and as those who have experienced conversion (6:11). The Corinthians are the “church of God” (1:2; 10:32; 11:22), God’s temple (3:16-17), and the body of Christ (10:17; 11:29; 12:12-26), a community that is one with Christ and that is to display unity and be characterized by

---


102 See Fee, *The First Epistle to the Corinthians*, 4. Hays, *Echoes of Scripture*, 96, commenting on Paul’s description of a time when his readers were Gentiles (1 Cor 12:1-2), states, “The causal imperfect tense of his description (ἐτέρ) indicates that Paul thinks of the Corinthian Christians as Gentiles no longer; they have been incorporated into Israel.”


104 Thompson, *The Church according to Paul*, 65-66.
holiness through the indwelling presence of the Spirit.105 “As in the other epistles, Paul’s Christology in 1 Corinthians reshapes the concept of the people of God.”106

First Corinthians 10:1-13 is situated within a larger context where Paul discusses eating food offered to idols and more generally the question of Christian freedom (8:1-11:1). Paul turns from his preceding warning derived from athletic competitions where he provides a vivid illustration of the Corinthians need for self-control in order to receive the eschatological prize (9:24-27), to a more direct warning based upon Israel’s historical failure and apostasy despite their experience of God’s deliverance and provision in the Exodus and during the wilderness wanderings.107 Clearly, the main purpose of Paul’s warning in this passage is that the Corinthians would heed the pitfalls of Israel’s past, persevere in faith, and so avoid idolatry (cf. 10:14).108 More specifically, the Corinthians are to evade repeating Israel’s apostasy by resisting what most of the Israelites craved (10:6) and not reenact Israel’s evil practices (10:7-10).109

Paul’s retelling of Israel’s redemptive blessings through the Exodus and

105Ibid., 66-73. Note also Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 19-20. For a succinct list of titles for the congregation in 1 Corinthians, see Carla Swafford Works, The Church in the Wilderness: Paul’s Use of Exodus Traditions in 1 Corinthians, WUNT 2/379 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2014), 40.

106Thompson, The Church according to Paul, 66.

107For discussion of the immediate context of 1 Cor 10:1-13 with the preceding pericope (9:24-27), see Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 486-89; Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 443-44; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 203-6.

108Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 204-6, 254; Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 486-88. Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 400, writes, “The moral point is obvious: perseverance is required, or these Corinthians who have begun well, like the Israelites of old, may not reach their goal (10:12).”

109Namely, the Corinthians are to avoid (1) the idolatry the Israelites committed with the golden calf episode (10:7; citing Exod 32:6 LXX; cf. Num 11:14), (2) the sexual immorality of the Israelites as they had done with the Moabite women (1 Cor 10:8; alluding to Num 25:1-9), (3) the Israelites’ testing of Christ by provoking him with complaints of food and water in the wilderness (1 Cor 10:9; alluding to Num 21:5-6; cf. Ps 78:18, 41, 45; 106:14), and (4) the grumbling that characterizes Israel on numerous occasions (1 Cor 10:10; cf. Num 14; 16; Exod 12:23; Ps 106:16-18). For discussion of the Israelite transgressions and the implications for the Corinthians, see Works, The Church in the Wilderness, 69-78; Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 455-64; Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 501-6; Garland, 1 Corinthians, 460-64.
wilderness is designed so that the Corinthians identify with them, observing how they had their own form of “baptism” and “Lord’s Supper” (spiritual food and drink), and were related to Christ himself as he was the rock in the wilderness, the source of their nourishment (1 Cor 10:4). One of the keys to the paraenetic warning is the fact that “all” (1 Cor 10:1-4) of the Israelites were delivered and received God’s miraculous provisions, but despite these privileges for the entire covenant community, “most of them” (10:5) and “some of them” (10:7-10) were judged and destroyed, failing to enter the promised land. That all the ancestors experienced these things mirrors the Corinthians, for they all participated in baptism (1 Cor 1:13) and shared in the Lord’s Supper (1 Cor 10:17; cf. 11:17-34). Paul admonishes the Corinthians to not fall (10:12) as most of the Israelites had, for participation in idol feasts, despite experiencing baptism and sharing in the Lord’s Supper, can lead to condemnation and failure to enter the eschatological promised land.

Given this summary of 1 Corinthians 10:1-13, three other exegetical points are necessary. First, in verse 1, Paul describes his readers as “brothers.” Despite the perilous

---


warning that Paul is about to issue, he assumes the Corinthians are Christians. Further, the OT covenant people of God are referred to as “our ancestors” which “reflects his understanding that the Corinthians are to understand themselves in the light of the new identity formed through their adoption into the covenant people of God. Even the Gentile readers of this letter are now to think of the Israelites of the Exodus as their adopted ‘fathers’ through their inclusion in the covenant community.”  

The significance of calling Israel “our fathers” is also rightly captured by Gordon Fee, as Paul emphasizes at the outset the Corinthians’ continuity with what God had done in the past. Since he is writing to a [predominantly] Gentile congregation, this language is sure evidence . . . of Paul’s understanding of their eschatological existence in Christ (cf. v. 11) as being in true continuity with the past. God’s new people are thus God’s true Israel, who fulfill the promises made to their fathers.

The church is not only linked to Israel as descendants and heirs, but Israel’s Exodus, which is the major formative event in Israel’s history and that also served as a basis for Israel’s restoration hopes in the prophetic books, will “now play a central role in forming the identity not only of Jews but of Gentile believers as well.”

Second, Paul recalls (1 Cor 10:1b-2) the Exodus event with respect to God’s redemptive power and presence in the midst of the Israelites. All of Israel passed through the Red Sea (Exod 14:2-27; Ps 78:13-14; Neh 9:11-12), being guided, protected, and

---


115 Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 490. Hays, Echoes of Scripture, 95-97, argues that Paul never uses the expressions “new Israel” or “spiritual Israel” and there is only one Israel, the Israel that has now absorbed Gentile Christians. The problem with this analysis, despite the fact that Hays is surely correct that such expressions are not used by Paul, is that it fails to capture the newness associated with Christ and how he reconstitutes the people of God in fulfillment of OT promises. The church is not an enlarged Israel; instead, the church is God’s end-time community in Christ (1 Cor 10:11). As Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 209, rightly finds, the reference to ancient Israel as “our fathers,” “indicates that the Christian church is viewed as existing in continuity with Israel. Indeed, it is the new (eschatological, vs. 11) Israel.”

separated from the Egyptians under the theophanic cloud (Exod 14:19-22; cf. 13:21-22; Ps 105:38-39). Being under the cloud and passing through the sea is referred to as a baptism (1 Cor 10:2), paralleling and corresponding to Christian baptism where the convert is immersed under water. Although the Israelites were never wet as they crossed the sea on dry land (Exod 14:22), since the Exodus deliverance initiated Israel as God’s covenant people, marking their beginning as a redeemed people from the bondage of Egypt, the correlation with baptism is fitting, for baptism is what initiates and begins the Christian life as one is brought into the new covenant community.\textsuperscript{117} To further heighten the correspondence between the Corinthians and Israel, Paul says that all the Israelites were “baptized into Moses” (1 Cor 10:2). This phrase appears nowhere else in Jewish literature, and although several interpretations are offered, the language is likely formulated by Paul to mirror baptism into Christ (Gal 3:27; Rom 6:3; cf. 1 Cor 1:13; 12:13; Matt 28:19).\textsuperscript{118} Just as Moses was the covenant mediator and deliverer during

\textsuperscript{117}See Fee, \textit{The First Epistle to the Corinthians}, 491; Garland, \textit{1 Corinthians}, 451; Ciampa and Rosner, \textit{The First Letter to the Corinthians}, 446. Thiselton, \textit{The First Epistle to the Corinthians}, 724, states that because the Exodus events “constitute a paradigm of redemption (from bondage, by God’s saving act, to a new lifestyle and reality, Exod 14:19-22) Paul finds it appropriate to denote this as a baptismal-like redemptive experience of grace” (emphasis original; bold removed). Bandstra, “Interpretation in 1 Corinthians 10,” 8-9 (cf. Vander Hart, “The Exodus as Sacrament,” 34-35), follows Meredith G. Kline, \textit{By Oath Consigned: A Reinterpretation of the Covenant Signs of Circumcision and Baptism} (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1968), 67-70, in arguing that the “baptism” cannot be by immersion in 1 Cor 10:2, but is instead a fire and water judgment ordeal. However, Fred A. Malone, \textit{The Baptism of Disciples Alone: A Covenantal Argument for Credobaptism versus Paedobaptism}, 2\textsuperscript{nd} ed. (Cape Coral, FL: Founders, 2007), 216, explains that the primary sense of baptism, to dip or to immerse, fits best in this context because being immersed into Moses “sustains the idea of the people being put into union with Moses as their mediator and leader (Hebrews 3:2-4, 16), just as Romans 6:3-4 does with Christ.” Further, the notion of immersion is also legitimate in the primary sense for Christian initiation as Paul transfers this idea to Israel’s crossing of the sea, so Fee, \textit{The First Epistle to the Corinthians}, 492n456. Goppelt, \textit{Typos}, 145, thinks the “immersion under the clouds (Exod 14:20) is connected with the crossing of the sea (Exod 14:22; this is the traditional sequence) as a single, nonrecurring redemptive event that corresponds to Christian baptism. The point of comparison that Paul was thinking of may not have been simply that they were enveloped in moisture or covered with water. It may have been the fundamental significance that the deliverance at the Red Sea had for Israel’s salvation (Exod 19:4ff; 20:2).” Gardner, \textit{The Gifts of God}, 120, writes, “The importance of the word ‘baptised’ therefore lay not in the introduction of new subject matter (sacraments), but in establishing the fact that the first community reflected the latter in its identification as a group separated from others by God.”

\textsuperscript{118}See Fee, \textit{The First Epistle to the Corinthians}, 491; Garland, \textit{1 Corinthians}, 450-51; Willis, \textit{Idol Meat in Corinth}, 129; Ciampa and Rosner, \textit{The First Letter to the Corinthians}, 447-48; Works, \textit{The Church
Israel’s exodus redemption and the one with whom the Israelites identified with, so Christ, the new covenant mediator, is the deliverer that the Corinthians identify with in their baptism. In these two verses, Paul’s aim is not to develop a sacramental theology or present the Israelites as if they had their sacramental rites. The reference to being baptized into Moses in the cloud and the sea is intended to highlight that the Exodus event formed the new identity of God’s covenant people in the saving deliverance through the leadership and covenant mediation of Moses, the passage through the sea separating Israel from Egypt, and the cloud, representing God’s presence, faithfully guiding, protecting, redeeming the people, and distinguishing Israel from the nations (Exod 33:15-16; Num 14:13-17). Thus, the Corinthians are warned, for the fathers experienced a symbolic or figurative form of baptism via their exodus, but as Paul shows, Israel’s blessings did not prevent them from being seduced into idolatry, resulting in God’s judgment (1 Cor 10:5).

A third and final point before addressing the question of typology and arriving at theological conclusions is in regard to verses 3 and 4 where Paul links Israel’s feeding on the manna (Exod 16:4, 14-18; Num 11:6-9; Deut 8:3, 16; Ps 78:24; 105:40) and drinking water from the rock (Exod 17:6; cf. Num 20:7-13; Ps 78:15-16; 105:41) with the Lord’s Supper (see 1 Cor 10:16-22). The manna and water enjoyed in the wilderness

---


120 Virtually every commentator agrees that Paul is alluding to the Lord’s Supper with the expressions “spiritual food” and “spiritual drink.” See Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 492-93; Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 448-49; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 224; Bandstra, “Interpretation in 1 Corinthians 10,” 9; Works, The Church in the Wilderness, 61-62. Contra, Dunn, Baptism in the Holy Spirit, 125. Less clear is Thiselton, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 726. Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 449, assert, “The early church’s (and Paul’s) understanding of the last supper and the Lord’s Supper in terms of the Jewish Passover and the promised second exodus would have made the parallel between the Lord’s Supper (see . . . 1 Cor. 11:23-26) and the Israelites’ experience in the exodus a natural one for Paul and his readers. Paul understands the water and
are referred to as “spiritual” food and “spiritual” drink, the reason or explanation (γάρ; 10:4) being that the spiritual drink came from a “spiritual rock.” The adjective “spiritual” has received a variety of interpretations, but clearly in the context of the OT narrative, the manna and the water from the rock are supernaturally and miraculously bestowed, of a heavenly or divine origin and source. In addition, the “spiritual” food and drink are associated with the “spiritual” rock—Christ—which suggests they are “spiritual” in not just being supernatural, but in pointing to Christ and having a corresponding typological significance with respect to the Lord’s Supper. At issue is not the sacramental character of the manna and the water, instead the point is that the spiritual food and drink given by God contrasted with the food that the Israelites actually craved (idolatry) and for Paul, the Corinthians “also knew what it was to partake of spiritual food and drink and were similarly tempted to settle for that which would bring condemnation rather than be content with the food God had provided.” Lastly, much ink has been spilt over Paul’s contention that the rock that followed the Israelites was Christ, especially given the rabbinic interpretative traditions and legends. In all likelihood, however, Paul is aware

manna to have been provided by the Spirit, and he also understands the elements of the Lord’s Supper to be food and drink of the Spirit, who communicates the presence of Christ to his community.” This parallel does not establish equivalence, as Garland, *1 Corinthians*, 452, rightly avers that the “‘same spiritual bread’ and the ‘same spiritual drink’ do not mean that Paul thinks the Israelites ate the same bread or drank the same drink that Christians eat and drink in the Lord’ (sic) Supper. . . . The emphasis instead is on the people’s unity: they all received the same spiritual blessings” (emphasis original).

---


That even though the OT does not explicitly mention a rock following the Israelites in the wilderness, the two accounts of water gushing from the miraculous rock at the beginning (Exod 17:1-7) and end (Num 20:2-13) of the wilderness wandering provides this inference. Later biblical texts also suggest that water was provided throughout their wanderings (see Ps 78:15-16; Isa 48:21), but the emphasis is on the fact that God was continuously gracious to the whole covenant community by his recurring provision of water. The main point is the source of Israel’s spiritual drink in the desert. For Paul the source is Christ since he associates Christ with the literal rock that accompanied Israel in the wilderness. Given the citation of Deuteronomy 32:17 in 1 Corinthians 10:20, it is not difficult for Christ to be identified as the rock since the God of Israel is ascribed the title “the Rock” in the Song of Moses (Deut 32:4, 15, 18, 30-31; cf. Ps 78:35), another passage that addresses idolatry with the background of God’s blessings in the desert. Fee writes,

124 So Garland, 1 Corinthians, 456; cf. Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 450; Enns, “The ‘Moveable Well,’” 28-31; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 239. Some scholars also note the ambiguity in regard to the well mentioned in Num 21:16-20, which served as a springboard for the targumic interpretative tradition. For reasons Paul did not appropriate such traditions, see Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 49-50.

125 Gardner, The Gifts of God, 145-46, and 146n190. In addition, see Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 240, as he also lists Deut 8:15-16; Neh 9:15; and Ps 105:41 as texts suggesting continual supply of water.

126 Some commentators argue that the “spiritual rock” is figurative, but Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 243-44, is correct that Paul does not shift from the real and concrete food and drink (also described as “spiritual”) that the Israelites received in the wilderness to a non-material or figurative rock.

127 So Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 451; Gardner, The Gifts of God, 146-48; Hays, Echoes of Scripture, 94 (although Hays wrongly concludes that Paul takes an imaginative leap in associating Christ with the rock); Garland, 1 Corinthians, 457-58; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 243. Note also Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 52, who finds “good reason . . . to understand God’s provision of food and drink from a rock as provision from the Rock—namely God himself. It is a small step for Paul to appropriate this symbolism by identifying the Rock as Jesus Christ.” Some scholars contend that Paul is doing something similar to Philo, linking the rock with the personification of wisdom. See e.g., Banstra, “Interpretation in 1 Corinthians 10,” 12-13; Thiselton, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 728-29. However, given the allusions to Deut 32, and because 1 Cor 10:9 probably refers to the pre-existent Christ, the notion that Paul is allegorizing in the same manner as Philo is undermined. See further Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 242-43; Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 495-96.
That Paul identifies the rock with Christ thus serves his double aim: (1) to emphasize the typological character of Israel’s experience, that it was Christ himself that they were being nourished in the wilderness; and (2) thereby also to stress the continuity between Israel and the Corinthians, who by their idolatry are in the process of reenacting Israel’s madness and thus are in danger of experiencing similar judgment.\(^{128}\)

In chapter 2 the nature of typology was delineated as those OT genuinely historical persons, events, and institutions that God had providentially intended to resemble, foreshadow, and prefigure escalated and intensified NT antitypes in and through the person of Jesus Christ. Are elements of 1 Corinthians 10:1-13 typological, or is Paul finding analogies to serve as illustrations and warnings for the Corinthian church? Clearly, for Paul the historicity of Israel’s exodus, reception of manna, water, rock, their rebellion, and judgment (1 Cor 10:5, 7-10) is assumed, otherwise Paul’s warning loses its force.\(^{129}\) It is also obvious that Israel’s experience through the Exodus and provisions in the wilderness relate to the church as Paul has made it clear that Israel had its redemption, covenant mediator, own form of baptism and spiritual meal, and they too received blessings that were sourced in Christ. OT Israel corresponds to the new, eschatological Israel (1 Cor 10:1, 11). Aside from historical correspondence and parallelism, are these things prospective in being divinely designed by God, prefiguring an eschatological goal through Christ? Against dispensationalists and other scholars, 1 Corinthians 10:6 and 11 reveal that Israel’s role was typological in two ways: their exodus experience and wilderness blessings, but also in their acts of rebellion.\(^{130}\) In what follows, the prefiguration,
eschatological fulfillment, and Christocentric orientation of these typological patterns are considered.

First, Paul writes that “these things happened as types (τύποι) of us” (1 Cor 10:6). The “these things” (plural) refers to all the content of verses 1-5, not just to the judgment of verse 5. Translating τύποι as “warnings” or “examples” becomes unsatisfactory then, for the exodus deliverance, baptism into Moses, the spiritual food and drink, and the rock are not warnings or examples, rather they establish the historical correspondence between Israel and the church. Similarly, the first clause of 1 Corinthians 10:11 (“Now these things happened typologically”) describes the nature of the events (10:7-10) while the second clause (“and they were written down for our instruction), just as in verse 6 (“that we might not desire evil as they did”), denotes the purpose of the events as paraenetic warnings. Moreover, that these things are divinely intended prefigurations are established by how Paul states that these things occurred as types/patterns of us (10:6) and that these things happened typologically and were written down for our instruction (10:11). In their very occurrence they are types and there is a necessary connection, a providential correspondence, between “our fathers” and “us.”

131Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 250-51; Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 453; Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 499; Garland, 1 Corinthians, 459; Bandstra, “Interpretation in 1 Corinthians 10,” 16. Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 55, astutely observes, “Although some might attempt to limit this reference to the judgment of v. 5, there is no good reason to do so. Paul has grounded his paraenetic point in the salvific correspondence between Israel and the Corinthians (vv. 1-4). It is this salvific continuity which gives the judgment of v. 5 its force.”

132Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 251; Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 55-56. Davidson also points out the problem with translating τυπικῶς in 1 Cor 10:11 as “warning” or “example” because in the next clause Paul writes that these things were written for his readers νουθεσίαν, which means “instruction” or “admonition.” If τυπικῶς is synonymous with νουθεσίαν, “Paul would then be expressing a tautology (‘they happened by way of warning and were written down for our warning’).” Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 269.

133On the distinction between the nature and purpose clauses in vv. 6 and 11, see Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 270; cf. 254; Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 56.

134See Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 68-69; Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 284-85; Goppelt, Typos, 146; Gardner, The Gifts of God, 112; Ellis, Paul’s Use of the Old Testament, 127; Schreiner and Caneday, The Race Set before Us, 223. Carson, “Mystery and Fulfillment,” 400, asserts that one “cannot
In their occurrence and in their inscripturation, divine intent is implicitly assumed for these types because the paraenetic purpose is God’s, it was by his design that these things happened for the church’s instruction so that the church might not desire evil as the Israelites did. Further, that the Exodus is a typological pattern of a prophetic and prospective nature is evident from the OT itself (see the discussion of the second Exodus in chapter 5). Moses as a typological pattern can also be established as a type although this not Paul’s emphasis here. On the other hand, the foreshadowing aspects of the manna and water, pointing to the Lord’s Supper, the rock, pointing to Christ, and Israel’s rebellion as a type of eschatological judgment, is less clear from the OT and are probably retrospectively identified by Paul. Nevertheless, the rehearsal of the wilderness events, including many of the elements that Paul highlights, appears in the OT, indicating their critical redemptive historical significance (see Ps 78; Neh 9:9-20; Isa 48:20-21). While Hays is correct that these events prefigured the experience of the church, pointing “toward the present apocalyptic moment,” there is no need to regard this as an imaginative device of reading Israel’s story or of Paul fancifully reading Christ back into the Exodus. With the backdrop of the massive typological pattern of the Exodus, there avoid the implications of Paul’s insistence that Christ was the rock that followed the Israelites, and that these things ‘were written down as warnings for us, on whom the culmination of the ages has come.’ The language suggests purpose, ultimately divine purpose; this sounds like some kind or other of typology” (emphasis original). Similarly, Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 506, finds that the phrase “were written down as warnings for us” (1 Cor 10:11) indicates “their divinely ordained reason for being in Scripture. In this sentence one captures a sense of Paul’s view that both the historical events and the inscripturated narrative are not simply history or isolated texts in Scripture; rather, behind all these things lie the eternal purposes of the living God . . . who therefore has woven the prefigurement into these earlier texts for the sake of God’s final eschatological people.”

135 Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 71-72, rightly asserts that while types may be noticed only in retrospect, “it is clear that Paul does not understand typology to be merely a matter of retrospective analogy. In both Rom 5 and 1 Cor 10, he asserts that the OT event was divinely intended to present a pattern of that which was still to come. In other words, according to Paul, these OT events ‘looked forward’ to NT events.”

136 Hays, Echoes of Scripture, 105, and for Hays’ contention of the imaginative device of reading and Paul’s fanciful reading of Christ in the Exodus, see pp. 95, 97.
are indications in the textual and epochal horizons in the OT itself that the cloud, the manna, the water from the rock, and the rock pointed beyond themselves to spiritual and heavenly things.

The second aspect, and one that cause interpreters to balk at the presence of typology in 1 Corinthians 10 is with respect to the eschatological fulfillment intrinsic to the type-antitype relationship. If types are advance presentations designed by God that must have an intensified corresponding realization in the antitypes, then are not the Corinthians presented as reenacting Israel’s failure and so will likewise perish in judgment? Further, Hays argues that unlike the typological patterns unpacked in the letter to the Hebrews, in 1 Corinthians 10 there is no notion of escalation or heightening and no indication of the antitype fulfilling and annulling the type because the “relation between Israel and the church is one of positive correspondence, not antithesis.” Since there are two sets of typological patterns (1 Cor 10:1-4 and 7-10), each need to be evaluated in turn, but first it is necessary to observe that the types Paul discusses have an eschatological oriented fulfillment because these past Israelite experiences happened and were written down for the church, the community upon “whom the end of the ages has come” (1 Cor 10:11). Indeed, “[i]t was understood from the time of the Old Testament

137 Garland, 1 Corinthians, 459. Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 500, writes, “There seems to be a typological sense to Israel and its ‘sacraments,’ but an analogical sense to the events used as warning examples. As typology the passage breaks down precisely as the point of warning” (emphasis original). Cf. Ciampa and Rosner, The First Letter to the Corinthians, 454.

138 Hays, Echoes of Scripture, 97, and see pp. 98-99 for the comparison with Hebrews. Hays further adds, “Here there is no hint that the Christian sacraments are greater or more spiritual than the spiritual food and drink of Israel in the wilderness. . . . There is no hint that the Corinthians’ knowledge of God in Christ places them in a better or more secure position, nor that their defiance of God’s greater grace will produce a fate still more ghastly. To the contrary . . . the point of Paul’s metaphor depends on seeing Israel and the church as pilgrim people who stand in different times, different chapters of the same story, but in identical relation to the same gracious and righteous God.” Ibid., 99.

139 Davidson, Typology in Scripture, 281-82; Goppelt, Typos, 146; Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 78. For a helpful discussion of inaugurated eschatology in 1 Cor 10:11-13, see C. Marvin Pate, The End of the Age Has Come: The Theology of Paul (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1995), 105-8.
prophets that God’s eschatological redemption of his people would follow patterns
established at the first exodus.”140 The end of the ages, the turning point of redemptive
history, has been inaugurated through Jesus Christ’s death and resurrection (Gal 4:4; 2
Cor 5:17): “That is what constitutes the typological element in these OT stories;
ultimately the whole OT has been pointing toward its eschatological fulfillment in God’s
new people.”141

Returning to the eschatological heightening in regard to verses 1-4, it is true
that Paul’s main purpose is to emphasize the continuity between Israel and the church.
Both entities have deliverance through a baptism, a spiritual meal, and additionally,
Christ’s presence, the source of blessing, is manifested to both. Nevertheless, the
covenantal discontinuity implies the eschatological intensification. The Israelites were
baptized into Moses, but what this prefigures is baptism into Christ and since Christ is a
far superior covenant mediator and representative than Moses (e.g., 2 Cor 3), Christian
baptism far exceeds the Israelites’ baptism in the sea and in the cloud.142 Furthermore,
God’s gracious provision of manna and water from the rock, even though these were not
sacramental in the wilderness context, pointed forward to a better covenant meal that
commemorated God’s new exodus deliverance and gracious provision in the person and
work of Christ.143 Lastly, although Christ was present in some way with the Israelites as
the rock accompanied Israel’s wilderness journey, the presence and provision of Christ in
the new covenant age is intensified in comparison to what the Israelites experienced in
the desert. Again, Paul is not focused on the eschatological heightening in 1 Corinthians

141Fee, The First Epistle to the Corinthians, 507.
142Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 76-77.
143Unfortunately, Johnson has difficulty pinpointing the eschatological heightening for vv. 3-4
because he wrongly interprets the wilderness provision as equivalent to the Eucharist. Ibid., 77-78. Instead,
see Garland, 1 Corinthians, 452. Elsewhere Jesus teaches that the manna in the wilderness pointed to him
as the bread of life (John 6:31-58).
10:1-4 since he wants the Corinthians to identify with the Israelites and their covenant benefits. But that these things prefigure the deliverance and new covenant blessings for the church at the end of the ages (1 Cor 10:11) is implied. There is an intrinsic eschatological heightening because the deliverance and provisions enjoyed by Israel and the church are not equivalent in every way, for the wilderness events and blessings were shadows and types.

What about Israel’s rebellion (1 Cor 10:5, 7-10) and the entailments for the typological escalation and fulfillment? Sometimes typological patterns feature the similarity between the type and the antitype more and at other times, the dissimilarity. For example, Adam is a type of the one to come (Rom 5:14). Adam and Christ are similar in being covenant heads, but the typological pattern is primarily in terms of contrast as Christ is the obedient, divine Son and faithful representative. The salvific continuity between Israel and the church is emphasized in 1 Corinthians 10:1-4 in order to set-up the basis and potency of the warning so that the Corinthians would not presume they were secure. However, the prefiguring function of Israel’s rebellion (1 Cor 10:5, 7-10) is not in terms of similarity as if most of the church will repeat the pattern and fail as most of the old covenant community did with their sinful actions. Instead, Israel’s typological role in rebelling against God occurred in history for the purpose of serving as a warning so that God’s end-time people (not just the Corinthian church but by extension all believers in Christ) would persevere in faith, not presume upon covenantal privileges, and so not repeat Israel’s idolatry (10:6, 12). Further, there is also an assurance for the Corinthians, for God is faithful and will provide the way of escape for these temptations (10:13).

Since the Corinthian church lives at the end of the ages, possessing the Holy Spirit (6:11; 8-13; 10:1-4),

---


145 For discussion of God’s faithfulness in 1 Corinthians, see Works, *The Church in the Wilderness*, 84-88.
12:13), the church of God is not destined to have the same fate in the wilderness as the Israelites. In contrast to Hays who argues for a “positive correspondence” between Israel and the church, even though the Corinthian church is at the same critical juncture as Israel, the correspondence is negative or along contrasting lines. In sum, Israel’s rebellion does not typologically anticipate the church’s failure, for God’s people will successfully endure the temptations in the end (10:13) by heeding the warnings of Israel’s typological wilderness experiences and by obeying the command to flee idolatry (10:14).146

The last area to address regarding the typological considerations of 1 Corinthians 10 is whether this passage unsettles the Israel-Christ-church framework advanced throughout this study. The pericope seems to unfold a direct correspondence between Israel and the church or suggests that Paul’s hermeneutic is ecclesiocentric. The typological patterns in 1 Corinthians are the OT events surrounding Israel’s exodus and wilderness events, but derivatively, a typological link is also present between the nation of Israel and the church (1 Cor 10:1, 11). Christ himself is not the antitype of the typological patterns, but that does not make the typology any less Christocentric.147 Already in Paul’s letter to the Corinthians he has presented Christ as the Passover Lamb of the new Exodus (1 Cor 5:7). Now in 1 Corinthians 10, every typological correspondence recognized by Paul is in some way inextricably linked to Christ. The baptism into Moses implies the baptism into Christ, the spiritual meal in the wilderness point to the Lord’s Supper which in turn recalls the gracious provision of the new covenant work of Christ.

146Schreiner and Caneday, *The Race Set before Us*, 226, conclude, “Israel’s rebellion is not an example of children to whom God has given spiritual birth and who nonetheless perish eternally. The New Testament writers do not use Israel to show that it is possible for God’s spiritually birthed children to apostatize and perish. They appeal to Israel’s rebellion to admonish us to be the true people of God that Israel was not. They use Israel to exhort us not to presume upon God’s rich provisions and take it for granted that we have inherited privilege.”

Moreover, the source of Israel’s provision is Christologically centered as the pre-existent Christ nourished Israel through the rock. Even Israel’s acts of disobedience leading to judgments are oriented toward Christ since Paul says in 1 Corinthians 10:9 that they were ultimately putting Christ to the test.\footnote{Some manuscripts for 1 Cor 10:9 read that the Israelites tempted God or the Lord. But “Christ” is the most difficult reading and the most likely original. See Garland, \textit{1 Corinthians}, 470-71.} Further, that these things happened typologically to Israel for the purpose of the church living at the end of the ages (1 Cor 10:11) assumes a redemptive-historical progression, a progression of eschatological fulfillment that can only be associated with Christ. Richard Davidson’s analysis is correct, OT types “find their fulfillment in Christ or in the realities of the new covenant related to and brought about by Christ. Christ is presented as the ultimate orientation point of the [types] and their NT fulfillments.”\footnote{Davidson, \textit{Typology in Scripture}, 417.}

Having evaluated 1 Corinthians 10:1-13, there are theological conclusions that need to be elucidated for systems of theology. If the above analysis of these verses is correct than dispensationalists are wrong to construe this passage in terms of mere analogy and illustration. These elements are present, of course, but Paul is presenting much more as he is demonstrating that Israel and Israel’s experiences were designed by God (prospective) to typologically anticipate the church and were purposed by God as a warning for the church (10:6). Thus, there is a historical and theological continuation between Israel and the church as Israel’s Exodus deliverance and wilderness benefits correspond to and foreshadow the church’s deliverance and the church’s two ordinances. Moreover, that Paul tells his primarily Gentile readers that the Israelites were “our fathers” (10:1) proves problematic for dispensationalism given their hermeneutical commitment of separating Israel and the church as distinct peoples or maintaining an exclusive role and function of national Israel in a future millennium and beyond. Based
on verse 1, there is more continuity between Israel and the church than dispensationalists are willing to acknowledge as the Corinthian ecclesial identity is shaped by the fact that the Israelites are their ancestors. Another highly significant point is how Paul’s teaches that the church is the final eschatological people of God (10:11).\textsuperscript{150} The church is in a unique place in redemptive history, for the nation of Israel did not experience the end of the ages, but now through Christ, Israel and Israel’s wilderness experiences prefigured God’s climatic work in constituting the church. The movement of redemptive history toward its goal of the salvation of God’s end-time people has been inaugurated. If the church is the eschatological and antitypical Israel, God’s true temple (1 Cor 3:16-17), how can there be any expectation for a future restoration of national, political Israel? 

Finally, there are also theological implications for covenant theology that may be drawn from 1 Corinthians 10:1-13. First, Paul’s point is not to disclose the relationship between faith and baptism or unpack a theology of baptism.\textsuperscript{151} Nevertheless, if covenant theologians are to argue for the practice of infant baptism from this passage since all of the Israelites—men, women, and children—were baptized in the cloud and in sea and that this, in turn, is indicative for the new covenant community, then those covenant theologians are obligated to also argue for paedocommunion since all of the Israelites ate the spiritual food and drink (10:3-4).\textsuperscript{152} But as discussed, this is not Paul’s point as the significance

\textsuperscript{150}According to Leonhard Goppelt, The Variety and Unity of the Apostolic Witness to Christ, vol. 2 of Theology of the New Testament, ed. Jürgen Roloff, trans. John E. Alsup (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1982), 146, the church’s typological correspondence to the situation of Israel in the wilderness wanderings signified two things: “a) It signified a salvation-historical correspondence. What was spoken to Israel in the Old Testament as the people of God was now to be connected typologically with the church. It alone was the community that could understand itself as the heir of the Old Testament promises. b) It also signified an eschatological difference. The church was no longer like Israel a people among other peoples; it was not the ‘third gender’ (tertium genus) alongside Jews and Gentiles. Rather the church stood in relationship to all peoples as the eschatological people of God, as the new creation” (emphasis original).


\textsuperscript{152}See Beasley-Murray, Baptism in the New Testament, 183-84; and W. G. Crampton, “The Sacramental Implications of 1 Corinthians 10:1-4: A Confessional Study of Baptism and the Lord’s Supper,” RBTR 7 (2010): 7-39, esp. 23-24, 37. Contra, for example, the implications of infant baptism in
that all experienced these blessings is that it did not prevent most of them from being judged for their evil cravings. A more significant theological entailment for the differences in the covenant communities is the fact that Israel was baptized into Moses whereas the implication is that the church is baptized into Christ. A covenantal shift may be detected then, as Israel’s Exodus deliverance and baptism into Moses prefigures a covenant community that experiences a greater new Exodus deliverance with a baptism into the death and resurrection of the greater covenant mediator, Christ. 153 One other thought is necessary as 1 Corinthians 10:11 has implications for covenant theology just as it does for dispensationalism. Commenting on this verse in his Westminster Theological Seminary dissertation, H. Wayne Johnson writes, “Paul is referring to the Corinthians as those who stand at the climax of redemptive history. This identification shows that Paul does not view the NT believers only as another Israel or the same Israel, but the eschatologically heightened Israel.”154 Johnson’s analysis is correct because as the end-time community, an historical and eschatological progression has occurred with the people of God through Christ. However, Johnson’s appropriate identification of the church as not another Israel undercuts the ecclesiology of covenant theology where Israel and the church are held in direct continuity. More specifically, the church is the eschatologically heightened Israel in that it is not a mixed community of covenant keepers and breakers like Israel of old. Paul’s warning to the church at Corinth is real, but God provides a way

153 Again, Paul’s main purpose is to highlight the parallels between the Corinthians and Israel in order to make the point about idolatry. Paul is not elucidating the Israelite’s relationship to Moses, but there is a sense of corporate solidarity or unity, the many being saved in the one or through the one. Baptism into Christ is the church’s incorporation into Christ, salvation being into his death and resurrection. Similarly, Israel’s salvation in the Exodus was a baptism into Moses in that “they all participated in the discriminating and saving operation of the cloud and the sea that God accomplished for them by the ministry of Moses.” Ridderbos, Paul, 405, cf. p. 393. However, the difference is the nature of the mediator and the fact that Israel went through a physical redemption whereas the church goes through a spiritual and effective redemption on account of the work of Christ.

154 Johnson, “Pauline Typology,” 78.
of escape (1Cor 10:13) and in the age of the Spirit, the church will heed the warnings, flee from idolatry, and not succumb as Israel had in the wilderness.\footnote{Not enough space is available to evaluate the purpose of the warning passages in Scripture, especially in the book of Hebrews. The warning passages do not indicate that members of the covenant community can apostasize and fall away; rather, the warnings are a means of salvation that God utilizes to encourage and provoke faith and perseverance. See Schreiner and Caneday, \textit{The Race Set before Us}, 142-213; Thomas R. Schreiner, \textit{Run to Win the Prize: Perseverance in the New Testament} (Wheaton, IL: Crossway, 2010); Christopher W. Cowan, “The Warning Passages of Hebrews and the New Covenant Community,” in \textit{Progressive Covenantalism: Charting a Course between Dispensational and Covenant Theologies}, ed. Stephen J. Wellum and Brent E. Parker (Nashville: B & H, 2016), 189-213. Pate, \textit{The End of the Age}, 107, notes that the “Corinthian Christians need not be unduly alarmed because God will not allow them to be tempted beyond their capability, but will provide a way of escape in order that they can endure it (v. 13b). This language of successfully passing the test is rooted in the apocalyptic belief that God will empower his own to endure the duress of the end time (cf. Rom. 14:4; 2 Peter 2:9; Rev. 3:10).”} As was mentioned at the outset, Paul describes the church at Corinth as the saints, the called, the body of Christ, and the temple of God. Numerous issues were besetting the Corinthians, but that there was a so-called brother (1 Cor 5) in the community does not demonstrate that the church is by nature a mixed community. Rather, Paul’s call for church discipline already presupposes the church to be a pure body of genuine believers.\footnote{See Hammett, \textit{Biblical Foundations}, 84; cf. 105-7.}

**Other Israel-Church Typological Patterns:**

**The Church as the Children, Flock, and Israel of God**

The 1 Peter 2 and 1 Corinthians 10 texts have already disclosed an Israel-church typology that is refracted through the prism of Christ. Two other typological patterns connecting OT Israel with the church are the sonship themes and from the pastoral imagery, the sheep and flock motif. Considered also within this discussion is Galatians 6:16 since this text also bears significantly on the Israel-church relationship.

\textbf{The church as the seed of Abraham and children of God.} The typological relationship between Israel and the church is primarily visible in the Bible through the sonship theme. In chapter 5, Israel’s typological role and identity as God’s son and as the offspring of Abraham was demonstrated to be fulfilled in the antitype, Jesus Christ (Matt
The church is now constituted as the children of God (John 1:12; 11:51-52; Rom 8:16-17; 2 Cor 6:16-18; Gal 4:4-7; 1 John 3:2) and the genuine, spiritual seed of Abraham (Rom 4:11-18; Gal 3:7, 26-29; 4:21-31; 1 Pet 3:6; Heb 2:16) because of the work of Christ and the agency of the Holy Spirit. What is true of Christ is true of the church because of covenantal union and corporate solidarity. This section will focus on the church as the spiritual offspring of Abraham. Space does not permit discussion of John 11:47-52, although this important passage refers to Jesus’ death as the means of gathering the dispersed children of God into one (see Isa 2:2-4; 56:6-8; 66:18-24; Zech 2:10-12), disclosing that Israel’s eschatological restoration typologically began through the effects of Jesus’ sacrifice.157

As the children of God and the spiritual seed of Abraham, the church does not replace

---

157On John 11:51-52, D. A. Carson, *The Gospel according to John*, PNTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1991), 422-23, writes, “In a purely Jewish context, ‘the scattered children of God’ would be understood to refer to the Jews of the diaspora, and would be gathered together in the promised land to share in the kingdom of God (e.g. Is. 43:5; Ezk. 34:12; 36:24ff.). Christians were quick to draw the typological connections: the real children of God are those who receive the incarnate Word and believe in his name (1:12, 13), and if they are dispersed in the world (cf. 1 Pet. 1:1) they will be gathered not only at the parousia, but into the one church, the community of the Messiah *(to bring them together and make them one)* here seems to refer to the immediate effects of Jesus’ death; cf. also 17:21)” (emphasis original). See also Herman N. Ridderbos, *The Gospel according to John: A Theological Commentary*, trans. John Vriend (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1997), 410-11; Andreas J. Köstenberger, *John*, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2004), 353; George R. Beasley-Murray, *John*, WBC, vol. 36, 2nd ed. (Nashville: Thomas Nelson, 1999), 198; Edward W. Klink III, *John*, ZECNT (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2016), 514-15; John Dennis, “Restoration in John 11,47-52: Reading the Key Motifs in Their Jewish Context,” *Ephemerides Theologicae Lovanienses* 81 (2005): 57-86. John A. Dennis, *Jesus’ Death and the Gathering of True Israel: The Johannine Appropriation of Restoration Theology in Light of John 11.47-52*, WUNT 2/217 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2006), 345, concludes, “The ‘children of God’ for John is a concept that stands for the *totality* of the restored Messianic community and is equivalent to the description ‘true Israel.’ The ‘children of God’ is therefore a restoration concept. It was shown that in a number of OT texts the day of restoration is envisioned as a day when Israel would be newly ‘begotten’ . . . as God’s children. This renewed status is often very closely related to the gathering and unification of Israel. Thus, when it is said that the goal of Jesus’ mission is to beget ‘children of God’ (1.12) or to ‘gather the children of God’ (11.52b), this is another way of saying that the goal of Jesus’ mission is to restore Israel to its true identity as the children of YHWH” (emphasis original). Further, Dennis finds that the restoration promise of Israel’s dispersion is coming to an end now that the Messiah is bringing about the gathering of the eschatological dispersion, which not only concerns diaspora Israelites but also Gentiles (see pp. 347-48). John 11:51-52 is related to John 10:16 (see the next section on the shepherding/flock theme) and ties into the Johannine theme of the children of God as being spiritually born from above (John 1:12; 3:3-7; 8:37-47). See also Richard Bauckham, *Gospel of Glory: Major Themes in Johannine Theology* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2015), 31.
Israel nor is it equivalent to Israel; the typological correspondences are prospective and feature eschatological heightening because the end-time people are redefined now that the true Son, seed, and Israel, Jesus Christ has climatically entered into time and space as the incarnate one. Given the treatment of the seed theme in the previous chapter, a briefer analysis is offered here regarding the church as the antitypical and eschatological offspring of Abraham. Two typological strands associated with the Abrahamic covenant may be detected.

First, Abraham is the divinely appointed type of those who are justified by faith.\textsuperscript{158} Abraham’s faith is not only exemplary as those who believe like he did are reckoned righteous (Gen 15:6; Gal 3:6; Rom 4:3, 22-23), but the prospective and prophetic quality or eschatological orientation of Abraham’s justification prior to his circumcision is critical as the Scripture foresaw, according to Paul (Gal 3:8; cf. Rom 4:11-12, 23-24), that God would justify the Gentiles apart from works of the law when the gospel was preached in advance that the nations would be blessed in Abraham (Gen 12:3).\textsuperscript{159} While the way of salvation is the same for both OT and NT saints in terms of

\textsuperscript{158}Goppelt, \textit{Typos}, 137-38. Douglas J. Moo, \textit{Galatians}, BECNT (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2013), 200, commenting on Gal 3:9, remarks, “Abraham, in this verse at least, is an example of how the promise of blessing is accessed. Yet Abraham’s special role in salvation history means that he is not just any example; his response to God’s promise is foundational to the fulfillment of God’s purposes and becomes a determinative paradigm for those who follow.”

\textsuperscript{159}Goppelt, \textit{Typos}, 137. See also Günther H. Juncker, “‘Children of Promise’: Spiritual Paternity and Patriarch Typology in Galatians and Romans,” \textit{BBR} 17 (2007): 131-60. Cf. Caroline Johnson Hodge, \textit{If Sons, Then Heirs: A Study of Kinship and Ethnicity in the Letters of Paul} (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007), 79-91. Thomas R. Schreiner, \textit{Galatians}, ZECNT (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2010), 194-95, commenting on Gal 3:8, observes, “The order in which Paul cites the OT here is also instructive. We would expect him to quote Gen 12:3 first and then Gen 15:6. Instead the citations are reversed. As in Rom 4 (cf. Rom 4:2), Gen 15:6 is the foundational text, indicating that Gen 12:3 (and 18:18) must be read through the lens of 15:6. Genesis 12:3 promises that all the nations will be blessed in Abraham, and Paul identifies this promissory word as the gospel proclaimed to Abraham in advance. But it is precisely here that Gen 15:6 plays its axiomatic role, for in giving the promise (12:3) to Abraham, Scripture foresaw that God would declare the Gentiles right in his sight by faith.” See also, Hays, \textit{Echoes of Scripture}, 105-11. Once again Hays’ appeal to an ecclesiocentric hermeneutic to explain Paul’s interpretative moves in Gal 3 is unconvincing. The Galatians experience of the Spirit and the fulfillment of the justification of the Gentiles by faith in becoming Abraham’s promised children could only have occurred in lieu of the eschatological fulfillment in Christ.
being declared righteous by faith alone, there is an eschatological heightening since OT believers like Abraham looked forward to the culmination of God’s promises while NT believers look back in faith to the true seed of Abraham, Jesus Christ, with his death and resurrection as the basis of salvation for all of God’s people. Christ is the new covenant mediator and new creation head, the one who fulfills the Abrahamic promises, and his coming is not only eschatological as he is the one whom Abraham ultimately anticipated by faith (John 8:56; Gen 22:17), but Christ also accomplishes the OT prophetic trajectory by producing sons of Abraham who are no longer merely physical descendants or defined ethnically since they are characteristically empowered by the Spirit and marked by faith as spiritually adopted sons of the Davidic Servant and last Adam (Jer 31:33-34; Isa 44:3-5; 52:15; 53:10-12; 54:1-3; 59:20-21; Ezek 36:25-27; 37:14, 22-24; Joel 2:28-32; see also the discussion in chapter 5). In the fullness of time, it is now those who are incorporated into Christ by faith who are true sons of Abraham, blessed with him, and recipients of the Spirit (Gal 3:7, 9, 14; 4:4-7).\footnote{160} Paul clearly teaches,

> The bond of kinship established by faith is of such overriding importance that it completely relativizes genetic descent and, at the same time, necessitates a redefinition of the people of God and the basis for membership in that people. Faith like Abraham’s is now seen to be the defining characteristic—the sine qua non—of membership in the eschatological people of God.\footnote{161}

\footnote{160}Regarding Paul’s definition of being descendants of Abraham, Bruce W. Longenecker, *The Triumphs of Abraham’s God: The Transformation of Identity in Galatians* (Edinburgh: T & T Clark, 1998), 132, finds, “It means to be marked out by the same phenomenon of faith that Abraham himself demonstrated. This also provides Paul with the occasion to give an explanation of what it means for the nations to be blessed ‘in’ (ἐν) him (Gen. 12.3 and 18.18; cited in [Gal] 3.8): it means that their faith, like his, leads to their blessing ‘with’ or ‘alongside’ (σύν) him (3.9).” See also Gordon D. Fee, “Who Are Abraham’s True Children? The Role of Abraham in Pauline Argumentation,” in *Perspectives on Our Father Abraham: Essays in Honor of Marvin R. Wilson*, ed. Steven A. Hunt (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2010), 126-37.

Therefore, while the whole OT covenant community of Israel consisted of people who were Abraham’s physical offspring (clearly there were exceptions such as Rahab, Ruth, Uriah the Hittite, etc.) although not all were Abraham’s spiritual offspring, the composition of the eschatological people of God is the exact opposite: many of the members of the new covenant community are not biological descendants of Abraham (Gentiles), but every member (Jew and Gentile) now exhibits the faith of Abraham (Gal 3:7, 9) and are the spiritual, eschatological seed of Abraham through their covenantal union with Jesus Christ (Gal 3:26-29). Or stated differently, the shift in the covenant communities from the Abrahamic covenant to the new covenant is from biological descent and physical circumcision to spiritual adoption as sons and heart circumcision (Rom 2:25-29; Gal 4:4-7; Eph 2:11-22; Col 2:11-14). Since Christ is the distinctive

---

162 James R. White, “The Newness of the New Covenant (Part II),” RBTR 2 (2005): 88, aptly captures how Israel was a mixed community in stating that it is “clear that for every David there were a dozen Ahabs; for every Josiah a legion of Manasseshs. Unfaithfulness, the flaunting of God’s law, the rejection of the role of truly being God’s people, the rejection of His knowledge, and the experience of His wrath, were the normative experiences seen in the Old Covenant” (emphasis original).

163 Longenecker, The Triumphs, 133, rightly remarks, “By means of their union with Christ (cf. 3.26-28), Christians are joined to the single seed of Abraham and thereby find themselves to be the collective ‘descendants of Abraham’. The mechanism in this christological argument is not simply one of similarity of characteristic (i.e., ‘faith’), as in 3.6-7, but of incorporation into true Abrahamic descent by means of participation with Christ.” Cf. Hodge, If Sons, Then Heirs, 93-107, where she evaluates being “in” Abraham, “in” Isaac, and “in” Christ with respect to descent. Gentiles are incorporated into Christ sharing in the material and qualities of their ancestor, Abraham. For further on the various seeds of Abraham, see Gentry and Wellum, Kingdom through Covenant, 632-33, 696-97; and Stephen J. Wellum, “Baptism and the Relationship between the Covenants,” in Believer’s Baptism: Sign of the New Covenant in Christ, NACSBT, ed. Thomas R. Schreiner and Shawn D. Wright (Nashville: B & H, 2006), 132-37.

164 For further development of this point, see Jason S. DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham and the Prophets: New Covenant Ecclesiology in OT Perspective,” JETS 58 (2015): 445-85. Juncker, “‘Children of Promise,’” 143-44, writes, “Abraham is the spiritual father of two closely related yet distinguishable groups, to whom righteousness is reckoned solely on the basis of faith: Gentiles who believe while in a state of uncircumcision (Rom 4:11); and Jews who not only are circumcised but who also follow in the footsteps of faith that Abraham had while he was uncircumcised (Rom 4:12). The common denominator in both cases is faith—in effect Gentile faith (Rom 4:10-12, 16; cf. Gal 2:15-17). It is faith and not genetic descent from Abraham or circumcision or law (Rom 3:21, 4:13) or works of the law (Rom 3:28, 4:2-5) or anything specifically Jewish that determines the true nature of Abraham’s paternity and the identity of his seed. . . . All who believe are de facto children and seed of Abraham and, as a result, become not only heirs but members of the eschatological people of God” (emphasis original).
and unique seed of Abraham, the blessing of Abraham is now mediated to the church (Gal 3:14, 29) through him. It is this assembly that is both Abraham’s offspring and Christ’s offspring (Gal 3:26, 29) and as such, all exemplify the faith of father Abraham, possess the Holy Spirit and bear his regenerating work on their hearts, and all in the new covenant assembly are counted righteous in Christ (Rom 4:9-12, 16-17; Eph 1:5; Isa 53:10-11; 54:1, 3; Jer 31:34).

Alongside the fact that Abraham’s paternity is now spiritually delineated so that it is those who have faith like Abraham who are Abraham’s true sons, there is a second important typological aspect that Paul highlights: the heirs and recipients of the Abrahamic promises are not granted exclusively to Abraham’s physical and spiritual progeny (i.e., believing Jews), rather they are directed to Christ, the antitypical seed of Abraham, and with the fulfillment in Christ, it is through him that the true heirs and ultimate recipients of the Abrahamic covenant promises are revealed in the church of Jesus Christ (Jew and Gentile believers alike). In chapter 5 it was observed that the OT already anticipated nations gathering into the end-time people of God in projecting the fulfillment to the Abrahamic promise of the blessings to the nations, but further, the prophetic outlook indicated that the other Abrahamic covenant promises of a great name, numerous offspring, land, and a royal seed could not be isolated from this promise to the

165Longenecker, The Triumphs, 65-66, is helpful in explaining the significance of union with Christ for Paul’s argument regarding sonship in Galatians: “This motif of incorporative location in Christ explains how Paul can claim in 4.4-7 that the Christian has a share in Jesus’ own intimate, obedient sonship. In fact, these two passages (3.26-28 and 4.4-7) explain and reinforce each other: Paul can assume in 3.26 that to be ‘in Christ Jesus’ is to be a son of God since Paul knows Jesus to be the son of God (4.4, 6; cf. 1.16; 2:20); so too Paul can assume in 4.5-7 that redemption involves being adopted as sons into Jesus’ sonship since he imagines Christians being united with and incorporated into Christ (3.26-28). Union with Christ, then, is the mechanism whereby believers are incorporated into the sphere of the new creation, the process whereby those enslaved to suprahuman powers become sons of the sovereign God. This union with Christ is said to come ‘through faith’ in 3.26, and is expanded further in 3.27 by the image of baptism; being baptised into Christ (ἐις Χριστόν) facilitates the union between Christ and the Christian. For Paul, baptism represents the believer’s transfer from the domination of the power of Sin to the realm of Christ’s lordship” (emphasis original).
nations since all the Abrahamic promises are interwoven and form a package deal.\textsuperscript{166} It is Christ who is the consummate recipient of these promises (Gal 3:16) and as Paul makes plain, the inaugurated realization and fulfillment of the Abrahamic promises, including the land promise, means that the inheritance is enjoyed by all those in union with Christ.\textsuperscript{167} Jew and Gentile followers of Christ not only enjoy the status as the seed and sons of Abraham, but the privileges of the Abrahamic covenant promises are exclusively theirs through Christ, the one in whom they are baptized into and clothed with (Gal 3:27). As Abraham’s offspring and sons then, they are the \textit{heirs} of the Abrahamic promises (Gal 3:29; 4:7).\textsuperscript{168} The inheritance bestowed in God’s gracious promise is received by faith.

\textsuperscript{166}See chap. 5n62 of this diss. John W. Taylor, “The Eschatological Interdependence of Jews and Gentiles in Galatians,” \textit{TynBul} 63 (2012): 291-316, discusses the eschatological interdependence of Jews and Gentiles in relation to the Abrahamic blessings and promises. Taylor rightly finds, “Paul seems to understand the Abrahamic blessing of Genesis 12:1-3 as a unity which would find ultimate fulfillment in Christ, in such a way that the blessing of Israel (Gen. 12:2) and the families of the earth (Gen. 12:3; 18:8) are equally necessary parts of that fulfillment. They would not happen independently but only as parts of the same divine plan, and through the one seed Christ (Gal. 3:16), the Son of God. The promised blessing of Israel awaited the coming of the Messiah, the coming of faith (Gal. 3:23-24), and the blessing of the Gentiles” (313).

\textsuperscript{167}The issue of \textit{who} receives the inheritance cannot be addressed without also knowing the \textit{content} of the inheritance. As was presented in chap. 5 in the discussion of Gal 3:14-18, the inheritance involves all the Abrahamic promises and especially the promised land now reframed as the eschatological world. For focused studies of inheritance in Gal 3-4, consult Miguel Gustavo Echevarria, Jr., “The Future Inheritance of Land in the Pauline Epistles” (Ph.D. diss, The Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, 2014), 119-56, and Mark Forman, \textit{The Politics of Inheritance in Romans}, SNTSMS 148 (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2011), 172-206.

\textsuperscript{168}Juncker, “‘Children of Promise,’” 134, writes, “Alongside of being justified by faith (3:24), being in Christ (3:26, 28), and being sons of God (3:26), being ‘Abraham’s seed’ (3:29) seems almost anticlimactic—that is, unless it is a categorical summary affirmation that all who believe are God’s (polemically redefined) people, who alone possess the aforesaid status and privileges and who alone are the heirs and recipients of God’s promises to Abraham. Paul’s use of the theologically freighted \textit{σπέρμα} instead of \textit{υἱοί} underscores that \textit{when Paul calls believers ‘sons of Abraham’ he means to say that they are the eschatological people of God}. They are the fulfillment of the ‘seed’ promises to Abraham and the eschatological recipients (‘heirs’) of the blessings recounted in the OT” (emphasis original). Starling, \textit{Not My People}, 48, rightly states that within Gal 3-4, Paul “pointedly correlates the restoration eschatology of the prophets with the divine promises to Abraham (3:8, 14) and argues that in both cases (3:6-9, 11b) the ‘life’ and ‘righteousness’ promised is given not to law-keepers but to ‘those who believe’ (3:6-9, 11b). Furthermore, because the inheritance of the promise belongs to ‘one person . . . Christ’ (3:16), it is those ‘in Christ’ who receive the blessing of Abraham (3:14)—in Christ ‘there is no longer Jew or Greek’ (3:28).” See also Taylor, “The Eschatological Interdependence,” 308-9.
Moreover, Paul develops the sonship and inheritance themes further in Galatians 4:21-31, a passage that climaxes his argument from Galatians 3:1. Isaac and Ishmael are also typological figures as Jewish and Gentile believers are of the lineage of Isaac, children of promise (Gal 4:28), of the Spirit, liberated in Christ (5:1) while in a surprising eschatological reversal, the Judaizers, and more generally unbelieving Jews, correspond to Ishmael, born according to the flesh, and enslaved to the law along with the city of Jerusalem (4:25, 29-30). By citing Genesis 21:10 in Galatians 4:30, Paul indicates that the children of the free woman (Sarah; cf. 4:22-23) who also form the new covenant community (cf. Isa 54:1 in Gal 4:27), are the heirs of the Abrahamic promises with Isaac (cf. Rom 9:6-9) while the typological offspring of Hagar, corresponding to Ishmael, the Jewish law-keepers who repudiate Christ, are disinherited.

Two other points may also be derived from in Galatians 4:21-31 pertaining to the church as the renewed Israel, citizens of the heavenly, eschatologically restored Jerusalem, and inheritors, like Isaac, of all the Abrahamic promises (note the promises to granted to Isaac in Gen 17:19, 21; 26:2-5; cf. Heb 11:9). First, Paul identifies Hagar and her enslaved children with the Mosaic covenant, but Paul never explicitly names the contrasting covenant associated with Sarah (Gal 4:24). Given the references to Sarah and

---

169 For the typological aspects of this passage, see Juncker, “‘Children of Promise,’” 135-41; Goppelt, Typos, 139-40. For the allegorical aspects of Gal 4:21-31, and additional sources on Gal 4:21-31, consult the discussion in chap. 2 of this diss.

170 Although there is debate regarding who specifically Paul indicts by linking Hagar, Sinai, enslaved children, and the Jerusalem of his day, while the Judaizers are in view given the thrust of Paul’s arguments throughout the epistle, it is unavoidable that Judaism in general is also in Paul’s purview since the charge of slavery upon the present Jerusalem and her children includes non-Christian Jews given the importance of Torah observance for all Jews (which also coincides with how the Judaizers sought to impose the law on the Galatian Gentile converts). The present Jerusalem is more broad then, encapsulating Judaism that relies on the law and ignores Christ. Further, in Gal 4:29 Paul refers to the children of the flesh as persecutors which goes beyond the Judaizers, for while they insisted on law observance for the Gentiles, there is no evidence they persecuted Gentile believers. Instead, it is likely Jewish persecution is what Paul has in view in v. 29. See Moo, Galatians, 303-4, 310-11; Schreiner, Galatians, 302; Lincoln, Paradise Now and Not Yet, 16-17, 28; Peter W. L. Walker, Jesus and the Holy City: New Testament Perspectives on Jerusalem (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1996),129; Juncker, “‘Children of Promise,’” 138-41.
Isaac with the backdrop of the Genesis narrative and the logic of Galatians 3:15-18, the Abrahamic covenant is probably the second covenant. Many scholars, however, have argued for good reasons that it is the new covenant that is contrasted with the Mosaic covenant. A decision is difficult; nevertheless, what is noticeable given the elements of Paul’s rhetorical arguments within this pericope is that the fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant has occurred through the establishment of the new covenant in Christ. The citation of Isaiah 54:1 LXX in Galatians 4:27, which supports Paul’s assertion that the Jerusalem above is currently the mother of believers (4:26), is a text from Isaiah that immediately follows the description of the new covenant work of the suffering Servant (Isa 53; see also Isa 54:10) and projects Jerusalem’s/Zion’s future restoration. Alluding to Sarah and Hagar (see Gen 11:30; 16:3-4; Isa 51:1-3), the city is symbolized as a barren woman (like Sarah) but she will rejoicingly have more children than the married woman when God intervenes (just as he did with respect to Sarah; cf. Rom 4:17) and renews the city by ending Israel’s exile, multiplying her offspring, returning Israel to the land, and so fulfilling the Abrahamic covenant (Isa 54:1-3). This return from exile, the age of the

---


173 For analyses of Isa 54:1 in Gal 4:27, see Harmon, *She Must and Shall Go Free*, 176-85; Starling, *Not My People*, 23-60; Willitts, “Isa 54,1 in Gal 4,24b,” 188-210; Martinus C. De Boer, “Paul’s
new Jerusalem (Sarah represents the new age; Hagar, Sinai, and the present Jerusalem represent the old age), merge with Abrahamic covenant promises and culminate in God’s purposes of the new covenant which for Paul has now commenced in the gospel of Jesus Christ. The entailment is that the end-time mother Jerusalem is giving birth to children, Jewish and Gentile Christians, who are freed from the Mosaic Law and from sin.\footnote{Harmon, \textit{She Must and Shall Go Free}, 183, concludes, “Theologically, Paul uses Isa 54:1 to argue that the fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant has come in Christ the promised seed, and through his resurrection the new / heavenly Jerusalem has been born and begun to bring forth children (all who belong to Christ by faith).” Moo, \textit{Galatians}, 307, writes, “Here Isaiah combines Abrahamic covenant language with the tradition of the restoration of Zion and return from exile. . . . Paul is convinced, of course, that the ‘new Jerusalem,’ representing the age to come, has come into being and that it is through the Spirit-empowered preaching of the gospel that this new Jerusalem is being populated.” Juncker, “‘Children of Promise,’” 137, likewise concurs, “Believing Jews and Gentiles together are the promised children of Abraham. Moreover, as children of Sarah, they are also eschatological Israel and restored Zion of prophetic expectation.” For further on how the Abrahamic covenant becomes merged with the restoration of Zion within the larger context of Isa 54:1, see Harmon, \textit{She Must and Shall Go Free}, 178-79; note also Jobes, “Jerusalem, Our Mother,” 307-9.}\footnote{Harmon, \textit{She Must and Shall Go Free}, 183, concludes, “Theologically, Paul uses Isa 54:1 to argue that the fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant has come in Christ the promised seed, and through his resurrection the new / heavenly Jerusalem has been born and begun to bring forth children (all who belong to Christ by faith).” Moo, \textit{Galatians}, 307, writes, “Here Isaiah combines Abrahamic covenant language with the tradition of the restoration of Zion and return from exile. . . . Paul is convinced, of course, that the ‘new Jerusalem,’ representing the age to come, has come into being and that it is through the Spirit-empowered preaching of the gospel that this new Jerusalem is being populated.” Juncker, “‘Children of Promise,’” 137, likewise concurs, “Believing Jews and Gentiles together are the promised children of Abraham. Moreover, as children of Sarah, they are also eschatological Israel and restored Zion of prophetic expectation.” For further on how the Abrahamic covenant becomes merged with the restoration of Zion within the larger context of Isa 54:1, see Harmon, \textit{She Must and Shall Go Free}, 178-79; note also Jobes, “Jerusalem, Our Mother,” 307-9.}

Furthermore, Paul’s reference to being born according to the Holy Spirit in contrast to the flesh in Galatians 4:29 not only recalls the deliverance from the present evil age (Gal 1:4), but also points the reader back to Paul’s assertion that the blessing of Abraham coincides with the new covenant promise of the Spirit (see Gal 3:14 and the discussion of this verse in chapter 5; cf. 4:6). Lastly, that Christians are children of the free woman, Sarah, and set free by Christ (Gal 4:30-5:1) also indicates that for Paul, both Abrahamic and new covenants have been fulfilled. Since Christ is the true seed of Abraham, the redeemer of those who were under the law, whose work brings about the promises and blessings of the Abrahamic and new covenants, opening up citizenship in the heavenly Jerusalem, it follows that the inheritors and recipients of these secured blessings are those who have faith in Christ. It is these promised children who are heirs (Gal 4:29) of the eschatological Jerusalem in the renewed cosmos, both now and future. Therefore, Beale rightly concludes,
Gal. 4:22-27 develops further the contrast between true Israel and false Israel. The true believers in Galatia, ‘like Isaac, are children of promise’ (v. 28), continuing the typology of Sarah and Isaac in relation to end-time Israel, whom the believing Galatians have begun to form a part in fulfillment of the Isa. 54:1 prophecy. And, as at the time of Ishmael and Isaac, when the one ‘born according to the flesh persecuted him born according to the Spirit, so it is now also’ (v. 29). This refers to the Christian Judaizers, together with the Judaism they represent, who persecute the true people of God, Christian believers. . . . The church . . . is the true Israel and seed of Abraham (Gal. 3:16, 29) and is beginning to fulfill the Isa. 54:1 restoration prophecy, being identified as spiritual descendants of Isaac and children of the end-time restored Jerusalemite woman (v. 31). Since Christ has already been identified as ‘Abraham’s seed’ (3:16) together with Christians as ‘Abraham’s seed’ (3:29), and since Isa. 54:1 directly follows the great Suffering Servant passage . . . it is likely that Paul sees Christ as the firstborn, end-time Jerusalemite, with whom others can identify and also become new Jerusalem children.175

Lastly, a second inference from Paul’s instruction regarding the true, spiritual children of the free woman as the heirs of the Abrahamic covenant promises and denizens of heavenly Jerusalem is also warranted.176 Zion’s restoration in the larger context of Isaiah (also confirmed by Paul) not only included Gentiles within the exilic return and expansion of the city’s children (along with Isa 54:1-3, see 49:6; 56:6-7; 60; 66:18-21), but there were also implications for the geographic hopes (see Isa 54:2) in the age of the new covenant. Whereas in the original context, Isaiah 54:1 refers to the state of Jerusalem, personified as females, at two distinct stages of its history,177 for Paul, the


176While it is not explored in detail here, it is plausible that a vertical typology is present in this text. The heavenly Jerusalem corresponded to the earthly Jerusalem, but it now corresponds to the church (the inhabitants of the heavenly city), and then culminates into the consummated Jerusalem in the new heavens and earth. Such a notion would be similar to the temple typology, which is presented this way in the book of Hebrews. Dow, Images of Zion, 169, notes, “Paul interprets [Isa 54:1] as a prediction that many Gentiles would become citizens of Jerusalem. Clearly, Gentile believers in Christ have not become citizens of the earthly Jerusalem (though perhaps the Judaizers want them to try to be, by being circumcised), but they truly belong to Zion. This must be the heavenly prototype of the earthly city, which remains the true Zion even if the earthly copy has betrayed it and thus has become severed from it. To Paul, Jewish adherence to the Law as something opposed to the message of Jesus has reduced the Jewish earthly city to secular status. It is ‘in Arabia’ (Gal. 4:25). The promises about Zion in the Old Testament are properly applied to heavenly Jerusalem, of which now it is the church on earth that is the corresponding reality. Thus Zion theology adheres to ‘Jerusalem’ above and to its citizens, the church, not to earthly Jerusalem (both place and people). This Jerusalem above is opposed to the ‘present’ Jerusalem, which implies that it is the Jerusalem of the future as well as being the present mother of believers.”

177Moo, Galatians, 306; Starling, Not My People, 46; Willitts, “Isa 54,1 in Gal 4,24b,” 195-97.
“present Jerusalem” surprisingly corresponds to Hagar, who is likened to the “one who has a husband” (Isa 54:1; Gal 4:27), and to the Mosaic covenant (Mt Sinai). Paul indicates that the present Jerusalem is actually outside the promised land, in Arabia (Gal 4:25). On the other hand, according to Paul, the new and heavenly Jerusalem, associated with Sarah as the formerly barren and desolate one, is the restored Jerusalem that has numerous children. Based on these observations, Lincoln pinpoints the ramifications of Paul’s teaching in Galatians 4:26-27 regarding the heavenly Jerusalem for the inheritance of the promised land:

The heavenly Jerusalem . . . stands for the new order of salvation bound up with the new age which is accessible now to faith. It is no longer the case that the inheritance promised to the descendants of Abraham is the land of Canaan with its centre in Jerusalem, but now this inheritance (cf. 3:18, 29; 4:1, 7, 30; 5:21) comes to the sons of Abraham by faith and is the new age, the kingdom of God, with its focus as the heavenly Jerusalem.

Lincoln, Paradise Now and Not Yet, 15-16, remarks, “To the Judaizers and their sympathizers in the Galatian churches it would have been by no means obvious . . . that Hagar corresponded to the Sinai covenant. In their view the law had been given at Sinai to the descendants of Abraham through Isaac and had nothing to do with Hagar. Thus the further statement with its geographical addition is meant to justify such an unexpected comparison. Hagar can be said to be Sinai because Sinai is in Arabia and Arabia has negative redemptive-historical connotations, since not only associated with the descendants of Hagar and Ishmael but was also outside Palestine, the land of promise.” Cf. Schreiner, Galatians, 302.

Lincoln, Paradise Now and Not Yet, 22. Lincoln continues, “Whereas in 2 Baruch and 4 Ezra the heavenly Jerusalem guaranteed that in principle the earthly Jerusalem, whatever its present condition, would eventually fulfil its role in eschatological expectations, here in Galatians 4 there is no such hope for the present Jerusalem, for it is now classed as part of the old age and subject to the forces of that age, the law, sin and death. For Paul the element of continuity with the history of salvation under the old covenant lies not through Jerusalem as such but through Christ and those who by faith in him are children of Sarah through the promise (cf. verses 23, 28, 31)” (22). In a similar manner, Walker, Jesus and the Holy City, 131-32, writes, “Access to the ‘Jerusalem above’ had nothing to do with the Jerusalem below—contrary to any suggestions made by the Judaizers. Paul’s Galatian converts did not need a link with the earthly Jerusalem and did not gain access, as it were, to the heavenly Jerusalem via the earthly one. They already had the highest possible status, being God’s ‘children’ (3:26) and ‘heirs’ (4:7). . . . For all his Jewish affiliation, Paul was convinced that Christian identity was markedly different; it was not bound up with the physical Jerusalem, but rather with the ‘Jerusalem above’. Only when Christians, especially Jewish Christians such as himself, saw how their belief in the Messiah called into question the previously accepted norms (of the law, circumcision, and Jerusalem) would they experience the full freedom that was theirs in Christ. The Christian gospel did not offer a new validation for Jerusalem; on the contrary, the Christian Church needed to be set free from the ‘slavery’ that was inherent in the ‘present Jerusalem’. The Cross of Christ had had profound repercussions, leading to the death of many things (cf. Gal. 6:12-15); one of these, paradoxically, was Jerusalem itself” (emphasis original).
N. T. Wright also finds from these verses that “Paul sees the Land, and its focal point Jerusalem, as both in theory and in practice relativized by the death and resurrection of the Messiah.” For Paul then, the resurrection and exaltation of Christ, the beginning of the new covenant era, means that the restoration promises concerning the earthly Jerusalem, temple, and the promised land take on a heavenly and cosmic dimensions such that the inheritance is no longer focused upon a future, earthly, nationalistic Jerusalem in Palestine, or a physical temple located there, or the land of Canaan. With Christ exalted in heaven (Eph 1:20), the citizenship of the people of God is the heavenly Jerusalem (Gal 4:26-27; Phil 3:20; Eph 2:6; cf. Heb 12:22-29; Rev 21:2, 10-27) and with

---

180 Tom Wright, “Jerusalem in the New Testament,” in Jerusalem Past and Present in the Purposes of God, 2nd ed., ed. P. W. L. Walker (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1994), 69. In another sense, Jerusalem was not entirely relativized by Jesus’ death and resurrection because Luke narrates how Israel’s restoration occurs in Jerusalem, not Galilee. Fuller, The Restoration of Israel, 257-58, explains, “Luke cannot have the decisive moment of Israel’s restoration take place in Galilee, a place of little importance for Israel’s history or future hopes. In Jerusalem: the messiah must meet with the core of the re-gathered community; the messiah must make his exit to heaven; the Twelve must be reconstituted; and the Spirit must fall” (emphasis original). See Luke 24:33-36, 45-53; Acts 1-2. It is in Jerusalem then where Luke describes Israel’s re-gathering and inaugurated eschatological restoration.

181 Again, Lincoln, Paradise Now and Not Yet, 30, is helpful, for “through the resurrection and exaltation of Christ, the focus of salvation history has moved from earthly to the heavenly realm. For [Paul] the hope of Israel lies not in Jerusalem but in Jesus Christ, the one who fulfils all that Jerusalem dimly foreshadowed in regard to the presence of God with his people. Since Christ is in heaven (cf. for example Phil. 3:20), all that the earthly Jerusalem promised can now be transferred to the reality of the heavenly dimension which Christ has opened up, in fact, to the heavenly Jerusalem. Thus there is an element of continuity in that the name Jerusalem is retained and the significance of that name for the fulfilment of God’s promises to Israel still stands in the background, yet what God has accomplished in Christ has radically altered its meaning. The old category has been reinterpreted so that no longer in view is a restored national capital which will be the geographical centre for the ingathering of the nations in the Messianic era but Jerusalem can now designate instead the focal point of the heavenly existence of the new age.” Contra Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 292-94. Saucy argues that the contrast between the Jerusalem above and present Jerusalem (Gal 4:26) is primarily soteriological and cannot negate the possibility of a future earthly Jerusalem in Paul’s eschatology. Certainly there is an eschatological hope when the heavenly Jerusalem emerges in the new heavens and earth (Rev 21:2), but Saucy gives no attention to the link between Gal 4:26 and 27 and fails to analyze the significance of Paul’s citation of Isa 54:1, an eschatological and restoration prophecy whereby the earthly Jerusalem is renewed. This text is now being fulfilled with the populating of the heavenly city. While the soteriological differences are crucial, the eschatological aspects are undeniable as Sarah and the heavenly Jerusalem represent the new age of Christ, while Hagar and the Jerusalem below are emblematic of the old age. Finally, Paul’s contrast with the “Jerusalem above” with the “present Jerusalem” is fitting because contrasting “the Jerusalem above” with a “Jerusalem below” would undermine the fact that someday the “Jerusalem above” will not be above, but will become spatially located in the new heavens and earth.
Christ as the true temple (see Col 1:19 with Ps 68:16-17) and cornerstone (Eph 2:20-21; cf. 1 Pet 2:6-7), the church and individual Christians are the end-time temple of God (1 Cor 3:16-17; 6:19-20; 2 Cor 6:16-17; Eph 2:19-22; cf. 1 Pet 2:4-5; Rev 21:11), and lastly, as the last Adam and resurrected progenitor of the new creation (1 Cor 15:22-23, 45; Col 1:15, 18), the land promises expand to cover the entire cosmos (Rom 4:13; 8:14-25; cf. Matt 5:5), a theme that also merges with the concept of the heavenly city (Heb 11:8-16; 13:12-14). These realities are not only in keeping with the prophetic anticipations of the OT, but they have come about through the agency of Jesus Christ, and as Paul has demonstrated throughout Galatians 3-4 and his other letters, the inheritors and beneficiaries are the people of faith, the church.

In sum, in Galatians 4:21-31 Paul “has shown that Christians are the ‘children of the free woman,’ Sarah, and thus like Isaac are heirs of all the promises that God gave to Isaac and his descendants. Believers can trace their privileged status to both their paternity and their maternity.” This is also confirmed in Romans 8:14-25 where the themes of inheritance (which is connected to the promised land; cf. 4:13), new creation, and sonship come together. In a climatic statement, Paul tells his Roman readers that

---

182 For the use of Ps 68:16-17 in Col 1:19 with Christ as the temple of divine presence, see Beale, *A New Testament Biblical Theology*, 543-44. While I could not fully analyze all the elements of 1 Pet 2:4-7, Beale is surely right to view all three motifs of Jerusalem, temple, and new creation: “[T]hat 1 Pet. 2:4-7 depicts Christ and his people as part of the temple is also an inauguration of the land promises, especially since this is an inauguration of the prophecy of Isa. 28:16 that the temple ‘cornerstone’ would be laid in ‘Zion.’ It is not coincidental that Judaism believed that the temple and Jerusalem were the center point of the earth; and now Jesus and his people have begun to take that position as the bridgehead of the new temple, new Jerusalem, and new creation” (768).

183 Moo, *Galatians*, 312. Seifrid, “Scripture and Identity in Galatians,” 113, similarly writes, “Just as Jews have become ‘Gentiles’ through transgression of the law, Gentiles have become ‘eschatological Jews’ not only by virtue of Abraham, their father, but also through this heavenly mother.”

184 For the connections between Rom 4:13 and 8:17, see Beale, *A New Testament Biblical Theology*, 761-62; and Wright, *Paul and the Faithfulness of God*, 819. In Romans, “heir” occurs only in Rom 4:13-14 and 8:17 and whereas in the former it is Abraham who is heir of the world, in Rom 8:18-23 the heirs are believers who inherit the resurrection of the body in the same manner as Christ’s resurrection (8:11) which is also linked to the inheritance of the new creation (8:32; cf. v. 19, 21). For detailed discussion of the inheritance theme in Rom 4:13-25 and Rom 8, see Echevarria, “The Future Inheritance of Land,” 157-78, and Forman, *The Politics of Inheritance*, 58-135. Contra David Rudolph, “Zionism in Pauline Literature:
the Spirit bears witness that “we are children of God, and if children, then heirs—heirs of God and fellow heirs with Christ, provided we suffer with him in order that we may also be glorified with him” (Rom 8:16-17; ESV).

The two typological features evaluated in this section were with respect to Abraham’s faith which foreshadowed the faith of the eschatological, spiritual offspring of Abraham and the typological pattern also tied to the seed of Abraham which focused upon the identity of the heirs of the Abrahamic promises and the content of that inheritance. With the church as the true Abrahamic sons and thus the renewed Israel via Christ, the implications for ecclesiological proposals are significant. In fact, neither dispensationalists nor covenantalists rightly synthesize the typological aspects concerning Abraham’s seed. Dispensationalists do not view all the Abrahamic covenant promises as being directed through Christ to the church, with all members of Abraham’s eschatological seed equally sharing that inheritance, while covenant theologians do not sufficiently recognize the national and typological features of the Abrahamic covenant and how in the new age of Christ the Abrahamic seed is no longer manifested by physical lineage but is solely based on conversion and the work of the Spirit. The weaknesses of each system of theology are taken in turn.

First, dispensationalists do not properly account for the fact that all the spiritual seed of Abraham, Jewish and Gentile believers in Christ, are heirs of all the Abrahamic promises that are ultimately Christ’s (Gal 3:16, 18; cf. Eph 3:6; see also the discussion in chapter 5). Gentile Christians are not just recipients of salvific benefits as if only the Abrahamic promise of the blessing to the nations (Gen 12:3) was fulfilled. On the contrary, all believers are like Isaac (Gal 4:28) in being children of promise, Sarah’s
offspring, but more, they are also the heirs of the Abrahamic covenant promises just as Isaac was (Gal 4:30-31; cf. 3:29; 4:7). Second, attempts by dispensationalists and Christian Zionists to argue that Galatians 3:28 does not erase ethnic and national identities just as unity in Christ does not obliterate sexual identity (“neither male nor female”) in advancing a nationalistic particularity for Israel are well wide of the mark. Of course Paul does not deteriorate ethnic or sexual distinctions in the unity of Christ given his other writings. But the issue is whether there are certain Christians (i.e., Jewish believers) who receive exclusive benefits based upon the Abrahamic promises that are not privy to other believers (Gentiles). To take the matter in the direction the dispensationalists have opened up, who would say that male Christians are more entitled as heirs to the promises than female Christians? The point is that union with Christ ensures the equal status and privileges of all believers, for all believers possess all the benefits of Christ (cf. Rom 8:15-17, 32), being coheirs to the promises of Abraham, including the land. Third, as I have noted both in chapter 5 and in this section, not only are the Abrahamic covenant promises fulfilled in Christ, but the new covenant and restoration elements (e.g., experience of the Holy Spirit [cf. Isa 44:3-5], inheritance, citizenship in the heavenly Jerusalem in fulfillment of Isa 54:1) within the context of Paul’s description of the eschatological seed of Abraham in Galatians 3-4 means that Jews and Gentiles incorporated into the singular seed, Christ, are the genuine, legitimate Abrahamic offspring and true sons of God, and therefore, are the renewed, antitypical

---


186 Schreiner, Galatians, 258, writes, “As coheirs of the promise of Abraham, Jews are not superior to Gentiles, those who are free are not more important than slaves, and men are not worth more than women. All those who are united to Christ are equal members of Abraham’s family.” Cf. Moo, Galatians, 254-55.
Israel. Starling suggests that Paul’s arguments about the promises and inheritance in Galatians 3-4 supports his

emphatic assertion of the full inclusion of Gentile believers—apart from the law and irrespective of their uncircumcision—among the justified people of God and the heirs of his promises. All that was promised—blessing, land, life, righteousness, the Spirit—is inherited ‘through faith in Christ Jesus’ and given ‘to those who believe’ (3:22).

Just as the fulfillment of the Abrahamic promises in the unique, antitypical seed of Christ and for those in solidarity with him—the church—poses challenges for the dispensational scheme, so it does for covenant theology. Recalling the prototypical role of Abraham’s faith and how OT prophetic texts projected a faithful, eschatological, Abrahamic and messianic offspring based on the work of Abraham’s true royal seed (Christ), it is also observable that for Paul, the only Abrahamic offspring that is to be accounted for in the new covenant era are those who possess faith. As Martin Salter rightly observes,

Now Christ has come and fulfilled the covenant requirements and exhausted the covenant curses the promise to Abraham is fulfilled. As a consequence new covenant members find themselves connected to Abraham through Christ. The spiritual adoption into Abraham’s family is by virtue of faith in Christ. There is no connection to Abraham other than via Christ, by faith. Christ’s covenantal mediatorship means covenantal infidelity is now impossible because in him the requirements are met and the curses exhausted.


188 Starling, “The Yes to All God’s Promises,” 189. For an overview of Jesus as the seed of Abraham and inheritor of the promised land with the church as the redefined eschatological covenant people who through incorporation into Christ are also the seed and inheritors of the land, see Munther Isaac, From Land to Lands, from Eden to the Renewed Earth: A Christ-Centered Biblical Theology of the Promised Land (Carlisle, UK: Langham Monographs, 2015), 231-70.

Or, as Jason DeRouchie observes,

All members in the new covenant are identified with Christ in the heavenly realms (Eph 2:5-6; Col 2:12-13; 3:3); they are children of ‘the Jerusalem above’ (Gal 4:26, 31; cf. Heb 12:22-24), meaning that, regardless of one’s original heritage, all have new birth certificates declaring, ‘This one was born there’—in Zion (Psalm 87). 190

Indeed, Galatians 3-4 is crucial for understanding the nature of the new covenant community because when Paul addresses justification by faith, the nature of Abrahamic sonship, and more generally the relationship between the Abrahamic and Mosaic covenants, he locates these ideas within a nexus of new covenant themes and realities: the reception of the Spirit by faith, the significance of Christ as the antitypical Abrahamic seed, the fulfiller of the Mosaic Law, and redeemer, and the topic of union with Christ which is also covenantal. Paul demonstrates that those who are justified by faith, recipients of the Holy Spirit, and who constitute the true, children of Abraham in the new age are only those who are united to Christ by faith. The new covenant community is exclusively the spiritual seed of Abraham and that relationship is not through physical descendant, Torah observance, or circumcision, but through union with Christ. Therefore, the genealogical principle and the dual aspect of the covenant so crucial for covenant theologians in their defense of paedobaptism has come to an end with the arrival of Christ on the scene and the fulfillment he has actualized. 191

190 DeRouchie, “Counting Stars with Abraham,” 483.

191 Wellum, “Baptism and the Relationship between the Covenants,” 132-61; Salter, “The Abrahamic Covenant,” 42-49. Contra, e.g., Horton, The Christian Faith, 794-98; Cornelius P. Venema, “Covenant Theology and Baptism,” in The Case for Covenantal Infant Baptism, ed. Gregg Strawbridge (Phillipsburg, NJ: P & R, 2003), 201-29; and David Gibson, “‘Fathers of Faith, My Fathers Now!’: On Abraham, Covenant, and the Theology of Paedobaptism,” Themelios 40 (2015): 14-34. Gibson agrees that Gal 3:16 indicates that Christ is the fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant, but he also argues that this was a covenant of grace with Christ; Abraham’s covenant was also Christ’s covenant as Christ not only fulfills it but receives it (see pp. 16-21). Of course, Abraham is in a salvific sense an offspring of Christ in that his salvation was ultimately won by Christ, but here Gibson ignores the redemptive historical argument that Paul is making as Paul specifically says that the promise was to Abraham and his offspring, Christ. By already identifying Christ as the offspring, he is not arguing for a covenant of grace with its foundation in Christ well before Abraham because the term offspring already signifies a chronological movement, for Abraham’s offspring can only come after Abraham himself. Likewise, in Gal 3:19, a verse Gibson ignores, Paul makes the point that the law was in place until the offspring should come to whom the promise had been made. To argue that the genealogical principle is constant throughout the storyline of the Bible, as
The church as the flock of God. The flock and sheep imagery provides another point of contact between OT Israel and the church. The metaphor of a flock is a common designation for the nation of Israel in the OT (e.g., Ps 77: 20; 78:52-55; 80:1; Isa 40:9-11; cf. Num 27:17; 2 Sam 5:2). The shepherd and flock imagery also appears in prophetic texts where God himself will gather the scattered remnant of his flock and directly shepherd them and intriguingly, a Davidic messiah is also charged with shepherding God’s people (Jer 23:1-6; 31:10-12; Ezek 34:7-16, 22-25; 37:24-28; Mic 5:2-4). In the NT, the sheep and flock imagery is applied to the church and these motifs belong inseparably to the image of the shepherd: the flock is in the possession of God with Christ as the appointed shepherd (see Heb 13:20; 1 Pet 2:25; 5:2-4; cf. Acts 20:28).  

Covenant and kingdom motifs additionally merge with the flock and sheep imagery as the kingdom is granted to the little flock (Luke 12:32) and the shepherd is bound to his sheep via the blood of the eternal new covenant (Heb 13:20). Here again we see that identifiers for Israel (flock, sheep) are applied to the church, but not in a direct or equivalent manner as the coming of Jesus Christ, the messianic shepherd, means that the new covenant people of God are reoriented and cultivated around him and his sacrificial work. For my purposes, the fulfillment in Christ of the eschatological, restoration hopes of a Davidic shepherd-king who will gather and unite the people of Israel is important in establishing the church as God’s true flock. These facets emerge in John 10.

Jesus is described as the good shepherd in John 10 and those whom he lays down his life for and who listen to his voice are his followers, the sheep (10:11, 14-16; cf. 10:2-4). The shepherding motif in this discourse evokes the prophecy of Ezekiel 34 where Israel’s shepherds or religious leaders are indicted for failing to care for God’s

Gibson does, is to diminish the typological patterns, covenantal shifts, and prophetic texts that state otherwise. In the end, Gibson forces the text of Gal 3:16 into his preconceived notion of the covenant of grace.

192 Minear, Images of the Church, 84-85.
193 Ibid., 85.
sheep (cf. Isa 56:9-12; Jer 23:1-4; Zech 11). The ultimate solution for God’s people Israel is that God himself and his servant David will shepherd and rescue the sheep and the flock (Ezek 34:10-16, 23-25). The coming of a future Davidic shepherd-king coincides with the making of a covenant peace and the overcoming of the curse as God’s sheep will dwell securely in the land with the banishment of wild beasts (Ezek 34:25). “The same themes – God’s servant David ruling over his people in the constraints of a new covenant, ‘a covenant of peace,’ and ‘an everlasting covenant’, and serving as their shepherd – recur in Ezekiel 37” 194 where the miracle of the revivification of the dry bones appears. In John 10 Jesus is presented in one sense the divine shepherd but also the antitypical and prophesied shepherd in the line of David. He is the gate as his sheep “will go in and out and find pasture” (John 10:9).195

Moreover, Jesus knows his own and those who refuse to follow him are not part of his messianic flock (10:26), a notion that reflects how earlier Jesus declared that unbelieving Jews were not of God (8:42-47).196 A new development occurs in verse 16 with other sheep not of this original sheep fold or pen being gathered by Jesus.197 These other sheep also respond to his voice so that altogether, all of Jesus’ sheep become one

194Carson, The Gospel according to John, 381.

195Köstenberger, John, 304, comments on this phrase: “Jesus’ language here [of going in and out] (a Semitism) echoes covenant terminology, especially Deuteronomic blessings for obedience (cf. Deut. 28:6; cf. Ps. 121:8). It is also reminiscent of Moses’ description of Joshua (LXX: Ἰησοῦς, Iēsous), who led Israel into the promised land (Num. 27:16-17). . . . The pasture imagery is also found in OT references to Israel’s final restoration (Isa. 49:9-10) and deliverance from the nations (Ezek. 34:12-15).” Richard Morgan, “Fulfillment in the Fourth Gospel: Old Testament Foundations,” Int 11 (1957): 159, avers, “Moses was the great deliverer of his people, the shepherd of God’s flock, who led the nation out of slavery into the promised land. So Jesus leads the New Israel out of the bondage of sin into pastures of new life and freedom (John 10:9).”


flock with one shepherd, which is an allusion to Ezekiel 34:23-24 and 37:24. The other sheep not of this sheep fold, referring back to John 10:1-5 where Jesus leads his sheep out of the pen or courtyard of Judaism, are believers from the Gentile realm (cf. John 11:51-52). The composition of the messianic sheep extends beyond the national and ethnic boundaries of Israel and all together they form one flock (Ezek 37:15-28; Isa 56:3-8; Mic 2:12; cf. Eph 2:11-22; 4:3-6). “While Ezekiel 34 . . . refers to the unification of Israel and Judah (v. 22), Jesus extends the scope of the passage to include both Jews and Gentiles in the new messianic community, the church.”

The whole point then, with the typological implications, is rightly captured by D. A. Carson:

[W]hen Jesus proclaims himself the good shepherd (John 10), the reader cannot forget that in the OT Yahweh (Ezek. 34:11) or the messiah (Ezek. 34:23) is the shepherd who cares for his flock: Jesus identifies his ministry with theirs, and the appropriation of Ezekiel 34 is fairly direct. But the entailment, for the church, is that it is the new messianic community that ‘fulfills’ Israel’s role in the Ezekiel passage;

---


200 Köstenberger, *John*, 307. In a comment that could have implications for older forms of dispensationalism, Beasley-Murray, *John*, 171, states, “The sheep of the different folds are not to remain in their separateness, but ‘they become one flock,’ under the care of the one Shepherd. Their unity is the fruit of his solitary sacrifice (vv 15, 17-18) and his unique relation to God and man (vv 14-15a) as the Pauline epistles joyfully proclaim (Rom 5:12-21; 2 Cor 5:14-21; Eph 2:11-18).”

201 Köstenberger, “Jesus the Good Shepherd,” 77-78. Similarly, see Klink, *John*, 466. For further on the gathering of the flock as a restoration image in John 10:16 with reference to 1 Enoch 90:33, see C. Marvin Pate et al., *The Story of Israel: A Biblical Theology* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2004), 174-75.
and that connexion is unavoidably typological, and bound up with the replacement of the type.  

As the antitypical flock of Ezekiel’s vision with the messianic Davidic shepherd as their good shepherd, Christ’s sheep form the eschatological people of God. The church is composed of Jesus’ disciples who are unified in their allegiance to the shepherd (they hear his voice and know him; John 10:14-16; cf. Gal 3:26-29) and as the Gospel of John unpacks throughout, Christ’s sheep are the recipients of the covenant of peace that is ratified by the shepherd who lays down his life for them at the cross.

Two brief ecclesiological implications may be drawn from the typological pattern of the sheep and flock motifs. First, regarding dispensationalism and other like-minded Christian Zionists, the NT appropriation of the sheep and flock motif with reference to the church not only links OT Israel to the church, but presents the church itself as the eschatological flock of God. Further, the prophecies regarding God restoring his flock, Israel under a royal, Davidic shepherd has come to fruition in Jesus Christ, but this singular restored flock now consists of not only faithful Jews, but also Gentiles. There is one flock with one shepherd, but the notion that certain sheep in this flock (Jews) are to be granted particular promises (e.g., land, nationalistic reign) in the future cuts against the fact that already in John 10 Israel’s restoration as the flock under the Davidic shepherd is expanded to include Gentiles who share equally in the benefits of the good shepherd, Jesus.

---

202D. A. Carson, “John and the Johannine Epistles,” in It Is Written: Scripture Citing Scripture: Essays in Honour of Barnabas Lindars, ed. D. A. Carson and H. G. M. Williamson (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1988), 255. For further on shepherd typology, see Goppelt, Typos, 88-89, 109. Köstenberger, “Jesus the Good Shepherd,” 88-89, adds, “In light of passages such as Isa 56:3-8, a subtle but nonetheless very significant paradigm shift becomes apparent. While the ‘other sheep’ who believe in Jesus the Messiah are, in a sense, considered to be part of ‘the dispersed of Israel,’ the unbelieving Jews are shown to be beyond the pale of God’s ‘flock.’ Jesus’ coming can thus be said to have functioned as a catalyst for surfacing the ‘true Israel of God.’ This was a reality in a sense ‘hidden’ until the time of his coming. . . . No longer is it possible to claim being a ‘Jew’ without believing in the Jewish Messiah. This unbelief demonstrates that a given Jew in fact has not been a ‘true Israelite’ all along. On the other hand, if a non-Jew believes in Jesus the Messiah, he is showing himself to be part of God’s ‘flock.’ The basis of belonging to God’s flock thus is faith in Jesus the Messiah, not one’s Jewishness. While the basic flock is still Israel, Jesus affirms that other dispersed people are gathered to Israel. By redefining ‘Israel’ as all those who believe in the Messiah, the Lord abolishes the notion of any ‘Israel’ apart from faith in the Messiah.”
Second, while the flock of Israel in the OT consisted of a mixed community of faithful and unfaithful people, the one flock that Jesus is shepherd over hear his voice and are secured by the fact that the shepherd lays down his life for the sheep (John 10:11-18; cf. 1 Pet 2:24-25). Here the ideas of effectual calling and Christ’s particular, atoning, substitutionary death on the cross go hand in hand with the nature of the flock he gathers together. The church as the flock of God is a regenerate, faithful community because it consists of only those who have heard Jesus’ voice, follow him, and who are granted eternal life through his work on the cross (see John 10:27-29).

In contrast to the ecclesiology of covenant theology then, the NT’s presentation of the church as the flock of God differs from the depiction of the flock under the old covenant precisely due to the arrival of the messianic shepherd and because of the effective work he has accomplished on behalf of his sheep. The church in its entirety is regenerate for God’s new covenant flock is the faithful remnant, the sheep that are gathered together and led by Jesus.

**Galatians 6:16: The identity of the Israel of God.** The typological relationship between Israel and the church has been established in the preceding discussion. However, one key text that receives much attention in consideration of the church as the renewed or eschatological Israel is Galatians 6:15-16. Although this passage does not disclose or explicate an explicit Israel-church typological relationship, it is vitally important, nevertheless, as it directly bears on the Israel-church relationship via Christ and has implications for both dispensationalism and covenant theology. Paul writes: “For neither circumcision counts for anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creation. And as for all who walk by this rule, peace and mercy be upon them, and [καὶ] upon the Israel of God”

---

203 The shepherding and flock themes converge with the new exodus theme. See Timothy S. Laniak, *Shepherds after My Own Heart: Pastoral Traditions and Leadership in the Bible*, NSBT 20 (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity, 2006). The assertion that the church is the faithful flock of God does not at all mitigate against the need for undershepherds who pastor and tend the flock of God.
The interpretation of verse 16 is widely debated. There are three views for the identity of the “Israel of God.”

Two of the positions can be treated together since they are united in concluding that the “Israel of God” is not a reference for the church. First, some scholars and dispensationalists interpret the “Israel of God” as a reference to Christian Jews or Israelites who have received Christ as their Messiah. A second position is similar in that the “Israel of God” is a reference for Jews, but differs in that the reference is to ethnic Israel in general and not specifically Jewish Christians. Either way, Galatians 6:16 has two groups in view because the third καὶ in the verse should be rendered as a normal copulative, not as an unusual explicative, such that the translation is “and.” Moreover, if Paul had intended to equate the “Israel of God” with those “who walk by this rule” he would have omitted καὶ since it would be unnecessary. A second reason

204 For example, S. Lewis Johnson, Jr., “Paul and ‘The Israel of God’: An Exegetical and Eschatological Case-Study,” in Essays in Honor of J. Dwight Pentecost, ed. Stanley D. Toussaint and Charles H. Dryer (Chicago: Moody, 1986), 181-96, surveys the three views and seems to only rule out the view that interprets the “Israel of God” is the church. Likewise, Robert L. Saucy, “Israel and the Church: A Case for Discontinuity,” in Continuity and Discontinuity, 245-48, holds that Paul’s “Israel of God” phrase is a reference to either Jews who were walking according to Paul’s rule (and so Christian Jews) or to ethnic Jews destined for eschatological salvation (see pp. 247-48).


206 Allison, Sojourners and Strangers, 83-86; F. F. Bruce, Galatians, NIGTC (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1982), 275; Susan Grove Eastman, “Israel and the Mercy of God: A Re-Reading of Galatians 6.16 and Romans 9-11,” NTS 56 (2010): 367-95; Peter Richardson, Israel in the Apostolic Church, SNTSMS 10 (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1969), 74-84. For Richardson, the “Israel of God” refers to those Israelites who will receive the gospel of Christ. These Israelites are not yet part of the church, and so Paul prays for blessing upon both the church and a part of the nation of Israel who will eventually believe (82-83).

207 Saucy, “Israel and the Church,” 246; Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 143-44; Johnson, “Paul and ‘The Israel of God,’” 191-94.

208 Das, Paul and the Jews, 45; Johnson, “Paul and ‘The Israel of God,’” 188.
that the “Israel of God” does not refer to the church is because Paul’s usage of the word *Israel* refers only to the nation or a portion of the nation in every other occurrence in the NT.\(^{209}\) Finally, a third reason for understanding the “Israel of God” as a distinct group of ethnic Jews (whether as Jewish Christians or ethnic Jews who will be saved at Christ’s return) is that such a phrase accords well with the purpose and context of the epistle as a whole.\(^{210}\) Paul defends his gospel of salvation by faith apart from the works of the Law. Yet Paul argues that the one gospel which unites Jew and Gentile (Gal 3:29) still “manifests itself in a distinct mission to Jews as Jews and in a mission to Gentiles as Gentiles (2:7).”\(^{211}\) Thus, Paul still distinguishes between Jew and Gentile. As a result, the “Israel of God” now redefines Israel as those Jews who believe or will believe in Paul’s gospel in contrast to those Judaizing opponents who preach “another gospel” that calls for the Gentiles to obey the Law (Gal 1:8-9; 2:4-5).


\(^{210}\)Saucy, “Israel and the Church,” 246. Both the positions that argue that the “Israel of God” reference is to a distinct group of ethnic Jews contend that their position best accords with the context of the whole letter to the Galatians. For example, regarding the position that the reference is to Jewish Christians, Vlach, *Has the Church Replaced Israel?*, 144, argues, “Paul is defending the concept of salvation by grace through faith against the error of the Judaizers who held that circumcision contributed to salvation. In doing this, Paul singles out Christian Jews in Galatia who correctly believed the gospel of grace and did not follow the error of the Judaizers.” Cf. Das, *Paul and the Jews*, 45-46; Johnson, “Paul and ‘The Israel of God,’” 185. On the other hand, Allison, *Sojourners and Strangers*, 84, describes this position as unlikely: “The idea [that the expression ‘Israel of God’ refers to Jewish believers] would cut across the grain of the entire letter and its theme of Jews and Gentiles together in Christ (e.g., Gal. 3:26-29). Moreover, it would contradict Paul’s belittling of the distinction between circumcision and uncircumcision (e.g., 5:6), the very point that has led him to frame the rule of Galatians 6:16.” Instead, Allison thinks Paul has in mind Jews in general and that this view is a fitting conclusion to Paul’s letter because he has been critical of the Jews, rebuked Peter and other Jewish believers, taught that the Mosaic Law is fulfilled, identified Jews who want to be under the law with Hagar and slavery (Gal 4:21-31), and he has emphasized that circumcision counts for nothing. Allison, *Sojourners and Strangers*, 85, continues, “Such strong criticism, he fears, could be misunderstood to be a scathing indictment of the Jewish people—not what Paul intends to communicate. Appropriately, he prays for divine blessing both for the church—‘all who walk by this rule’—as well as for ‘the Israel of God.’” One wonders if Allison’s position suffers from the same problem he leveled against the Jewish Christian view.

Proponents of these two views that understand the “Israel of God” as a designation for ethnic Jews have offered many strong arguments. The seemingly ambiguous phrase in Paul’s conditional blessing, however, should be interpreted to refer to the entire Galatian church (including Gentile Christians) for the following four reasons.

First, G. K. Beale has shown that the common meaning for καί must not be assumed as an appositional or explicative sense is possible via the rule of maximal redundancy.\(^2\) Since Paul uses καί in an epexegetical or explicative elsewhere, the infrequency of such use is not sufficient grounds to rule out a potential usage in Galatians 6:16. Further, other scholars have also observed that syntax, grammar, and word order alone is not determinative of the “Israel of God” referent.\(^3\) Context is the ultimate


\(^3\)Schreiner, *Galatians*, 381-82; Moo, *Galatians*, 400-403; Köstenberger, “The Identity of the ‘ΙΣΡΑΗΛ ΤΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ,” 13; Cowan, “Context Is Everything,” 80. Moo, *Galatians*, 401-2, admits that the syntax favors the conjunctive usage of the καί or an adverbial usage modifying a second prepositional phrase dependent upon “mercy”: “Peace be upon them and mercy also upon the Israel of God.” But the ambiguity concerning the syntax means that it is context that matters most. Eastman, “Israel and the Mercy of God,” 372-73, follows Richardson in seeing two distinct blessings or separate benedictions (or really a benediction followed by a prayer for God’s mercy on Israel) as “mercy” is extended to the “Israel of God” as an independent clause: “And mercy be even upon the Israel of God.” The problem with Eastman’s view is that the second καί must function disjunctively in introducing a separate blessing (or prayer) to a different entity, but Paul could have used ὅτι or ἀλλὰ to indicate this disjunction (on this point, see Köstenberger, “The Identity of the ‘ΙΣΡΑΗΛ ΤΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ,” 13). Or, Paul could have removed the third καί altogether to express the separate benedictions (so Wright, *Paul and the Faithfulness of God*, 1149). A second problem with Eastman’s proposal, along with other proposals where the “Israel of God” is interpreted as a reference generally for Jews, is the difficulty with the genitive of God. Eastman argues that instead of using “Israel of God” as a reference for the church, Paul would have used the phrase “Israel of Christ or Israel according to promise” and that the genitive has an authorial or possessive force as empirical Israel owes its existence to God and belongs to God (see “Israel and the Mercy of God,” 385-90). This fails to convince, however, for Eastman does not consider the immediate context (see below) of Gal 6:11-18 or really the cumulative thrust of the whole letter. More specifically, it is unlikely Paul would be referring to an Israel according to the
determiner of meaning and therefore, what really matters for the identification of the “Israel of God” is the overall context of Galatians.

The most important factor for interpreting the “Israel of God” as the church is the entire message to the Galatians. Galatians 6:16 needs to be placed within the whole letter and evaluated with attention to its immediate context (Gal 6:11-18). With respect to the whole letter a number of observations are important. Paul’s benediction parallels the curse pronounced in the letter’s opening (Gal 1:8-9). Those who preach a gospel contrary to the one Paul preached are cursed, but the blessing is upon all who follow Paul’s gospel and like Paul, boast in the cross of Christ (Gal 6:14). The benediction is for those who walk according to the rule of the new creation (Gal 6:15-16), a walk that corresponds to those who keep in step with the Spirit (Gal 5:25), and that undoubtedly characterizes the church. More importantly, as was explored in the last chapter, Paul presents Jesus as the ultimate Abrahamic offspring (Gal 3:16), the one who receives all the promises of Abraham and fulfills the Mosaic Law. The old barriers separating Jews and Gentiles – circumcision and the Mosaic Law – are removed as the true children of Abraham are now defined by those who are united to Christ by faith and thus share in his sonship and inheritance (Gal 3:7, 14, 26-29; 4:4-7). The ethnic distinction between Jew and Gentile is removed (Gal 3:28) as both have a common lineage to Abraham by belonging to Christ (Gal 3:29). The Galatian Christians (both Jew and Gentile) are Sarah’s eschatological flesh as if they were of God when throughout his letter all references to God are bound up with Messiah or his people (Gal 1:13; 2:19-21; 3:20-21; 4:7-9). See Wright, *Paul and the Faithfulness of God*, 1147; and note his critique of Eastman’s approach on 1150n436, n437.


children; they are the covenant people, the end-time Israel. Their mother is the “Jerusalem above” (Gal 4:26) since they are children of promise like Isaac (4:28). It is the agitators or Judaizers who are of the lineage of Hagar in persecuting the true people of God, Christian believers.

This last point concerning the Judaizers is also important for considering the immediate context of Galatians 6:16, for the benediction is also a summary statement of the epistle which has featured an anti-Judaizing stance throughout. A careful study of the closing of Paul’s epistle to the Galatians, 6:11-18, provides the hermeneutical key for unlocking Paul’s primary intentions for writing.²¹⁶ Paul concludes the letter by recapitulating the main themes, the primary one being the cross of Christ that distinguishes him from his opponents.²¹⁷ Paul’s opponents are motivated to boast in the circumcision of the Galatians in order to avoid the persecution of the cross (Gal 6:12-13) while Paul only boasts in the cross (6:14) and willingly accepts the persecution associated with Jesus (6:17).²¹⁸ The opponents compel the Galatians to be circumcised (6:12, 13), but Paul asserts that circumcision does not matter because of the cross (6:15; see 2:21; 5:2-12).

Lastly, the Judaizers live in the “world” (6:14) or realm where life is lived under the law (3:23; 4:21; 5:1), under control of the flesh (5:13-17), and where rigid distinctions are


²¹⁸Ibid., 94-100. Historical reconstruction indicates that Jewish Zealot activity was strong. Ibid., 97. Wright, Paul and the Faithfulness of God, 1145, forcibly argues the importance of Gal 6:17 within the final paragraph and how it impinges on interpreting verse 16: “[Verse 17] offers a strong and again ironic and polemical reinforcement of 6.15, where neither circumcision nor uncircumcision matters: the marks of persecution which Paul bears, the sign of his sharing of the Messiah’s sufferings, are the only physical marks which mean anything, and anyone who tries to say otherwise is ‘making trouble’ for him. And the earlier parts of the paragraph, 6.11-15, tell the same story, in the same tone. If we are to read the last phrase of verse 16 in any other sense we would be, in effect, treating it as a strange aside, like someone in the middle of a speech turning to say something in quite a different tone of voice.”
maintained (see 3:28). On the other hand, Paul and followers of Jesus live in the inaugurred “new creation” (6:15; cf. 5:6; 1 Cor 7:19) having been delivered from the present evil age (Gal 1:4) and now experience a foretaste of the cosmic transformation that will be consummated at the eschaton (Rom 8:19-22). There is freedom under the lordship of Jesus (see 2:19-20; 4:8-11; 5:24). The centrality of the cross that breaks down the distinctions between Jew and Gentile and that establishes the eschatological inclusion of Gentiles into God’s people with the dawning of the new creation (Gal 6:15) along with the other elements of the final paragraph (6:11-18) strongly suggests that the peace and mercy benediction is not addressed to those who follow Paul’s gospel and to a separate “Israel of God,” but to all believers in Christ. The eschatological people of God are defined by their union with Christ (Gal 2:20; 3:14, 22, 26-28; 5:6), but for Paul to smuggle into his benediction a distinct blessing for an Israel separate from the church or for a subset of the church (Jewish Christians) is to counteract the argument of his whole epistle where Jew/Gentile distinctions and barriers have been erased in Christ. Aaron Sherwood helpfully observes that


221 Moo, Galatians, 403, aptly captures the point of Paul’s benediction: “In verses 14-16 Paul sets forth the vision that should exercise controlling influence over believers in Christ. [They] (1) have been definitely removed from the controlling influence of this world; (2) participate in the new creation, God’s (ultimately cosmic) restoration project; and (3) belong to God’s people, now redefined around Jesus the Messiah. Everything, Paul is saying, has been reconstituted in light of the cross, and believers must live out this fundamental, world-changing reality (v. 16a).”

222 See Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 228; Vickers, “Who Is the ‘Israel of
Paul’s central concern for the letter over the nature of God’s people . . . culminates in a veritable instance of Israel-nations unification, as the ἔθνη audience are definitively and christocentrically re-identified as Ἰσραὴλ τοῦ θεοῦ. For Paul, the Christ-event and its result of the restoration of humanity are at once a sweeping invasion of God’s eschatological, cosmic reign and at the same time—without an excluded middle—the telos of God’s scriptural, covenantal objective for Israel.223

Third, the phrase Israel of God is unique in that it appears nowhere else in the NT or in Second Temple Jewish writings,224 but as was discussed in the chapter 5, there are many other titles, metaphors, and imagery for Israel’s identity that are directly applied to Christ and the church. Further, the concept of an Israel distinguished from national/ethnic Israel appears elsewhere in Paul’s writings (Rom 9:6; 1 Cor 10:18) as does a distinction between ethnic and spiritual Israel (Rom 2:28-29; Phil 3:3).225

---

223Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 229, emphasis original.

224Köstenerger, “The Identity of the ἸΣΡΑΗΛ ΤΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ,” 14; Longenecker, Galatians, 299. It is also important that Paul’s reference is to the Israel of God. According to Köstenberger, “The Identity of the ἸΣΡΑΗΛ ΤΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ,” 14-15, “similar genitive qualifiers are found in Galatians elsewhere: in 1:13, where the reference is made to ‘the church of God’ . . . and in 6:2, where Paul refers to ‘the Law of Christ.’ . . . Thus the reference to ‘the Israel of God’ may well connote a similar use of the genitive, and perhaps a similar reaplication of familiar terminology in the case of ‘the Law of Christ.’” Cf. Jackson, New Creation in Paul’s Letters, 112. Wright, Paul and the Faithfulness of God, 1144, also notes the importance of Gal 1:13 to interpreting 6:16, but adds that the only other occurrence of “church of God” is in 1 Cor 10:32, where Paul explicitly distinguishes the church from Jews and Greeks, which comports well with Gal 1:13 and the message of the letter as a whole.

calls the Galatian believers “sons of God” (Gal 3:26) which is essentially a synonym for Israel. While not decisive itself in interpreting Galatians 6:16, this observation evaporates any objection that the term “Israel” can never be used to refer to the church.

Finally, Paul’s benediction should be viewed within the background of Isaiah 54:10 LXX, a verse that has the combined uses of “peace” and “mercy” within the new creation context (Isa 54:11-12) at the time of Israel’s restoration. All three of these elements appear in Galatians 6:15-16. Moreover, Paul would have had Isaiah 54 in mind since he already quoted Isaiah 54:1 in Galatians 4:27, and he drew upon the new creation prophecies of Isaiah 43:19 and Isaiah 65:17 in 2 Corinthians 5:17. Within the background of Isaiah 54 LXX, Gentiles experience the new creation restoration by identifying with the God of Israel; however, Paul understands the beginning of the fulfillment of Isaiah’s prophecy to have occurred for the Gentiles and Jews who identify with Jesus, the true Israel. Matthew Harmon helpfully summarizes:

> By pronouncing a blessing upon God’s people (Jew and Gentile in Christ) from the language of a restoration promise, Paul prays that the Galatians would experience the reality of the restoration that Christ the Isaianic Servant has already accomplished on their behalf at the cross. Referring to believers as the Israel of God signals that Paul has redefined the people of God around the Christ-event, which

---


227 Beale, “Peace and Mercy upon the Israel of God,” 210-211; see also Harmon, *She Must and Shall Go Free*, 236-38.

228 Beale, “Peace and Mercy upon the Israel of God,” 210, 216. Harmon, *She Must and Shall Go Free*, 234-35, notes that the restoration of Jerusalem and the new creation motifs are connected in Isa 65:17-25, which in turn tie back to Isa 54:1-17 where Jerusalem’s restoration is the result of the Servant’s work (Isa 53). These themes all appear in Galatians. For discussion of new creation in Isa 65:17 and 66:22, see Jackson, *New Creation in Paul’s Letters*, 17-32. Jackson also finds the Isaianic new creation themes present in Gal 6:15-16 (see p. 113).

inaugurated the new creation and unleashed the eschatological Spirit. Since the
redemption accomplished by Christ is at once the restoration of Jerusalem (Gal
4:26-28) and the inauguration of the new creation (Gal 6:15), it is only appropriate
that Paul prays for God’s redeemed people, the Israel of God, to experience the
eschatological peace brought about by God’s mercy (Gal 6:16).  

Based on the above analysis, Galatians 6:16b should be translated as “peace
and mercy be upon them, that is, upon the Israel of God” or “peace and mercy be upon
them, even upon the Israel of God.” The significance of this designation within the larger
message of Galatians is vitally important for systems of theology. The church is the Israel
of God and Paul labors throughout his letter to characterize the people redefined around
Jesus: the eschatological people of God have freedom from the power of the old age (the
Law, the flesh, and the world), are filled and directed by the eschatological Spirit (the
Spirit mediating Christ’s presence, empowering God’s people for service and righteous
living), are part of the new creation (the transformation encompassing the
anthropological, ecclesiological, and the cosmological spheres), and the church is granted
the promise of eschatological peace. In contrast to all forms of dispensationalism, the
church can be directly linked to OT Israel and further, the eschatological realities bound-
up with the Christ and his new covenant work mean there is nothing left for Israel’s
national restoration. The Israel-church relationship is typological. The Jerusalem above
and the new creation are present now and the children of promise, the Israel of God,
consist of Jews and Gentiles united and conjoined together in Christ.

---

230Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 237-38.

231These features are summarized by Harmon, She Must and Shall Go Free, 238-48.

232Sherwood, Paul and the Restoration of Humanity, 231, finds that in Gal 6:11-16, “Paul
summarizes his argument by configuring his audience’s christocentric identity in terms of the restoration of
creation as well as that of Israel and humanity, namely, the Gentile audience themselves. That is, that the
capstone of Galatians is the fact that they are Israel (through [faith]) means that the eschatological New
Creation has been inaugurated by and in their very experience of being believers. Or put another way, the
coming of the New Creation reciprocally enables and is proven by the audience’s being God’s righteous
people. But the implication is that the inauguration of the New Creation also compromises the restoration
of Israel and . . . of humanity; the blessing of shalom (and hesed) that properly characterize God’s
Kingdom; and the worshipful life of devotion that defines God’s people. Futhermore, all of this is realized
in a manner that is simultaneously in continuity with Israel’s Abrahamic promises and scriptural (hi)story,
even while arriving in an unexpected, cataclysmic fashion” (emphasis original).
On the other hand, Paul does not simply equate the church with OT Israel or make them equivalent in Galatians 6:16 or throughout his epistle. In contrast to covenant theology, the church is on a greater plane than national Israel, again given the escalated soteriological and eschatological realities that Paul has unpacked in his letter. Despite all the problems the Galatians were facing (e.g., Gal 1:6-9; 3:1-4; 4:9-11; 5:2-4, 15), Paul’s opponents, the Judaizers, are never considered part of the covenant community, instead they are outsiders along with the “false brothers” Paul encountered in Jerusalem (Gal 2:4). The Galatians are warned by Paul that rejecting the gospel leads to final judgment and he exhorts them to live by faith and walk by the Spirit, and yet Paul calls his readers “brothers” (Gal 1:11; 3:15; 4:12, 28, 31; 5:11, 13; 6:1, 18) and as discussed above, he identifies Abraham’s true offspring as those who have faith like Abraham (Gal 3:7, 9, 26-29). The “Israel of God” is the new covenant community, the people Paul associates with the new creation, and the people who have been baptized into Christ and have put on Christ (Gal 3:27).\textsuperscript{233} In a situation where Judaizers were advocating Gentiles to be circumcised and follow the Mosaic Law, Paul does not argue against circumcision by appealing to baptism as the replacement for the initiation rite into the new covenant community.\textsuperscript{234} Instead, he contrasts circumcision with faith. Entry into the new age of the last Adam as Abrahamic sons is by faith (Gal 3:26) which is also accompanied by being born according to the Spirit (4:29). Baptism appropriately signifies incorporation into Christ and participation with Christ (union with Christ) since baptism encapsulates the entire conversion experience (faith, repentance, the gift of the Spirit) and vividly displays this union as immersion into water symbolizes how the Christian is plunged into Christ’s death and then is brought up out of the water in symbolizing their resurrection with Christ.


(cf. Rom 6:3-6). Those baptized into Christ (Gal 3:27), an act that symbolized conversion and indicative of faith (Gal 3:26), have crucified the old self and are clothed with Christ. The whole new covenant community is characterized by union with Christ.

**Summary: The Church as Israel’s Antitype in Christ**

Based on the preceding analysis, there is confirmation that the nation of Israel is a typological pattern. Through the chief antitype, Christ, the new covenant community is also Israel’s antitype. Israel’s experiences (1 Cor 10:1-11), structures (temple, priesthood) and core identity as God’s chosen race, Abraham’s seed, and as God’s flock were all advance presentations of the eschatological Israel of God (Gal 6:16). The church is the restored flock of God, the true seed of Abraham (Gal 3-4; Rom 4), the new temple, the people of the new exodus, the ultimate chosen race, royal priesthood (Exod 19:6; 1 Pet 2:9; cf. Rev 1:4), and holy nation. Although outside the scope of this study, the book of Revelation also affirms this thesis. Revelation deals with the end in terms of final salvation and judgment and yet the book provides no clear evidence of a future for national, ethnic Israel. In fact, it is the church of God, those who put their trust in Christ, the lamb of God, who are vindicated in John’s apocalyptic vision. Already from the very beginning of John’s address to the seven churches facing Roman imperialism (Rev 1:4, 11; 2:1-3:22), John communicates that the church is the renewed, eschatological Israel. Further, Philip Mayo’s monograph on John’s view of Judaism and the church examines the synagogue of Satan accusations (Rev 2:9; 3:9), the 144,000 and the multitude of Revelation 7:1-17, the two witnesses (11:1-13), the heavenly woman (12:1-17), and the

---

new Jerusalem (21:1-22:5). The conclusion Mayo draws is that John perceives the church as God’s new spiritual Israel. Mayo finds that the church is not Israel’s replacement but its fulfillment. The church is both Israel and the nations as one people of God; however, it is not Israel ethnically but spiritually. Thus John freely appropriates Jewish national and cultic symbols for the church. He also appropriates as Jewish covenant promises and eschatological hopes and believes them fulfilled in and on behalf of the followers of the Lamb—the church. John has altered his understanding of a “true Jew” by not only broadening its scope beyond ethnic boundaries but also by redefining it theologically. Spiritual faithfulness is now the mark of a “true Jew,” which implies keeping the commandments of God and holding the testimony of Jesus (12.17).

John’s presentation of the church in Revelation is in accord with the conclusions I have drawn from other, more explicit texts. The church is the eschatological Israel (contra dispensationalism) and is comprehensively a faithful community through Christ (contra covenant theology).

Challenging Texts for the Israel-Christ-Church
Typological Framework: Overcoming Potential Defeaters

Throughout this study, it has been the contention that to understand the canonical development of the people of God through the plotline of Scripture is to rightly account for how national Israel pointed forward to and relates to Christ first before turning to the question of the Israel-church relationship. Specifically, the nation of Israel


237 Mayo, “Those Who Call Themselves Jews,” 202. Pattemore, The People of God, 216, is also helpful as he concludes, “[A]s Israel’s story was a story with a direction from captivity to the Promised Land, so the story of the new people of God can be told in colours not only of the original Exodus from Egypt, but even more of the New Exodus from Babylon. This journey occupies the whole of the book, and their destiny is thus described in terms of a New Jerusalem, the dwelling place of God. More intimate is their relationship with their Messiah, the Lamb. Revelation’s ecclesiology is crucially dependent on its christology. Drawing on and extending the individual-corporate relationship between Daniel’s ‘one like a son of man’ and ‘the holy ones of the most high,’ John’s portraits of the people of God show them as close companions of the Lamb, members of the messianic army” (emphasis added).
needs to be recognized as a typological pattern culminating in Christ as the primary antitype and consequentially, the church is the secondary antitype of Israel through union with Christ. Chapter 5 sought to show the biblical data for confirming Israel as a type with Christ as the antitype and in this chapter the scriptural warrant for the Israel-church typology has been offered. Nevertheless, if there were NT texts affirming a future role for not just the Jewish people, but specifically for national, political Israel, then it would be the case that OT national Israel is not a type, but only an analogy of Christ and the church. For example, Michael Vlach avers in his critical review of Kingdom through Covenant that even though the ‘‘antitype negates type’’ approach may apply in some cases, it does not work in regard to Israel and Jesus.”

In this section I will briefly highlight key texts (Matt 19:28; Luke 13:34-35; 21:24; Acts 1:6-8; 3:17-21; Rom 11) that are appealed to as defeaters to the Israel-Christ-church typological relationship, primarily appealed to by dispensationalists, and demonstrate that these do not upset the thesis offered throughout this study.


Concerning this text, Vlach writes that “Jesus is referring to the relevance of Israel in the eschaton. When the renewal of the cosmos (‘regeneration’) occurs and Jesus sits on His glorious throne (i.e., Davidic throne), the restored twelve tribes of Israel will be ruled by the twelve apostles. In this case the ultimate Israelite, Jesus, predicts a future existence for the tribes of Israel.”

This interpretation is problematic, however. The “regeneration” spoken of here is the eschatological new age, connoting the renewed

---


239 Vlach, “Have They Found a Better Way?,” 13, emphasis original. See also Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 182-85; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 267-69; Craig A. Blaising and Darrell L. Bock, Progressive Dispensationalism (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1993), 238; Michael J. Wilkins, “Israel according to the Gospels,” in The People, the Land, and the Future of Israel, 87-101, esp. 100-1.
creation—the consummation of God’s work beginning at creation. Therefore, the dispensational approach would have to assume that the twelve apostles are ruling over the twelve tribes of national Israel in the eternal state. Where does the church fit with this perspective? As was discussed earlier with respect to Revelation 21:12-14, the names of the twelve tribes and twelve apostles listed on the gates and the foundations of the new Jerusalem in the new heaven and earth are bound up with imagery of the church. The twelve apostles represent the renewed, eschatological Israel, the church. The immediate context of Matthew 19:28 is about being a disciple of Jesus (Matt 19:27-31). The point of Matthew 19:28 is that the twelve disciples are Jesus’ followers, sharing in his eschatological judgement. According to I. Howard Marshall, Matthew 19:28 (and Luke 22:29-30)

probably refers to the Twelve sharing in judgment on the unbelieving people of Israel in association with Jesus rather than to some kind of rule over a reconstituted ethnic Israel. The language is symbolical, but the symbolism points to some kind of community which corresponds to the twelve tribes of Israel. Jesus is saying in the strongest way possible that the old Israel is coming under judgment, and that the judgment will be in the hands of those who have been called by him as his close disciples. The implication is that there will be what we may call a new Israel.

Additionally, the allusion to Daniel 7:22, 29 is crucial. In “Daniel 7 it is Israel (‘the saints of the Most High’) who receives the kingdom and rules over the nations, whereas Jesus asserts that it will be the twelve disciples who will judge the twelve tribes of Israel. This transfer highlights the role of the disciples for the spiritual state and the eschatological fate of Israel.”

---


Another passage cited by dispensationalists that teaches a future day when the inhabitants of Jerusalem will respond positively to their Messiah and thus indicates that Israel’s temporary judgement will give way to Israel’s national restoration is Luke 13:34-35 (cf. Matt 23:37-39). Jesus’ use of Psalm 118:26 with its joyful context of deliverance in Luke 13:35 (cf. Matt 23:39) reveals that the desolation of Jerusalem and the temple is not final, but a repentant Israel will bless the one who comes in the name of the Lord at the time of their restoration which coincides with the future Parousia.

Nevertheless, the interpretative difficulties surrounding Luke 13:35, particularly the phrase “you will not see me until you say, ‘Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord!’” (ESV), should temper the dispensational assertion that this affirms a restoration of national Israel. The appearance of Psalm 118:26 in Luke 13:35 as a reference to the Parousia of Christ is not so clear as Luke places Jesus’ lament before his entry into Jerusalem, in the midst of his travel narrative. Since Luke cites Psalm 118:26 again in Luke 19:38, the reference in Luke 13:35 could be in regard to Jesus’...
anticipated entry into Jerusalem.\textsuperscript{245} However, a clear reference to the Parousia is intended in Matthew 23:37-39 since that appears after the triumphal entry. Accepting Jesus’ comments as pertaining to his second coming does not resolve the matter, though, for two reasons.

First, will the acknowledgement of the one coming in the name of the Lord be willing or compelled?\textsuperscript{246} Dispensationalists understand Luke 13:35 as the joyful exaltation of Israel, but the lament of Luke 13:34-35 is in the context of the announcement of judgement suggesting that the acknowledgement of Jesus could be reluctant.\textsuperscript{247} If so, Israel’s national restoration or conversion is not in view. Jesus’ proclamation says nothing explicitly about the fate of those who greet Jesus with these words. Instead, the one who will come will function as judge (cf. Luke 19:27) and exclude “from participation in eschatological salvation members of Israel who have already refused to acknowledge the earthly Jesus as the Messiah”\textsuperscript{248} (Luke 13:23-30; 14:24; Acts 3:23).

Second, not only is the nature of the recognition of Jesus as the messiah questionable, but so is the identity of those who make the statement. A positive, rejoiceful response at or preceding the Parousia may not be indicative of the nation of Israel, but given the parallel account of the triumphal entry, since it is the disciples of Jesus who utter the words of Psalm 118:26 in Luke 19:38, it could be that it is Jesus’


\textsuperscript{246}See Dow, Images of Zion, 144. She notes that commentators are divided on the matter.


followers who respond to Jesus’ return in Luke 13:35. More importantly, even if Luke 13:35 refers to Jerusalem’s jubilant welcoming of Jesus at or just before the Parousia, “Luke would clearly have connected this [city’s] restoration with the confession of Jesus’ lordship. . . . Even on this interpretation the verse does not speak of a political [or national] restoration of Jerusalem [or Israel] within the ordinary course of history.”

Luke 21:24

Both Vlach and Darrell Bock, like their approach to Luke 13:35, place emphasis on the “until” of Luke 21:24. According to them and other dispensationalists, the trampling of Jerusalem under the dominating control of the Gentiles is of a limited duration (“the times of the Gentiles”) and a subsequent period will come when Israel’s judgment will end, and Israel’s national restoration and prominent role among the nations will then occur (cf. Rom 11:25-26).


250 Walker, Jesus and the Holy City, 100. J. Bradley Chance, Jerusalem, the Temple, and the New Age in Luke-Acts (Macon, GA: Mercer University Press, 1988), 130-32, argues that the fulfillment of Luke 13:35 for Israel precedes the Parousia, but Chance discusses this in terms of the redemption of Jews and does not make the case for a restoration of national Israel from this text. Instead of the speculative interpretation offered by dispensationalists on Luke 13:34-35 and Matt 23:37-39, the clearer passages on this topic need to be heeded. Dow, Images of Zion, 238-39, correctly summarizes, “In the Gospels, the earthly city of Jerusalem forfeits its link with the glorious eschatological city of the prophets by its rejection of Jesus (e.g. Lk. 13.34-35; 19.41). Instead, it falls into the old pattern of sinful Jerusalem denounced by the prophets (Lk. 21.22). The prophets saw a continuity between the sinful city and the glorious one. But in the New Testament, there is a dividing of the ways. The Old Testament prophecies of the restoration of Zion and the Temple are applied to the resurrection of Jesus (e.g. Jn 2.21; 12.32), the formation of the church (Acts 15.14-18; Heb. 12.22), and the heavenly hope of believers in Jesus (e.g. Gal. 4.26; Heb. 13.14). Earthly Jerusalem is no longer necessary for worship (Jn 4.21). Instead, earthly Jerusalem is going to be destroyed (Lk. 19.41-44). Zion theology is applied to Jesus and to the church and its glorious eschatological future. The Gospels show Jesus giving an opportunity to Jerusalem to receive her King and accept his purifying work (Mt. 21.1-17 par). But these overtures are rejected (Mt. 21.15, 23; Lk. 13.34). Jesus then predicts divine abandonment (Mt. 23.37-39; Lk. 13.35) and destruction (Mt. 24.1-2; Mk 13.2-4; Lk. 19.43-44) of the Temple and city. Jesus is depicted as the new locus of God’s presence with his people (Mt. 1.22; 18.20; 28.20), the object of the pilgrimage of the nations (Mt. 28.19; Jn 12.31), and his resurrection inaugurates the restoration of Israel and Jerusalem (Mt. 26.61; Jn 2.19-21).”


391
dispensationalists load onto Luke 21:24 will not bear the weight. Luke 21:24 is a difficult verse to interpret and two points need to be made.

First, some have argued the fulfillment of the “times of the Gentiles” addresses the physical destruction of Jerusalem or the period during which the Romans occupied and controlled the city (language alluded to in Dan 8:13). Parallel passages in Matthew 24:22 and Mark 13:20 regarding “those days” being cut short for the sake of the elect offers support for this view as the onslaught of Jerusalem will have a short duration. Further, the verses directly preceding Luke 21:24 (v. 20-23) are all related to the complex of events that occurred in AD 70 when the temple was destroyed and Jerusalem was laid siege by the Romans.

On the other hand, other scholars interpret the “times of the Gentiles” as being “fulfilled” with the second coming of Jesus given that the following verses speak of the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and glory (Luke 24:25-27). Going in this direction could suggest a link to Paul’s statement in Romans 11:25 regarding the full


253Eckhard Schnabel, 40 Questions about the End Times (Grand Rapids: Kregel, 2011), 133. See also LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy, 164-67, and Carroll, Response to the End of History, 163. Edwards, The Gospel according to Luke, 606, seems to go in the direction that the “times of the Gentiles” goes until the second coming of Christ, but he is more general in this assessment, drawing attention to the salvation of the Gentiles in redemptive history: “Luke’s emphatic threefold inclusion of Gentiles in v. 24, and especially the final proleptic reminder, ‘until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled,’ assures readers that the fall of Jerusalem is not the miscarriage of the divine purpose, but a fulfillment of the divine purpose for the salvation of Gentiles. The fall of Jerusalem necessitates the extension of the promise to Israel to the nations. ‘God’s salvation has been sent to the Gentiles, and they will listen’ (Acts 28:28).”
number of the Gentiles coming in. But even if this interpretation is correct, R. T. France rightly argues,

There is nothing in Luke 21 to suggest what will happen to Jerusalem when the “times of the Gentiles” are over, and the total lack of any other suggestion in Jesus’ teaching, or indeed the whole New Testament, of a political and territorial restoration of the Jews must surely make us cautious in assuming such an implication here. . . . It is perhaps more likely that no sequel to the “times of the Gentiles” is envisaged other than the ultimate consummation.

In summary, Luke 21:24 cannot be pressed to affirm a future restoration of Jerusalem or the nation of Israel. The use of the word “until” does not necessarily mean that there will be a change or reversal in the previous circumstance. Luke 13:35 and 21:24 provide the most slender of foundations on which to build a Lukan doctrine of Jerusalem’s subsequent “restoration.” In both, the interpretation is partly dependent on what is meant by the ambiguous words translated “until” (ἦώς in 13:35; ἀχρὶ ὅῦ in 21:24); and neither text explicitly invokes the concept of “restoration” or similar ideas. A few verses later Jesus speaks to his followers of “your redemption” (21:28) in apparent contradistinction to any supposed “redemption” of Jerusalem. Above all, the over-riding context of both these verses is the judgment that awaits the city.

Therefore, the dispensational appeal to these texts for a future nationalistic role for Israel make the argument assuming already what the argument sets out to prove. In other words, the dispensational position must be presupposed for these passages to fit within their framework. On the other hand, the points raised regarding these Lucan passages indicate

---


255France, “Old Testament Prophecy,” 75-76. See also Dow, Images of Zion, 152.

256William Hendriksen, Israel in Prophecy (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1968), 28, argues that the conjunction until in Luke 21:24 does not necessarily mean that the exact opposite, which was described in preceding part of the sentence, will occur, but only that Jerusalem will be in the condition of being trampled underfoot and that such will not cease but will last continually until Christ’s second coming. See also LaRondelle, The Israel of God in Prophecy, 167, as he notes the usage of “until” in Rev 2:10, 25, 26; 1 Cor 15:25 all employ the word (αρχή) but without any notion of a change to the previous situation taking place.

that these passages do not necessarily support a political, nationalistic role of Israel in the future, especially given the interpretative ambiguity.

**Acts 1:6-8**

Another critical text and potential defeater for identifying national Israel as a typological pattern is Acts 1:6-7. For dispensationalists and Christian Zionists, this passage supports the necessity of a future restoration of Israel.²⁵⁸ They advance that the apostles’ question regarding the timing of the restoration of the kingdom to Israel was not misguided. Rather, the apostles rightly anticipated national Israel’s restoration and Jesus’ response in verses 7 and 8 did not correct or rebuke such a notion of geo-political restoration because he only refused to affirm the timing of the kingdom. A few key points mitigate against the dispensational conclusion, however.

The disciples’ question and Jesus’ response in Acts 1:6-8 has received differing interpretations. In contrast to the dispensational view, some scholars think that Jesus rebukes or at least corrects the disciples since their question displays a misplaced socio-political and territorial expectation for the national restoration of Israel.²⁵⁹ For this interpretation and the one offered by dispensationalists there is a disconnect because Jesus either changes the topic or he does not directly answer their question: Jesus “talks of the church age while implicitly postponing a restoration of Israel to the future, or he


talks of a universal mission empowered by the Holy Spirit in contrast to the disciples’ focus on purely national and political concerns for ethnic Israel.  

Nevertheless, a third, and better approach is tendered that acknowledges that the disciples were not mistaken in asking the question and that Jesus answers their question in affirming and explaining that Israel’s kingdom hopes, the reality of restoration, commences with the arrival of the Spirit and the disciples’ mission in this program (Acts 1:7-8).  

The immediate context indicates the disciples question naturally arises based on Jesus’ teaching concerning the kingdom (1:3-5) and the fulfillment of Israel’s restoration is inaugurated based upon Jesus’ answer (1:7-8) as well as the unfolding narrative of the book.

First, the disciples’ question regarding the timing of when Jesus himself will restore the kingdom is appropriate given the setting of the previous verses. For forty days the resurrected Jesus has been instructing them concerning the kingdom (Acts 1:3) and he commands them not to depart Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father—the Holy Spirit (1:4-5).  

The teaching of the kingdom, the disciples’ anticipated reception of the eschatological gift of the Spirit as the promise of the Father, particularly in Jerusalem, the locus of many OT prophetic hopes, would have fostered the eschatological anticipation of Israel’s restoration.  

Moreover, the mention of John the Baptist recalls

---


263 For the OT restoration hopes for Israel, see Isa 1:26; 2:2-4; 9:7; Jer 16:14-15; 23:5-8; 33:15-17; Ezek 34-37; Hos 3:5; 11:11; Amos 9:11-15; Zech 9:9-10. For the importance of Jerusalem in Israel’s future restoration, see Isa 40:1-2; 65:18-25; Zech 8; Mic 4:2. See Fuller, *The Restoration of Israel*, 257-58,
his role in forecasting that the coming messiah would baptize in the Spirit (Luke 3:16), and the announcement that John’s promise of the Spirit would be poured upon them in only a few days (Acts 1:5) provide additional rationale for why the disciples would inquire into Israel’s restoration “at this time” (1:6).264

Therefore, the disciples’ question regarding the restoration of the kingdom to Israel is not inappropriate, but the problem with the dispensational interpretation and the other common interpretation that Jesus rebuked or corrected the disciples for failing to understand the nature of the kingdom is that they both wrongly assume that the disciples’ question regarding the kingdom was narrowly nationalistic, political, and territorial.265 The kingdom the disciples refer to is not to a separate program for Israel. Instead, the kingdom to Israel is the same kingdom described throughout the Gospel of Luke (and in the other Gospels) that is both a present and future reality as God’s sovereign rule and reign is manifested among his people through the coming of king Christ (Luke 4:23; 8:1, 10; 9:23-27; 12:31-32; 13:23-30; 17:20-21; 18:16-30; 21:31) and the work he accomplishes, including the forgiveness of sins and the miraculous deeds of healing (Luke 10:9; 11:20).266 Such kingdom hopes had a national dimension (Isa 49:6-7; Dan 7:14, 27; cf. Luke 1:32-33, 46-55, 67-79; 2:29-32, 38), but the restoration hopes of Israel also included the participation of the nations in the kingdom (e.g., Isa 2:2-4; Mic 4:1-5).267 The kingdom is also territorial or spatial as God’s reign also includes a realm, for on the importance of Jerusalem in Acts 1-2 with respect to Israel’s restoration. Cf. Peterson, The Acts of the Apostles, 107.


God’s rule over and through Israel pointed to his rule over the whole earth (e.g., Ps 2; 47). While these points are not made explicit since Luke only generally references Jesus speaking about the kingdom for forty days, the importance of the Holy Spirit for Israel’s kingdom restoration hopes (Joel 2:28-32; Isa 32:15; 44:3; Ezek 11:19-20; 36:25-27) is made plain in Acts 1:4-5 and had to have had implications for the disciples, steeped as they were in the OT, and their question of the timing of Israel’s kingdom restoration. Jesus’ response to the disciples adds further clarity for the timing of the kingdom.

In Acts 1:7-8 Jesus provides an answer that addresses both the timing of the kingdom and the disciples’ role in the restoration of the kingdom to Israel. Jesus does correct the disciples in that they are not to concern themselves with the chronological details of Israel’s kingdom restoration, for the times and seasons—the specifics of the restoration from its beginning to the consummation—belong to sovereign authority of the Father (Acts 1:7; cf. Matt 24:36; Mark 13:32). In another sense though, Jesus does provide an answer on the timing as well as the task of the disciples in Israel’s restoration in Acts 1:8. The beginning of Israel’s restoration begins with the arrival and power of the Holy Spirit and will continue through the disciples’ missionary activity. The appearance of the Holy Spirit not only recalls Jesus’ teaching in Acts 1:5, but invokes new covenant prophecies and the Isaianic new exodus as Israel’s new age restoration would be marked by the pouring out of the Spirit (Isa 32:15; 44:3-5; cf. Luke 24:49). Further, the Spirit’s empowering work helps Jesus’ disciples to be his witnesses which alludes to Isaiah 43:10, 12 where Isaiah envisages a reversal to Israel’s blindness (Isa 42:18-25) as the

268Ibid., 171-73.


renewed people of God in the new age will be so transformed that they will become witnesses of God’s salvation.271 Jesus also tells his disciples that they will be his witnesses even “to the end of the earth” (Acts 1:8) which continues the theme of Isaiah’s new exodus as the phrase reflects Isaiah 49:6 (cf. Acts 13:47) where the messianic Servant restores the tribes of Judah and is a light to the nations so that God’s salvation goes to the Gentiles.272 It is important also to observe Jesus’ reply does not leave Israel out. Alan Thompson observes:

> When Jesus refers to Jerusalem as well as to “all Judea and Samaria,” he is of course referring to Israel. Jerusalem was the religious capital of Israel, and the phrase “all Judea and Samaria” was representative of the southern and northern kingdoms of Israel respectively. In the light of the division of Israel almost from the outset of its history under kings . . . and the prophetic hopes found in passages such as Ezekiel 37 for a united Israel, any talk of restoration would have to include some reference to the division between north and south known throughout much of Israel’s history.273

Therefore, with the eschatological presence of the Holy Spirit, the witnessing prerogative of the renewed Israel, and the fact that salvation is coming upon Jerusalem, going out to Judea and Samaria indicating a restoration and reconstitution of geographical Israel (cf. Acts 8:1-25) and then proceeding forth to the outcasts (Acts 8:26-40; cf. Isa 56:3, 5) and the Gentiles (Acts 10), all cumulatively demonstrate that Jesus is in fact not

---


273Thompson, *The Acts of the Risen Lord*, 106. Pao, *Acts and the Isaianic New Exodux*, 94-95, 127, also points out that the three categories—(1) the city of Jerusalem, (2) the two regions of Judea and Samaria, and (3) the whole inhabited world (Gentiles)—are “theopolitical” and not merely geographic markers. Pao, *Acts and the Isaianic New Exodux*, 95, writes, “Taken together, then, the three categories correspond to three stages of the Isaianic New Exodux which signifies the arrival of the new era: (1) the dawn of the salvation upon Jerusalem; (2) the reconstitution and reunification of Israel; and finally (3) the inclusion of the Gentiles within the people of God.”
postponing Israel’s restoration. Indeed, through Jesus the fulfillment of Israel’s restoration is inaugurated, the kingdom has arrived, and the outworking of this kingdom restoration grows through the mission of the church. The later narrative of Acts confirms that Israel’s restoration is being fulfilled as the Holy Spirit descends at Pentecost (Acts 2:1-11), Jesus is enthroned and rules as the Davidic king (Acts 2:22-36; 13:32-37; 15:13-18), and the twelve apostles represent the nucleus of the restored Israel (Acts 1:15-22; note Acts 2:9-11 with Isa 43:5-7). Based on these points the dispensational interpretation of Acts 1:6-8 should be rejected.

Acts 3:17-21

Related to Acts 1:6 given the presence of the word restoration and the reference to “times” and “time” (cf. Acts 1:7) is Acts 3:19-21, a text that dispensationalists also consider as an affirmation of the physical and spiritual future blessings for national Israel. Similar to Acts 1:6, dispensationalists consider Peter’s message of repentance to the Jews involves a hope for Israel’s full restoration including the restoration of the promised land (e.g., Jer 16:15; 24:6). The “times of refreshing” (Acts 3:20), or Israel’s restoration and eschatological redemption, is connected to Jesus’ future coming.

The dispensational approach to Acts 3:20-21 is problematic, however. First, in regard to the “times of refreshing,” David Peterson points out that this phrase and the following clause (“that he may send the Messiah”) in verse 20 are not complementary statements about the same event, rather “the argument of vv. 19-21 is cumulative,

274 According to David G. Peterson, Transformed by God: New Covenant Life and Ministry (Nottingham, UK: InterVarsity, 2012), 61, Israel’s “end-time restoration begins with the pouring out of the promised Spirit and the bringing of God’s salvation, first to Israel and then ‘to the ends of the earth’” (Isa. 49:6; 42:6-7). It is consummated when Jesus returns (Acts 1:11; 3:20-21).” See ibid., 62-63, for a discussion on the subsequent narratives of Acts validate this interpretation.

implying that these seasons of refreshment occur in an intervening period, before Christ’s return and the consummation of God’s plan in a renewed creation. . . .”276 In addition, Peter’s mention that the prophets spoke about “these days” (Acts 3:24), the present epoch of salvation, confirms that the “times” of refreshment “are not a future event but the present reality of God’s restoration of Israel through Jesus, the Messiah.”277 More importantly, however, Acts 3:19-20 is parallel to Peter’s response to the Jews at Pentecost in Acts 2:38.278 Repentance demonstrated through baptism, forgiveness of sins, and the reception of the gift of the Holy Spirit in Acts 2:38 is structurally similar to Acts 3:19-20 where repentance, the wiping away of sins, and times of refreshing are mentioned. Given these observations then, the times of refreshing must do with the relief that comes from having sins removed, a refreshment that is present now that the new covenant has arrived in Christ. It is the period marked by the bestowal of the Holy Spirit on God’s people as the Spirit brings about this refreshing.279

Next, the time of universal restoration or “times” (χρόνων) of restoration of all things in Acts 3:21 is parallel to the “times of refreshing” (3:20) and to “these days”


277Schnabel, Acts, 215. See also Pao, Acts and the Isaianic New Exodus, 133-34. Pao, Acts and the Isaianic New Exodus, 134, states, “Those who insist that the phrase ‘times of refreshing’ can only point to the future event of Jesus’ return fail to take note of the plural form of the word ‘times’ (καιροί), one that commonly refers to a period of time. This duration of time should not simply be conflated with the return of Jesus as referred to in the second part of the verse (3:20b). This period of time should rather be interpreted together with the previous phrase in which repentance becomes the way to participate in the community of the Spirit (vs 19).” See also Turner, Power from on High, 309; Carroll, Response to the End of History, 143-44; Hans F. Bayer, “Christ-Centered Eschatology in Acts 3:17-26,” in Jesus of Nazareth: Lord and Christ: Essays on the Historical Jesus and New Testament Christology, ed. Joel B. Green and Max Turner (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1994), 236-50, esp 245-47.


(3:24) and thus indicates that the restoration Peter speaks of is not exclusively future.\(^{280}\) The restoration is of course closely associated with Jesus’ return and the consummation of God’s new creation, but the restoration includes present events prior to this end-time climax. Already in the book of Acts the restoration of Israel (1:6) begins with the pouring out of the Spirit and the proclamation of the gospel (Acts 2), is further illustrated with the healing of the lame man (Acts 3), a miracle also anticipating the renewal of the whole creation (Isa 35:1-10; 65:17-25; Ezek 47:1-12), and Peter also teaches that the messianic restoration of Israel leads to the blessings of all the nations through the seed of Abraham (Acts 3:25-26).\(^{281}\) According to Max Turner Acts 3:19-26 pictures the restoration of Israel first, leading to blessings for the nations.

Nevertheless, these promises to Israel are only to be realized in the church; for they depend upon repentance and acceptance of the messiah’s teaching. To make this point as sharply as possible, Peter invokes the prophet-like Moses Christology [(Acts 3:22-23)]. As the word of God given through Moses was constitutive for Israel of old, so now the messianic word of the prophet-like-Moses is constitutive for the ‘Israel of fulfilment’—those who do not accept his teaching are cut off from ‘the people (of God)’.\(^{282}\)

Therefore, Acts 3:19-20, like Acts 1:6, is misunderstood by dispensationalists. Such passages cannot be used to rule out the identification of national, OT Israel as a type of Christ and the church. In fact, quite the opposite is the case. These passages actually indicate that Israel’s restoration has commenced through Christ and that Israel’s restoration is ongoing through the presence and mission of the renewed Israel, the church.

**Romans 11**

Probably the most critical passage for Paul’s conception of the future of Israel


is Romans 11. For dispensationalists, this is a crux text in establishing their view that there is a future salvation for ethnic Jews, but also a future restoration of national Israel.\(^{283}\) The amount of research on Romans 11, especially the meaning of the phrase “all Israel will be saved” (Rom 11:26) is staggering and no attempt will be offered here to analyze this passage and defend a position.\(^{284}\) Instead, the main argument put forward by dispensationalists that Romans 11 affirms a national, political restoration for Israel will


\(^{284}\) Four main views on Rom 11:26 are offered and defended in the literature (the descriptors are from Zoccali, referenced later): the “ecclesiological” view (“all Israel” refers to the church), the “total national elect” or Jewish remnant view (the elect or believing remnant of Jews saved throughout the present age), the “eschatological miracle” or ethnic national view (the whole nation of Israel will turn to Christ after the ingathering of the Gentiles at the Parousia), and the “two-covenant” view (“all Israel” refers to the historic nation of Israel that is saved regardless of having faith in Christ). For a detailed survey of these various approaches to Rom 11.26, see Christopher Zoccali, “‘And So All Israel Will Be Saved’: Competing Interpretations of Romans 11.26 in Pauline Scholarship,” *JSNT* 30 (2008): 289-318; Christopher Zoccali, *Whom God Has Called: The Relationship of Church and Israel in Pauline Interpretation, 1920 to Present* (Eugene, OR: Pickwick, 2010), 91-117. Zoccali also mentions one other view proposed by Mark Nanos. For surveys of the main positions and defense of the majority view that the nation of Israel will be saved *en masse* at Christ’s return, see John K. Goodrich, “Until the Fullness of the Gentiles Come In: A Critical Review of Recent Scholarship on the Salvation of ‘All Israel’ (Romans 11:26),” *Journal for the Study of Paul and His Letters* 6 (2016): 5-32; Meyer, *The End of the Law*, 188-94; and Matt Waymeyer, “The Dual Status of Israel in Romans 11:28,” *MSJ* 16 (2005): 57-71. For a brief overview of the three main views and defense of the “total national elect” view, see Ben L. Merkle, “Romans 11 and the Future of Ethnic Israel,” *JETS* 43 (2000): 709-21. For another overview of the positions, but a defense of the “ecclesiological” perspective, see Jason A. Staples, “What Do the Gentiles Have to Do with ‘All Israel’? A Fresh Look at Romans 11:25-27,” *JBL* 130 (2011): 371-90.
be evaluated since such would defeat the notion of national Israel as a type fulfilled in Christ and the church. A future, mass, ingathering of Jews at the Parousia does not pose a problem for the thesis offered in this study because the church is a Jew-Gentile entity composed of Christ followers and the claim is that it is specifically the OT nation of Israel that is typological. Secondly, one other defeater text from Romans 11 will be evaluated, but this time from a covenant theologian as the implication he draws from Paul’s teaching has direct import for the nature of the new covenant community and has implications for how the church should be understood as Israel’s antitype.

The crucial argument from Romans 11 offered by dispensational scholars that would overturn viewing OT Israel as a type derives from Romans 11:26-27. They contend that with Romans 11:26 teaching a future salvation for Israel, Paul’s immediate citation of Isaiah 59:20-21 and 27:9 (Rom 11:26-27) means that Israel’s future salvation is linked to the new covenant promises that coordinate Israel’s forgiveness with the restoration of Israel (cf. Isa 60:1-4; Jer 31:31-40), a restoration that includes the inheritance of the promised land. Such a conclusion resonates with how dispensationalists

---

285 For analysis and critique on the dispensational interpretations of Rom 11, see Richard J. Lucas, “The Dispensational Appeal to Romans 11 and the Nature of Israel’s Future Salvation,” in Progressive Covenantalism, 235-53. Some dispensationalists put forward a second argument from Rom 11 to show Paul anticipated Israel’s full restoration. Based on the sequence described in Rom 11:12 and 11:15, some dispensationalists argue that Paul did not reverse the dominant OT prophecy whereby nations would come to salvation in the aftermath of Israel’s salvation and restoration. See Saucy, “Does the Apostle Paul Reverse the Prophetic Tradition,” 67, 79-85; Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, 259-61; Vanlaningham, “The Jewish People,” 122-23. According to Saucy, there is a minor prophetic theme where Gentiles would be saved while Israel was disobedient (Deut 32:21; Isa 65:1; Mal 1:11) and therefore, in conjunction with the a fortiori arguments of Rom 11:12, 15, Israel’s rebellion climaxing in the rejection of Christ leads to salvation going out to Gentiles in this present age, which is then followed by a third stage where national Israel will be restored at the return of Christ, and a fourth stage will emerge where the nations are saved as they witness Israel’s glorification and come to worship along with the restored Israel. See Saucy, “Does the Apostle Paul Reverse the Prophetic Tradition,” 70-74. However, Lucas, “The Dispensational Appeal,” 245-51, has demonstrated that this dispensational argument founders on a number of points. First, this dispensational argument means they have two different understandings of “fullness” (Rom 11:12, 25) for Israel and the Gentiles. Second, dispensationalists fail to observe how Israel’s restoration has commenced following Christ’s first coming.

286 See Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 162, 181; Saucy, “Does the Apostle Paul Reverse the Prophetic Tradition,” 86; Blaising, “Biblical Hermeneutics,” 97; Blaising and Bock,
understand the new covenant (see chapter 4) either in terms of being inaugurated (progressive dispensationalism) or with the church having only an indirect relationship to the new covenant since the fullness of the new covenant awaits national Israel (more traditional forms of dispensationalism).

In evaluating the dispensational claim that the citation of Isaiah 59:20-21 and 27:9 in Romans 11:26-27 invokes new covenant restoration promises for Israel’s future, two points are necessary in demonstrating that this is a spurious argument. First, it is more likely that Paul’s citation of Isaiah 59:20-21 and 27:9 refers not to Christ’s second coming, but to what he accomplished in his first coming. In the original context of Isaiah 59:20-21, a text that was shown to correspond to the work of the Servant in chapter 5 above, the redeemer comes to Zion (i.e., the people of Israel; cf. Rom 9:33) to turn away their transgression and to make a covenant with them which involves the conferral of the Spirit upon them (cf. Joel 2:28-29). The fulfillment of the elements of this new covenant prophecy occurred with the coming of Christ and the aftermath of the cross. In fact, the broader themes of Isaiah 59:19-21, including the fear of the name of the Lord, the Lord’s coming as a rushing stream and wind, the redeemer coming to Zion, the repentance of Jews/Jacob, and the reception of the covenant promise of the Spirit have all been demonstrated to appear in the early chapters of Acts, especially Acts 2. Even the...

---


287Peterson, *Transformed by God*, 131, notes, “Although the heavenly Jerusalem is mentioned in Galatians 4:26 (cf. Heb. 12:22; Rev. 3:12; 21:2), ‘Zion’ and ‘Jacob’ are literary variants for ‘Israel’ in Isaiah 59:20 and should be understood that way in Romans 11:26.” See also Christopher R. Bruno, “The Deliverer from Zion: The Source(s) and Function of Paul’s Citation in Romans 11:26-27,” *TyBul* 59 (2008): 126-28; and J. R. Daniel Kirk, “Why Does the Deliverer Come ἐκ Σιών (Romans 11.26)?” *JSNT* 33 (2010): 81-99, esp. 90-91, for additional reasons for why “Zion” in Rom 11:26 is not referring to the heavenly Jerusalem but is instead a metonymy for the earthly Jerusalem or people of Israel.

modifications Paul has made to Isaiah 59:20-21 support the conclusion that Romans 11:26b-27 is about the benefits of the new covenant already achieved by Christ. Instead of the redeemer coming to Zion (Isa 59:20), Paul writes that the redeemer will come “from Zion.” The change in the wording reminds the readers that Christ came from Israel bringing salvation to all, including Gentiles, but also for the Jews in banishing ungodliness from Jacob.\(^{289}\) Further, although Paul does not continue citing Isaiah 59:21 with the reference to the Spirit, his allusion to Isaiah 27:9 with the removal of sin is no less than a new covenant reality accomplished by the death and resurrection of Christ.\(^{290}\) Rather than viewing Israel’s new covenant promises and restoration in a futuristic setting, Romans 11:26-27 as well as other NT texts that refer to or imply the new covenant (2 Cor

---


\(^{289}\)See Kirk, “Why Does the Deliverer Come?,” 96-97. Daniel Jong Sang Chae, *Paul as Apostle to the Gentiles: His Apostolic Self-Awareness and its Influence on the Soteriological Argument in Romans*, Paternoster Biblical and Theological Monographs (Carlisle, UK: Paternoster, 1997), 278, finds that Paul’s substitution “probably indicates that he undermines the notion that the Deliverer comes on the sole and special behalf of the Jews. The LXX text has already modified the original Hebrew text with a more nationalistic connotation: not merely the Redeemer will ‘come to Zion . . .’ but will come for the sake of Zion. . . . But for Paul he is coming from Zion (ἐκ Σιών). The ἐκ Σιών indicates more than the origin of the Deliverer, or the place of Christ’s resurrection, or that the Messiah comes out of Zion (i.e., David’s city) and brings salvation to Israel. Paul seems to indicate also that the Redeemer comes from Zion (thus Israel will benefit first, of course) and goes out for others outside Israel” (emphasis original). Cf. Wright, *Paul and the Faithfulness of God*, 1248-52. For other treatments of Rom 11:26-27 as a reference to Christ’s first coming, see Das, *Paul and the Jews*, 109-11; and Reidar Hvalvik, “A ‘Sonderweg’ for Israel: A Critical Examination of a Current Interpretation of Romans 11.25-27,” *JSNT* 38 (1990): 87-107, esp. 91-95. See also the helpful interaction of the three positions represented by N. T. Wright, J. Ross Wagner, and Robert Jewett in Sarah Whittle, *Covenant Renewal and the Consecration of the Gentiles in Romans*, SNTSMS 161 (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2015), 58-75. Whittle concludes, “Paul’s citation may therefore point forwards, perhaps to another fulfilment at a future event at which ‘the rest’ of Israel will experience the forgiveness of sins, but it certainly points backwards as an explanation of how God has acted in Christ. The Redeemer has come to deal with Israel’s sin, and the Gentiles and the remnant are already the recipients of God’s mercy.” *Covenant Renewal*, 75.

\(^{290}\)Peterson, *Transformed by God*, 132, observes that the “[a]ddition of the words ‘when I take away their sins’ [(Isa 27:9)] brings Paul’s citation more closely in line with the specific predictions of Jeremiah 31:31-34. Paul adapts Isaiah’s prediction to express more emphatically the sequence of thought in Jeremiah’s oracle: God ‘will banish ungodliness from Jacob’ when he takes away their sins. Since the death of Christ has achieved the promised redemption (Rom. 3:21-26) and made possible a definitive forgiveness of sin (4:5-8), what is needed now is a softening of hearts to believe this message and confess Jesus as Lord (10:8-13).”
3; Heb 8-9; Rom 1-8) demonstrate that the new covenant and Israel’s restoration are already inaugurated. Even if this interpretation is incorrect and Romans 11:26-27 does refer to the future coming of Christ, it does not necessarily entail the dispensational view, for Paul focuses on Israel’s salvation (v. 26a), the removal of ungodliness and sins from Israel (vv. 26-27), which means soteriology is what is emphasized and nothing explicit is affirmed by Paul about a nationalistic restoration.291

A second point with respect to the dispensational interpretation of Romans 11:26-27 relates to their asymmetrical understanding of the new covenant in general. It is illegitimate to parcel out the new covenant into spiritual and physical aspects with the soteriological blessings having both present and future fulfillment while the material blessings are completely future, awaiting the return of Christ and directed to national Israel.292 Throughout this study the ratification of the new covenant through Christ has been highlighted. Christ did not just fulfill part of the new covenant, he has initiated the entire new covenant, including the material or physical promises as they are taken up into such themes as inheritance, new creation, and new temple. Christ has inaugurated the land promise by introducing the new creation by his physical resurrection,293 and God’s covenantal presence is no longer confined to a place in Palestine or to a temple structure, but God’s rule and presence is extended throughout the world in God’s new temple, the church. All the new covenant promises are now exclusively enjoyed by those in union with Christ. Vlach writes, astoundingly, that the “supersessionist” view of the incorporation of a future en masse salvation of ethnic Jews into the church (Rom 11:25)

291For example, Christopher D. Stanley, “‘The Redeemer Will Come ἐκ Σιών’: Romans 11.26-27 Revisited,” in Paul and the Scriptures of Israel, ed. Craig A. Evans and James A. Sanders, JSNTSup 83 (Sheffield: JSOT, 1993), 118-42, points out that Paul’s concern for Israel in Romans is with respect to their salvation and especially in Rom 11, Paul looks forward to Israel’s salvation as their attitude toward the gospel will one day change (see pp. 138-42).


is problematic because “there will be no special role or function for Israel apart from the church.” But Vlach fails to understand that salvation and the enjoyment of the new covenant benefits both now and in the future can only be found in Christ, and if one is in union with Christ, he or she, Jew or Gentile, is automatically a member of his people, the church. In sum, there is no evidence from Romans 11:26-27 that proves there will be a future national restoration of Israel or that Israel will receive a distinct aspect of the new covenant apart from the Gentiles in the future age.

Lastly, from an entirely different standpoint, covenant theologian Michael Horton also appeals to Romans 11 in a manner that would challenge the nature of the new covenant community and the sense in which the church is the antitype of Israel as has been advocated in this study. Horton writes that it is “true [that] in the new covenant as in the old that not all physical descendants of the covenant community are living branches of the Vine (Ro 9:6; 11:6-24). In this covenant there are some who belong outwardly to Christ’s visible body but do not actually trust Christ. . . . [B]ranches that do not bear fruit are broken off by Christ (Jn 15:2; Ro 11:1-30).” It is evident that Horton is drawing a significant theological conclusion from Romans 11 and particularly from the imagery of the olive tree (11:16-24). However, the conclusion Horton draws is unacceptable because he is pushing the tree (and vine) imagery too far. The olive tree image is used as an illustration so that Gentiles would not take pride over unbelieving Jews, the natural branches that have been broken off. Instead they are to stand firm in faith, and have a sense of fear in not presuming upon God’s grace. The olive tree represents the people of God and just as Gentiles become a part of the people of God through faith, Jews, despite their historical privileges and pedigree, can be excluded from the people of God because

294 Vlach, Has the Church Replaced Israel?, 161.


of their unbelief. As Fred Malone finds, the “issue in Romans 11 is not that of an individual being a New Covenant member who has been broken off as a covenant breaker. Rather, Paul speaks of faith, not ethnic origin, as the prerequisite of being grafted into the root in the New Covenant era, whether Jew or Gentile.”

The olive tree imagery can be no more applied to the issue of covenant breakers than it can be applied to apostate Christians who lose their salvation by falling from grace.

**Summary**

In chapter 5 the focus was upon national Israel as a type of Jesus Christ. As the antitype, Israel’s identity, roles, and calling culminate in Christ and are fulfilled in him. In this chapter, both the Christ-church relationship and the Israel-church relationship through Christ have been examined. The church’s relationship to Christ is not a typological one, but is marked by covenantal union and representation. The church’s union with Christ is eschatological and parallel to the individual believer’s union with Christ. Next, a variety of NT texts confirm that OT Israel is typological of the church, but is typological only through Christ and his work. The typological relationship shows not only a close correspondence to national Israel, but also an escalation and heightening so that the church is not equivalent or directly continuous with Israel, but is instead the renewed, eschatological Israel. Finally, NT texts employed as defeaters were examined. Analysis of these texts did not nullify the conclusion that OT Israel is a typological pattern.

Concentrating on the church’s union with Christ and the church as the antitype of Israel has led to the unavoidable conclusion that both dispensational and covenant theology have not fully integrated these areas into their respective ecclesiology. By union with Christ and given the eschatological entailments of the church as the antitype of Israel, the church consists of members of the new covenant community, a regenerate people as God’s new temple and new humanity is marked by faith and the indwelling

---

presence of the Holy Spirit. Covenant theologians do not accept this conclusion however, because they are too committed to the covenant as a theological construct. The commitment to the covenant of grace framework results in the theological entailment that the church is of the same nature as OT Israel. Likewise, dispensationalism and its varieties have not integrated the theological implications of union with Christ into their ecclesiology. National Israel or Jewish Christians still have certain blessings that await them in the future. But union with Christ establishes that Gentiles are on equal footing with Jewish believers and that all the inheritance and promises are bestowed to them as well. Moreover, just like other OT types, Israel is a type and shadow of Christ and the church. The church is the renewed, antitypical Israel and as such, Israel’s prophecies and promises are translated to Christ and to the church. The dispensational distinction between Israel and the church is unwarranted.
CHAPTER 7
CONCLUSION: PROGRESSIVE COVENANTALISM AS THE SOLUTION TO THE ECCLESIOLOGICAL DIVIDE

The purpose of this study was to unpack the nature of the Israel-Christ-church relationship through the canon of Scripture and apply the resulting theological conclusions to the reigning systems of evangelical theology: covenant and dispensational theology. Particularly vital for ecclesiological formulation is the subject of typology and the interpretative challenges associated with types. Nevertheless, this study concluded that neither covenant theology or dispensationalism has rightly put together the Israel-Christ-church relationship and this problem may be pinpointed in how they misunderstand typology (dispensationalism) or are inconsistent in delineating the significance of the type-antitype relationship (covenant theology).

Given the focus on typology, chapter 2 delineated the nature and characteristics of typology. Typology was distinguished from allegory and typology was found to involve historical correspondences between OT persons, events, and institutions that are prospective and God-ordained, pointing to greater, eschatological events that come to fruition in or through Christ. The textual warrant for identifying types was also presented in order to confirm that typological patterns are open to verification.

Chapters 3 and 4 laid down the hermeneutics of covenant and dispensational theology. The theological constructs and hermeneutics that drive these systems were presented with particular focus on how the Israel-church relationship is formulated, and how they understand typological patterns. Dispensationalists recognize Israel as a type of Christ and the church in only an illustrative or analogical way, or alternatively, they outright reject that Israel can be a type. Covenant theologians recognize Israel as a type of
Christ and the church, but then problems emerge given their commitment to the covenant of grace framework. They understand the church to be one with Israel and characterized by the same nature as Israel, a mixed community of covenant keepers and breakers.

In chapter 5, the exegetical and biblical-theological arguments were presented in order to show that Jesus Christ is the antitype of OT Israel. Christ may be considered, then, the true Israel since Israel’s identity, roles, vocation, prophecies, and promises are fulfilled in him. While Jews retain an ethnic status in the NT, dispensationalists have incorrectly posited a future restoration for national Israel. They have failed to observe how the biblical-theological data demonstrates how Israel’s identity markers, vocation as a covenant people, and restoration promises are ultimately centered in Jesus. The typological relations explored in chapter 5 reveal that the Israel-Christ-church relationship may be summed up as follows: son (Adam, Israel, David) \(\rightarrow\) true Son (Jesus Christ) \(\rightarrow\) sons (church); Abrahamic seeds (Israel) \(\rightarrow\) true Abrahamic Seed (Jesus Christ) \(\rightarrow\) Abrahamic heirs and seed of promise (church); servant-Israel \(\rightarrow\) true Servant (Jesus Christ) \(\rightarrow\) servants (church); Yeshurun (Israel) \(\rightarrow\) Beloved (Christ) \(\rightarrow\) beloved (church); vine (Israel) \(\rightarrow\) true Vine (Jesus Christ) \(\rightarrow\) fruitful branches (church). The typology involving the sonship and Abrahamic seed themes pose difficulties for covenant theology since the analysis reveals that the genealogical principle is no longer operative. The whole new covenant community now consists of genuine sons of God and faithful offspring of Abraham.

Concentration on the two final areas of the Israel-Christ-church relationship were the topic of chapter 6. The church’s relationship with Christ is a covenantal union that mirrors the individual believer’s union with Christ. Also, the church’s relationship to Israel was demonstrated to be typological. Both union with Christ and the church as the antitype of Israel pose significant dilemmas for dispensationalism given their commitment to the Israel-church distinction. The same conclusions were also drawn with respect to covenant theology since the church’s union with Christ and the church as
antitypical, renewed Israel means that new covenant community is not of the same nature of OT Israel, but is instead a community of faith that marks all of its members.

If covenant and dispensational theologies have not rightly formulated the biblical-theological development of the people of God and how Israel functioned as a type, what can offer a more biblical proposal? The progressive covenantalism framework advanced by Stephen Wellum and Peter Gentry serves as a via media to dispensational and covenant theology and is more faithful to the contours of the Bible’s storyline with respect to the people of God. Progressive covenantalism understands national Israel as a typological pattern not unlike other OT persons, institutions, and events. God used a corporate Adam, the Israelite nation, to point to a greater son, Jesus, and to a faithful community, the church. Israel is related to the church secondarily as the typological relationship is directed through Christ. Since Christ is the antitypical and true Israel, the agent of restoration who brings to fruition Israel’s promises and fulfills the covenants, the church, through him, is the one and only new covenant community (Jer 31:26-40; Ezek 36:22-36). All followers of Jesus have direct knowledge of the Lord, being taught by God (cf. Isa 54:3; John 6:45; 1 Thess 4:9; 1 John 2:20, 27), possessing the gift of the eschatological Holy Spirit with the law written on the heart, and they look back to the finality of the forgiveness of sins through the cross (Jer 31:31-34). These new covenant promises, like the typological aspects of national Israel, are channeled through Christ to God’s end-time people, Jew and Gentile alike. Thus, the church does not replace or absorb OT Israel, rather Israel was a type of Jesus and derivatively, of a new and regenerate covenant community. In this way, the Israel-Christ-church relationship in typological and redemptive-historical perspective avoids the direct unification of Israel and the church as promulgated in covenant theology, while also evading the significant separation of Israel and the church with each having distinct plans or promises as portrayed in dispensational theology.


The Sensus Plenior of Sacred Scripture. Baltimore: St. Mary’s University, 1955.


———. “The Deliverer from Zion: The Source(s) and Function of Paul’s Citation in Romans 11:26-27.” Tyndale Bulletin 59 (2008): 119-34.


433


________. The Trinity and the Covenant of Redemption. Fearn, Scotland: Mentor, 2016.


Hanson, R. P. C. *Allegory and Event: A Study of the Sources and Significance of Origen’s Interpretation of Scripture.* Richmond, VA: John Knox, 1959.


________. “A Response to Patrick Fairbairn and Biblical Hermeneutics as Related to the Quotations of the Old Testament in the New.” In Hermeneutics, Inerrancy, and the


Leithart, Peter J. Deep Exegesis: The Mystery of Reading Scripture. Waco, TX: Baylor University, 2009.


________. “Union with Christ’ and Justification.” In In Christ Alone: Perspectives on Union with Christ, edited by Stephen Clark and Matthew Evans, 141-74. Fearn, Scotland: Mentor, 2016.


Venema, Cornelis P. Children at the Lord’s Table? Grand Rapids: Reformation Heritage, 2009.


ABSTRACT

THE ISRAEL-CHRIST-CHURCH TYPOLOGICAL PATTERN: A THEOLOGICAL CRITIQUE OF COVENANT AND DISPENSATIONAL THEOLOGIES

Brent Evan Parker, Ph.D.
The Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, 2017
Chair: Dr. Stephen J. Wellum

The purpose of this dissertation was to explore the relationship between the nation of Israel, Jesus Christ, and the church. An examination of the biblical texts with particular attention to the nature of typology indicates that the reigning systems of evangelical theology—covenant and dispensational theology—have improperly formulated their ecclesiologies with respect to the Israel-church relationship. Chapter 1 surveys the importance of typology in the covenant and dispensational debate and presents a theological resolution.

Chapter 2 evaluates the various proposals for the nature of typology. After affirming that typology is to be distinguished from allegory, the specific features of the type and antitype correspondence are offered. The notion of fulfillment in typological patterns and how types are textually identified are also presented.

Chapter 3 surveys the hermeneutics of covenant theology. Attention is focused on the covenant of works and the covenant of grace as an interpretative framework for the structuring of redemptive history. Covenant theologians put together the Israel-church relationship in their ecclesiology in a manner that leads to direct continuity. How they conceive of this typological relationship is also analyzed.

Chapter 4 moves to the other prominent system of evangelical theology: dispensationalism. The various forms or varieties of dispensational thinking along with
their hermeneutical commitments are surveyed. The distinction between Israel and the church is the hallmark of dispensationalism, which means discontinuity is emphasized. The dispensational proposals for typology and why the nation of Israel is not viewed as a type of Christ or the church receive subsequent focus.

Chapter 5 argues that national, Old Testament Israel is a type of Jesus Christ in accord with the characteristics of typology as elucidated in chapter 2. Israel’s identity and roles expressed through the sonship, seed of Abraham, servanthood, and vineyard themes, among others, demonstrate that Israel is a typological pattern that reaches antitypical fulfillment in Christ. Such analysis has negative implications for both dispensational and covenant theologies since these ecclesiological systems either do not recognize this typological relationship or they do not draw proper conclusions from the entailments of the Israel-Christ typological pattern.

Chapter 6 develops the Christ-church relationship first, examining the symmetry of personal and corporate union with Christ. Having analyzed Israel’s relationship to Christ (chapter 5) and the church’s union with Christ, the Israel-church relationship is explored and is found to be of a typological nature, but only through Christ. Ecclesiological conclusions for dispensational and covenant theologies are offered. Lastly, potential defeater texts from the New Testament are evaluated and shown to not unsettle the conclusion that national Israel is a type of Christ and the church.

Chapter 7 summarizes the thesis and briefly presents progressive covenantalism as the solution to overcoming the ecclesiological problems found in covenant and dispensational theology.
VITA

Brent Evan Parker

EDUCATIONAL
B.S., University of California, Davis, 2002
M.Div., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, 2008

PUBLICATIONS

ORGANIZATIONS
The Evangelical Theological Society

ACADEMIC
Garrett Fellow, The Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, 2009-2012
Assistant Editor, The Southern Baptist Journal of Theology, 2009-2017